International Patent Classification

2014.01

Section C
CHEMISTRY; METALLURGY
SECTION C — CHEMISTRY; METALLURGY

CONTENTS OF SECTION
(References and notes omitted)

Subsection CHEMISTRY

C01 INORGANIC CHEMISTRY.................................5
  C01B Non-metallic elements; Compounds thereof........5
  C01C Ammonia; Cyanogen; Compounds thereof...........10
  C01D Compounds of alkali metals, i.e. lithium, sodium,
        potassium, rubidium, caesium, or francium......11
  C01F Compounds of the metals beryllium, magnesium,
        aluminium, calcium, strontium, barium, radium,
        thorium, or of the rare-earth metals...............12
  C01G Compounds containing metals not covered by
        subclasses.........................................14

C02 TREATMENT OF WATER, WASTE WATER,
      SEWAGE, OR SLUDGE................................16
  C02F Treatment of water, waste water, sewage, or sludge....16

C03 GLASS; MINERAL OR SLAG WOOL.....................18
  C03B Manufacture or shaping of glass, or of mineral or
        slag wool; Supplementary processes in the
        manufacture or shaping of glass, or of mineral or
        slag wool..........................................18
  C03C Chemical composition of glasses, glazes, or
        vitreous enamels; Surface treatment of glass;
        Surface treatment of fibres or filaments from
        glass, minerals or slags; Joining glass to glass
        or other materials..................................22

C04 CEMENTS; CONCRETE; ARTIFICIAL STONE;
      CERAMICS; REFRACTORIES.........................25
  C04B Lime; Magnesia; Slag; Cements; Compositions
        thereof, e.g. mortars, concrete or like building
        materials; Artificial stone; Ceramics;
        Refractories; Treatment of natural stone........25

C05 FERTILISERS; MANUFACTURE THEREOF..............32
  C05B Phosphatic fertilisers................................32
  C05C Nitrogenous fertilisers............................33
  C05D Inorganic fertilisers not covered by subclasses;
        Fertilisers producing carbon dioxide............33
  C05F Organic fertilisers not covered by subclasses.....34
  C05G Mixtures of fertilisers covered individually by
        different subclasses of class; Mixtures of one or
        more fertilisers with materials not having a
        specific fertilising activity, e.g. pesticides,
        soil-conditioners, wetting agents; Fertilisers
        characterised by their form........................34

C06 EXPLOSIVES; MATCHES.................................35
  C06B Explosive or thermic compositions; Manufacture
        thereof; Use of single substances as explosives..35
  C06C Detonating or priming devices; Fuses; Chemical
        lighters; Pyrophoric compositions................37
  C06D Means for generating smoke or mist; Gas-attack
        compositions; Generation of gas for blasting or
        propulsion (chemical part)........................37
  C06F Matches; Manufacture of matches..................37

C07 ORGANIC CHEMISTRY.................................38
  C07B General methods of organic chemistry; Apparatus
        thereof...........................................38
  C07C Acyclic or carbocyclic compounds..................40
  C07D Heterocyclic compounds............................88
  C07F Acyclic, carbocyclic, or heterocyclic compounds
        containing elements other than carbon, hydrogen,
        halogen, oxygen, nitrogen, sulfur, selenium or
        tellurium..........................................120
  C07G Compounds of unknown constitution................122
  C07H Sugars; Derivatives thereof; Nucleosides;
        Nucleotides; Nucleic acids........................122
  C07J Steroids...........................................124
  C07K Peptides...........................................126

C08 ORGANIC MACROMOLECULAR COMPOUNDS;
      THEIR PREPARATION OR CHEMICAL WORKING-UP;
      COMPOSITIONS BASED THEREON....................130
  C08B Polysaccharides; Derivatives thereof...............130
  C08C Treatment or chemical modification of rubbers......132
  C08F Macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions
        only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds..132
  C08G Macromolecular compounds obtained otherwise than
        by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon
        unsaturated bonds................................144
  C08H Derivatives of natural macromolecular compounds...151
  C08J Working-up; General processes of compounding;
        After-treatment not covered by subclasses........151
Section C

C08K Use of inorganic or non-macromolecular organic substances as compounding ingredients........................................152
C08L Compositions of macromolecular compounds.................................................................155

C09 DYES; PAINTS; POLISHES; NATURAL RESINS; ADHESIVES; COMPOSITIONS NOT OTHERWISE PROVIDED FOR; APPLICATIONS OF MATERIALS NOT OTHERWISE PROVIDED FOR................................................................160
C09B Organic dyes or closely-related compounds for producing dyes; Mordants; Lakes........................................160
C09C Treatment of inorganic materials, other than fibrous fillers, to enhance their pigmenting or filling properties; Preparation of carbon black.........................................................168
C09D Coating compositions, e.g. paints, varnishes or lacquers; Filling pastes; Chemical paint or ink removers; Inks; Correcting fluids; Woodstains; Pastes or solids for colouring or printing; Use of materials therefor.................................................................169
C09F Natural resins; French polish; Drying-oils; Driers (siccatives); Turpentine......................................................................176
C09G Polishing compositions other than french polish; Ski waxes.................................................................176
C09H Preparation of glue or gelatine..........................................................................................176
C09J Adhesives; Non-mechanical aspects of adhesive processes in general; Adhesive processes not provided for elsewhere; Use of materials as adhesives.....................................................177
C09K Materials for applications not otherwise provided for; Applications of materials not otherwise provided for.................................................................................................................183

C10 PETROLEUM, GAS OR COKE INDUSTRIES; TECHNICAL GASES CONTAINING CARBON MONOXIDE; FUELS; LUBRICANTS; PEAT........................................186
C10B Destructive distillation of carbonaceous materials for production of gas, coke, tar, or similar materials.........................................................................................................................186
C10C Working-up tar, pitch, asphalt, bitumen; Pyroligneous acid........................................................................189
C10F Drying or working-up of peat..........................................................................................189
C10G Cracking hydrocarbon oils; Production of liquid hydrocarbon mixtures, e.g. by destructive hydrogenation, oligomerisation, polymerisation; Recovery of hydrocarbon oils from oil-shale, oil-sand, or gases; Refining mixtures mainly consisting of hydrocarbons; Reforming of naphtha; Mineral waxes...............................................................189
C10H Production of acetylene by wet methods........................................................................194
C10J Production of gases containing carbon monoxide and hydrogen from solid carbonaceous materials by partial oxidation processes involving oxygen or steam; Carburetted air or other gases.....................................................195
C10K Purifying or modifying the chemical composition of combustible gases containing carbon monoxide..........................................................................................................................195
C10L Fuels not otherwise provided for; Natural gas; Synthetic natural gas obtained by processes not covered by subclasses; Liquefied petroleum gas; use of additives to fuels or fires; fire-lighters..........................................................196

C10M Lubricating compositions; Use of chemical substances either alone or as lubricating ingredients in a lubricating composition...........................................................................197
C10N Indexing scheme associated with subclass..............................................................................205

C11 ANIMAL OR VEGETABLE OILS, FATS, FATTY SUBSTANCES OR WAXES; FATTY ACIDS THEREFROM; DETERGENTS; CANDLES...........................................................................206
C11B Producing, e.g. by pressing raw materials or by extraction from waste materials, refining or preserving fats, fatty substances, e.g. lanolin, fatty oils or waxes; Essential oils; Perfumes.................................................................206
C11C Fatty acids obtained from fats, oils or waxes; Candles; Fats, oils or fatty acids obtained by chemical modification of fats, oils or fatty acids........................................................................206
C11D Detergent compositions; Use of single substances as detergents; Soap or soap-making; Resin soaps; Recovery of glycerol.........................................................................................................................207

C12 BIOCHEMISTRY; BEER; SPIRITS; WINE; VINEGAR; MICROBIOLOGY; ENZYMOLOGY; MUTATION OR GENETIC ENGINEERING........................................209
C12C Brewing of beer..................................................................................................................209
C12F Recovery of by-products of fermented solutions; Denaturing of, or denatured, alcohol...............................................................210
C12G Wine; Other alcoholic beverages; Preparation thereof........................................................................210
C12H Pasteurisation, sterilisation, preservation, purification, clarification, ageing of alcoholic beverages or removal of alcohol therefrom..................................................................................211
C12J Vinegar; Its preparation.........................................................................................................211
C12L Pitching or depitching machines; Cellar tools.......................................................................212
C12M Apparatus for enzymology or microbiology......................................................................212
C12N Micro-organisms or enzymes; Compositions thereof; Propagating, preserving, or maintaining micro-organisms; Mutation or genetic engineering; Culture media.................................................................212
C12P Fermentation or enzyme-using processes to synthesise a desired chemical compound or composition or to separate optical isomers from a racemic mixture........................................................................216
C12Q Measuring or testing processes involving enzymes or micro-organisms; Compositions or test papers therefor; Processes of preparing such compositions; Condition-responsive control in microbiological or enzymological processes.................................................219
C12R Indexing scheme associated with subclasses.........................................................................220

C13 SUGAR INDUSTRY...............................................................................................................221
C13B Production of sucrose; Apparatus specially adapted therefor...................................................221
C13K Saccharides, other than sucrose, obtained from natural sources or by hydrolysis of naturally occurring di-, oligo- or polysaccharides........................................................................222
In section C, the definitions of groups of chemical elements are as follows:

Alkaline metals: Li, Na, K, Rb, Cs, Fr
Lanthanides: Ca, Sr, Ba, Ra
Actinides: elements with atomic numbers 89 to 103 inclusive

1. In section C, the definitions of groups of chemical elements are as follows:

Alkaline earth metals: Ca, Sr, Ba, Ra
Lanthanides: elements with atomic numbers 57 to 71 inclusive
Rare earths: Sc, Y, Lanthanides
Actinides: elements with atomic numbers 89 to 103 inclusive
Halogens: F, Cl, Br, I, At

C21 METALLURGY OF IRON ............................................. 225
C21B Manufacture of iron or steel .................................. 225
C21C Processing of pig-iron, e.g. refining, manufacture of wrought-iron or steel; Treatment in molten state of ferrous alloys .................................................. 225
C21D Modifying the physical structure of ferrous metals; General devices for heat treatment of ferrous or non-ferrous metals or alloys; Making metal malleable by decarburisation, tempering, or other treatments .................................. 226

C22 METALLURGY; FERROUS OR NON-FERROUS ALLOYS; TREATMENT OF ALLOYS OR NON-FERROUS METALS ............................................. 228
C22B Production or refining of metals; Pretreatment of raw materials .................................. 228
C22C Alloys .......................................................... 230
C22F Changing the physical structure of non-ferrous metals or non-ferrous alloys .......................... 233

C23 COATING METALLIC MATERIAL; COATING MATERIAL WITH METALLIC MATERIAL; CHEMICAL SURFACE TREATMENT; DIFFUSION TREATMENT OF METALLIC MATERIAL; COATING BY VACUUM EVAPORATION, BY SPUTTERING, BY ION IMPLANTATION OR BY CHEMICAL VAPOUR DEPOSITION, IN GENERAL; INHIBITING CORROSION OF METALLIC MATERIAL OR INCRUSTATION IN GENERAL ............................................. 233
C23C Coating metallic material; Coating material with metallic material; Surface treatment of metallic material by diffusion into the surface, by chemical conversion or substitution; Coating by vacuum evaporation, by sputtering, by ion implantation or by chemical vapour deposition, in general ............................................. 233

C23D Enamelling of, or applying a vitreous layer to, metals .................................................. 238
C23F Non-mechanical removal of metallic material from surfaces; Inhibiting corrosion of metallic material; Inhibiting incrustation in general; Multi-step processes for surface treatment of metallic material involving at least one process provided for in class ............................................. 238
C23G Cleaning or degreasing of metallic material by chemical methods other than electrolysis .......................... 239

C25 ELECTROLYTIC OR ELECTROPHORETIC PROCESSES; APPARATUS THEREFOR ............................................. 240
C25B Electrolytic or electrophoretic processes for the production of compounds or non-metals; Apparatus therefor ............................................. 240
C25C Processes for the electrolytic production, recovery or refining of metals; Apparatus therefor ............................................. 241
C25D Processes for the electrolytic or electrophoretic production of coatings; Electroforming; Joining workpieces by electrolysis; Apparatus therefor ............................................. 242
C25F Processes for the electrolytic removal of materials from objects; Apparatus therefor ............................................. 244

C30 CRYSTAL GROWTH ............................................. 244
C30B Single-crystal growth; Unidirectional solidification of eutectic material or unidirectional demixing of eutectoid material; Refining by zone-melting of material; Production of a homogeneous polycrystalline material with defined structure; Single crystals or homogeneous polycrystalline material with defined structure; After-treatment of single crystals or a homogeneous polycrystalline material with defined structure; Apparatus therefor ............................................. 244

C39 SUBJECT MATTER NOT OTHERWISE PROVIDED FOR IN THIS SECTION ............................................. 249
C39Z Subject matter not otherwise provided for in this section ............................................. 249
Section C

Noble gases: He, Ne, Ar, Kr, Xe, Rn
Platinum group: Os, Ir, Pt, Ru, Rh, Pd
Noble metals: Ag, Au, Platinum group
Light metals: alkali metals, alkaline earth metals, Be, Al, Mg
Heavy metals: metals other than light metals
Iron group: Fe, Co, Ni
Non-metals: H, B, C, Si, N, O, S, Se, Te, noble gases, halogens
Metals: elements other than non-metals
Transition elements: elements with atomic numbers 21 to 30 inclusive, 39 to 48 inclusive, 57 to 80 inclusive, 89 upwards

2. Section C covers:
   a. pure chemistry, which covers inorganic compounds, organic compounds, macromolecular compounds, and their methods of preparation;
   b. applied chemistry, which covers compositions containing the above compounds, such as: glass, ceramics, fertilisers, plastics compositions, paints, products of the petroleum industry. It also covers certain compositions on account of their having particular properties rendering them suitable for certain purposes, as in the case of explosives, dyestuffs, adhesives, lubricants, and detergents;
   c. certain marginal industries, such as the manufacture of coke and of solid or gaseous fuels, the production and refining of oils, fats and waxes, the fermentation industry (e.g., brewing and wine-making), the sugar industry;
   d. certain operations or treatments, which are either purely mechanical, e.g., the mechanical treatment of leather and skins, or partly mechanical, e.g., the treatment of water or the prevention of corrosion in general;
   e. metallurgy, ferrous or non-ferrous alloys.

3. In all sections of the IPC, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, the Periodic System of chemical elements referred to is the one with 18 groups as represented in the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Period</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>18</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Group 1</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>Li</td>
<td>Na</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>Rb</td>
<td>Cs</td>
<td>Fr</td>
<td>La</td>
<td>Ce</td>
<td>Pr</td>
<td>Nd</td>
<td>Pm</td>
<td>Sm</td>
<td>Eu</td>
<td>Gd</td>
<td>Tb</td>
<td>Dy</td>
<td>Ho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group 2</td>
<td>He</td>
<td>Be</td>
<td>Mg</td>
<td>Al</td>
<td>Si</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>Cl</td>
<td>Ar</td>
<td>Ca</td>
<td>Sc</td>
<td>Ti</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>Cr</td>
<td>Mn</td>
<td>Fe</td>
<td>Co</td>
<td>Ni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group 3</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Ne</td>
<td>Ne</td>
<td>Ne</td>
<td>Ne</td>
<td>Ne</td>
<td>Ne</td>
<td>Ne</td>
<td>Ne</td>
<td>Ne</td>
<td>Ne</td>
<td>Ne</td>
<td>Ne</td>
<td>Ne</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. In the case of operations, treatments, products or articles having both a chemical and a non-chemical part or aspect, the general rule is that the chemical part or aspect is covered by section C.

b. In some of these cases, the chemical part or aspect brings with it a non-chemical one, even though purely mechanical, because this latter aspect either is essential to the operation or treatment or constitutes an important element thereof. It has seemed, in fact, more logical not to dissociate the different parts or aspects of a coherent whole. This is the case for applied chemistry and for the industries, operations and treatments mentioned in Notes (1)(c), (d) and (e). For example, furnaces peculiar to the manufacture of glass are covered by class C03 and not by class F27.

c. There are, however, some exceptions in which the mechanical (or non-chemical) aspect carries with it the chemical aspect, for example:

- Certain extractive processes, in subclass A61K;
- The chemical purification of air, in subclass A61L;
- Chemical methods of fire-fighting, in subclass A62D;
- Chemical processes and apparatus, in class B01;
- Impregnation of wood, in subclass B27K;
- Chemical methods of analysis or testing, in subclass G01N;
- Photographic materials and processes, in class G03, and, generally, the chemical treatment of textiles and the production of cellulose or paper, in section D.

d. In still other cases, the pure chemical aspect is covered by section C and the applied chemical aspect by another section, such as A, B or F, e.g., the use of a substance or composition for:

- treatment of plants or animals, covered by subclass A01N;
- foodstuffs, covered by class A23;
- ammunition or explosives, covered by class F42.

e. When the chemical and mechanical aspects are so closely interlocked that a neat and simple division is not possible, or when certain mechanical processes follow as a natural or logical continuation of a chemical treatment, section C may cover, in addition to the chemical aspect, a part only of the mechanical aspect, e.g., after-treatment of artificial stone, covered by class C04. In this latter case, a note or a reference is usually given to make the position clear, even if sometimes the division is rather arbitrary.
CHEMISTRY

C01 INORGANIC CHEMISTRY

Note(s)
1. In subclasses C01B-C01G, and within each of these subclasses, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, a compound is classified in the last appropriate place, e.g. potassium permanganate is classified only as a permanganate compound, in subclass C01G.
2. Biocidal, pest repellent, pest attractant or plant growth regulatory activity of compounds or preparations is further classified in subclass A01P.

C01B NON-METALLIC ELEMENTS; COMPOUNDS THEREOF (fermentation or enzyme-using processes for the preparation of elements or inorganic compounds except carbon dioxide C12P 3/00; production of non-metallic elements or inorganic compounds by electrolysis or electrophoresis C25B)

Note(s)
1. In this subclass, tradenames that are often found in scientific and patent literature have been used in order to define precisely the scope of the groups.
2. Attention is drawn to the definitions of groups of chemical elements following the title of section C.
3. Attention is drawn to Note (1) after class C01, which defines the last place priority rule applied in this class, i.e. in the range of subclasses C01B-C01G and within these subclasses.
4. Therapeutic activity of compounds is further classified in subclass A61P.

Subclass index

HYDROGEN; HYDROGEN ISOTOPES; WATER; HYDRIDES .......................................................... 3/00, 4/00, 5/00, 6/00
SYNTHESIS GAS .......................................................................................................................... 7/00
HALOGENS OR THEIR COMPOUNDS ......................................................................................... 7/00, 9/00, 11/00
OXYGEN, OXIDES IN GENERAL; PER-COMPOUNDS ............................................................... 13/00, 15/00
SULFUR, COMPOUNDS THEREOF ............................................................................................... 17/00
NITROGEN, COMPOUNDS THEREOF ......................................................................................... 21/00
PHOSPHORUS, COMPOUNDS THEREOF .................................................................................... 25/00
CARBON, COMPOUNDS THEREOF ............................................................................................ 31/00
SILICON, COMPOUNDS THEREOF ............................................................................................. 33/00
SELENIUM OR TELLURIUM; BORON ....................................................................................... 19/00, 35/00
NOBLE GASES ............................................................................................................................ 23/00
COMPOUNDS HAVING MOLECULAR SIEVE PROPERTIES BUT NOT HAVING BASE-EXCHANGE PROPERTIES .................................................................................................................. 37/00
COMPOUNDS HAVING MOLECULAR SIEVE AND BASE-EXCHANGE PROPERTIES ............... 39/00

Hydrogen; Hydrides; Water; Synthesis gas from hydrocarbons

3/00 Hydrogen; Gaseous mixtures containing hydrogen; Separation of hydrogen from mixtures containing it; Purification of hydrogen (production of water-gas or synthesis gas from solid carbonaceous material C10J) [3]
3/02 • Production of hydrogen or of gaseous mixtures containing hydrogen [3]
3/04 • by decomposition of inorganic compounds, e.g. ammonia [3]
3/06 • by reaction of inorganic compounds containing electro-positively bound hydrogen, e.g. water, acids, bases, ammonia, with inorganic reducing agents (by electrolysis of water C25B 1/04) [3]
3/08 • • • with metals [3]
3/10 • • • by reaction of water vapour with metals [3]
3/12 • • • by reaction of water vapour with carbon monoxide [3]
3/14 • • • Handling of heat and steam [3]
3/16 • • • using catalysts [3]
3/18 • • • using moving solid particles [3]
3/20 • • • by reaction of metal hydroxides with carbon monoxide [3]
3/22 • • by decomposition of gaseous or liquid organic compounds [3]
3/24 • • • of hydrocarbons [3]
3/26 • • • using catalysts [3]
3/28 • • • using moving solid particles [3]
3/30 • • • • using the fluidised bed technique [3]
3/32 • • by reaction of gaseous or liquid organic compounds with gasifying agents, e.g. water, carbon dioxide, air [3]
3/34 • • • by reaction of hydrocarbons with gasifying agents [3]
3/36 • • • using oxygen or mixtures containing oxygen as gasifying agents [3]
C01B

3/38 • • • • using catalysts [3]
3/40 • • • • characterised by the catalyst [3]
3/42 • • • • using moving solid particles [3]
3/44 • • • • using the fluidised bed technique [3]
3/46 • • • • using discontinuously preheated non-moving solid materials, e.g. blast and run [3]
3/48 • • • • followed by reaction of water vapour with carbon monoxide [3]
3/50 • Separation of hydrogen or hydrogen containing gases from gaseous mixtures, e.g. purification (C01B 3/14 takes precedence) [3]
3/52 • by contacting with liquids; Regeneration of used liquids [3]
3/54 • including a catalytic reaction [3]
3/56 • by contacting with solids; Regeneration of used solids [3]
3/58 • including a catalytic reaction [3]

4/00 Hydrogen isotopes; Inorganic compounds thereof prepared by isotope exchange, e.g. NH₃ + D₂ → NH₄D + HD [2]

5/00 Water
5/02 • Heavy water; Preparation by chemical reaction of hydrogen isotopes or their compounds, e.g. 4ND₃+7O₂ → 4NO₂+6D₂O, 2D₂+O₂ → 2D₂O

6/00 Hydrides of metals; Monoborane or diborane; Addition complexes thereof [2]
6/02 • Hydrides of transition elements; Addition complexes thereof
6/04 • Hydrides of alkali metals, alkaline earth metals, beryllium or magnesium; Addition complexes thereof
6/06 • Hydrides of aluminium, gallium, indium, thallium, germanium, tin, lead, arsenic, antimony, bismuth or polonium; Monoborane; Diborane; Addition complexes thereof
6/10 • • • • Monoborane; Diborane; Addition complexes thereof [2]
6/11 • • • • Preparation from boron or inorganic compounds containing boron and oxygen [2]
6/13 • • • • Addition complexes of monoborane or diborane, e.g. with phosphine, arsine or hydrazine [2]
6/15 • • • • Metal borohydrides; Addition complexes thereof [2]
6/17 • • • • • Preparation from boron or inorganic compounds containing boron and oxygen [2]
6/19 • • • • • Preparation from other compounds of boron [2]
6/21 • • • • • Preparation of borohydrides of alkali metals, alkaline earth metals, magnesium or beryllium; Addition complexes thereof, e.g. LiBH₄,2NaH, NaB₄H₄ [2]
6/23 • • • • • Preparation of borohydrides of other metals, e.g. aluminium borohydride; Addition complexes thereof, e.g. Li [Al(BH₄)₃]H [2]
6/24 • • Hydrides containing at least two metals, e.g. Li[AH₄]₃; Addition complexes thereof (C01B 6/13-C01B 6/23 take precedence) [2]
6/26 • Preparation from the metal with the highest valency or from its oxides or salts of its oxyacids [3]
6/34 • • Purification; Stabilisation

Halogens; Compounds thereof
7/00 Halogens; Halogen acids
7/01 • Chlorine; Hydrogen chloride [2]
7/03 • • Preparation from chlorides [2, 3]
7/04 • • Preparation of chlorine from hydrogen chloride [3]
7/05 • • • Preparation from ammonium chloride [2, 3]
7/07 • • Purification [2, 3]
7/075 • • • of liquid chlorine [2, 3]
7/09 • Bromine; Hydrogen bromide [2]
7/13 • Iodine; Hydrogen iodide [2]
7/14 • • Iodine [2]
7/16 • • • Preparation from seaweed [2]
7/19 • Fluorine; Hydrogen fluoride [2]
7/20 • • Fluorine [2]
7/24 • • Inter-halogen compounds

9/00 General methods of preparing halides (particular individual halides, see the relevant groups in subclasses C01B-C01G according to the element combined with the halogen; electrolytic production of inorganic compounds C25B)
9/02 • Chlorides
9/04 • Bromides
9/06 • Iodides
9/08 • Fluorides

11/00 Oxides or oxyacids of halogens; Salts thereof
11/02 • Oxides of chlorine
11/04 • Hypochlorous acid
11/06 • Hypochlorites, e.g. chlorinated lime
11/08 • Chlorous acid
11/10 • • Chlorites
11/12 • Chloric acid
11/14 • • Chlorates
11/16 • • Perchloric acid
11/18 • • Perchlorates
11/20 • Oxygen compounds of bromine
11/22 • Oxygen compounds of iodine
11/24 • Oxygen compounds of fluorine

Oxygen; Oxides or hydroxides in general; Per-compounds
13/00 Oxygen; Ozone; Oxides or hydroxides in general
13/02 • Preparation of oxygen (by liquefying F25J)
13/08 • • from air with the aid of metal oxides, e.g. barium oxide, manganese oxide
13/10 • Preparation of ozone
13/11 • • by electric discharge [2]
13/14 • Methods for preparing oxides or hydroxides in general (particular individual oxides or hydroxides, see the relevant groups of subclasses C01B-C01G or C25B, according to the element combined with the oxygen or hydroxy group)
13/16 • • Purification [3]
13/18 • • by thermal decomposition of compounds, e.g. of salts or hydroxides [3]
13/20 • • by oxidation of elements in the gaseous state; by oxidation or hydrolysis of compounds in the gaseous state [3]
13/22 • • of halides or oxyhalides [3]
13/24 • • • • in the presence of hot combustion gases [3]
13/26 • • • • in the presence of a fluidised bed [3]
13/28 • • • • using a plasma or an electric discharge [3]

IPC (2014.01), Section C
15/00 Peroxides; Peroxyhydrates; Peroxyacids or salts thereof; Superoxides; Ozonides
15/01 • Hydrogen peroxide [3]
15/03 • Separation; Purification; Concentration [3]
15/07 • Anhydrous hydrogen peroxide; Anhydrous solutions or gaseous mixtures containing hydrogen peroxide [3]
15/02 • Preparation from organic compounds [2]
15/03 • by the alkyl-anthraquinone process [3]
15/04 • from hydrocarbons [3]
15/06 • from alcohols [3]
15/07 • Preparation from water [3]
15/09 • Preparation from hydrogen and oxygen [3]
15/03 • Preparation from inorganic peroxy-compounds, e.g. from peroxyulfates [3]
15/02 • from metal peroxides [3]
15/07 • Stabilisation by additives [3]
15/04 • Metal peroxides or peroxyhydrates thereof; Superoxides; Ozonides [3]
15/04 • of alkali metals, alkaline earth metals or of magnesium [2, 3]
15/07 • of heavy metals [2, 3]
15/05 • Peroxyhydrates (C01B 15/04 takes precedence); Peroxyacids or salts thereof [3]
15/06 • containing sulfur [3]
15/08 • Peroxyulfates [3]
15/10 • containing carbon [3]
15/12 • containing boron [3]
15/14 • containing silicon [3]
15/16 • containing phosphorus [3]

17/00 Sulfur; Compounds thereof
17/02 • Preparation of sulfur; Purification
17/07 • Recovery of sulfur from material containing elemental sulfur, e.g. luxmasses; Purification [3]
17/03 • using a liquid extractant [3]
17/04 • from gaseous sulfur compounds including gaseous sulfides
17/05 • by wet processes [3]
17/06 • from non-gaseous sulfides or materials containing such sulfides, e.g. ores
17/10 • Finely-divided sulfur, e.g. sublimed sulfur, flowers of sulfur
17/12 • Insoluble sulfur (mu-sulfur)
17/16 • Hydrogen sulfides
17/18 • Hydrogen polysulfides
17/20 • Methods for preparing sulfides or polysulfides, in general (ammonium sulfides or polysulfides C01C; sulfides or polysulfides of metals, other than alkali metals, magnesium, calcium, strontium, and barium, see the relevant groups of subclasses C01F or C01G, according to the metal)
17/22 • Alkali metal sulfides or polysulfides
17/24 • Preparation by reduction
17/26 • • with carbon
17/28 • • with reducing gases
17/30 • Preparation from sodium or potassium amalgam with sulfur or sulfides
17/32 • Hydrosulfides of sodium or potassium
17/34 • Polysulfides of sodium or potassium
17/36 • Purification
17/38 • Dehydration
17/40 • Making shaped products, e.g. granules
17/42 • Sulfides or polysulfides of magnesium, calcium, strontium, or barium
17/43 • from oxides or hydroxides with sulfur or hydrogen sulfide
17/44 • by reduction of sulfates
17/45 • Compounds containing sulfur and halogen, with or without oxygen
17/46 • Compounds containing sulfur, halogen, hydrogen, and oxygen
17/48 • Sulfur dioxide; Sulfurous acid
17/50 • Preparation of sulfur dioxide
17/52 • by roasting sulfides (C22B 1/00 takes precedence)
17/54 • by burning elemental sulfur
17/56 • Separation; Purification
17/58 • Recovery of sulfur dioxide from acid tar or the like
17/60 • Isolation of sulfur dioxide from gases
17/62 • Methods of preparing sulfites in general (particular individual sulfites, see the relevant groups of subclasses C01B-C01G, according to the cation)
17/64 • Thiosulfates; Dithionites; Polythionates
17/66 • Dithionites
17/69 • Sulfur trioxide; Sulfuric acid [3]
17/70 • Stabilisation of gamma-form sulfur trioxide
17/74 • Preparation [3]
17/76 • • by contact processes
17/76 • • Multi-stage SO₃-conversion [3]
17/77 • • Fluidised-bed processes [3]
17/77 • • Liquid phase contacting processes or wet catalysis processes [3]
17/78 • • • characterised by the catalyst used
17/79 • • • containing vanadium [3]
17/80 • • • Apparatus
17/82 • • • of sulfuric acid using a nitrogen oxide process
17/84 • • • Chamber process
17/86 • • • Tower process
17/88 • • Concentration of sulfuric acid
17/90 • • Separation; Purification
17/92 • • Recovery from acid tar or the like
17/94 • • Recovery from nitration acids
17/96 • Methods for the preparation of sulfates in general (particular individual sulfates, see the relevant groups of subclasses C01B-C01G, according to the cation)
17/98 • Other compounds containing sulfur and oxygen (persulfuric acids C01B 15/06; persulfates C01B 15/08)

19/00 Selenium; Tellurium; Compounds thereof
19/02 • Elemental selenium or tellurium [3]
19/04 • Binary compounds [3]

21/00 Nitrogen; Compounds thereof
21/02 • Preparation of nitrogen (by decomposition of ammonia C01B 3/04)
21/04 • Purification or separation of nitrogen (by liquefying F25J)
21/06  • Binary compounds of nitrogen with metals, with silicon, or with boron
21/064  • with boron [3]
21/068  • with silicon [3]
21/072  • with aluminium [3]
21/076  • with titanium or zirconium [3]
21/08  • Hydrazoic acid; Azides; Halogen azides
21/082  • Compounds containing nitrogen and non-metals (C01B 21/06, C01B 21/08 take precedence) [3]
21/083  • containing one or more halogen atoms [3]
21/084  • containing also one or more oxygen atoms, e.g. nitrosyl halides [3]
21/086  • containing one or more sulfur atoms [3]
21/087  • containing one or more hydrogen atoms [3]
21/088  • containing also one or more halogen atoms [3]
21/09  • Halogeno-amines, e.g. chloramine [3]
21/092  • containing also one or more metal atoms [3]
21/093  • containing also one or more sulfur atoms [3]
21/094  • Nitrosyl containing acids [3]
21/096  • Amidosulfonic acid; Salts thereof [3]
21/097  • containing phosphorus atoms [3]
21/098  • Phosphonitrilic dihalides; Polymers thereof [3]
21/12  • Carbamic acid; Salts thereof
21/14  • Hydroxylamine; Salts thereof
21/16  • Hydrazine; Salts thereof
21/20  • Nitrogen oxides; Oxacydics of nitrogen; Salts thereof
21/22  • Nitrous oxide (N₂O)
21/24  • Nitric oxide (NO)
21/26  • Preparation by catalytic oxidation of ammonia
21/28  • Apparatus
21/30  • Preparation by oxidation of nitrogen
21/32  • Apparatus
21/34  • Nitrogen trioxide (N₂O₃)
21/36  • Nitrogen dioxide (NO₂, N₂O₄) (C01B 21/26, C01B 21/30 take precedence)
21/38  • Nitric acid
21/40  • Preparation by absorption of oxides of nitrogen
21/42  • Preparation from nitrates
21/44  • Concentration
21/46  • Purification; Separation
21/48  • Methods for the preparation of nitrates in general (particular individual nitrates, see the relevant groups of subclasses C01B-C01G, according to the cation)
21/50  • Nitrous acid; Salts thereof

23/00 Noble gases; Compounds thereof (liquefying F25J)

25/00 Phosphorus; Compounds thereof (C01B 21/00, C01B 23/00 take precedence; perphosphates C01B 15/16) [3]
25/01  • Treating phosphate ores or other raw phosphate materials to obtain phosphorus or phosphorus compounds [2]
25/02  • Preparation of phosphorus
25/023  • of red phosphorus [2]
25/027  • of yellow phosphorus [2]
25/04  • Purification of phosphorus
25/043  • of red phosphorus [2]
25/047  • of yellow phosphorus [2]
25/06  • Hydrogen phosphides
25/08  • Other phosphides
25/10  • Halides or oxyhalides of phosphorus [2]
25/12  • Oxides of phosphorus
25/14  • Sulfur, selenium, or tellurium compounds of phosphorus
25/16  • Oxacydics of phosphorus; Salts thereof (peroxyacids or salts thereof C01B 15/00)
25/163  • Phosphoric acid; Salts thereof [2]
25/165  • Hyrophosphoric acid; Salts thereof [2]
25/168  • Pyrophosphoric acid; Salts thereof [2]
25/18  • Phosphoric acid
25/20  • Preparation from elemental phosphorus or phosphoric anhydride
25/22  • Preparation by reacting phosphate containing material with an acid, e.g. wet process
25/222  • with sulfuric acid, a mixture of acids mainly consisting of sulfuric acid or a mixture of compounds forming it in situ, e.g. a mixture of sulfur dioxide, water and oxygen [3]
25/223  • only one form of calcium sulfate being formed [3]
25/225  • Dihydrate process [3]
25/226  • Hemihydrate process [3]
25/228  • one form of calcium sulfate being formed and then converted to another form [3]
25/229  • Hemihydrate-dihydrate process [3]
25/231  • Dihydrate-hemihydrate process [3]
25/232  • Preparation by reacting phosphate containing material with concentrated sulfuric acid and subsequently lixiviating the obtained mass, e.g. clincker process [3]
25/234  • Purification; Stabilisation; Concentration (purification concomitant with preparation C01B 25/22; preparation involving solvent-solvent extraction C01B 25/46) [3]
25/235  • Clarification; Stabilisation to prevent post-precipitation of dissolved impurities [3]
25/237  • Selective elimination of impurities [3]
25/238  • Cationic impurities [3]
25/24  • Condensed phosphoric acids
25/26  • Phosphates (perphosphates C01B 15/16)
25/28  • Ammonium phosphates
25/30  • Alkali metal phosphates
25/32  • Phosphates of magnesium, calcium, strontium, or barium
25/34  • Magnesium phosphates
25/36  • Aluminium phosphates
25/37  • Phosphates of heavy metals [2]
25/38  • Condensed phosphates
25/39  • of alkali metals [3]
25/40  • Polyphosphates [2]
25/41  • of alkali metals [3]
25/42  • Pyrophosphates [2]
25/44  • Metaphosphates [2]
25/445  • of alkali metals [3]
25/45  • containing plural metal, or metal and ammonium [3]
25/455  • containing halogen [3]
25/46  • Preparation involving solvent-solvent extraction [2]

31/00 Carbon; Compounds thereof (C01B 21/00, C01B 23/00 take precedence; percarbonates C01B 15/10; carbon black C09C 1/48) [3]
31/02  • Preparation of carbon (by using ultra-high pressure, e.g. for the formation of diamonds, B01J 3/06; by crystal growth C30B); Purification
31/04  • Graphite
31/06 • Diamond
31/08 • Active carbon
31/10 • Preparation by using gaseous activating agents
31/12 • Preparation by using non-gaseous activating agents
31/14 • Granulation
31/16 • Preparation of ion-exchanging materials from carbonaceous material
31/18 • Carbon monoxide
31/20 • Carbon dioxide
31/22 • Solidifying
31/24 • Methods for the preparation of carbonates or bicarbonates in general (percarbonates C01B 15/10; particular individual carbonates, see the relevant groups of subclasses C01B-C01G, according to the cation)
31/26 • Compounds containing carbon and sulfur, e.g. carbon disulfide, carbon oxysulfide; Thiophosphene
31/28 • Phosgene
31/30 • Carbides
31/32 • Calcium carbide
31/34 • Tungsten or molybdenum carbides
31/36 • Carbides of silicon or boron

33/00 Silicon; Compounds thereof (C01B 21/00, C01B 23/00 take precedence; persilicates C01B 15/14; carbides C01B 31/36) [3]
33/02 • Silicon (forming single crystals or homogeneous polycrystalline material with defined structure C30B) [5]
33/021 • Preparation (chemical coating from the vapour phase C23C 16/00) [5]
33/023 • by reduction of silica or silica-containing material [5]
33/025 • with carbon or a solid carbonaceous material, i.e. carbo-thermal process [5]
33/027 • by decomposition or reduction of gaseous or vapourised silicon compounds other than silica or silica-containing material [5]
33/029 • by decomposition of monosilane [5]
33/03 • by decomposition of silicon halides or halosilanes or reduction thereof with hydrogen as the only reducing agent [5]
33/031 • by decomposition of silicon tetraiodide [5]
33/033 • by reduction of silicon halides or halosilanes with a metal or a metallic alloy as the only reducing agents [5]
33/035 • by decomposition or reduction of gaseous or vapourised silicon compounds in the presence of heated filaments of silicon, carbon or a refractory metal, e.g. tantalum or tungsten, or in the presence of heated silicon rods on which the formed silicon is deposited, a silicon rod being obtained, e.g. Siemens process [5]
33/037 • Purification (by zone-melting C30B 13/00) [5]
33/039 • by conversion of the silicon into a compound, optional purification of the compound, and reconversion into silicon [5]
33/04 • Hydrides of silicon
33/06 • Metal silicides
33/08 • Compounds containing halogen
33/10 • Compounds containing silicon, fluorine, and other elements
33/107 • Halogenated silanes [3]
33/113 • Silicon oxides; Hydrates thereof [3]
33/12 • Silica; Hydrates thereof, e.g. lepidioic silicic acid [3]
33/14 • Colloidal silica, e.g. dispersions, gels, sols [3]
33/141 • Preparation of hydrosols or aqueous dispersions [3]
33/142 • by acidic treatment of silicates [3]
33/143 • • • of aqueous solutions of silicates [3]
33/145 • Preparation of hydroorganosols, organosols or dispersions in an organic medium [3]
33/146 • After-treatment of sols (preparation of hydroorganosols, organosols or dispersions in an organic medium from hydrosols C01B 33/145) [3]
33/148 • • • Concentration; Drying; Stabilisation; Purification [3]
33/149 • • • Coating [3]
33/151 • • • by progressively adding a sol to a different sol, i.e. “build up” of particles using a “heel” [3]
33/152 • • • Preparation of hydrogels [3]
33/154 • • • by acidic treatment of aqueous silicate solutions [3]
33/155 • • • Preparation of hydroorganogels or organogels [3]
33/157 • • • After-treatment of gels [3]
33/158 • • • Purification; Drying; Dehydrating [3]
33/159 • • • Coating or hydrophobisation [3]
33/16 • Preparation of silica xerogels [3]
33/18 • Preparation of finely divided silica neither in sol nor in gel form; After-treatment thereof (treatment to enhance the pigmenting or filling properties C09C) [3]
33/187 • • • by acidic treatment of silicates [3]
33/193 • • • of aqueous solutions of silicates [3]
33/20 • Silicates (persilicates C01B 15/14)
33/22 • Magnesium silicates
33/24 • Alkaline earth metal silicates
33/26 • Aluminium-containing silicates [5]
33/32 • Alkali metal silicates (C01B 33/26 takes precedence) [3]
33/36 • having base-exchange properties but not having molecular sieve properties [6]
33/38 • Layered base-exchange silicates, e.g. clays, micas or alkali metal silicates of kenyaite or magadilite type [6]
33/40 • • • Clays [6]
33/42 • • • Micas [6]
33/44 • • • Products obtained from layered base-exchange silicates by ion-exchange with organic compounds such as ammonium, phosphonium or sulfonium compounds or by intercalation of organic compounds, e.g. organoclay material [6]
33/46 • • • Amorphous silicates, e.g. so-called "amorphous zeolites" [6]

35/00 Boron; Compounds thereof (monoborane, diborane, metal borohydrides or addition complexes thereof C01B 6/00; perborates C01B 15/12; binary compounds with nitrogen C01B 21/06; phosphides C01B 25/08; carbides C01B 31/36) [2]
35/02 • Boron; Borides [2]
35/04 • Metal borides [2]
35/06 • Boron halogen compounds [2]
35/08 • Compounds containing boron and nitrogen, phosphorus, oxygen, sulfur, selenium or tellurium [2]
35/10 • Compounds containing boron and oxygen (C01B 35/06 takes precedence) [2]
35/12 • • Borates [2]
35/14 • • Compounds containing boron and nitrogen, phosphorus, sulfur, selenium or tellurium [2]
35/16 • Compounds containing direct bonding between two boron atoms, e.g. Cl₂B — BCl₃ [2]
35/18 • Compounds containing three or more boron atoms, e.g. NaB₃H₆, MgB₆Br₁₀ (borazoles C01B 35/14) [2]

Compounds characterised primarily by their physical or chemical properties, rather than by their chemical constitution [6]

37/00 Compounds having molecular sieve properties but not having base-exchange properties [6]
37/02 • Crystalline silica-polymorphs, e.g. silicates [6]
37/04 • Aluminophosphates (APO compounds) [6]
37/06 • Aluminophosphates containing other elements, e.g. metals, boron [6]
37/08 • Silicoaluminophosphates (SAPO compounds) [6]
39/00 Compounds having molecular sieve and base-exchange properties, e.g. crystalline zeolites; Their preparation; After-treatment, e.g. ion-exchange or dealumination (treatment to modify the sorption properties, e.g. shaping using a binder, B01J 20/10; treatment to modify the catalytic properties, e.g. combination of treatments to make the zeolites appropriate to their use as a catalyst, B01J 29/04; treatment to improve the ion-exchange properties B01J 39/14) [6]

Note(s)
In this group, the following term is used with the meaning indicated:
• “zeolites” means:
  i. crystalline aluminosilicates with base-exchange and molecular sieve properties, having three dimensional, microporous lattice framework structure of tetrahedral oxide units;
  ii. compounds isomorphous to those of the former category, wherein the aluminium or silicon atoms in the framework are partly or wholly replaced by atoms of other elements, e.g. by gallium, germanium, phosphorus or boron.

39/02 • Crystalline aluminosilicate zeolites; Isomorphous compounds thereof; Direct preparation thereof; Preparation thereof starting from a reaction mixture containing a crystalline zeolite of another type, or from preformed reactants: After-treatment thereof [6]
39/04 • using at least one organic template directing agent, e.g. an ionic quaternary ammonium compound or an aminated compound [6]
39/06 • Preparation of isomorphous zeolites characterised by measures to replace the aluminium or silicon atoms in the lattice framework by atoms of other elements [6]
39/08 • • the aluminium atoms being wholly replaced [6]
39/10 • • the replacing atoms being phosphorus atoms [6]
39/12 • • the replacing atoms being boron atoms [6]
39/14 • • Type A [6]
39/16 • • from aqueous solutions of an alkali metal aluminate and an alkali metal silicate excluding any other source of alumina or silica but seeds [6]
39/18 • • from a reaction mixture containing at least one aluminium silicate or aluminosilicate of a clay type, e.g. kaolin or metakaolin or its exotherm modification or allophane [6]
39/20 • Faujasite type, e.g. type X or Y [6]
39/22 • • Type X [6]
39/24 • • Type Y [6]
39/26 • • Mordenite type [6]
39/28 • • Phillipsite or harmotome type, e.g. type B [6]
39/30 • • Erionite or offretite type, e.g. zeolite T [6]
39/32 • • Type L [6]
39/34 • • Type ZSM-4 or type Ω [6]
39/36 • • Pentasil type, e.g. types ZSM-5, ZSM-8 or ZSM-11 [6]
39/38 • • Type ZSM-5 [6]
39/40 • • • using at least one organic template directing agent [6]
39/42 • Type ZSM-12 [6]
39/44 • • Ferrierite type, e.g. types ZSM-21, ZSM-35 or ZSM-38 [6]
39/46 • • Other types characterised by their X-ray diffraction pattern and their defined composition [6]
39/48 • • • using at least one organic template directing agent [6]
39/50 • Zeolites wherein inorganic bases or salts occlude channels in the lattice framework, e.g. sodalite, cancrinite, nasean, hauynite [6]
39/52 • • Sodalites [6]
39/54 • Phosphates, e.g. APO or SAPO compounds [6]

C01C AMMONIA; CYANOGEN; COMPOUNDS THEREOF (salts of oxycyds of halogens C01B 11/00; peroxides, salts oferoxycyds C01B 15/00; thiosulfates, dihydroxides, polyanions C01B 17/64; compounds containing selenium or tellurium C01B 19/00; azides C01B 21/08; metal amides C01B 21/092; nitrates C01B 21/50; phosphides C01B 25/08; salts of oxycyds of phosphorus C01B 25/16; compounds containing silicon C01B 33/00; compounds containing boron C01B 35/00; fermentation or enzyme-using processes for the preparation of elements or inorganic compounds except carbon dioxide C12P 3/00; production of non-metallic elements or inorganic compounds by electrolysis or electrophoresis C25B)

Note(s)
1. Attention is drawn to Note (1) after class C01, which defines the last place priority rule applied in this class, i.e. in the range of subclasses C01B-C01G and within these subclasses.
2. Therapeutic activity of compounds is further classified in subclass A61P.

1/00 Ammonia; Compounds thereof 1/02 • Preparation or separation of ammonia
1/04  •  Preparation of ammonia by synthesis (preparation or purification of gas mixtures for ammonia synthesis C01B 3/02)

1/08  •  Preparation of ammonia from nitrogenous organic substances

1/10  •  Separation of ammonia from ammonia liquors, e.g. gas liquors

1/12  •  Separation of ammonia from gases and vapours

1/14  •  •  •  Saturators

1/16  •  Halides of ammonium

1/18  •  Nitrates of ammonium

1/20  •  Sulfides; Polysulfides

1/22  •  Sulfites of ammonium

1/24  •  Sulfates of ammonium (C01C 1/14 takes precedence)

1/242  •  •  Preparation from ammonia and sulfuric acid or sulfur trioxide [2]

1/244  •  Preparation by double decomposition of ammonium salts with sulfates [2]

1/245  •  Preparation from compounds containing nitrogen and sulfur [2]

1/246  •  •  from sulfur-containing ammonium compounds [2]

1/247  •  •  •  by oxidation with free oxygen [2]

1/248  •  •  Preventing coalescing or controlling form or size of crystals [2]

1/249  •  •  Decacidifying the crystals [2]

1/26  •  Carbonsates or bicarbonates of ammonium

1/28  •  Methods of preparing ammonium salts in general

Note(s)

1.  This group does not cover ammonium salts of complex acids (other than complex cyanides) containing a metal in the anion, which are covered by the relevant groups of subclasses C01D-C01G, according to the metal.

2.  Salts of polybasic acids with ammonium and a metal as cations are classified as though the ammonium were hydrogen.

3.  Complex amine salts are classified in the relevant groups of subclasses C01D-C01G, according to the metal.

3/00  Cyanogen; Compounds thereof

3/02  •  Preparation of hydrogen cyanide

3/04  •  •  Separation from gases

3/06  •  Stabilisation of hydrogen cyanide

3/08  •  Simple or complex cyanides of metals

3/10  •  •  Simple alkali metal cyanides [3]

3/11  •  •  Complex cyanides [3]

3/12  •  •  •  Simple or complex iron cyanides [2]

3/14  •  Cyanic acid; Salts thereof

3/16  •  •  Cyanamide; Salts thereof

3/18  •  •  Calcium cyanamide

3/20  •  •  Thioycanic acid; Salts thereof

C01D  COMPOUNDS OF ALKALI METALS, i.e. LITHIUM, SODIUM, POTASSIUM, RUBIDIUM, CAESIUM, OR FRANCIUM (metal hydrides C01B 6/00; salts of oxacids of halogens C01B 11/00; peroxides, salts of peroxyacids C01B 15/00; sulfides or polysulfides C01B 17/22; thiourea, dithiones, polythions C01B 17/64; compounds containing selenium or tellurium C01B 19/00; binary compounds of nitrogen with metals C01B 21/06; azides C01B 21/08; metal amides C01B 21/092; nitrates C01B 21/50; phosphides C01B 25/08; salts of oxacids of phosphorus C01B 25/16; carbides C01B 31/30; compounds containing silicon C01B 33/00; compounds containing boron C01B 35/00; cyanides C01C 3/08; salts of cyanic acid C01C 3/14; salts of cyanamide C01C 3/16; thiocyanates C01C 3/20; fermentation or enzyme-using processes for the preparation of elements or inorganic compounds except carbon dioxide C12P 3/00; obtaining metal compounds from mixtures, e.g. ores, which are intermediate compounds in a metallurgical process for obtaining a free metal C22B; production of non-metallic elements or inorganic compounds by electrolysis or electrophoresis C25B)

Note(s)

1.  Attention is drawn to Note (1) after class C01, which defines the last place priority rule applied in this class, i.e. in the range of subclasses C01B-C01G and within these subclasses.

2.  Therapeutic activity of compounds is further classified in subclass A61P.

1/00  Oxides or hydroxides of sodium, potassium, or alkali metals in general [2]

1/02  •  Oxides

1/04  •  Hydroxides

1/20  •  •  Preparation by reacting oxides or hydroxides with alkali metal salts

1/22  •  •  •  with carbonates or bicarbonates

1/24  •  •  •  •  from or via fluorides or silico-fluorides

1/26  •  •  Preparation from or via cyano compounds, e.g. cyanides, cyanamides

1/28  •  •  •  Purification; Separation

1/30  •  •  •  by crystallisation

1/32  •  •  •  by adsorption or precipitation

1/34  •  •  •  •  with selective solvents

1/36  •  •  •  •  by oxidation

1/38  •  •  •  •  by dialysis

1/40  •  •  •  •  by electrolysis

1/42  •  •  Concentration; Dehydration

1/44  •  •  Preparation in the form of granules, pieces, or other shaped products

3/00  Halides of sodium, potassium, or alkali metals in general [2]

3/02  •  Fluorides

3/04  •  Chlorides

3/06  •  Preparation by working up brines, seawater or spent lyes

3/08  •  Preparation by working up natural or industrial salt mixtures or siliceous minerals

3/10  •  Bromides

3/12  •  Iodides

3/14  •  •  Purification

3/16  •  •  •  by precipitation or adsorption

3/18  •  •  •  •  with selective solvents

3/20  •  •  •  •  by melting

3/22  •  Preparation in the form of granules, pieces, or other shaped products

3/24  •  •  Influencing the crystallisation process
3/26 • Preventing the absorption of moisture or caking of the crystals

5/00 Sulfates or sulfites of sodium, potassium, or alkali metals in general [2]
5/02 • Preparation of sulfates from alkali metal salts and sulfuric acid or bisulfates; Preparation of bisulfates
5/04 • Preparation of sulfates with the aid of sulfuric acid or sulfites, e.g. Hargreaves process
5/06 • Preparation of sulfates by double decomposition
5/08 • • with each other or with ammonium sulfate
5/10 • • with sulfates of magnesium, calcium, strontium, or barium
5/12 • Preparation of double sulfates of magnesium with sodium or potassium [2]
5/14 • Preparation of sulfites (C01D 5/04 takes precedence)
5/16 • Purification
5/18 • Dehydration

7/00 Carbonates of sodium, potassium, or alkali metals in general [2]
7/02 • Preparation by double decomposition
7/04 • • with a fluoride or silico-fluoride (C01D 1/24 takes precedence)
7/06 • Preparation via sodium or potassium magnesium carbonate
7/07 • Preparation from the hydroxides [2]
7/08 • Preparation from or via cyano compounds of sodium or potassium (C01D 1/26 takes precedence)
7/10 • Preparation of bicarbonates from carbonates (ammonia-soda process C01D 7/18)
7/12 • Preparation of carbonates from bicarbonates
7/14 • Preparation of sesquicarbonates
7/16 • Preparation from compounds of sodium or potassium with amines and carbon dioxide
7/18 • Preparation by the ammonia-soda process
7/22 • Purification
7/24 • • Crystallisation
7/26 • • by precipitation or adsorption

7/28 • • with selective solvents
7/30 • • by oxidation
7/32 • • by dialysis
7/34 • • by electrolysis
7/35 • Varying the content of water of crystallisation or the specific gravity [2]
7/37 • Densifying sodium carbonate [2]
7/38 • Preparation in the form of granules, pieces, or other shaped products
7/40 • • Influencing the crystallisation process
7/42 • Preventing the absorption of moisture or caking

9/00 Nitrates of sodium, potassium, or alkali metals in general [2]
9/02 • Preparation by working-up natural salt mixtures
9/04 • Preparation with liquid nitric acid
9/06 • Preparation with gaseous nitric acid or nitrogen oxides
9/08 • Preparation by double decomposition
9/10 • • with ammonium nitrate
9/12 • • with nitrates of magnesium, calcium, strontium, or barium
9/14 • • of salts of potassium with sodium nitrate
9/16 • Purification
9/18 • Preparation in the form of shaped products, e.g. granules
9/20 • Preventing the absorption of moisture or caking

13/00 Compounds of sodium or potassium not provided for elsewhere [2]

15/00 Lithium compounds [2]
15/02 • Oxides; Hydroxides [2]
15/04 • Halides [2]
15/06 • Sulfates; Sulfites [2]
15/08 • Carbonates; Bicarbonates [2]
15/10 • Nitrates [2]

17/00 Rubidium, caesium, or francium compounds [2]

C01F COMPOUNDS OF THE METALS BERYLLIUM, MAGNESIUM, ALUMINIUM, CALCIUM, STRONTIUM, BARIUM, RADIIUM, THORIUM, OR OF THE RARE-EARTH METALS (metal hydrides C01B 6/00; salts of oxycacids of halogens C01B 11/00; peroxides, salts of peroxyacids C01B 15/00; sulfides or polysulfides of magnesium, calcium, strontium, or barium C01B 17/42; thiosulfates, dihydrogenites, polyanionates C01B 17/64; compounds containing selenium or tellurium C01B 19/00; binary compounds of nitrogen with metals C01B 21/06; azides C01B 21/06; metal amides C01B 21/092; nitrites C01B 21/50; phosphides C01B 25/08; salts of oxycacids of phosphorus C01B 25/16; carbides C01B 31/30; compounds containing silicon C01B 33/00; compounds containing boron C01B 35/00; compounds having molecular sieve properties but not having base-exchange properties C01B 37/00; compounds having molecular sieve and base-exchange properties, e.g. crystalline zeolites, C01B 39/00; cyanides C01C 3/08; salts of cyanic acid C01C 3/14; salts of cyanamide C01C 3/16; thiocyanates C01C 3/20; fermentation or enzyme-using processes for the preparation of elements or inorganic compounds except carbon dioxide C12P 3/00; obtaining metal compounds from mixtures, e.g. ores, which are intermediate compounds in a metallurgical process for obtaining a free metal C22B; production of non-metallic elements or inorganic compounds by electrolysis or electrophoresis C25B)

Notes
1. Attention is drawn to Note (1) after class C01, which defines the last place priority rule applied in this class, i.e. in the range of subclasses C01B-C01G and within these subclasses.
2. Therapeutic activity of compounds is further classified in subclass A61P.

1/00 Methods of preparing compounds of the metals beryllium, magnesium, aluminium, calcium, strontium, barium, radium, thorium, or the rare earths, in general

3/00 Compounds of beryllium
3/02 • Oxides; Hydroxides [3]
Compounds of aluminium

7/00 Compounds of aluminium
7/02 • Aluminium oxide; Aluminium hydroxide; Aluminates
7/04 • Preparation of alkali metal aluminates; Aluminium oxide or hydroxide therefrom
7/06 • by treating aluminous minerals with alkali hydroxide
7/08 • by treating aluminous minerals with sodium carbonate
7/10 • by treating aluminous minerals with alkali sulfates and reducing agents
7/12 • Alkali metal aluminates from alkaline earth metal aluminates
7/14 • Aluminium oxide or hydroxide from alkali metal aluminates
7/16 • Preparation of alkaline earth metal aluminates; Aluminium oxide or hydroxide therefrom
7/18 • Aluminium oxide or hydroxide from alkaline earth metal aluminates
7/20 • Preparation of aluminium oxide or hydroxide from aluminous ores with acids or salts
7/22 • with halides
7/24 • with nitric acid or nitrogen oxides
7/26 • with sulfuric acids or sulfates
7/28 • with sulfurous acid
7/30 • Preparation of aluminium oxide or hydroxide by thermal decomposition of aluminium compounds
7/32 • of sulfates
7/34 • Preparation of aluminium hydroxide by precipitation from solutions containing aluminium salts
7/36 • from organic aluminium salts
7/38 • Preparation of aluminium oxide by thermal reduction of aluminium minerals
7/40 • in the presence of aluminium sulfide

Compounds of calcium, strontium, or barium (C01F 7/00 takes precedence) [3]
11/02 • Oxides or hydroxides (production of lime C04B 2/00)
11/04 • by thermal decomposition
11/06 • of carbonates
11/08 • by reduction of sulfates
11/10 • from sulfides
11/12 • from silicates
11/16 • Purification
11/18 • Carbonates
11/20 • Halides
11/22 • Fluorides
11/24 • Chlorides
11/26 • from sulfides
11/28 • by chlorination of alkaline earth metal compounds
11/30 • Concentrating; Dehydrating; Preventing the absorption of moisture or caking
11/32 • Purification
11/34 • Bromides
11/36 • Nitrates
11/38 • Preparation with nitric acid or nitrogen oxides
11/40 • Preparation by double decomposition with nitrates
11/42 • Double salts (with magnesium C01F 5/38)
11/44 • Concentrating; Crystallising; Dehydrating; Preventing the absorption of moisture or caking
11/46 • Sulfates (dehydration of gypsum C04B 11/02)
11/48 • Sulfides

Compounds of the rare-earth metals, i.e. scandium, yttrium, lanthanum, or the group of the lanthanides
COMPOUNDS CONTAINING METALS NOT COVERED BY SUBCLASSES C01D OR C01F (metal hydrides C01B 6/00; salts of oxyacids of halogens C01B 11/00; peroxides, salts of per oxyacids C01B 15/00; thiosulfates, dithionates, poly thionates C01B 17/64; compounds containing selenium or tellurium C01B 19/00; binary compounds of nitrogen with metals C01B 21/06; azides C01B 21/08; metal amides C01B 21/092; nitrides C01B 21/50; phosphides C01B 25/08; salts of oxyacids of phosphorus C01B 25/16; carbides C01B 31/30; compounds containing silicon C01B 33/00; compounds containing boron C01B 35/00; compounds having molecular sievelike properties but not having base-exchange properties C01B 37/00; compounds having molecular sieve and base-exchange properties, e.g. crystalline zeolites, C01B 39/00; cyanides C01C 3/00; salts of cyanic acid C01C 3/14; salts of cyanamide C01C 3/16; thiocyanates C01C 3/20; fermentation or enzyme-using processes for the preparation of elements or inorganic compounds except carbon dioxide C12P 3/00; obtaining metal compounds from mixtures, e.g. ores, which are intermediate compounds in a metallurgical process for obtaining a free metal C21B, C22B; production of non-metallic elements or inorganic compounds by electrolysis or electrophoresis C25B)

Note(s)

1. Attention is drawn to Note (1) after class C01, which defines the last place priority rule applied in this class, i.e. in the range of subclasses C01B-C01G and within these subclasses.
2. Therapeutic activity of compounds is further classified in subclass A61P.

Subclass index

GENERAL METHODS OF PREPARATION .............................................................................................................. 1/00
METALLIC COMPOUNDS, IN ALPHABETICAL ORDER OF THE SYMBOL FOR THE METAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metal</th>
<th>Subclass</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ag Silver</td>
<td>5/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As Arsenic</td>
<td>28/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au Gold</td>
<td>7/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bi Bismuth</td>
<td>29/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cd Cadmium</td>
<td>11/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Co Cobalt</td>
<td>51/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cr Chromium</td>
<td>37/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cu Copper</td>
<td>3/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fe Iron</td>
<td>49/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ga Gallium</td>
<td>15/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ge Germanium</td>
<td>17/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hf Hafnium</td>
<td>27/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hg Mercury</td>
<td>13/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In Indium</td>
<td>15/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ir Iridium</td>
<td>55/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mn Manganese</td>
<td>45/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mo Molybdenum</td>
<td>39/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nb Niobium</td>
<td>33/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ni Nickel</td>
<td>53/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Os Osmium</td>
<td>55/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pb Lead</td>
<td>21/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pd Palladium</td>
<td>55/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pt Platinum</td>
<td>55/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Re Rhenium</td>
<td>47/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rh Rhodium</td>
<td>55/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ru Ruthenium</td>
<td>55/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sb Antimony</td>
<td>30/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sn Tin</td>
<td>19/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ta Tantalum</td>
<td>35/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ti Titanium</td>
<td>23/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tl Thallium</td>
<td>15/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U Uranium</td>
<td>43/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V Vanadium</td>
<td>31/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W Tungsten</td>
<td>41/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zn Zinc</td>
<td>9/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zr Zirconium</td>
<td>25/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

COMPOUNDS OF METALS NOT COVERED BY THE PRECEDING GROUPS ......................................................................... 99/00

1/00 Methods of preparing compounds of metals not covered by subclasses C01B, C01C, C01D, C01F, in general (electrolytic production of inorganic compounds C25B 1/00) [2]

1/06 Halides
1/08 Nitrates
1/10 Sulfates
1/12 Sulfides
1/14 Sulfites

1/02 Oxides
1/04 Carbonyls
3/00 Compounds of copper
3/02 Oxides; Hydroxides
3/04 Halides
3/05 Chlorides [3]
3/06 Oxychlorides
3/08 Nitrates
3/10 Sulfates
3/12 Sulfides
3/14 Complexes with ammonia

5/00 Compounds of silver
5/02 Halides [3]

7/00 Compounds of gold

9/00 Compounds of zinc
9/02 Oxides; Hydroxides [3]
9/03 Processes of production using dry methods, e.g. vapour phase processes [3]
9/04 Halides
9/06 Sulfates
9/08 Sulfides

11/00 Compounds of cadmium
11/02 Sulfides [3]

13/00 Compounds of mercury
13/02 Oxides
13/04 Halides

15/00 Compounds of gallium, indium, or thallium

17/00 Compounds of germanium
17/02 Germanium dioxide
17/04 Halides of germanium

19/00 Compounds of tin
19/02 Oxides
19/04 Halides
19/06 Stannous chloride
19/08 Stannic chloride

21/00 Compounds of lead
21/02 Oxides
21/04 Lead suboxide (PbO)
21/06 Lead monoxide (PbO)
21/08 Lead dioxide (PbO2)
21/10 Red lead (Pb3O4)
21/12 Hydroxides
21/14 Carbonates
21/16 Halides
21/18 Nitrates
21/20 Sulfates
21/21 Sulfides [3]
21/22 Plumbates; Plumbites

23/00 Compounds of titanium
23/02 Halides of titanium
23/04 Oxides; Hydroxides [3]
23/047 Titanium dioxide [3]
23/053 Producing by wet processes, e.g. hydrolysing titanium salts [3]
23/07 Producing by vapour phase processes, e.g. halide oxidation [3]
23/08 Drying; Calcining [3]

25/00 Compounds of zirconium

25/02 Oxides
25/04 Halides
25/06 Sulfates

27/00 Compounds of hafnium
27/02 Oxides
27/04 Halides
27/06 Sulfates

28/00 Compounds of arsenic [3]
28/02 Arsenates; Arsenites [3]

29/00 Compounds of bismuth

30/00 Compounds of antimony [3]
30/02 Antimonates; Antimonites [3]

31/00 Compounds of vanadium
31/02 Oxides [3]
31/04 Halides [3]

33/00 Compounds of niobium

35/00 Compounds of tantalum
35/02 Halides [3]

37/00 Compounds of chromium
37/02 Oxides or hydrates thereof
37/027 Chromium dioxide [3]
37/033 Chromium trioxide; Chromic acid [3]
37/04 Chromium halides
37/06 Chromylhalides
37/08 Chromium sulfates
37/10 Chrome alum
37/14 Chromates; Bichromates

39/00 Compounds of molybdenum
39/02 Oxides; Hydroxides [3]
39/04 Halides [3]
39/06 Sulfides [3]

41/00 Compounds of tungsten
41/02 Oxides; Hydroxides [3]
41/04 Halides [3]

43/00 Compounds of uranium
43/01 Oxides; Hydroxides [3]
43/025 Uranium dioxide [3]
43/04 Halides of uranium
43/06 Fluorides
43/08 Chlorides
43/10 Bromides
43/12 Iodides

45/00 Compounds of manganese
45/02 Oxides; Hydroxides
45/04 Carbonyls
45/06 Halides
45/08 Nitrates
45/10 Sulfates
45/12 Manganates; Permanganates

47/00 Compounds of rhenium

49/00 Compounds of iron
49/02 Oxides; Hydroxides
49/04 Ferrous oxide (FeO)
C02G

TREATMENT OF SLUDGE

MULTISTEP TREATMENT

AERATION OF STRETCHES

BIOLOGICAL TREATMENT

CHEMICAL OR PHYSICAL TREATMENT

Subclass index

C02F

TREATMENT OF WATER, WASTE WATER, SEWAGE, OR SLUDGE

(C02F 3/00-C02F 9/00 take precedence) [3]

1/00 Treatment of water, waste water, or sewage

by heating [3]

by distillation or evaporation [3]

Flash evaporation [3]

Thin film evaporation [3]

by direct contact with a particulate solid or with a fluid, as a heat transfer medium [3]

Spray evaporation [3]

using solar energy [3]

using waste heat from other processes [3]

Transportable devices to obtain potable water [3]

by degassing, i.e. liberation of dissolved gases [3]

by freezing [3]

by flotation (C02F 1/465 takes precedence) [3, 5]

by extraction [3]

by sorption (using ion-exchange C02F 1/42; sorbent compositions B01J) [3]

by irradiation [3]

with ultra-violet light [3]

with mechanical oscillations [3]

ultrasonic vibrations [3]

by centrifugal separation [3]

Devices for separating or removing fatty or oily substances or similar floating material (cleaning or keeping clear the surface of open water from oil or like materials E02B 15/04; devices in sewers for separating liquid or solid substances from sewage E03F 5/14) [3, 5]

by ion-exchange [3]

dialysis, osmosis or reverse osmosis [3]

by electrocoagulation [5]

by electroflocculation [5]

by electrochemical disinfection [5]

by electrochemical separation, e.g. by electro-osmosis, electrodialysis, electrophoresis [5]

with magnetic or electric fields (C02F 1/46 takes precedence) [3]

by addition or application of a germicide or by oligodynamic treatment (C02F 1/467 takes precedence) [3, 5]

by flocculation or precipitation of suspended impurities [3]

Noote(s)

1. When classifying in this subclass, classification is also made in group B01D 15/08 insofar as subject matter of general interest relating to chromatography is concerned.

2. In this subclass, it is desirable to add the indexing codes of groups C02F 101/00 or C02F 103/00.

Subclass index

CHEMICAL OR PHYSICAL TREATMENT................................................................................................................................. 1/00, 5/00

BIOLOGICAL TREATMENT.................................................................................................................................................. 3/00

AERATION OF STRETCHES...................................................................................................................................................... 7/00

MULTISTEP TREATMENT.................................................................................................................................................... 9/00

TREATMENT OF SLUDGE.................................................................................................................................................. 11/00
1. This group covers only those combined treating operations where the essential characteristic resides in the combination of treatment steps.
2. This group does not cover treatments where the essential characteristic resides in an individual step of the treatment, which treatments are covered by groups C02F 1/00-C02F 7/00. An example of such treatments is a treatment in which the essential characteristic resides in a chemical treatment step and in which the one or more other steps, such as filtration or settlement, are conventional.
3. In this group, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.
4. Any individual step of a multistep treatment, which is not identified by the classification in the last appropriate place, and which is considered to represent information of interest for search, may also be classified in one or more of groups C02F 1/00-C02F 1/56 or C02F 1/66-C02F 7/00. This can, for example, be the case which it is considered of interest to enable searching of multistep treatments using a combination of classification symbols. Such non-obligatory classification should be given as “additional information”.

9/02 • involving a separation step [7]
9/04 • at least one step being a chemical treatment [7]
9/06 • Electrochemical treatment [7]
9/08 • at least one step being a physical treatment [7]
9/10 • Thermal treatment [7]
9/12 • Irradiation or treatment with electric or magnetic fields [7]
9/14 • at least one step being a biological treatment [7]

11/00 Treatment of sludge; Devices therefor [3]
11/02 • Biological treatment [3]
11/04 • Anaerobic treatment; Production of methane by such processes [3]
11/06 • by oxidation [3]
11/08 • Wet air oxidation [3]
11/10 • by pyrolysis [3]
11/12 • by de-watering, drying, or thickening [3]
11/14 • with addition of chemical agents [3]
11/16 • using drying or composting beds [3]
11/18 • by thermal conditioning (by pyrolysis C02F 11/10) [3]
11/20 • by freezing [3]

Indexing scheme associated with groups C02F 1/00-C02F 11/00 relating to the nature of the contaminant in the water, waste water, sewage or sludge. [7]

101/00 Nature of the contaminant [7]

101/10 • Inorganic compounds [7]
101/12 • Halogens or halogen-containing compounds [7]
101/14 • Fluorine or fluoride-containing compounds [7]
101/16 • Nitrogen compounds, e.g. ammonia [7]
101/18 • Cyanides [7]
101/20 • Heavy metals or heavy metal compounds [7]
101/22 • Chromium or chromium compounds, e.g. chromates [7]
Melting the raw material

1/00 Preparing the batches
   1/02 Compacting the glass batches, e.g. pelletising [5]

3/00 Charging the melting furnaces
   3/02 combined with preheating, premelting or pretreating the glass-making ingredients, pellets or cullet [5]

5/00 Melting in furnaces; Furnaces so far as specially adapted for glass manufacture
   5/02 in electric furnaces
   5/027 by passing an electric current between electrodes immersed in the glass bath, i.e. by direct resistance heating [3]
   5/03 by using resistance heaters above or in the glass bath, i.e. by indirect resistance heating [3]

Note(s)
   Group C03B 5/02 takes precedence over groups C03B 5/04-C03B 5/14.
7/07 • Means for thermal conditioning or controlling the temperature of the glass [3]
7/08 • Feeder spouts, e.g. gob feeders [3]
7/09 • Spout blocks [5]
7/092 • Stirring devices; Homogenisation (C03B 5/18 takes precedence) [5]
7/094 • Means for heating, cooling or insulation [5]
7/096 • for heating [5]
7/098 • • • • electric [5]
7/10 • Cutting-off the glass flow with the aid of knives or scissors; Construction of the blades used [3]
7/11 • • Construction of the blades [5]
7/12 • Cutting-off a free-hanging glass stream [3]
7/14 • Transferring molten glass or gobs to glass blowing or pressing machines (C03B 7/18-C03B 7/22 take precedence) [3]
7/16 • • • using deflector chutes [3]
7/18 • Suction feeders [3]
7/20 • Scoop feeders [3]
7/22 • Gathering-devices in the form of rods or pipes [3]

8/00 Production of glass by other processes than melting processes (C03B 37/014 takes precedence; preparation of finely divided silica, in general C01B 33/18) [4]
8/02 • by liquid phase reaction processes [4]
8/04 • by gas phase reaction processes [4]

Shaping of glass
9/00 Blowing glass; Production of hollow glass articles
9/02 • with the mouth; Auxiliary means therefor
9/03 • • Blow pipes [3]
9/04 • • Making hollow glass articles with feet or projections
9/06 • • Making hollow glass articles with double walls, e.g. vacuum flasks
9/08 • Finish-blowing with compressed air of blanks blown with the mouth
9/10 • Blowing glass cylinders for sheet manufacture
9/12 • starting from a ribbon of glass; Ribbon machines
9/13 • • • in gob feeder machines (C03B 9/28, C03B 9/29 take precedence) [3]
9/14 • • in “blow” machines or in “blow-and-blow” machines (C03B 9/193, C03B 9/20 take precedence) [3]
9/16 • • • • in machines with turn-over moulds [3]
9/18 • • • • Rotary-table machines [3]
9/19 • • • • • having only one rotary table [3]
9/193 • • • in “press-and-blow” machines [3]
9/195 • • • Rotary-table machines [3]
9/197 • • • • Construction of the blank mould [3]
9/20 • in “vacuum blowing” or in “vacuum-and-blow” machines
9/22 • • Rotary table machines
9/24 • • Construction of the blank mould
9/28 • • in machines of the endless-chain type (C03B 9/12 takes precedence) [3]
9/29 • Paste mould machines (C03B 9/28 takes precedence) [3]
9/295 • • Rotary table machines [5]
9/30 • Details of blowing glass (for blowing with the mouth C03B 9/02); Use of materials for the moulds
9/31 • Blowing laminated glass articles or glass with enclosures, e.g. wires, bubbles [5]
9/32 • • Giving special shapes to parts of hollow glass articles
9/325 • • • Forming screw threads or lips at the mouth of hollow glass articles; Neck moulds [3]
9/33 • • Making hollow glass articles with feet or projections; Moulds therefor [3]
9/335 • • • Forming bottoms to blown hollow glass articles; Bottom moulds [3]
17/00 Forming glass by flowing out, pushing-out, or drawing downwardly or laterally from forming slits or by overflowing over lips

17/02 Forming glass coated with coloured layers
17/04 Forming tubes or rods by drawing from stationary or rotating tools or from forming nozzles
17/06 Forming glass sheets [3]

18/00 Shaping glass in contact with the surface of a liquid

18/02 Forming sheets
18/04 Changing or regulating the dimensions of the molten glass ribbon [3]
18/06 • using mechanical means, e.g. restrictor bars, edge rollers [3]
18/08 • using gas [3]
18/10 • using electric means [3]
18/12 • Making multilayer, coloured or armoured glass (chemical aspects C03C) [3]
18/14 • Changing the surface of the glass ribbon, e.g. roughening (by chemical methods C03C) [3]
18/16 • Construction of the float tank; Use of material for the float tank; Coating or protection of the tank wall [3]
18/18 • Controlling or regulating the temperature of the float bath; Composition or purification of the float bath [3]
18/20 • Composition of the atmosphere above the float bath; Treating or purifying the atmosphere above the float bath [3]
18/22 • Controlling or regulating the temperature of the atmosphere above the float tank [3]

19/00 Other methods of shaping glass (manufacture or treatment of flakes, fibres, or filaments from softened glass, minerals, or slags C03B 37/00)

19/01 • by progressive fusion of powdered glass onto a shaping substrate, i.e. accretion [5]
19/02 • by casting
19/04 • by centrifuging
19/06 • by sintering (production of quartz or fused silica articles C03B 20/00) [2]
19/08 • by foaming
19/09 • by fusling powdered glass in a shaping mould [3]
19/10 • Forming beads
19/12 • by liquid-phase reaction processes [5]
19/14 • by gas-phase reaction processes [5]

20/00 Processes specially adapted for the production of quartz or fused silica articles [3]

21/00 Severing glass sheets, tubes, or rods while still plastic

21/02 • by cutting (C03B 9/46 takes precedence)
21/04 • by punching out
21/06 • by flashing-off, burning-off, or fusing (C03B 9/42 takes precedence) [3]

23/00 Re-forming shaped glass (re-forming fibres or filaments C03B 37/14)

23/02 • Re-forming glass sheets
23/023 • • by bending [3]
23/025 • • by gravity [3]
23/027 • • • with moulds having at least two upward pivotal mould sections [3]
23/03 • • • by press-bending between shaping moulds [3]
23/031 the glass sheets being in a vertical position (C03B 23/033 takes precedence) [5]
23/033 in a continuous way, e.g. roll forming [3]
23/035 using a gas cushion or by changing gas pressure, e.g. by applying vacuum [3]
23/037 by drawing [3]
23/039 Re-forming tubes or rods
23/043 Heating devices specially adapted for re-forming tubes or rods in general, e.g. burners [5]
23/045 Tools or apparatus specially adapted for re-forming tubes or rods in general, e.g. glass lathes, chucks (C03B 23/043 takes precedence) [5]
23/047 by drawing (C03B 37/025 takes precedence) [5]
23/049 by pressing (C03B 21/04, C03B 23/26 take precedence) [5]
23/051 by gravity, e.g. sagging [5]
23/053 by centrifuging (C03B 37/04 takes precedence) [5]
23/055 by rolling [5]
23/057 by fusing, e.g. for flame sealing (C03B 9/42, C03B 21/06, C03B 33/08 take precedence) [5]
23/060 by bending [5]
23/070 by blowing, e.g. for making electric bulbs [3]
23/080 to exact dimensions, e.g. calibrating [5]
23/090 Reshaping the ends, e.g. as grooves, threads or mouths [3]
23/110 Reshaping by drawing without blowing, in combination with separating, e.g. for making ampoules [3]
23/130 Reshaping combined with uniting or heat sealing, e.g. making vacuum bottles [3]
23/180 Re-forming and sealing ampoules
23/200 Uniting glass pieces by fusing without substantial reshaping [5]
23/203 Uniting glass sheets (C03B 23/24 takes precedence) [3]
23/207 Uniting glass rods, glass tubes, or hollow glassware (C03B 23/24 takes precedence) [3]
23/210 Joining projections or feet [3]
23/217 for the production of cathode ray tubes or similarly shaped tubes [3]
23/220 Uniting glass lenses, e.g. forming bifocal lenses [5]
23/240 Making hollow glass sheets or bricks
23/260 Punching reheated glass

After-treatment of glass product

25/00 Annealing glass products (after-treatment of fibres C03B 37/10)
25/02 in a discontinuous way
25/04 in a continuous way
25/06 with horizontal displacement of the glass products [3]
25/08 of glass sheets [3]
25/087 in a vertical position [5]
25/093 in a horizontal position on a fluid support, e.g. a gas or molten metal [5]
25/10 with vertical displacement of the glass products [3]
25/12 of glass sheets [3]

27/00 Tempering glass products (after-treatment of fibres C03B 37/10)
27/004 by bringing the hot glass product in contact with a solid cooling surface, e.g. sand grains [5]
27/008 by using heat of sublimation of solid particles [5]
27/012 by heat treatment, e.g. for crystallisation; Heat treatment of glass products before tempering by cooling (C03B 27/008, C03B 27/016 take precedence) [5]
27/016 by absorbing heat radiated from the glass product [5]
27/02 using liquid [3, 5]
27/03 the liquid being a molten metal or a molten salt [5]
27/04 using gas [3]
27/044 for flat or bent glass sheets being in a horizontal position [5]
27/048 on a gas cushion [5]
27/052 for flat or bent glass sheets being in a vertical position [5]
27/056 supported on the lower edge [5]
27/06 for glass products other than flat or bent glass plates, e.g. hollow glassware, lenses [3]

29/00 Reheating glass products for softening or fusing their surfaces; Fire-polishing; Fusing of margins (after-treatment of fibres C03B 37/10)
29/02 in a discontinuous way
29/04 in a continuous way
29/06 with horizontal displacement of the products [5]
29/08 Glass sheets [5]
29/10 in a vertical position [5]
29/12 in a horizontal position on a fluid support, e.g. a gas or molten metal [5]
29/14 with vertical displacement of the products [5]
29/16 Glass sheets [5]

31/00 Manufacture of rippled or cracked glass

32/00 Thermal after-treatment of glass products not provided for in groups C03B 25/00-C03B 31/00, e.g. crystallisation, eliminating gas inclusions or other impurities (after-treatment of fibres C03B 37/10) [2]
32/02 Thermal crystallisation, e.g. for crystallising glass bodies into glass-ceramic articles [5]

33/00 Severing cooled glass (severing glass fibres C03B 37/16)
33/02 Cutting or splitting sheet glass; Apparatus or machines therefor (C03B 33/09 takes precedence; glass-cutting tools C03B 33/10) [3]
33/023 the sheet being in a horizontal position [5]
33/027 Scoring tool holders; Driving mechanisms therefor [5]
33/03 Glass cutting tables; Apparatus for transporting or handling sheet glass during the cutting or breaking operations [5]
33/033 Apparatus for opening score lines in glass sheets [5]
33/037 Controlling or regulating [5]
33/04 Cutting or splitting in curves, especially for making spectacle lenses [5]
33/06 Cutting or splitting glass tubes, rods, or hollow products (C03B 33/09 takes precedence) [3]
33/07 Cutting armoured or laminated glass products [3]
33/08 by fusing
33/085 Tubes, rods or hollow products [5]
33/09 by thermal shock [3]
33/095 Tubes, rods or hollow products [5]
33/10 Glass-cutting tools, e.g. scoring tools [5]
33/12 Hand tools [3]
33/14 specially adapted for cutting tubes, rods or hollow products [5]
35/00 Transporting of glass products during their manufacture [2]
35/04 · Transporting of hot hollow glass products (C03B 35/26 takes precedence) [3]
35/06 · Feeding of hot hollow glass products into annealing or heating kilns [3]
35/08 · · · using rotary means directly acting on the products [3]
35/10 · · · using reciprocating means directly acting on the products, e.g. pushers, stackers [3]
35/12 · · · by picking-up and depositing [3]
35/14 · Transporting hot glass sheets [3]
35/16 · · · by roller conveyors [3]
35/18 · · · Construction of the conveyor rollers [3]
35/20 · · · by gripping tongs or supporting frames [3]
35/22 · · · on a fluid support bed, e.g. on molten metal [3]
35/24 · · · on a gas support bed [3]
35/26 · Transporting of glass tubes or rods [3]

37/00 Manufacture or treatment of flakes, fibres, or filaments from softened glass, minerals, or slags
37/005 · Manufacture of flakes [5]
37/01 · Manufacture of glass fibres or filaments [3]
37/012 · · · Manufacture of preforms for drawing fibres or filaments [4]
37/014 · · · made entirely or partially by chemical means [4]
37/016 · · · · · · by a liquid phase reaction process, e.g. through a gel phase [4]
37/018 · · · · · · by glass deposition on a glass substrate, e.g. by chemical vapour deposition (C03B 37/016 takes precedence); surface treatment of glass by coating with glass (C03C 17/02) [4]
37/02 · · · by drawing or extruding (C03B 37/04 takes precedence) [3]
37/022 · · · from molten glass in which the resultant product consists of different sorts of glass or is characterised by shape, e.g. hollow fibres [4]
37/023 · · · Fibres composed of different sorts of glass, e.g. fibre optics [4]
37/025 · · · from reheated softened tubes, rods, fibres or filaments [3]
37/026 · · · · · · Drawing fibres reinforced with a metal wire [5]

37/027 · · · · · · Fibres composed of different sorts of glass, e.g. fibre optics (C03B 37/028 takes precedence) [4]
37/028 · · · · · · Drawing fibre bundles, e.g. for making fibre bundles of multifibres [4]
37/029 · · · · · · Furnaces therefor [5]
37/03 · · · Drawing means, e.g. drawing drums [3]
37/035 · · · · · · having means for deflecting or stripping-off fibres [3]
37/04 · · · by using centrifugal force [3]
37/05 · · · by projecting on a rotating body having no radial orifices [3]
37/06 · · · by blasting or blowing molten glass, e.g. for making staple fibres [3]
37/065 · · · · · · starting from tubes, rods, fibres, or filaments [3]
37/07 · · · Controlling or regulating [3]
37/075 · · · Manufacture of fibres or filaments consisting of different sorts of glass or characterised by shape, e.g. hollow fibres, undulated fibres (C03B 37/022, C03B 37/027, C03B 37/028 take precedence) [3, 4]
37/08 · Bushings; Spinnerettes; Nozzles; Nozzle plates [5]
37/081 · · · · · · Indirect-melting bushings [5]
37/083 · · · · · · Nozzles; Bushing nozzle plates (C03B 37/095 takes precedence) [5]
37/085 · · · · · · Feeding devices therefor [3]
37/09 · · · · · · electrically heated [3]
37/092 · · · · · · Direct-resistance heating [5]
37/095 · · · · · · Use of materials therefor [3]
37/10 · · · · · · · Non-chemical treatment (C03C 25/00 takes precedence)
37/12 · · · · · · · · · · of fibres or filaments during winding up [3]
37/14 · · · · · · · · · · Re-forming fibres or filaments (C03B 37/025 takes precedence) [3]
37/15 · · · · · · · · · · with heat application, e.g. for making optical fibres (fusion-splining of light guides G02B 6/255; treatment of light guides to shape optical elements G02B 6/287) [5]
37/16 · · · · · · · · · · Cutting or severing (light guides G02B 6/25) [3, 5]

40/00 Preventing adhesion between glass and glass or between glass and the means used to shape it [3]
40/02 · · · · · · · · · · · · by lubrication; Use of materials as release or lubricating compositions [3]
40/027 · · · · · · · · · · · · Apparatus for applying lubricants to glass shaping moulds or tools [5]
40/033 · · · · · · · · · · · · Means for preventing adhesion between glass and glass [5]
40/04 · · · · · · · · · · · · using gas [3]

C03C CHEMICAL COMPOSITION OF GLASSES, GLAZES, OR VITREOUS ENAMELS; SURFACE TREATMENT OF GLASS; SURFACE TREATMENT OF FIBRES OR FILAMENTS FROM GLASS, MINERALS OR SLAGS; JOINING GLASS TO GLASS OR OTHER MATERIALS

Subclass index

CHEMICAL COMPOSITION

For glasses.................................................................1/00, 3/00, 4/00, 6/00, 10/00-12/00
For glazes, for vitreous enamels.................................................................1/00, 8/00
For devitrified glass ceramics.................................................................10/00
For fibres or filaments.................................................................13/00
For glass containing a non-glass component.................................................................14/00

SURFACE TREATMENTS

By diffusion into the surface.................................................................21/00
By coating.................................................................17/00
Other treatments.......................................................................................15/00, 19/00, 23/00
Chemical composition of glasses, glazes, or vitreous enamels

**Note(s)**
In groups C03C 1/00-C03C 14/00, in the absence of an indicator to the contrary, classification is not made in the last appropriate place.

1/00 Ingredients generally applicable to manufacture of glasses, glazes or vitreous enamels

1/02 • Pretreated ingredients
1/04 • Opacifiers, e.g. fluorides or phosphates; Pigments
1/06 • • to produce non-uniformly pigmented, e.g. speckled, marbled, or veined products
1/08 • to produce crackled effects
1/10 • to produce uniformly-coloured transparent products

3/00 Glass compositions (glass batch compositions C03C 6/00) [4]

3/04 • containing silica [4]

**Note(s)**
If silica is specified as being present in a percent range covered by two of the groups C03C 3/06, C03C 3/062 or C03C 3/076, classification is made in both groups. If the range is covered by the three groups, classification is made in group C03C 3/04 itself.

3/06 • • with more than 90% silica by weight, e.g. quartz
3/062 • with less than 40% silica by weight [4]
3/064 • • containing boron [4]
3/066 • • • containing zinc [4]
3/068 • • • containing rare earths [4]
3/07 • • • containing lead [4]
3/072 • • • containing boron [4]
3/074 • • • containing zinc [4]
3/076 • • with 40% to 90% silica by weight [4]
3/078 • • • containing an oxide of a divalent metal, e.g. an oxide of zinc [4]
3/083 • • • containing aluminium oxide or an iron compound [4]
3/085 • • • containing an oxide of a divalent metal [4]
3/087 • • • containing calcium oxide, e.g. common sheet or container glass [4]
3/089 • • • containing boron [4]
3/091 • • • containing aluminium [4]
3/093 • • • containing zinc or zirconium [4]
3/095 • • • containing rare earths [4]
3/097 • • • containing phosphorus, niobium or tantalum [4]
3/102 • • • containing lead [4]
3/105 • • • containing aluminium [4]
3/108 • • • containing boron [4]
3/11 • • • containing halogen or nitrogen [4]
3/112 • • • containing fluorine [4]
3/115 • • • containing boron [4]
3/118 • • • containing aluminium [4]
3/12 • Silica-free oxide glass compositions [4]
3/14 • • containing boron [4]
3/145 • • containing aluminium or beryllium [4]
3/15 • • containing rare earths [4]

3/155 • • • containing zirconium, titanium, tantalum or niobium [4]
3/16 • • containing phosphorus [4]
3/17 • • • containing aluminium or beryllium [4]
3/19 • • • containing boron [4]
3/21 • • • containing titanium, zirconium, vanadium, tungsten or molybdenum [4]
3/23 • • containing halogen and at least one oxide, e.g. oxide of boron [4]
3/247 • • • containing fluorine and phosphorus [4]
3/253 • • • containing germanium [4]
3/32 • Non-oxide glass compositions, e.g. binary or ternary halides, sulfides, or nitrides of germanium, selenium or tellurium [4]

4/00 Compositions for glass with special properties [4]

**Note(s)**
When classifying in group C03C 4/00, classification is also made in the appropriate subgroups of group C03C 3/00 according to the glass composition.

4/02 • for coloured glass [4]
4/04 • for photosensitive glass [4]
4/06 • • for phototropic or photochromic glass [4]
4/08 • for glass selectively absorbing radiation of specified wave lengths [4]
4/10 • for infra-red transmitting glass [4]
4/12 • for luminescent glass; for fluorescent glass [4]
4/14 • for electro-conductive glass [4]
4/16 • for dielectric glass [4]
4/18 • for ion-sensitive glass [4]
4/20 • for chemical resistant glass [4]

6/00 Glass batch compositions (single ingredients of batch compositions C03C 1/00) [4]

**Note(s)**
This group covers also compositions which are intended to be heated sufficiently for their ingredients to fuse into a glass, e.g. glass furnace charges.

6/02 • containing silicates, e.g. cullet [4]
6/04 • containing uncombined silica, e.g. sand [4]
6/06 • containing halogen compounds [4]
6/08 • containing pellets or agglomerates [4]
6/10 • containing slag [4]

8/00 Enamels; Glazes (cold glazes for ceramics C04B 41/86); Fusion seal compositions being frit compositions having non-frit additions [4]

8/02 • Frit compositions, i.e. in a powdered or comminuted form [4]
8/04 • • containing zinc [4]
8/06 • • containing halogen [4]
8/08 • • containing phosphorus [4]
8/10 • • containing lead [4]
8/12 • • • containing titanium or zirconium [4]
8/14 • • Glass frit mixtures having non-frit additions, e.g. opacifiers, colorants, mill additions [4]
8/16 • • with vehicle or suspending agents, e.g. slip [4]
8/18 • containing free metals [4]
8/20 • containing titanium compounds; containing zirconium compounds [4]
8/22 • containing two or more distinct frits having different compositions [4]
8/24 • Fusion seal compositions being frit compositions having non-frit additions, i.e. for use as seals between dissimilar materials, e.g. glass and metal; Glass solders [4]

10/00 Devitrified glass ceramics, i.e. glass ceramics having a crystalline phase dispersed in a glassy phase and constituting at least 50% by weight of the total composition [4]

10/02 • Non-silica and non-silicate crystalline phase, e.g. spinel, barium titanate [4]
10/04 • Silicate or polysilicate crystalline phase, e.g. mullite, diopside, sphene, plagioclase [4]
10/06 • Divalent metal oxide aluminosilicate crystalline phase, e.g. amorphite, slagcerams [4]
10/08 • Magnesium aluminosilicate, e.g. cordierite [4]
10/10 • Alkali metal aluminosilicate crystalline phase [4]
10/12 • Lithium aluminosilicate, e.g. spodumene, eucryptite [4]
10/14 • Silica crystalline phase, e.g. stuffed quartz, cristobalite [4]
10/16 • Halogen-containing crystalline phase [4]

11/00 Multi-cellular glass

12/00 Powdered glass (C03C 8/02 takes precedence); Bead compositions [4]
12/02 • Reflective beads [4]

13/00 Fibre or filament compositions (manufacture of fibres or filaments C03B 37/00)

13/02 • containing compounds of titanium or zirconium [4]
13/04 • Fibre optics, e.g. core and cladding fibre compositions [4]
13/06 • Mineral fibres, e.g. slag wool, mineral wool, rock wool [4]

14/00 Glass compositions containing a non-glass component, e.g. compositions containing fibres, filaments, whiskers, platelets, or the like, dispersed in a glass matrix (glass batch compositions C03C 6/00; devitrified glass-ceramics C03C 10/00) [4]

Surface treatment of glass; Surface treatment of fibres or filaments from glass, minerals or slags

Note(s)
Treatment of materials specially adapted to enhance their filling properties in mortars, concrete or artificial stone is classified in subclass C04B.

15/00 Surface treatment of glass, not in the form of fibres or filaments, by etching [2]
15/02 • for making a smooth surface

17/00 Surface treatment of glass, e.g. of devitrified glass, not in the form of fibres or filaments, by coating
17/02 • with glass (C03C 17/34, C03C 17/44 take precedence) [3]
17/04 • by fritting glass powder
17/06 • with metals (C03C 17/34, C03C 17/44 take precedence) [3]
17/09 • by deposition from the vapour phase [3]
17/10 • by deposition from the liquid phase
17/22 • with other inorganic material (C03C 17/34, C03C 17/44 take precedence) [3]
17/23 • Oxides (C03C 17/02 takes precedence) [3]
17/245 • by deposition from the vapour phase [3]
17/25 • by deposition from the liquid phase [3]
17/27 • by oxidation of a coating previously applied [3]
17/28 • with organic material (C03C 17/34, C03C 17/44 take precedence) [3]
17/30 • with silicon-containing compounds
17/32 • with synthetic or natural resins (C03C 17/30 takes precedence)
17/34 • with at least two coatings having different compositions (C03C 17/44 takes precedence) [3]
17/36 • at least one coating being a metal [3]
17/38 • at least one coating being a coating of an organic material [3]
17/40 • all coatings being metal coatings [3]
17/42 • at least one coating of an organic material and at least one non-metal coating [3]
17/44 • Lustring [3]

19/00 Surface treatment of glass, not in the form of fibres or filaments, by mechanical means (sand-blasting, grinding, or polishing glass B24)

21/00 Treatment of glass, not in the form of fibres or filaments, by diffusing ions or metals into the surface

23/00 Other surface treatment of glass not in the form of fibres or filaments

25/00 Surface treatment of fibres or filaments from glass, minerals, or slags

25/10 • by coating [7]
25/12 • General methods for coating; Devices therefor [7]
25/14 • • • Spraying [7]
25/16 • • • Dipping [7]
25/18 • • • using extrusion devices [7]
25/20 • • • Contacting the fibres with applicators, e.g. rolls [7]
25/22 • • • Deposition from the vapour phase [7]

Note(s)
1. In groups C03C 25/24-C03C 25/48, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.
2. A coating composition, i.e. a mixture of two or more constituents, is classified in the last of groups C03C 25/24-C03C 25/42 that provides for at least one of these constituents.
3. When classifying in groups C03C 25/24-C03C 25/42 any individual constituent, i.e. compound or ingredient of a coating composition, which is not identified by the classification according to Note (2), and which itself is determined to be novel and non-obvious, must also be classified in the last appropriate place in groups C03C 25/24-C03C 25/42.
4. When classifying in groups C03C 25/24-C03C 25/42 any individual constituent of a coating composition which is not identified by the classification according to Note (2) or (3), and which is considered to represent information of interest for search, may also be classified in groups C03C 25/24-C03C 25/42. This can, for example, be the case when it is considered of interest to enable searching of coating compositions using a combination of classification symbols. Such non-obligatory classification should be given as “additional information”.

25/24 • • Coatings containing organic materials [7]
25/26 • • • Macromolecular compounds or prepolymer [7]
25/28 • • • obtained by reactions involving only carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds, e.g. acrylic resins [7]
25/30 • • • • Polyolefins [7]
25/32 • • • • obtained otherwise than by reactions involving only carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [7]
25/34 • • • • Condensation polymers of aldehydes, e.g. with phenols, amines, melamines, amides or amines [7]
25/36 • • • • Epoxy resins [7]
25/38 • • • Organo-metallic compounds [7]
25/40 • • • Organo-silicon compounds [7]
25/42 • • Coatings containing inorganic materials [7]
25/44 • • • Carbon, e.g. graphite [7]
25/46 • • • Metals [7]
25/48 • • with two or more coatings having different compositions [7]

Note(s)
When classifying in this group, any individual coating which itself is determined to be novel and non-obvious must also be classified in groups C03C 25/24-C03C 25/42, according to Notes (1) to (4) before group C03C 25/24.

25/50 • • • Coatings containing organic materials only [7]
25/52 • • • Coatings containing inorganic materials only [7]
25/54 • • • Combinations of one or more coatings containing organic materials only with one or more coatings containing inorganic materials only [7]
25/60 • by diffusing ions or metals into the surface [7]
25/62 • by application of electric or wave energy or particle radiation, or by ion implantation (for drying or dehydration C03C 25/64) [7]
25/64 • Drying; Dehydration; Dehydroxylation [7]
25/66 • Chemical treatment, e.g. leaching, acid or alkali treatment (dehydroxylation C03C 25/64) [7]
25/68 • • by etching [7]
25/70 • • Cleaning, e.g. for reuse (C03C 25/62-C03C 25/66 take precedence) [7]

Joining glass to glass or to other materials

Note(s)
Layered products classified in groups C03C 27/00 or C03C 29/00 are also classified in subclass B32B.

27/00 Joining pieces of glass to pieces of other inorganic material; Joining glass to glass other than by fusing (C03C 17/00 takes precedence; fusion seal compositions C03C 8/24; wired glass C03B; joining glass to ceramics C04)
27/02 • by fusing glass directly to metal
27/04 • Joining glass to metal by means of an interlayer
27/06 • Joining glass to glass by processes other than fusing
27/08 • • with the aid of intervening metal
27/10 • • with the aid of adhesive specially adapted for that purpose
27/12 • • Laminated glass (mechanical features in manufacture of glass laminates part of which is of plastic material B32B)

29/00 Joining metals with the aid of glass

C04 CEMENTS; CONCRETE; ARTIFICIAL STONE; CERAMICS; REFRACTORIES

Note(s)
This class does not cover mechanical features provided elsewhere, e.g. mechanical working B28, kilns F27.

C04B LIME; MAGNESIA; SLAG; CEMENTS; COMPOSITIONS THEREOF, e.g. MORTARS, CONCRETE OR LIKE BUILDING MATERIALS; ARTIFICIAL STONE; CERAMICS (devitrified glass-ceramics C03C 10/00); REFRACTORIES (alloys based on refractory metals C22C); TREATMENT OF NATURAL STONE [4]

Note(s)
In this subclass, the following terms or expressions are used with the meanings indicated:
• “fillers” includes pigments, aggregates and fibrous reinforcing materials;
• “active ingredients” includes processing aids or property improvers, e.g. grinding aids used after the burning process or used in the absence of a burning process;
• “mortars”, “concrete” and “artificial stone” are to be considered as a single group of materials, and therefore, in the absence of an indication to be contrary, they include mortar, concrete and other cementitious compositions.

Subclass index
LIME, MAGNESIA; SLAG........................................................................................................2/00, 5/00
CEMENTS..................................................................................................................................7/00-12/00
CERAMICS

MORTARS; CONCRETE; ARTIFICIAL STONE

Compositions ................................................................................................................................................. 26/00-32/00
Fillers ................................................................................................................................................................. 14/00-20/00
Active ingredients .............................................................................................................................................. 22/00, 24/00
Porous products .................................................................................................................................................. 38/00
Influencing or modifying the properties of mortars ...................................................................................... 40/00
After-treatment .................................................................................................................................................. 41/00

CERAMICS

Clay-ware ....................................................................................................................................................... 33/00
Other ceramics .................................................................................................................................................. 35/00
Joining................................................................................................................................................................. 37/00
Porous products .................................................................................................................................................. 38/00
After-treatment .................................................................................................................................................. 41/00
TREATMENT OF NATURAL STONE .................................................................................................................. 41/00

Lime; Magnesia; Slag

2/00 Lime, magnesia or dolomite [4]
2/02 • Lime [4]
2/04 • Slaking [4]
2/06 • • with addition of substances, e.g. hydrophobic agents [4]
2/08 • • Devices therefor [4]
2/10 • • Preheating, burning, calcining or cooling (decarbonation during burning of cement raw materials C04B 7/43) [4]
2/12 • • in shaft or vertical furnaces [4]

5/00 Treatment of molten slag (manufacture of slag wool C03B; treatment of slag in or for the production of metals C21B, C22B); Artificial stone from molten slag [4]
5/02 • Granulating (granulating apparatus B01J 2/00); Dehydrating; Drying
5/06 • • Ingredients, other than water, added to the molten slag; Treatment with gases or gas generating material, e.g. to obtain porous slag [4]

Cements

Note(s)

In groups C04B 7/00-C04B 32/00, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.

7/00 Hydraulic cements
7/02 • Portland cement
7/04 • • using raw materials containing gypsum
7/06 • • using alkaline raw materials
7/12 • Natural pozzuolanas; Natural pozzuolina cements [4]
7/13 • • Mixtures thereof with inorganic cementitious materials, e.g. Portland cements [4]
7/14 • Cements containing slag
7/147 • • Metallurgical slag [4]
7/153 • • Mixtures thereof with other inorganic cementitious materials or other activators [4]
7/17 • • • with calcium oxide containing activators [4]
7/19 • • • Portland cements [4]
7/21 • • • with calcium sulfate containing activators [4]
7/22 • Iron ore cements
7/24 • Cements from oil shales, residues or waste other than slag [4]
7/26 • • from raw materials containing flue dust

7/28 • • from combustion residues (C04B 7/26 takes precedence) [4]
7/30 • • from oil shale; from oil shale residues [4]
7/32 • Aluminous cements
7/34 • Hydraulic lime cements; Roman cements
7/345 • Hydraulic cements not provided for in one of the groups C04B 7/02-C04B 7/34 [4]
7/36 • Manufacture of hydraulic cements in general
7/38 • • Preparing or treating the raw materials individually or as batches [4]
7/40 • • • Dehydrating; Forming, e.g. granulating (granulating apparatus B01J 2/00)
7/42 • • • Active ingredients added before, or during, the burning process
7/43 • • Heat treatment, e.g. precalcining, burning, melting; Cooling [4]
7/44 • • • Burning; Melting [4]
7/45 • • • in fluidised beds [4]
7/46 • • • electric [4]
7/47 • • • Cooling [4]
7/48 • • Clinker treatment (C04B 7/47 takes precedence) [4]
7/51 • • • Hydrating [4]
7/52 • • • Grinding
7/60 • • Methods for eliminating alkali metals or compounds thereof [4]

9/00 Magnesium cements or silimar cements
9/02 • Magnesium cements containing chlorides, e.g. Sorel cement
9/04 • Magnesium cements containing sulfates, nitrates, phosphates, or fluorides
9/06 • Cements containing metal compounds other than magnesium compounds, e.g. compounds of zinc or lead
9/11 • Mixtures thereof with other inorganic cementitious materials [4]
9/12 • • with hydraulic cements, e.g. Portland cements [4]
9/20 • Manufacture, e.g. preparing the batches (preheating, burning, calcining or cooling lime stone, magnesite or dolomite C04B 2/10)

11/00 Calcium sulfate cements
11/02 • Dehydrating gypsum
11/024 • Ingredients added before, or during, the calcining process, e.g. calcination modifiers [4]
11/028 • • Devices therefor [4]
11/032 • • for the wet process, e.g. dehydrating in solution or under saturated vapor conditions [4]
Use of materials as fillers for mortars, concrete or artificial stone [4]

14/00 Use of inorganic materials as fillers, e.g. pigments, for mortars, concrete or artificial stone; Treatment of inorganic materials specially adapted to enhance their filling properties in mortars, concrete or artificial stone (reinforcing elements for building E04C 5/00) [4]

14/02 • Granular materials [4]
14/04 • Silica-rich materials; Silicates [4]
14/06 • Quartz; Sand [4]
14/08 • Diatomaceous earth [4]
14/10 • Clay [4]
14/12 • Expanded clay [4]
14/14 • Minerals of vulcanic origin [4]
14/16 • porous, e.g. pumice [4]
14/18 • Perlite [4]
14/20 • Mica; Vermiculite [4]
14/22 • Glass [4]
14/24 • porous, e.g. foamed glass [4]
14/26 • Carbonates [4]
14/28 • of calcium [4]
14/30 • Oxides other than silica [4]
14/32 • Carbides; Nitrides; Borides [4]
14/34 • Metals [4]
14/36 • Inorganic materials not provided for in groups C04B 14/04-C04B 14/34 [4]
14/38 • Fibrous materials; Whiskers [4]
14/40 • Asbestos [4]
14/42 • Glass [4]
14/44 • Treatment for enhancing alkali resistance [4]
14/46 • Rock wool [4]
14/48 • Metal [4]

16/00 Use of organic materials as fillers, e.g. pigments, for mortars, concrete or artificial stone; Treatment of organic materials specially adapted to enhance their filling properties in mortars, concrete or artificial stone (reinforcing elements for building E04C 5/00) [4]

16/02 • Cellulosic materials [4]
16/04 • Macromolecular compounds (C04B 16/02 takes precedence) [4]
16/06 • fibrous [4]
16/08 • porous, e.g. expanded polystyrene beads [4]
16/10 • Treatment for enhancing the mixability with the mortar [4]

16/12 • characterised by the shape (fibrous macromolecular compounds C04B 16/06; porous macromolecular compounds C04B 16/08) [4]

18/00 Use of agglomerated or waste materials or refuse as fillers for mortars, concrete or artificial stone; Treatment of agglomerated or waste materials or refuse, specially adapted to enhance their filling properties in mortars, concrete or artificial stone (reinforcing elements for building E04C 5/00) [4]

18/02 • Agglomerated materials [4]
18/04 • Waste materials; Refuse [4]
18/06 • Combustion residues, e.g. purification products of smoke, fumes or exhaust gases [4]
18/08 • • Flue dust [4]
18/10 • • Burned refuse [4]
18/12 • • from quarries, mining or the like [4]
18/14 • • from metallurgical processes (treatment of molten slag C04B 5/00) [4]
18/16 • • from building or ceramic industry [4]
18/18 • • organic (C04B 18/10 takes precedence) [4]
18/20 • • from macromolecular compounds [4]
18/22 • • • Rubber [4]
18/24 • • • Vegetable refuse, e.g. rice husks, maize-ear refuse; Cellulosic materials, e.g. paper [4]
18/26 • • • Wood, e.g. sawdust, wood shavings [4]
18/28 • • • Mineralising; Compositions therefor [4]
18/30 • • • Mixed waste; Waste of undefined composition, e.g. municipal waste (C04B 18/10 takes precedence) [4]

20/00 Use of materials as fillers for mortars, concrete or artificial stone according to more than one of groups C04B 14/00-C04B 18/00 and characterised by shape or grain distribution; Treatment of materials according to more than one of the groups C04B 14/00-C04B 18/00 specially adapted to enhance their filling properties in mortars, concrete or artificial stone; Expanding or defibrillating materials (reinforcing elements for building E04C 5/00) [4]

20/02 • Treatment [4]
20/04 • • Heat treatment [4]
20/06 • • Expanding clay, perlite, vermiculite or like granular materials [4]
20/08 • • Defibrillating asbestos [4]
20/10 • • Coating or impregnating [4]
20/12 • • Multiple coating or impregnating [4]

Use of materials as active ingredients [4]

Note(s)
1. Active ingredients which react with cement compounds for forming new or modified mineralogical phases and are added before the hardening process, as well as cements added as additives to other cements, are classified in groups C04B 7/00-C04B 12/00.
2. In groups C04B 22/00-C04B 24/00, it is desirable to add the indexing codes of group C04B 103/00.

22/00 Use of inorganic materials as active ingredients for mortars, concrete or artificial stone, e.g. accelerators [4]

22/02 • Elements [4]
22/04 • • Metals, e.g. aluminium used as blowing agent [4]
22/06 • Oxides; Hydroxides [4]
22/08 • Acids or salts thereof [4]
24/00 Use of organic materials as active ingredients for mortars, concrete or artificial stone, e.g. plasticisers [4]

24/02 • Alcohols; Phenols; Ethers [4]
24/04 • Carboxylic acids; Salts, anhydrides or esters thereof [4]
24/06 • containing hydroxy groups [4]
24/08 • Fats; Fatty oils; Ester type waxes; Higher fatty acids, i.e. having at least seven carbon atoms in an unbroken chain bound to a carboxyl group; Oxidised oils or fats [4]
24/10 • Carbohydrates or derivatives thereof [4]
24/12 • Nitrogen containing compounds [4]
24/14 • Peptides; Proteins; Derivatives thereof [4]
24/16 • Sulfur-containing compounds [4]
24/18 • Lignin sulfonic acid or derivatives thereof, e.g. sulfite lye [4]
24/20 • Sulfonated aromatic compounds [4]
24/22 • Condensation products thereof [4]
24/24 • Macromolecular compounds (C04B 24/14 takes precedence; macromolecular compounds comprising sulfonate or sulfate groups C04B 24/16) [4, 6]
24/26 • obtained by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [4]
24/28 • obtained otherwise than by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [4]
24/30 • Condensation polymers of aldehydes or ketones [4]
24/32 • Polyethers, e.g. alkylphenol polyglycolether [4]
24/34 • Natural resins, e.g. rosins [4]
24/36 • Bituminous materials, e.g. tar, pitch [4]
24/38 • Polysaccharides or derivatives thereof [4]
24/40 • Compounds containing silicon, titanium or zirconium [4]
24/42 • Compounds having one or more carbon-to-silicon linkages [4]

Compositions of mortars, concrete or artificial stone [4]

Note(s)

1. Any ingredient of compositions of mortars, concrete or artificial stone, classified in groups C04B 26/00-C04B 32/00 according to the last place rule, and which itself is determined to be novel and non-obvious, must also be classified in the last appropriate place in groups C04B 7/00-C04B 24/00.

2. Any ingredient of compositions of mortars, concrete or artificial stone, which is not identified by the classification in groups C04B 26/00-C04B 32/00 according to the last place rule, and which is considered to represent information of particular interest for search, may also be classified in the last appropriate place in groups C04B 7/00-C04B 24/00. This can for example be the case when it is considered of interest to enable searching of compositions using a combination of classification symbols. Such non-obligatory classification should be given as “additional information”. For example, a well defined Portland cement mortar mixture containing clay as an essential or characterising filler is classified in group C04B 28/04 and may also additionally be classified in group C04B 14/10.

3. In groups C04B 26/00-C04B 32/00, it is desirable to add the indexing codes of group C04B 111/00.

26/00 Compositions of mortars, concrete or artificial stone, containing only organic binders [4]

26/02 • Macromolecular compounds [4]
26/04 • obtained by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [4]
26/06 • Acrylates [4]
26/08 • containing halogen [4]
26/10 • obtained otherwise than by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [4]
26/12 • Condensation polymers of aldehydes or ketones [4]
26/14 • Polyepoxides [4]
26/16 • Polyurethanes [4]
26/18 • Polymers; Polycarbonates [4]
26/20 • Polyamides [4]
26/22 • Natural resins, e.g. rosins [4]
26/24 • Cellulosic waste liquor, e.g. sulfite lye [4]
26/26 • Bituminous materials, e.g. tar, pitch [4]
26/28 • Polysaccharides or derivatives thereof [4]
26/30 • Compounds having one or more carbon-to-metal or carbon-to-silicon linkages [4]
26/32 • containing silicon [4]

28/00 Compositions of mortars, concrete or artificial stone, containing inorganic binders or the reaction product of an inorganic and an organic binder, e.g. polycarboxylate cements [4]

28/02 • containing hydraulic cements other than calcium sulfates [4]
28/04 • Portland cements [4]
28/06 • Aluminous cements [4]
28/08 • Slug cements [4]
28/10 • Lime cements or magnesium oxide cements [4]
28/12 • Hydraulic lime [4]
28/14 • containing calcium sulfate cements [4]
28/16 • containing anhydrite [4]
28/18 • containing mixtures of the silica-lime type [4]
28/20 • Sand-lime [4]
28/22 • Lime and pozzolanas [4]
28/24 • containing alkyl ammonium or alkali metal silicates; containing silica sols [4]
28/26 • Silicates of the alkali metals [4]
28/28 • containing organic polyacids, e.g. polycarboxylate cements [4]
28/30 • containing magnesium cements (magnesium oxide cements C04B 28/10) [4]
30/00 Compositions for artificial stone, not containing binders (artificial stone from molten slag C04B 5/00) [4]
30/02 • containing fibrous materials [4]
32/00 Artificial stone not provided for in other groups of this subclass (artificial stone from molten slag C04B 5/00) [4]
32/02 • with reinforcements [4]

Ceramics

33/00 Clay-wares (monolithic refractories or refractory mortars C04B 35/66; porous products C04B 38/00) [2]
33/02 • Preparing or treating the raw materials individually or as batches
33/04 • Clay; Kaolin
33/06 • Rendering lime harmless
33/08 • Preventing efflorescence
33/10 • Eliminating iron or lime
33/13 • Compounding ingredients (C04B 33/36, C04B 35/71 take precedence) [2]
33/132 • Waste materials; Refuse (C04B 33/16 takes precedence) [2006.01]
33/135 • Combustion residues, e.g. fly ash, incineration waste [2006.01]
33/138 • from metallurgical processes, e.g. slag, furnace dust, galvanic waste [2006.01]
33/14 • Colouring matters
33/16 • Lean materials, e.g. grog, quartz
33/18 • for liquefying the batches
33/20 • for dry-pressing (C04B 33/13 takes precedence)
33/22 • Grog products
33/24 • Manufacture of porcelain or white ware
33/26 • of porcelain for electrical insulation
33/28 • Slip casting
33/30 • Drying methods
33/32 • Burning methods
33/34 • combined with glazing
33/36 • Reinforced clay-wares [2]

35/00 Shaped ceramic products characterised by their composition; Ceramic compositions (containing free metal bonded to carbides, diamond, oxides, borides, nitrides, silicides, e.g. cermets, or other metal compounds, e.g. oxy-nitrides or sulfides, other than as macroscopic reinforcing agents C22C); Processing powders of inorganic compounds preparatory to the manufacturing of ceramic products [4]

Note(s)
1. In this group, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, compositions are classified according to the constituent present in the highest proportion by weight.
2. In this group, magnesium is considered as an alkaline earth metal.
3. In this group, a composite is considered as a sintered mixture of different powdered materials, other than sintering aids, the materials being present as separate phases in the sintered product.

4. In this group, fine ceramics are considered as products having a polycrystalline fine-grained microstructure, e.g. of dimensions below 100 micrometers.
5. The production of ceramic powder is classified in this group in so far as it relates to the preparation of powder with specific characteristics.

35/01 • based on oxides [6]
35/03 • based on magnesium oxide, calcium oxide or oxide mixtures derived from dolomite [6]
35/035 • Refractories from grain sized mixtures containing non-oxide refractory materials, e.g. carbon [6]
35/04 • based on magnesium oxide [6]
35/043 • Refractories from grain sized mixtures [6]
35/047 • containing chromium oxide or chrome ore [6]
35/05 • Refractories by fusion casting [6]
35/053 • Fine ceramics [6]
35/057 • based on calcium oxide [6]
35/06 • based on oxide mixtures derived from dolomite
35/08 • based on beryllium oxide [6]
35/10 • based on aluminium oxide [6]
35/101 • Refractories from grain sized mixtures [6]
35/103 • containing non-oxide refractory materials, e.g. carbon (C04B 35/106 takes precedence) [6]
35/105 • containing chromium oxide or chrome ore [6]
35/106 • containing zirconium oxide or zircon (ZrSiO₄) [6]
35/107 • Refractories by fusion casting [6]
35/109 • containing zirconium oxide or zircon (ZrSiO₄) [6]
35/111 • Fine ceramics [6]
35/113 • based on beta-aluminium oxide [6]
35/115 • Translucent or transparent products [6]
35/117 • Composites [6]
35/119 • with zirconium oxide [6]
35/12 • based on chromium oxide (C04B 35/047, C04B 35/105 takes precedence) [6]
35/14 • based on silica [6]
35/16 • based on silicates other than clay [6]
35/18 • rich in aluminium oxide [6]
35/185 • Mullite [6]
35/19 • Alkali metal aluminosilicates, e.g. spodumene [6]
35/195 • Alkaline earth aluminosilicates, e.g. cordierite [6]
35/20 • rich in magnesium oxide [6]
35/22 • rich in calcium oxide [6]
35/26 • based on ferrites [2, 6]
35/28 • with nickel oxide as the principal oxide [2, 6]
35/30 • with zinc oxide [2, 6]
35/32 • with cobalt oxide as the principal oxide [2, 6]
35/34 • with zinc oxide [2, 6]
35/36 • with manganese oxide as the principal oxide [2, 6]
35/38 • with zinc oxide [2, 6]
35/40 • with rare earth oxide [2, 6]
35/42 • based on chromites (C04B 35/047, C04B 35/105 takes precedence) [2, 6]
35/44 • based on aluminates [2, 6]
35/443 • Magnesium aluminate spinel [6]
35/447 • based on phosphates [6]
Refractories from grain sized mixtures [6]

Fine ceramics [6]

obtained from polymer precursors [6]

obtained by reaction sintering [6]

obtained by pressure sintering (C04B 35/594 takes precedence) [6]

obtained by sintering a reaction-sintered product, with or without pressure [6]

Composites [6]

based on silicon oxynitrides [6]

based on silicon aluminium oxynitrides

Composites [6]

based on silicon oxynitrides [6]

based on silicon aluminium oxynitrides

Forming processes; Processing powders of inorganic compounds preparatory to the manufacturing of ceramic products [6]

Sol-gel processing [6]

Preparing or treating the powders individually or as batches [6]

Coating the powders [6]

using additives specially adapted for forming the products [6]

Organic additives [6]

Polymers (C04B 35/636 takes precedence) [6]

Polysaccharides or derivatives thereof [6]

Removal thereof [6]

Burning or sintering processes (C04B 33/32 takes precedence) [6]

Pressure sintering [6]

Reaction sintering of free metal- or free silicon-containing compositions [3]

Processes involving a melting step [6]

for manufacturing refractories (C04B 35/05, C04B 35/107, C04B 35/484 take precedence) [6]

Monolithic refractories or refractory mortars, including those whether or not containing clay

C04B

Refractories from grain sized mixtures [6]

Fine ceramics [6]

obtained from polymer precursors [6]

obtained by reaction sintering [6]

obtained by pressure sintering (C04B 35/594 takes precedence) [6]

obtained by sintering a reaction-sintered product, with or without pressure [6]

Composites [6]

based on silicon oxynitrides [6]

based on silicon aluminium oxynitrides

Composites [6]

based on silicon oxynitrides [6]

based on silicon aluminium oxynitrides

Composites [6]

based on silicon oxynitrides [6]

Fine ceramics [6]

obtained from polymer precursors [6]

obtained by reaction sintering [6]

obtained by pressure sintering [6]

obtained by sintering without pressure [6]

Composites [6]

based on borides, nitrides or silicides [4, 6]

based on boron nitride [6]

based on cubic boron nitride [6]

based on hexagonal boron nitride [6]

Composites [6]

based on silicon nitride [6]

based on copper oxide or solid solutions thereof with other oxides [6]

based on zinc, tin or bismuth oxides or solid solutions thereof with other oxides, e.g. zincates, stannates or bismuthates [6]

based on tin oxides or stannates [6]

based on titanium oxides or titanates (containing also zirconium or hafnium oxides, zirconates or hafnates C04B 35/49) [6]

based on titanates [6]

based on alkaline earth metal titanates [6]

based on barium titanates [6]

based on strontium titanates [6]

based on lead titanates [6]

based on bismuth titanates [6]

based on aluminium titanates [6]

based on zirconium or hafnium oxides or zirconates or hafnates [6]

Refractories from grain sized mixtures [6]

Refractories by fusion casting [6]

Fine ceramics [6]

Composites [6]

containing also titanium oxide or titanates [3, 6]

based on lead zirconates and lead titanates [6]

containing also other lead compounds [6]

based on vanadium, niobium, tantalum, molybdenum or tungsten oxides or solid solutions thereof with other oxides, e.g. vanadates, niobates, tantalates, molybdates or tungstates [6]

based on solid solutions with lead oxide [6]

containing also titanates [6]

based on rare earth compounds

based on yttrium oxide [6]

based on compounds of actinides [2]

based on non-oxides (C04B 35/50, C04B 35/51 take precedence) [6]

based on carbon, e.g. graphite [6]

obtained from polymer precursors, e.g. glass-like carbon material [6]

obtained from carbonaceous particles with or without other non-organic components [6]

containing a carbonisable binder [6]

based on expanded graphite [6]

based on sulfides or selenides [6]

based on fluorides [6]

based on carbides [4]

based on boron carbide [6]

based on silicon carbide [6]

Refractories from grain sized mixtures [6]

Fine ceramics [6]

obtained from polymer precursors [6]

obtained by reaction sintering [6]

obtained by pressure sintering [6]

obtained by sintering without pressure [6]

Composites [6]

based on borides, nitrides or silicides [4, 6]

based on aluminium nitride [6]

Composites [6]

based on boron nitride [6]

based on cubic boron nitride [6]

based on hexagonal boron nitride [6]

Composites [6]

based on silicon nitride [6]

Carbon fibres in a carbon matrix [6]

Fibres, filaments, whiskers, platelets, or the like [2]

Fibres, filaments, whiskers, platelets, or the like [2]

Whiskers [6]

Asbestos; Glass; Fused silica [2]

Note(s)

Any ingredient of a refractory mortar composition containing a hydraulic cement, e.g. aluminous cement, classified in group C04B 35/66, which is considered to represent information of interest for search, may also be classified in the last appropriate place in groups C04B 7/00-C04B 24/00. This can, for example, be the case when it is considered of interest to enable searching of compositions using a combination of classification symbols. Such non-obligatory classification should be given as "additional information". For example, such an additional classification in group C04B 24/00 may be given for an organic retarder added to the mortar composition.

Ceramic products containing macroscopic reinforcing agents (C04B 35/66 takes precedence) [3, 4]

containing shaped metallic materials [2]

Fibres, filaments, whiskers, platelets, or the like [2]

containing non-metallic materials [2]

Fibres, filaments, whiskers, platelets, or the like [2]

Whiskers [6]

Asbestos; Glass; Fused silica [2]

Carbon fibres in a carbon matrix [6]

Note(s)

The products covered by this group are usually referred to as "carbon-carbon composites".
35/84 • • • Impregnated or coated materials [2]
37/00 Joining burned ceramic articles with other burned ceramic articles or other articles by heating
37/02 • with metallic articles
37/04 • with articles made from glass

38/00 Porous mortars, concrete, artificial stone or ceramic ware; Preparation thereof (treating slag with gases or gas generating material C04B 5/06) [4, 6]

Note(s)
Porous mortars, concrete, artificial stone or ceramic ware characterised by the ingredients or compositions are also classified in groups C04B 2/00-C04B 35/00.

38/02 • by adding chemical blowing agents [4]
38/04 • by dissolving-out added substances [4]
38/06 • by burning-out added substances [4]
38/08 • by adding porous substances [4]
38/10 • by using foaming agents (C04B 38/02 takes precedence) [4]

40/00 Processes, in general, for influencing or modifying the properties of mortars, concrete or artificial stone compositions, e.g. their setting or hardening ability (by selecting active ingredients C04B 22/00-C04B 24/00; hardening of a well-defined composition C04B 26/00-C04B 28/00; making porous, cellular or lightening C04B 38/00) [4, 6]

40/02 • Selection of the hardening environment [4]
40/04 • Preventing evaporation of the mixing water (permanent coverings C04B 41/00) [4]
40/06 • Inhibiting the setting, e.g. mortars of the deferred action type containing water in breakable containers [4]

41/00 After-treatment of mortars, concrete, artificial stone or ceramics; Treatment of natural stone (glazes, other than cold glazes, C03C 8/00) [3]

Note(s)
1. In this group, the following terms or expressions are used with the meanings indicated:
   • “mortars”, “concrete” and “artificial stone” cover materials after primary shaping.
2. Treating, e.g. coating or impregnating, a material with the same material or with a substance which ultimately is transformed into the same material is not considered after-treatment for this group but is classified as preparation of the material, e.g. a carbon body impregnated with a carbonisable substance is classified in C04B 35/52.
3. In groups C04B 41/45-C04B 41/80, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.

41/45 • Coating or impregnating [4]
41/46 • • with organic materials [4]
41/47 • • • Oils, fats or waxes [4]
41/48 • • • Macromolecular compounds [4]
41/49 • • • Compounds having one or more carbon-to-metal or carbon-to-silicon linkages [4]
41/50 • • with inorganic materials [4]
41/51 • • • Metallising [4]
41/52 • • Multiple coating or impregnating [4]
41/53 • involving the removal of part of the materials of the treated article [4]
41/60 • of only artificial stone [4]
41/61 • • Coating or impregnating [4]
41/62 • • • with organic materials [4]
41/63 • • • Macromolecular compounds [4]
41/64 • • • Compounds having one or more carbon-to-metal or carbon-to-silicon linkages [4]
41/65 • • • with inorganic materials [4]
41/66 • • • Fluorides, e.g. ocration [4]
41/67 • • • Phosphates [4]
41/68 • • • Silicic acid; Silicates [4]
41/69 • • • Metals [4]
41/70 • • • for obtaining at least two superposed coatings having different compositions [4]
41/71 • • • at least one coating being an organic material [4]
41/72 • • • involving the removal of part of the materials of the treated articles, e.g. etching [4]
41/80 • of only ceramics [4]
41/81 • • Coating or impregnating [4]
41/82 • • • with organic materials [4]
41/83 • • • Macromolecular compounds [4]
41/84 • • • Compounds having one or more carbon-to-metal or carbon-to-silicon linkages [4]
41/85 • • • with inorganic materials [4]
41/86 • • • Glazes; Cold glazes [4]
41/87 • • • Ceramics [4]
41/88 • • • Metals [4]
41/89 • • • for obtaining at least two superposed coatings having different compositions [4]
41/90 • • • at least one coating being a metal [4]
41/91 • • • involving the removal of part of the materials of the treated articles, e.g. etching [4]

Indexing scheme associated with groups C04B 22/00 and C04B 24/00, relating to the function or property of the active ingredients. [6]

103/00 Function or property of the active ingredients [6]

103/10 • Accelerators [6]
103/12 • • Set accelerators [6]
103/14 • • Hardening accelerators [6]
103/20 • Retarders [6]
103/22 • • Set retarders [6]
103/24 • • Hardening retarders [6]
103/30 • Water reducers, plasticisers, air-entrainers [6]
103/32 • • Superplasticisers [6]
103/40 • Surface-active agents, dispersants [6]
103/42 • Pore formers [6]
103/44 • Thickening, gelling or viscosity increasing agents [6]
103/46 • Water-loss reducers, hygroscopic or hydrophilic agents [6]
103/48 • Foam stabilisers [6]
103/50 • Defoamers, air detrainers [6]
103/52 • Grinding aids [6]
103/54 • Pigments; Dyes [6]
103/56 • Opacifiers [6]
103/60 • Agents for protection against chemical, physical or biological attack [6]
103/61 • • Corrosion inhibitors [6]
103/63 • • Flame-proofing agents [6]
103/65 • • Water proofers or repellants [6]
103/67 • • Biocides [6]
MIXTURES OF PHOSPHATIC FERTILISERS
GRANULATION; PELLETISATION
ORGANIC FERTILISERS
OTHER INORGANIC FERTILISERS
PRODUCED BY PYROGENIC PROCESSES
PRODUCED BY WET TREATMENTS
SUPERPHOSPHATES

Note(s)
1. An ingredient in a mixture of fertilisers, or a single fertiliser which contains more than one of the chemical elements on which the subdivision into subclasses is based, is classified only in the first of the appropriate subclasses. Thus, a nitrophosphate or an ammoniated superphosphate is classified in C05B but not in C05C, magnesium phosphate is classified in C05B but not in C05D, and calcium cyanamide in C05C but not in C05D.
2. Any ingredient in a mixture, which is considered to represent information of interest for search, may also additionally be classified according to Note (1). This can, for example, be the case when it is considered of interest to enable searching of mixtures using a combination of classification symbols. Such non-obligatory classification should be given as “additional information”.

C05B PHOSPHATIC FERTILISERS

Subclass index
SUPERPHOSPHATES........................................................................................................... 1/00
PRODUCED BY WET TREATMENTS...................................................................................... 11/00
PRODUCED BY PYROGENIC PROCESSES........................................................................... 13/00
OTHER INORGANIC FERTILISERS...................................................................................... 3/00-9/00, 17/00
ORGANIC FERTILISERS....................................................................................................... 15/00, 17/00
GRANULATION; PELLETISATION......................................................................................... 19/00
MIXTURES OF PHOSPHATIC FERTILISERS.......................................................................... 21/00

1/00 Superphosphates, i.e. fertilisers produced by reacting rock or bone phosphates with sulfuric or phosphoric acid in such amounts and concentrations as to yield solid products directly
1/02 • Superphosphates
1/04 • Double-superphosphate; Triple-superphosphate Other fertilisers based essentially on monocalcium phosphate
1/06 • Ammoniation of superphosphates (fertilisers based essentially on ammonium orthophosphate C05B 7/00)
1/10 • Apparatus for the manufacture of superphosphates

3/00 Fertilisers based essentially on di-calcium phosphate (C05B 11/00 takes precedence)
5/00 Thomas phosphate; Other slag phosphates
7/00 Fertilisers based essentially on alkali or ammonium orthophosphates (C05B 11/00 takes precedence)
9/00 Fertilisers based essentially on phosphates or double phosphates of magnesium (C05B 11/00 takes precedence)
Fertilisers produced by wet-treating or leaching raw materials either with acids in such amounts and concentrations as to yield solutions followed by neutralisation, or with alkaline lyes

- **Pretreatment**
- **using mineral acid**
- **using nitric acid (nitrophosphates)**
- **using sulfuric acid**
- **using orthophosphoric acid**
- **using aqueous hydrochloric acid**
- **using wet gaseous acids**
- **using alkaline lyes**

13/00 Fertilisers produced by pyrogenic processes from phosphatic materials

- **from rock phosphates** (C05B 13/06 takes precedence)
- **from metallic phosphorus compounds, e.g. ferrophosphorus**
- **from alkali or alkaline earth meta- or polyphosphate fertilisers**

**NITROGENOUS FERTILISERS**

**Subclass index**

- **BASED ON NITRATES**
- **BASED ON AMMONIUM SALTS, AMMONIA**
- **BASED ON CYANAMIDE**
- **BASED ON UREA**
- **OTHER FERTILISERS**
- **MIXTURES OF NITROGENOUS FERTILISERS**

**Ammonium nitrate fertilisers**

- **Granulation; Pelletisation; Stabilisation; Colouring**

**Fertilisers containing other salts of ammonia or ammonia itself, e.g. gas liquor**

**Fertilisers containing other nitrates**

- **containing sodium or potassium nitrate**
- **containing calcium nitrate**

**Fertilisers containing calcium or other cyanamides**

- **Granulation; Pelletisation; De-gassing; Hydrating; Hardening; Stabilisation; Oiling**

**Fertilisers containing urea or urea compounds**

- **containing urea-formaldehyde condensates**

**Other nitrogenous fertilisers**

**Mixtures of nitrogenous fertilisers covered by more than one of main groups C05C 1/00-C05C 11/00**

**INORGANIC FERTILISERS NOT COVERED BY SUBCLASSES C05B, C05C; FERTILISERS PRODUCING CARBON DIOXIDE**

**Fertilisers containing potassium** (C05D 7/00 takes precedence)

- **Manufacture from potassium chloride or sulfate or double or mixed salts thereof**
- **from minerals or volcanic rocks**

**Calcareous fertilisers** (C05D 7/00 takes precedence)

- **from limestone, calcium carbonate, calcium hydrate, slaked lime, calcium oxide, waste calcium compounds**
- **from blast-furnace slag or other slags containing lime or calcium silicates**

**Fertilisers containing magnesium** (C05D 7/00 takes precedence)

**Fertilisers producing carbon dioxide**

**Other inorganic fertilisers**

- **containing trace elements**

**Mixtures of fertilisers covered by more than one of main groups C05D 1/00-C05D 9/00**
C05F ORGANIC FERTILISERS NOT COVERED BY SUBCLASSES C05B, C05C, e.g. FERTILISERS FROM WASTE OR REFUSE

Note(s)
Processes where the composting step is the characterising feature, or apparatus therefor, are classified in group C05F 17/00.

1. Fertilisers made from animal corpses, or parts thereof
   1/00
   1/02 • Apparatus for their manufacture

3. Fertilisers from human or animal excrements, e.g. manure
   3/00
   3/02 • Guano
   3/04 • from human faecal masses
   3/06 • Apparatus for their manufacture

5. Fertilisers from distillery wastes, molasses, vinasses, sugar plant, or similar wastes or residues
   5/00

7. Fertilisers from waste water, sewage sludge, sea slime, ooze or similar masses (methods or installations for de-watering, drying, or incineration of sludge C02F 11/00)
   7/00
   7/02 • from sulfate liquor or other waste lyes from the manufacture of cellulose
   7/04 • from waste liquors in the potash industry

9. Fertilisers from household or town refuse
   9/00

C05G MIXTURES OF FERTILISERS COVERED INDIVIDUALLY BY DIFFERENT SUBCLASSES OF CLASS C05; MIXTURES OF ONE OR MORE FERTILISERS WITH MATERIALS NOT HAVING A SPECIFIC FERTILISING ACTIVITY, e.g. PESTICIDES, SOIL-CONDITIONERS, WETTING AGENTS (organic fertilisers containing added bacterial cultures, mycelia, or the like C05F 11/08; organic fertilisers containing plant vitamins or hormones C05F 11/10); FERTILISERS CHARACTERISED BY THEIR FORM [4]

Note(s)
1. This subclass covers mixtures of fertilisers with soil-conditioning or soil-stabilising materials characterised by their fertilising activity.
2. This subclass does not cover mixtures of fertilisers with soil-conditioning or soil-stabilising materials characterised by their soil-conditioning or soil-stabilising activity, which are covered by group C09K 17/00.

1. Mixtures of fertilisers covered individually by different subclasses of class C05
   1/00
   1/02 • of superphosphates with ammonium nitrate
   1/04 • of Thomas phosphate with potassium compounds
   1/06 • of alkali or ammonium orthophosphates with ammonium nitrate or ammonium sulfate or other nitrates or potassium compounds
   1/08 • of ammonium nitrate with limestone or calcium carbonate
   1/10 • of ammonium sulfate with potassium compounds

3. Mixtures of one or more fertilisers with materials not having a specifically fertilising activity
   3/00
   3/02 • with pesticides
   3/04 • with soil conditioners
   3/06 • with wetting agents
   3/08 • with agents affecting the nitrification of ammonium compounds or urea in the soil
   3/10 • with dust-preventing coatings [4]

5. Fertilisers characterised by their form (granulating fertilisers characterised by their chemical constitution, see the relevant groups in C05B-C05G) [4]
EXPLOSIVES; MATCHES

EXPLOSIVE OR THERMIC COMPOSITIONS (blasting F42D); MANUFACTURE THEREOF; USE OF SINGLE SUBSTANCES AS EXPLOSIVES [2]

1. This subclass covers:
   • compositions which are:
     a. explosive: compositions included are those containing both a fuel and sufficient oxidiser so that, upon initiation, they are capable of undergoing a chemical change of a relatively high rate of speed, resulting in the production of usable force for blasting, firearms, propelling missiles, or the like;
     b. thermic: compositions included have (i) a consumable fuel component which consists of any element which is a metal, B, Si, Se or Te, or mixtures, intercompounds, or hydrides thereof; and (ii) in combination an oxidant component which is either a metal oxide or a salt (organic or inorganic) capable of yielding a metal oxide on decomposition;
     c. fuels for rocket engines and intended for reaction with an oxidant, excluding air, in order to provide thrust for motive power purposes;
     d. for use in affecting the explosion environment, e.g. for neutralising the poisonous gases of explosives, for cooling the explosion gases, or the like;
   • methods or apparatus for preparing or treating such compositions not otherwise provided for;
   • methods of using single substances as explosives.
2. In this subclass, the following term is used with the meaning indicated:
   • "nitrated" covers compounds having a nitro group or a nitrato ester group.
3. Methods or apparatus for preparing or treating such compositions are classified according to the particular components of the compositions.

EXPLOSIVE OR THERMIC COMPOSITIONS

Containing nitrated derivatives
   inorganic........................................................................................................31/00
   organic........................................................................................................25/00, 41/00
Containing nitrides or fulminates.................................................................35/00, 37/00
Containing chlorates or perchlorates.......................................................29/00
Containing metal.........................................................................................27/00, 33/00
Containing phosphorus...........................................................................39/00
Other compositions..................................................................................23/00, 43/00
Compositions defined by the structure or arrangement of the components..................................................................................................45/00, 47/00
USE OF A SINGLE SUBSTANCE AS AN EXPLOSIVE.................................................49/00
MANUFACTURE..........................................................................................21/00

21/00 Apparatus or methods for working-up explosives, e.g. forming, cutting, drying

Note(s)
In groups C06B 23/00-C06B 49/00, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, a composition is classified in the last place that provides for an ingredient.

23/00 Compositions characterised by non-explosive or non-thermic constituents [2]

23/02 for neutralising poisonous gases from explosives produced during blasting [2]
23/04 for cooling the explosion gases [2]

25/00 Compositions containing a nitrated organic compound [2]

25/02 the nitrated compound being starch or sugar [2]
25/04 the nitrated compound being an aromatic [2]
25/06 with two or more nitrated aromatic compounds present [2]
25/08 at least one of which is nitrated toluene [2]
25/10 the compound being nitroglycerine [2]
25/12 with other nitrated organic compound [2]
25/14 the other compound being a nitrated aliphatic diol [2]
25/16 the other compound being a nitrated aromatic [2]
25/18 the compound being nitrocellulose present as 10% or more by weight of the total composition [2]
25/20 with a non-explosive or a non-thermic component [2]
25/22 with a nitrated aromatic compound [2]
25/24 with nitroglycerine [2]
25/26 with an organic non-explosive or an organic non-thermic component [2]
25/28 the compound being nitrocellulose present as less than 10% by weight of the total composition [2]
25/30 with nitroglycerine [2]
25/32 the compound being nitrocellulose present as 10% or more by weight of the total composition [2]
25/34 the compound being a nitrated acyclic, alicyclic or heterocyclic amine [2]
25/36 the compound being a nitroaromatic [2]
25/38 with other nitrated organic compound [2]
25/40 with two or more nitroaromatics present [2]
Compositions containing a metal, boron, silicon, selenium or tellurium or mixtures, intercompounds or hydrides thereof, and hydrocarbons or halogenated hydrocarbons [2]

Compositions containing an inorganic oxygen-halogen salt, e.g. chlorate, perchlorate [2]

- of an alkali metal [2]
- with an inorganic non-explosive or inorganic non-thermic component [2]
- the component being a cyanide; the component being an oxide of iron, chromium or manganese [2]
- with an organic non-explosive or organic non-thermic component [2]
- the component being a dye or a colouring agent [2]
- with carbon or sulfur [2]
- with iodine or an iodide [2]
- with a nitrated organic compound [2]
- the compound being nitratated toluene or a nitrated phenol [2]
- the salt being ammonium perchlorate [2]

Compositions containing an inorganic nitrogen-oxygen salt [2]

- the salt being an alkali metal or an alkaline earth metal nitrate [2]
- with carbon or sulfur [2]
- with an organic non-explosive or an organic non-thermic component [2]
- with a metal oxygen-halogen salt, e.g. inorganic chlorate, inorganic perchlorate [2]
- with carbon or sulfur [2]
- with a nitrated organic compound [2]
- the compound being an aromatic [2]
- the compound being a nitrated toluene [2]
- the compound being a nitrated phenol, e.g. picric acid [2]
- the compound being nitroglycerine [2]
- the compound being nitrocellulose [2]
- with other explosive or thermic component [2]
- with vegetable matter; with resin; with rubber [2]
- with a nitrated organic compound [2]
- the nitrated compound being starch or sugar [2]
- with other explosive or thermic component [2]
- the nitrated compound being an aromatic [2]
- with an organic non-explosive or an organic non-thermic component [2]
- with other explosive or thermic component [2]
- the compound being nitroglycerine [2]
- with a vegetable matter component, e.g. wood pulp, sawdust [2]
- with other explosive or thermic component [2]
- the other component being a nitrated organic compound [2]
- the compound being nitroglycerine present as 10% or more by weight of the total composition [2]
- with other nitrated organic compound [2]
- the compound being nitrocellulose present as less than 10% by weight of the total composition [2]

Compositions containing particulate metal, alloy, boron, silicon, selenium or tellurium with at least one oxygen supplying material which is either a metal oxide or a salt, organic or inorganic, capable of yielding a metal oxide [2]

- with an organic non-explosive or an organic non-thermic component [2]
- the material being an inorganic nitrogen-oxygen salt [2]
- the material being an inorganic oxygen-halogen salt [2]
- with a nitrated organic compound [2]
- the compound being an aromatic [2]
- the material being two or more oxygen-yielding compounds [2]
- at least one being an inorganic nitrogen-oxygen salt [2]

Compositions containing a metal azide [2]

Compositions containing a metal fulminate [2]

Compositions containing free phosphorus or a binary compound of phosphorus, except with oxygen [2]

Compositions containing a nitrated metallo-organic compound [2]

- the compound containing lead [2]
- with an inorganic explosive or an inorganic thermic component [2]
- with an inorganic explosive or an inorganic thermic component [2]
- with a metal azide or a metal fulminate [2]
- with other nitrated metallo-organic compound [2]

Compositions characterised by explosive or thermic constituents not provided for in groups C06B 25/00-C06B 41/00 [2]

Compositions or products which are defined by structure or arrangement of component or product (explosive charges of particular form or shape F42B 1/00, F42B 3/00) [2]

- comprising particles of diverse size or shape [2]
- comprising solid particles dispersed in solid solution or matrix [2]
- the solid solution or matrix containing an organic component [2]
- the dispersed solid containing an inorganic explosive or an inorganic thermic component [2]
- the organic component containing a resin [2]
- having contiguous layers or zones [2]
45/14 • • a layer or zone containing an inorganic explosive or an inorganic thermic component [2]
45/16 • • • the layer or zone containing at least one inorganic component from the group of azide, fulminate, phosphorus and phosphide [2]
45/18 • comprising a coated component (particles dispersed in a matrix C06B 45/04; coated explosive charges F42B) [2]
45/20 • • the component base containing an organic explosive or an organic thermic component [2]
45/22 • • • the coating containing an organic compound [2]
45/24 • • • • the compound being an organic explosive or an organic thermic component [2]
45/26 • • • • • the compound being a nitrated toluene [2]
45/28 • • • the component base containing nitrocellulose and nitroglycerine [2]
45/30 • • the component base containing an inorganic explosive or an inorganic thermic component [2]
45/32 • • • the coating containing an organic compound [2]
45/34 • • • • the compound being an organic explosive or an organic thermic component [2]
45/36 • • • the component base containing both an organic explosive or thermic component and an inorganic explosive or thermic component [2]

47/00 Compositions in which the components are separately stored until the moment of burning or explosion, e.g. "Sprengel"-type explosives; Suspensions of solid component in a normally non-explosive liquid phase, including a thickened aqueous phase [2]
47/02 • the components comprising a binary propellant [2]
47/04 • • a component containing a nitrogen oxide or acid thereof [2]
47/06 • • a component being a liquefied normally gaseous material supplying oxygen (C06B 47/04 takes precedence) [2]
47/08 • • a component containing hydrazine or a hydrazine derivative [2]
47/10 • • a component containing free boron, an organic borane or a binary compound of boron, except with oxygen [2]
47/12 • • a component being a liquefied normally gaseous fuel [2]
47/14 • • comprising a solid component and an aqueous phase [2]

49/00 Use of single substances as explosives [2]

C06C DETONATING OR PRIMING DEVICES; FUSES; CHEMICAL LIGHTERS; PYROPHORIC COMPOSITIONS [2]

5/00 Fuses, e.g. fuse cords
5/04 • Detonating fuses
5/06 • Fuse igniting means; Fuse connectors
5/08 • Devices for the manufacture of fuses
7/00 Non-electric detonators; Blasting caps; Primers

C06D MEANS FOR GENERATING SMOKE OR MIST; GAS-ATTACK COMPOSITIONS; GENERATION OF GAS FOR BLASTING OR PROPULSION (CHEMICAL PART) [2]

3/00 Generation of smoke or mist (chemical part) (compositions used as biocides, pest repellants or attractants, or plant growth regulators A01N 25/18)
5/00 Generation of pressure gas, e.g. for blasting cartridges, starting cartridges, rockets (explosive compositions containing an oxidizer, fuels for rocket engines intended for reaction with an oxidant other than air C06B)

C06F MATCHES; MANUFACTURE OF MATCHES

1/00 Mechanical manufacture of matches
1/02 • Cutting match splints
1/04 • Filling match splints into carrier bars; Discharging matches
1/06 • Dipping, coating, impregnating, or drying of matches [2]
1/08 • Carrier bars
1/10 • • Guiding means for carrier bars
1/12 • Filling matches into boxes
1/14 • Manufacture of ignition strips
1/16 • Manufacture of matches connected together, e.g. in bands or blocks

1/18 • Printing on matches or match-boxes when combined with match manufacture
1/20 • Applying strike-surfaces, e.g. on match-boxes, on match-books
1/22 • Manufacturing of match-books, match packs or match packages
1/24 • Safety devices against fire
1/26 • Production lines for complete match manufacture

3/00 Chemical features in the manufacture of matches
3/02 • Wooden strip for matches or substitute therefor
3/04 • Chemical treatment before or after dipping, e.g. dyeing, impregnating

IPC (2014.01), Section C 37
ORGANIC CHEMISTRY

Note(s)

1. In this class, the following term is used with the meaning indicated:
   • "preparation" covers purification, separation, stabilisation or use of additives, unless a separate place is provided therefor.
2. Biocidal, pest repellant, pest attractant or plant growth regulatory activity of compounds or preparations is further classified in subclass A01P.
3. In subclasses C07C-C07K and within each of these subclasses, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, and with the exception referred to below, a compound is classified in the last appropriate place. For example, 2-butyl-pyridine, which contains an acyclic chain and a heterocyclic ring, is classified only as a heterocyclic compound, in subclass C07D. In general, and in the absence of an indication to the contrary (such as groups C07C 59/58, C07C 59/70), the terms "acyclic" and "aliphatic" are used to describe compounds in which there is no ring; and, if a ring were present, the compound would be taken by the "last place" rule to a later group for cycloaliphatic or aromatic compounds, if such a group exists. Where a compound or an entire group of compounds exists in tautomeric forms, it is classified as though existing in the form which is classified last in the system, unless the other form is specifically mentioned earlier in the system.
4. Chemical compounds and their preparation are classified in the groups for the type of compound prepared. The processes of preparation are also classified in places for the types of reaction employed, if of interest. Examples of such places outside this class are:
   C12P..................................................Fermentation or enzyme-using processes to synthesise a desired chemical compound or composition
   or to separate optical isomers from a racemic mixture
   C25B 3/00............................................Electrolytic production of organic compounds
   C25B 7/00.............................................Electrophoretic production of compounds
5. General processes for the preparation of a class of compounds falling into more than one main group are classified in the groups for the processes employed, when such groups exist. The compounds prepared are also classified in the groups for the types of compound prepared, if of interest.
6. In this class, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, the compounds containing carboxyl or thiocarboxylic groups are classified as the relevant carboxylic or thiocarboxylic acids, unless the "last place rule" (see Note (3), above) dictates otherwise; a carboxyl group being a carbon atom having three bonds, and no more than three, to hetero atoms, other than nitrogen atoms of nitro or nitroso groups, with at least one multiple bond to the same hetero atom and a thiocarboxyl group being a carboxyl group having at least one bond to a sulfur atom, e.g. amides or nitriles of carboxylic acids, are classified with the corresponding acids.
7. Salts of a compound, unless specifically provided for, are classified as that compound, e.g. aniline hydrochloride is classified as containing carbon, hydrogen and nitrogen only (in group C07C 211/46), sodium malonate is classified as malonic acid (in C07C 55/08), and a mercaptide is classified as the mercaptan. Metal chelates are dealt with in the same way. Similarly, metal alcoholates and metal phenates are classified in subclass C07C and not in subclass C07F, the alcoholates in groups C07C 31/28-C07C 31/32 and the phenates as the corresponding phenols in group C07C 39/235 or C07C 39/44. Salts, adducts or complexes formed between two or more organic compounds are classified according to all compounds forming the salts, adducts or complexes.

GENERAL METHODS OF ORGANIC CHEMISTRY; APPARATUS THEREFOR (preparation of carboxylic acid esters by telomerisation C07C 67/47; processes for preparing macromolecular compounds, e.g. telomerisation C08F, C08G)

Note(s)

1. In this subclass, a functional group which is already present in some residue being introduced and is not substantially involved in a chemical reaction, is not considered as the functional group which is formed or introduced as a result of the chemical reaction.
2. In this subclass, the following term is used with the meaning indicated:
   • "separation" means separation only for the purposes of recovering organic compounds.
3. When classifying in this subclass, classification is also made in group B01D 15/08isofar as subject matter of general interest relating to chromatography is concerned.
4. In this subclass, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place according to the type of reaction employed, noting the bond or the functional group which is formed or introduced as a result of the chemical reaction.

Subclass index

REDUCTION IN GENERAL.................................................................31/00
OXIDATION IN GENERAL.............................................................33/00
REATIONS WITHOUT FORMATION OR INTRODUCTION OF FUNCTIONAL GROUPS CONTAINING HETERO ATOMS
   Change of bond type between carbon atoms already directly linked........................................35/00
   Formation of new or disconnection of existing carbon-to-carbon bonds.................................37/00
REATIONS WITH FORMATION OR INTRODUCTION OF FUNCTIONAL GROUPS CONTAINING HETERO ATOMS
   Halogenation............................................................................39/00
   Oxygen-containing groups..................................................................41/00
   Nitrogen-containing groups..................................................................43/00
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subsection</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>31/00</td>
<td>Reduction in general [4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33/00</td>
<td>Oxidation in general [4]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Reactions without formation or introduction of functional groups containing hetero atoms [4]**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subsection</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>35/00</td>
<td>Reactions without formation or introduction of functional groups containing hetero atoms, involving a change in the type of bonding between two carbon atoms already directly linked [4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35/02</td>
<td>• Reduction [4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35/04</td>
<td>• Dehydrogenation [4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35/06</td>
<td>• Decomposition, e.g. elimination of halogens, water or hydrogen halides [4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35/08</td>
<td>• Isomerisation [4]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subsection</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>37/00</td>
<td>Reactions without formation or introduction of functional groups containing hetero atoms, involving either the formation of a carbon-to-carbon bond between two carbon atoms not directly linked already or the disconnection of two directly linked carbon atoms [4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37/02</td>
<td>• Addition [4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37/04</td>
<td>• Substitution [4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37/06</td>
<td>• Decomposition, e.g. elimination of carbon dioxide [4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37/08</td>
<td>• Isomerisation [4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37/10</td>
<td>• Cyclisation [4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37/12</td>
<td>• Diels-Alder reactions [4]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Reactions with formation or introduction of functional groups containing hetero atoms [4]**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subsection</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>39/00</td>
<td>Halogenation [4]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subsection</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>41/00</td>
<td>Formation or introduction of functional groups containing oxygen [4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41/02</td>
<td>• of hydroxy or O-metal groups [4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41/04</td>
<td>• of ether, acetal or ketal groups [4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41/06</td>
<td>• of carboxyl groups [4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41/08</td>
<td>• of carboxyl groups or salts, halides or anhydrides thereof [4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41/10</td>
<td>• Salts, halides or anhydrides of carboxyl groups [4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41/12</td>
<td>• of carboxylic acid ester groups [4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41/14</td>
<td>• of peroxy or hydroperoxy groups [4]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subsection</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>43/00</td>
<td>Formation or introduction of functional groups containing nitrogen [4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43/02</td>
<td>• of nitro or nitroso groups [4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43/04</td>
<td>• of amino groups [4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43/06</td>
<td>• of amide groups [4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43/08</td>
<td>• of cyano groups [4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43/10</td>
<td>• of isocyanate groups [4]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**45/00** Formation or introduction of functional groups containing sulfur [4]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subsection</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>45/02</td>
<td>• of sulfo or sulfonyldioxy groups [4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45/04</td>
<td>• of sulfonyl or sulfanyl groups [4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45/06</td>
<td>• of mercapto or sulfide groups [4]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subsection</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>47/00</td>
<td>Formation or introduction of functional groups not provided for in groups C07B 39/00-C07B 45/00 [4]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subsection</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>49/00</td>
<td>Grignard reactions [4]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subsection</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>51/00</td>
<td>Introduction of protecting groups or activating groups, not provided for in groups C07B 31/00-C07B 49/00 [4]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subsection</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>53/00</td>
<td>Asymmetric syntheses [4]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subsection</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>55/00</td>
<td>Racemisation; Complete or partial inversion [4]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subsection</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>57/00</td>
<td>Separation of optically-active organic compounds [4]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subsection</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>59/00</td>
<td>Introduction of isotopes of elements into organic compounds [4]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subsection</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>60/00</td>
<td>Generation of organic free radicals [2011.01]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subsection</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>61/00</td>
<td>Other general methods [4]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Purification; Separation; Stabilisation [4]**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subsection</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>63/00</td>
<td>Purification; Separation specially adapted for the purpose of recovering organic compounds (separation of optically-active organic compounds C07B 57/00); Stabilisation; Use of additives [4]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subsection</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>63/02</td>
<td>• by treatment giving rise to a chemical modification [4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63/04</td>
<td>• Use of additives [4]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
HALOGENS

COMPOUNDS CONTAINING CARBON AND OXYGEN, WITH OR WITHOUT HYDROGEN OR

COMPOUNDS CONTAINING CARBON AND HALOGENS, WITH OR WITHOUT HYDROGEN

COMPOUNDS CONTAINING CARBON AND HYDROGEN ONLY

Subclass index

Note(s)

1. In this subclass, the following terms or expressions are used with the meanings indicated:
   - "bridged" means the presence of at least one fusion other than ortho, peri or spiro;
   - two rings are "condensed" if they share at least one ring member, i.e. "spiro" and "bridged" are considered as condensed;
   - "condensed ring system" is a ring system in which all rings are condensed among themselves;
   - "number of rings" in a condensed ring system equals the number of scissions necessary to convert the ring system into one acyclic chain;
   - "quinones" are compounds derived from compounds containing a six-membered aromatic ring or a system comprising six-membered aromatic rings (which system may be condensed or not condensed) by replacing two or four -CH groups of the six-membered aromatic rings by -C=O groups, and by removing one or two carbon-to-carbon double bonds, respectively, and rearranging the remaining carbon-to-carbon double bonds to give a ring or ring system with alternating double bonds, including the carbon-to-oxygen bonds; this means thatacenaphthenoquinone or camphorquinone are not considered as quinones.

2. Attention is drawn to Note (3) after class C07, which defines the last place priority rule applied in the range of subclasses C07C-C07K and within these subclasses.

3. Therapeutic activity of compounds is further classified in subclass A61P.

4. When classifying in this subclass, classification is also made in group B01D 15/08 insofar as subject matter of general interest relating to chromatography is concerned.

5. In this subclass, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, a process is classified in the last appropriate place.

6. In this subclass, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, "quaternary ammonium compounds" are classified with the corresponding "non-quaternised nitrogen compounds".

7. For the classification of compounds in groups C07C 1/00-C07C 71/00 and C07C 401/00-C07C 409/00:
   - a compound is classified according to the molecule as a whole (rule of the "whole molecule approach");
   - a compound is considered to be saturated if it does not contain carbon atoms bound to each other by multiple bonds;
   - a compound is considered to be unsaturated if it contains carbon atoms bound to each other by multiple bonds, which includes a six-membered aromatic ring, unless otherwise specified or implicitly derivable from the subdivision, as in group C07C 69/00, e.g. C07C 69/71.

8. For the classification of compounds in groups C07C 201/00-C07C 395/00, i.e. after the functional group has been determined according to the "last place rule", a compound is classified according to the following principles:
   - compounds are classified in accordance with the nature of the carbon atom to which the functional group is attached;
   - a carbon skeleton is a carbon atom, other than a carbon atom of a carboxyl group, or a chain of carbon atoms bound to each other; a carbon skeleton is considered to be terminated by every bond to an element other than carbon or to a carbon atom of a carboxyl group;
   - when the molecule contains several functional groups, only functional groups linked to the same carbon skeleton as the one first determined are considered;
   - a carbon skeleton is considered to be saturated if it does not contain carbon atoms bound to each other by multiple bonds;
   - a carbon skeleton is considered to be unsaturated if it contains carbon atoms bound to each other by multiple bonds, which includes a six-membered aromatic ring.

Subclass index

COMPOUNDS CONTAINING CARBON AND HYDROGEN ONLY

Preparation..............................................................1/00, 2/00, 4/00, 5/00, 6/00
Purification, separation, stabilisation..............................................................7/00

Compounds
  aliphatic..............................................................9/00, 11/00
  cycloaliphatic, aromatic...........................................13/00, 15/00

COMPOUNDS CONTAINING CARBON AND HALOGENS, WITH OR WITHOUT HYDROGEN

Preparation..............................................................17/00

Compounds
  aliphatic..............................................................19/00, 21/00
  cycloaliphatic, aromatic...........................................22/00, 23/00, 25/00

COMPOUNDS CONTAINING CARBON AND OXYGEN, WITH OR WITHOUT HYDROGEN OR HALOGENS

Preparation
  simultaneous production of more than one class of oxygen-containing compounds...........................................27/00
  of alcohols; of phenols.............................................29/00, 37/00
  of ethers or acetals; of oxo compounds...........................41/00, 45/00
  of quinones..........................................................46/00
  of carboxylic acids, their salts or anhydrides ..................51/00
  of esters of carboxylic acids.....................................67/00
  of esters of carbonic or haloformic acids......................68/00

Compounds
  with OH group(s); aliphatically bound...........................31/00, 33/00
cycloaliphatically bound.......................................................................................... 35/00
with OH group(s) aromatically bound.................................................................... 39/00
Ethers, acetals, orthoesters; aldehydes; ketones.................................................... 43/00, 47/00, 49/00
Quinones.................................................................................................................. 50/00
carboxylic acids
acyclic..................................................................................................................... 53/00, 55/00, 57/00, 59/00
cyclic......................................................................................................................... 61/00, 62/00, 63/00, 65/00, 66/00
Esters.......................................................................................................................... 69/00, 71/00

COMPOUNDS CONTAINING CARBON AND NITROGEN, WITH OR WITHOUT HYDROGEN, HALOGENS, OR OXYGEN

Preparation
of amines.................................................................................................................. 209/00
of hydroxy amines, aminoethers, or aminoesters................................................... 213/00
of aminoaldehydes, aminoketones, aminoquinones................................................ 221/00
of aminocarboxylic acids....................................................................................... 227/00
of amides of carboxylic acids................................................................................. 231/00
of nitriles of carboxylic acids................................................................................ 253/00
of derivatives of hydrazine...................................................................................... 241/00
of compounds containing carbon- to-nitrogen double bonds, e.g. imines, hydrazones, isocyanates... 249/00, 263/00
of derivatives of carbamic acids.......................................................................... 269/00
of urea or derivatives.............................................................................................. 273/00
of guanidines or derivatives.................................................................................. 277/00
of nitro or nitroso compounds, or esters of nitric or nitrous acids.......................... 201/00

Compounds
having nitrogen bound to carbon or to carbon and hydrogen
Amines...................................................................................................................... 211/00
Hydroxy amines; Aminoethers; Aminoesters......................................................... 215/00, 217/00, 219/00
Aminoaldehydes, aminoketones, aminoquinones.................................................. 223/00, 225/00
Amino carboxylic acids......................................................................................... 229/00
Amides of carboxylic acids................................................................................... 233/00, 235/00, 237/00
Compounds containing one or more carbon-to-nitrogen double bonds, e.g. imines...... 251/00
Nitriles of carboxylic acids.................................................................................... 255/00
Amidines, imino-ethers......................................................................................... 257/00
Hydroxamic acids................................................................................................. 259/00
Derivatives of cyanic or isocyanic acid................................................................. 261/00, 265/00
Carbodiimides...................................................................................................... 267/00
Carbamic acids..................................................................................................... 271/00
Ureas......................................................................................................................... 275/00
Guanidines............................................................................................................. 279/00
having nitrogen bound to halogens........................................................................ 239/00
having nitrogen bound to oxygen
Nitro or nitroso compounds................................................................................. 205/00, 207/00
Nitrates or nitrates................................................................................................. 203/00
Hydroxylamines.................................................................................................... 239/00
Oximes....................................................................................................................... 251/00
having nitrogen bound to another nitrogen
Hydrazines, hydrazides....................................................................................... 243/00
Semicarbazates, semicarbazides.......................................................................... 281/00
Azo compounds, diazo compounds................................................................... 245/00
Hydrazones, hydrazidines.................................................................................... 251/00, 257/00
Semicarbazones.................................................................................................. 281/00
N-nitro or N-nitroso compounds.......................................................................... 243/00
containing chains of three nitrogen atoms bound together
Triazenes................................................................................................................ 245/00
Azides....................................................................................................................... 247/00
Other compounds containing nitrogen.................................................................. 291/00
### Hydrosols [3]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1/00 Preparation of hydrosols from one or more compounds, none of them being a hydrosol</th>
<th>1/30</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1/02</td>
<td>• from oxides of carbon (preparation of liquid hydrosol mixtures of undefined composition C10H 2/00; of synthetic natural gas C10L 3/06) [5]</td>
<td>1/32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/04</td>
<td>• from carbon monoxide with hydrogen</td>
<td>1/34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/06</td>
<td>• in the presence of organic compounds, e.g. hydrosols</td>
<td>1/36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/08</td>
<td>• Isosynthesises</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/10</td>
<td>• from carbon monoxide with water vapour</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/12</td>
<td>• from carbon dioxide with hydrogen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/20</td>
<td>• starting from organic compounds containing only oxygen atoms as hetero atoms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/207</td>
<td>• from carbonyl compounds [5]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/213</td>
<td>• by splitting of esters [5]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/22</td>
<td>• by reduction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/24</td>
<td>• by elimination of water</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/247</td>
<td>• by splitting of cyclic ethers [3]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/26</td>
<td>• starting from organic compounds containing only halogen atoms as hetero atoms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/28</td>
<td>• by ring closure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1/00 Preparation of hydrocarbons from one or more compounds, none of them being a hydrocarbon

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2/00 Preparation of hydrocarbons from hydrocarbons containing a smaller number of carbon atoms [3]</th>
<th>2/02</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2/04</td>
<td>• by oligomerisation of well-defined unsaturated hydrocarbons without ring formation [3]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2/06</td>
<td>• of alkenes, i.e. acyclic hydrocarbons having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond [3]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2/08</td>
<td>• • • Catalytic processes [3]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2/10</td>
<td>• • • • with metal oxides [3]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2/12</td>
<td>• • • • with crystalline alumino-silicates, e.g. molecular sieves [3]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2/14</td>
<td>• • • • with inorganic acids; with salts or anhydrides of acids [3]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2/16</td>
<td>• • • • • Acids of sulfur; Salts thereof; Sulfur oxides [3]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Preparation of hydrocarbons from hydrocarbons containing the same number of carbon atoms

1. by hydrogenation
2. of non-aromatic carbon-to-carbon double bonds
3. Partial hydrogenation
4. of carbon-to-carbon triple bonds
5. to carbon-to-carbon double bonds
6. of aromatic six-membered rings
7. Partial hydrogenation
8. with simultaneous isomerisation
9. by isomerisation (with simultaneous hydrogenation)

Rearrangement of carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds

Migration of carbon-to-carbon double bonds

Rearrangement of carbon atoms in the hydrocarbon skeleton

changing the number of carbon atoms in a ring while maintaining the number of rings

changing the number of rings

by dehydrogenation with formation of free hydrogen

Formation of non-aromatic carbon-to-carbon double bonds only

Catalytic processes

Formation of carbon-to-carbon triple bonds only

Formation of an aromatic six-membered ring from an existing six-membered ring, e.g. dehydrogenation of ethylcyclohexane to ethylbenzene

with simultaneous isomerisation

of cyclic compounds containing no six-membered ring to compounds containing a six-membered aromatic ring

with cyclisation to an aromatic six-membered ring, e.g. dehydrogenation of n-hexane to benzene

Catalytic processes

by dehydrogenation with a hydrogen acceptor

Note(s)

1. In this group:
   - the catalyst is considered as forming part of the acceptor system in case of simultaneous catalyst reduction;
   - compounds added for binding the reduced acceptor system are not considered as belonging to the acceptor system.
2. The acceptor system is classified according to the supplying substances in case of in situ formation of the acceptor system or of in situ regeneration of the reduced acceptor system.

5/44 • • with a halogen or a halogen-containing compound as an acceptor [2]

5/46 • • with sulfur or a sulfur-containing compound as an acceptor [2]

5/48 • • with oxygen as an acceptor [2]

5/50 • • with an organic compound as an acceptor [2]

5/52 • • with a hydrocarbon as an acceptor, e.g. hydrocarbon disproportionation, i.e. \( \text{C}_n\text{H}_{2n} \rightarrow \text{C}_n\text{H}_{2n-1} + \text{C}_n\text{H}_{2n+1} [2]\)

5/54 • • with an acceptor system containing at least two compounds provided for in more than one of groups C07C 5/44-C07C 5/50 [3]

5/56 • • containing only oxygen and either halogens or halogen-containing compounds [3]

6/00 Preparation of hydrocarbons from hydrocarbons containing a different number of carbon atoms by redistribution reactions [3]

6/02 • Metathesis reactions at an unsaturated carbon-to-carbon bond [3]

6/04 • • at a carbon-to-carbon double bond [3]

6/06 • • at a cyclic carbon-to-carbon double bond [3]

6/08 • by conversion at a saturated carbon-to-carbon bond [3]

6/10 • • in hydrocarbons containing no six-membered aromatic rings [3]

6/12 • • of exclusively hydrocarbons containing a six-membered aromatic ring [3]

7/00 Purification, separation or stabilisation of hydrocarbons: Use of additives [5]

7/04 • by distillation [3]

7/05 • • with the aid of auxiliary compounds [3]

7/06 • • • by azeotropic distillation

7/08 • • • by extractive distillation

7/09 • • by fractional condensation [3]

7/10 • by extraction, i.e. purification or separation of liquid hydrocarbons with the aid of liquids [3]

7/11 • by absorption, i.e. purification or separation of gaseous hydrocarbons with the aid of liquids [3]

7/12 • by adsorption, i.e. purification or separation of hydrocarbons with the aid of solids, e.g. with ion-exchangers [3]

7/13 • • by molecular-sieve technique [2, 3]

7/135 • by gas-chromatography [3]

7/14 • by crystallisation; Purification or separation of the crystals [3]

7/144 • using membranes, e.g. selective permeation [3]

7/148 • by treatment giving rise to a chemical modification of at least one compound [3]

7/152 • • by forming adducts or complexes [3]

7/156 • • • with solutions of copper salts [3]

7/163 • • by hydrogenation [3]

7/167 • • • for removal of compounds containing a triple carbon-to-carbon bond [3]

7/17 • • • with acids or sulfur oxides [3]

7/171 • • Sulfuric acid or oleum [7]

7/173 • • with the aid of organo-metallic compounds [3]

7/177 • • by selective oligomerisation or selective polymerisation of at least one compound of the mixture [3]

7/20 • • Use of additives, e.g. for stabilisation [3]

9/00 Acyclic saturated hydrocarbons

9/02 • with one to four carbon atoms [5]

9/04 • Methane (production by treatment of sewage C02F 11/04) [5]

9/06 • Ethane

9/08 • Propane

9/10 • • with four carbon atoms [5]

9/12 • • Iso-butane

9/14 • with five to fifteen carbon atoms

9/15 • • Straight-chain hydrocarbons [3]

9/16 • • Branched-chain hydrocarbons

9/18 • • • with five carbon atoms [5]

9/21 • • • 2,2,4-Trimethylpentane [3]

9/22 • • • with more than fifteen carbon atoms

11/00 Acyclic unsaturated hydrocarbons

11/02 • Alkenes

11/04 • • Ethene

11/06 • • Propene

11/08 • • • with four carbon atoms [5]

11/09 • • • Isobutene [3]

11/10 • • • with five carbon atoms [5]

11/107 • • • with six carbon atoms [5]

11/113 • • • Methylpentenes [3]

11/12 • Alkadienes

11/14 • • Allene

11/16 • • • with four carbon atoms

11/167 • • • 1,3-Butadiene [3]

11/173 • • • with five carbon atoms [3]

11/18 • • • Isoprene [3]

11/20 • • • 1,3-Pentadiene [3]

11/21 • Alkatrienes; Alkataetraenes; Other alkapolynes [2, 3]

11/22 • • containing carbon-to-carbon triple bonds

11/24 • • Acetylene (production of acetylene gas by wet methods C10H) [5]

11/28 • • containing carbon-to-carbon double bonds and carbon-to-carbon triple bonds

11/30 • • Butenylene

13/00 Cyclic hydrocarbons containing rings other than, or in addition to, six-membered aromatic rings

13/02 • Monocyclic hydrocarbons or acyclic hydrocarbon derivatives thereof

13/04 • • with a three-membered ring

13/06 • • • with a four-membered ring

13/08 • • • with a five-membered ring

13/10 • • • with a cyclopentane ring

13/11 • • • • substituted by unsaturated hydrocarbon groups [2]

13/12 • • • • with a cyclopentene ring

13/15 • • • • with a cyclopentadiene ring [3]

13/16 • • • • with a six-membered ring

13/18 • • • • with a cyclohexane ring

13/19 • • • • substituted by unsaturated hydrocarbon groups [2]

13/20 • • • • with a cyclohexene ring

13/21 • • • • Menthadienes [2]

13/23 • • • • with a cyclothexadiene ring [3]

13/24 • • • • with a seven-membered ring

13/26 • • • • with an eight-membered ring

13/263 • • • • with a cyclo-octene or cyclo-octadiene ring [3]

13/267 • • • • with a cyclo-octatriene or cyclo-octatetraene ring [3]

13/271 • • • • with a nine- to eleven-membered ring [3]
Cyclic hydrocarbons containing only six-membered aromatic rings as cyclic part [2]

15/00

- Monocyclic hydrocarbons
- Benzene
- Toluene
- Η9H14 hydrocarbons [3]

15/06

- Ethylbenzene [3]
- Xylenes [3]
- Isopropylbenzene [3]

15/107

- having a saturated side-chain containing at least six carbon atoms, e.g. detergent alkylates [3]

15/113

- having at least two saturated side-chains, each containing at least six carbon atoms [3]

15/12

- Polycyclic non-condensed hydrocarbons

15/14

- all phenyl groups being directly linked [3]

15/16

- containing at least two phenyl groups linked by one single acyclic carbon atom

15/18

- containing at least one group with formula \[\text{[C}_6\text{H}_5\text{]}\]

15/20

- Polycyclic condensed hydrocarbons

15/24

- containing two rings

15/27

- containing three rings [3]

15/28

- Anthracenes [3]

15/30

- Phenanthrenes [3]

15/38

- containing four rings [3]

15/40

- substituted by unsaturated hydrocarbon radicals [3]

15/42

- monocyclic [3]

15/44

- the hydrocarbon substituent containing a carbon-to-carbon double bond [3]

15/46

- Styrene; Ring-alkylated styrenes [3]

15/48

- the hydrocarbon substituent containing a carbon-to-carbon triple bond [3]

15/50

- polycyclic non-condensed [3]

15/52

- containing a group with formula \[\text{[C}_6\text{H}_5\text{]}\]

15/54

- containing a group with formula \[\text{[C}_6\text{H}_5\text{]}\]

15/56

- polycyclic condensed [3]

15/58

- containing two rings [3]

15/60

- containing three rings [3]

15/62

- containing four rings [3]

Compounds containing carbon and halogens with or without hydrogen

17/00 Preparation of halogenated hydrocarbons

17/007

- from carbon or carbides and halogens [6]

17/013

- by addition of halogens [6]

17/02

- to unsaturated hydrocarbons [6]

17/04

- to unsaturated halogenated hydrocarbons [6]

17/06

- combined with replacement of hydrogen atoms by halogens

17/07

- by addition of hydrogen halides [6]

17/08

- to unsaturated hydrocarbons [6]

17/087

- to unsaturated halogenated hydrocarbons [6]

17/093

- by replacement by halogens [6]

17/10

- of hydrogen atoms (combined with addition of halogens to unsaturated hydrocarbons Co7C.17/06) [6]

17/12

- in the ring of aromatic compounds [6]

17/14

- in the side-chain of aromatic compounds [6]

17/15

- with oxygen as auxiliary reagent, e.g. oxychlorination [2, 6]
Acyclic unsaturated compounds containing halogen atoms

- containing carbon-to-carbon double bonds
- Chloro-alkenes
- Vinyl chloride
- Allyl chloride; Methallyl chloride
- Dichloro-alkenes
- Vinyldiene chloride
- Dichloro-butenes
- Trichloro-ethylene
- Tetrachloro-ethylene
- containing bromine
- Crotyl bromide
- containing iodine
- containing fluorne
- Tetrafluoroethylene
- Halogenated dienes
- Halogenated butadienes
- Chloroprene
- Halogenated polyenes with more than two carbon-to-carbon double bonds

Cyclic compounds containing halogen atoms bound to an acyclic carbon atom

- having unsaturation in the rings
- containing six-membered aromatic rings
- Trichloromethylbenzene
- containing fluorne

Compounds containing at least one halogen atom bound to a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring

- Monocyclic halogenated hydrocarbons
- with a three-membered ring
- with a four-membered ring
- with a five-membered ring
- with a six-membered ring
- with a seven-membered ring
- with an eight-membered ring
- Polycyclic halogenated hydrocarbons
- with condensed rings none of which is aromatic
- with a bicyclo ring system containing four carbon atoms
- with a bicyclo ring system containing five carbon atoms
- with a bicyclo ring system containing six carbon atoms
- with a bicyclo ring system containing seven carbon atoms
- Saturated bicyclo ring system
- Mono-unsaturated bicyclo ring system
- with a bicyclo ring system containing eight carbon atoms
- Halogenated completely or partially hydrogenated indenes
- Halogenated completely or partially hydrogenated naphthalenes
- with three condensed rings
- Halogenated completely or partially hydrogenated fluorenes
23/42 • • • • Halogenated completely or partially hydrogenated anthracenes
23/44 • • • • Halogenated completely or partially hydrogenated phenanthrenes
23/46 • • • with more than 3 condensed rings

25/00 Compounds containing at least one halogen atom bound to a six-membered aromatic ring
25/02 • Monocyclic aromatic halogenated hydrocarbons
25/06 • • Monochloro-benzene [3]
25/08 • • Dichloro-benzenes [3]
25/10 • • Trichloro-benzenes [3]
25/12 • • Hexachloro-benzene [3]
25/125 • • Halogenated xylene [2, 3]
25/13 • • containing fluoride [2, 3]
25/18 • Polycyclic aromatic halogenated hydrocarbons
25/20 • • Dichloro-diphenyl-trichloro-ethane
25/22 • • with condensed rings
25/24 • Halogenated aromatic hydrocarbons with unsaturated side chains
25/28 • • Halogenated styrenes [3]

Compounds containing carbon and oxygen, with or without hydrogen or halogens [2]

27/00 Processes involving the simultaneous production of more than one class of oxygen-containing compounds
27/02 • Saponification of organic acid esters
27/04 • by reduction of oxygen-containing compounds (C07C 29/14 takes precedence)
27/06 • • by hydrogenation of oxides of carbon
27/08 • • • with moving catalysts
27/10 • by oxidation of hydrocarbons
27/12 • • with oxygen
27/14 • • • wholly gaseous reactions
27/16 • • with other oxidising agents
27/18 • by addition of alkynes to aldehydes, ketones, or alkylene oxides
27/20 • by o xo-reaction
27/22 • • with the use of catalysts which are specific for this process
27/24 • • with moving catalysts
27/26 • Purification; Separation; Stabilisation
27/28 • • by distillation
27/30 • • • by azetropic distillation
27/32 • • by extractive distillation
27/34 • • by extraction

29/00 Preparation of compounds having hydroxy or O-metal groups bound to a carbon atom not belonging to a six-membered aromatic ring
29/03 • by addition of hydroxy groups to unsaturated carbon-to-carbon bonds, e.g. with the aid of H2O2 [3]
29/04 • by hydration of carbon-to-carbon double bonds
29/05 • • • with formation of absorption products in mineral acids and their hydrolysis [3]
29/06 • • • • the acid being sulfuric acid [3]
29/08 • • • • the acid being phosphoric acid [3]
29/09 • by hydrolysis (of esters of organic acids C07C 27/02) [3]
29/10 • • of ethers, including cyclic ethers, e.g. oxiranes
29/12 • • of esters of mineral acids [3]
29/124 • • • of halides [3]
29/128 • by alcoholyis (of esters of organic acids C07C 27/02) [3]
29/132 • by reduction of an oxygen-containing functional group [3]
29/136 • • of C-O containing groups, e.g. —COOH [3]
29/14 • • • of a —CHO group [3]
29/141 • • • • with hydrogen or hydrogen-containing gases [5]
29/143 • • • • of ketones [5]
29/145 • • • • with hydrogen or hydrogen-containing gases [5]
29/147 • • • • of carboxylic acids or derivatives thereof [5]
29/149 • • • • with hydrogen or hydrogen-containing gases [5]
29/15 • by reduction of oxides of carbon exclusively [3]
29/151 • • with hydrogen or hydrogen-containing gases [5]
29/152 • • • characterised by the reactor used [5]
29/153 • • • characterised by the catalyst used [5]
29/154 • • • • containing copper, silver, gold, or compounds thereof [5]
29/156 • • • • containing iron group metals, platinum group metals, or compounds thereof [5]
29/157 • • • • • containing platinum group metals or compounds thereof [5]
29/158 • • • • • containing rhodium or compounds thereof [5]
29/159 • • • with reducing agents other than hydrogen or hydrogen-containing gases [5]
29/16 • by o xo-reaction combined with reduction
29/17 • by hydrogenation of carbon-to-carbon double or triple bonds [3]
29/19 • • in six-membered aromatic rings [3]
29/20 • • • in non-condensed rings substituted with hydroxy groups [3]
29/32 • increasing the number of carbon atoms by reactions without formation of hydroxy groups [3]
29/34 • • by condensation involving hydroxy groups or the mineral ester groups derived therefrom, e.g. Guerbet reaction [3]
29/36 • increasing the number of carbon atoms by reactions with formation of hydroxy groups, which may occur via intermediates being derivatives of hydroxy groups, e.g. O-metal [3]
29/38 • • by reaction with aldehydes or ketones [3]
29/40 • • • with compounds containing carbon-to-metal bonds [3]
29/42 • • with compounds containing triple carbon-to-carbon bonds, e.g. with metal-alkynes [3]
29/44 • increasing the number of carbon atoms by addition reactions, i.e. reactions involving at least one carbon-to-carbon double or triple bond (C07C 29/16 takes precedence) [3]
29/46 • • • by diene-synthesis [3]
29/48 • by oxidation reactions with formation of hydroxy groups [3]
29/50 • • with molecular oxygen only [3]
29/52 • • • in the presence of mineral boron compounds with, when necessary, hydrolysis of the intermediate formed [3]
29/54 • • • starting from compounds containing carbon-to-metal bonds and followed by conversion of the O-metal to hydroxy groups [3]
29/56 • by isomerisation [3]
29/58 • • by elimination of halogen, e.g. by hydrogenolysis, splitting-off (C07C 29/124 takes precedence) [3]
29/60 • • by elimination of hydroxy groups, e.g. by dehydration (C07C 29/34 takes precedence) [3]
29/62  • by introduction of halogen; by substitution of halogen atoms by other halogen atoms [3]
29/64  • by simultaneous introduction of hydroxy groups and halogens [3]
29/66  • by addition of hypohalogenous acids, which may be formed in situ, to carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [3]
29/68  • Preparation of metal-alkoholates (C07C 29/42, C07C 29/54 take precedence) [3]
29/70  • by converting hydroxy groups to O-metal groups [3]
29/72  • by oxidation of carbon-to-metal bonds [3]
29/74  • Separation; Purification; Stabilisation; Use of additives [3]
29/76  • by physical treatment [3]
29/78  • by condensation or crystallisation [3]
29/80  • by distillation [3]
29/82  • by azetropic distillation [3]
29/84  • by extractive distillation [3]
29/86  • by liquid-liquid treatment [3]
29/88  • by treatment giving rise to a chemical modification of at least one compound (chemisorption C07C 29/76) [3]
29/90  • using hydrogen only [3]
29/92  • by a consecutive conversion and reconstruction [3]
29/94  • Use of additives, e.g. for stabilisation [3]

31/00 Saturated compounds having hydroxy or O-metal groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms
31/02  • Monohydroxylic acyclic alcohols
31/04  • Methanol
31/08  • Ethanol
31/10  • containing three carbon atoms
31/12  • containing four carbon atoms
31/125  • containing five to twenty-two carbon atoms [3]
31/13  • Monohydroxylic alcohols containing saturated rings [2, 3]
31/133  • monocylic [3]
31/135  • with five- or six-membered rings; Naphthenic alcohols [3]
31/137  • polycyclic with condensed ring systems [3]
31/18  • Polyhydroxylic acyclic alcohols
31/20  • Dihydroxylic alcohols
31/22  • Trihydroxylic alcohols, e.g. glycerol [3]
31/24  • Tetrahydroxylic alcohols, e.g. pentaerythritol [3]
31/26  • Hexahydroxylic alcohols
31/27  • Polyhydroxylic alcohols containing saturated rings [3]
31/28  • Metal alcoholates
31/30  • Alkali-metal or alkaline-earth-metal alcoholates
31/32  • Aluminium alcoholates
31/34  • Halogenated alcohols
31/36  • the halogen not being fluorine [3]
31/38  • containing only fluorine as halogen [3]
31/40  • perhalogenated [3]
31/42  • Halogenated polyhydroxylic acyclic alcohols [3]
31/44  • Halogenated alcohols containing saturated rings [3]

33/00 Unsaturated compounds having hydroxy or O-metal groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms
33/02  • Acyclic alcohols with carbon-to-carbon double bonds
33/03  • with only one double bond [3]
33/03  • in beta-position, e.g. allyl alcohol, methallyl alcohol [3]
33/035  • Alkenediols [3]
33/04  • Acyclic alcohols with carbon-to-carbon triple bonds
33/042  • with only one triple bond [3]
33/044  • Alkynediols [3]
33/046  • Butynediols [3]
33/048  • with double and triple bonds [3]
33/05  • Alcohols containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [2]
33/12  • containing five-membered rings [3]
33/14  • containing six-membered rings [3]
33/16  • containing rings with more than six ring members [3]
33/18  • Monohydroxylic alcohols containing only six-membered aromatic rings as cyclic part [3]
33/20  • monocyclic [3]
33/22  • Benzylationcoh; Phenylethyl alcohol [3]
33/24  • polycyclic without condensed ring systems [3]
33/26  • Polyhydroxylic alcohols containing only six-membered aromatic rings as cyclic part [3]
33/28  • Alcohols containing only six-membered aromatic rings as cyclic part with unsaturation outside the aromatic rings [3]
33/30  • monocyclic [3]
33/32  • Cinnamyl alcohol [3]
33/34  • Monohydroxylic alcohols containing six-membered aromatic rings and other rings [3]
33/36  • Polyhydroxylic alcohols containing six-membered aromatic rings and other rings [3]
33/38  • Alcohols containing six-membered aromatic rings and other rings and having unsaturation outside the aromatic rings [3]
33/40  • Halogenated unsaturated alcohols [3]
33/42  • acyclic [3]
33/44  • containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [3]
33/46  • containing only six-membered aromatic rings as cyclic part [3]
33/48  • with unsaturation outside the aromatic rings [3]
33/50  • containing six-membered aromatic rings and other rings [3]

35/00 Compounds having at least one hydroxy or O-metal group bound to a carbon atom of a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring [2]
35/02  • monocyclic
35/04  • containing three- or four-membered rings
35/06  • containing five-membered rings
35/08  • containing six-membered rings
35/12  • Menthol
35/14  • with more than one hydroxy group bound to the ring
35/16  • Inositol
35/17  • with unsaturation only outside the ring [3]
35/18  • with unsaturation at least in the ring [3]
Preparation of compounds having hydroxy or O-metal groups bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring

- by replacing functional groups bound to a six-membered aromatic ring by hydroxy groups, e.g. by hydrolysis
- by substitution of halogen
- by substitution of SO₂H groups or a derivative thereof
- by substitution of a group bound to the ring by nitrogen
- by substitution of a NH₂ group
- by substitution of a group bound to the ring by oxygen, e.g. ether group
- by conversion of non-aromatic six-membered rings or of such rings formed in situ into aromatic six-membered rings, e.g. by dehydrogenation
- with simultaneous reduction of C=O group in that ring
- by decomposition of hydroperoxides, e.g. cumene hydroperoxide
- by reactions increasing the number of carbon atoms
- by addition reactions, i.e. reactions involving at least one carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bond

Compounds having at least one hydroxy or O-metal group bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring

- by condensation involving hydroxy groups of phenols or alcohols or the ether or mineral ester group derived therefrom
- by condensation involving halogen atoms of halogenated compounds
- using aldehydes or ketones
- by exchange of hydrocarbon groups which may be substituted, from other compounds, e.g. transalkylation
- by reactions decreasing the number of carbon atoms (C07C 37/01, C07C 37/08, C07C 37/48 take precedence)
- by splitting polyaromatic compounds, e.g. polyphenolalkanes
- by hydrolysis of lignin or sulfite waste liquor
- by replacing a carboxyl or aldehyde group by a hydroxy group
- by oxidation reactions introducing directly a hydroxy group on a CH-group belonging to a six-membered aromatic ring with the aid of molecular oxygen
- by oxidation reactions introducing directly a hydroxy group on a CH-group belonging to a six-membered aromatic ring with the aid of other oxidants than molecular oxygen or their mixtures with molecular oxygen
- by introduction of halogen; by substitution of halogen atoms by other halogen atoms
- Preparation of O-metal compounds with the O-metal group linked to a carbon atom belonging to a six-membered aromatic ring
- by conversion of hydroxy groups to O-metal groups
- Separation; Purification; Stabilisation; Use of additives
- by physical treatment
- by liquid-liquid treatment
- by distillation
- by steam distillation
- by azetroptic distillation
- by extractive distillation
- by solid-liquid treatment; by chemisorption
- by crystallisation
- by treatment giving rise to a chemical modification (by chemisorption C07C 37/82)
- Use of additives, e.g. for stabilisation

Notes
In this group, in condensed ring systems of six-membered aromatic rings and other rings, the double bond belonging to the benzene ring is not considered as unsaturated for the non-aromatic ring condensed thereon.

- monocyclic with no unsaturation outside the aromatic ring
- Phenol
- Alkylated phenols
- containing only methyl groups as alkyl groups, e.g. cresols, xyleneols
- Dihydroxy benzenes; Alkylated derivatives thereof
- Polyhydroxy benzenes; Alkylated derivatives thereof (C07C 39/08 takes precedence)
41/00 Preparation of ethers; Preparation of compounds having \( \text{C} - \text{O} - \text{C} \) groups, \( \text{C} - \text{O} - \text{C} \) groups or \( \text{C} - \text{C} \) groups

41/01 Preparation of ethers [3]
41/02 • from oxiranes [3]

41/03 • by reaction of an oxirane ring with a hydroxy group [3]
41/05 • by addition of compounds to unsaturated compounds [3]
41/06 • by addition of organic compounds only [3]
41/08 • to carbon-to-carbon triple bonds [3]
41/09 • by dehydration of compounds containing hydroxy groups [3]
41/14 • by exchange of organic parts on the ether-oxygen for other organic parts, e.g., by trans-etherification [3]
41/16 • by reaction of esters of mineral or organic acids with hydroxy or O-metal groups [3]
41/18 • by reactions not forming ether-oxygen groups [3]
41/20 • by hydrogenation of carbon-to-carbon double or triple bonds [3]
41/22 • by introduction of halogen; by substitution of halogen atoms by other halogen atoms [3]
41/24 • by elimination of halogen, e.g., elimination of HCl [3]
41/26 • by introduction of hydroxy or O-metal groups [3]
41/28 • from acetals, e.g., by dealcoholysis [3]
41/30 • by increasing the number of carbon atoms, e.g., by oligomerisation [3]
41/32 • by isomerisation [3]
41/34 • Separation; Purification; Stabilisation; Use of additives [3]
41/36 • by solid-liquid treatment; by chemisorption [3]
41/38 • by liquid-liquid treatment [3]
41/40 • by change of physical state, e.g., by crystallisation [3]
41/42 • by distillation [3]
41/44 • by treatment giving rise to a chemical modification (by chemisorption C07C 41/36) [3]
41/46 • Use of additives, e.g., for stabilisation [3]
41/48 • Preparation of compounds having \( \text{C} - \text{C} \) groups [3]
41/50 • by reactions producing \( \text{C} - \text{O} - \text{C} \) groups [3]
41/52 • by substitution of halogen only [3]
41/54 • by addition of compounds to unsaturated carbon-to-carbon bonds [3]
41/56 • by condensation of aldehydes, paraformaldehyde, or ketones [3]
41/58 • Separation; Purification; Stabilisation; Use of additives [3]
41/60 • Preparation of compounds having \( \text{C} - \text{C} \) groups or \( \text{C} - \text{C} \) groups

43/00 Ethers; Compounds having \( \text{C} - \text{O} - \text{C} \) groups,

43/02 Ethers
43/03 • having all ether-oxygen atoms bound to acyclic carbon atoms [3]
Preparation of compounds having -C=O groups bound only to carbon or hydrogen atoms; Preparation of chelates of such compounds [2]

45/00

45/00/01

45/14

45/17

45/18

45/19

45/20

45/21

45/22

45/23

45/24

45/25

45/26

45/27

45/28

45/29

45/30

45/31

45/32

45/33

45/34

45/35

45/36

45/37

45/38

45/39

45/40

45/41

45/42

45/43

45/44

45/45

45/46

45/47

45/48

45/49

45/50

45/51

45/52

45/53

45/54

43/04

43/06

43/10

43/11

43/15

43/16

43/17

43/18

43/19

43/20

43/21

43/22

43/23

43/24

43/25

43/26

43/27

43/28

43/29

43/30

43/31

43/32

43/33

43/34

43/35

43/36

43/37

43/38

43/39

43/40

43/41

43/42

43/43

43/44

43/45

43/46

43/47

43/48

43/49

43/50

43/51

43/52

43/53

43/54

43/30/01

43/30/02

43/30/03

43/30/04

43/30/05

43/30/06

43/30/07

43/30/08

43/30/09

43/30/10

43/30/11

43/30/12

43/30/13

43/30/14

43/30/15

43/30/16

43/30/17

43/30/18

43/30/19
45/55  •  of oligo- or polymeric oxo-compounds [3]
45/56  •  from heterocyclic compounds (C07C 45/55 takes precedence) [3]
45/57  •  with oxygen as the only hetero atom [3]
45/58  •  in three-membered rings [3]
45/59  •  in five-membered rings (from oxazones C07C 45/40) [3]
45/60  •  in six-membered rings [3]
45/61  •  by reactions not involving the formation of -C=O groups [3]
45/62  •  by hydrogenation of carbon-to-carbon double or triple bonds [3]
45/63  •  by introduction of halogen; by substitution of halogen atoms by other halogen atoms [3]
45/64  •  by introduction of functional groups containing oxygen only in singly bound form [3]
45/65  •  by splitting-off hydrogen atoms or functional groups; by hydrogenolysis of functional groups [3]
45/66  •  by dehydration [3]
45/67  •  by isomerisation; by change of size of the carbon skeleton [3]
45/68  •  by increase in the number of carbon atoms [3]
45/69  •  by addition to carbon-to-carbon double or triple bonds [3]
45/70  •  by reaction with functional groups containing oxygen only in singly bound form [3]
45/71  •  being hydroxy groups [3]
45/72  •  by reaction of compounds containing C=O groups with the same or other compounds containing C=O groups [3]
45/73  •  combined with hydrogenation [3]
45/74  •  combined with dehydration [3]
45/75  •  Reactions with formaldehyde [3]
45/76  •  with the aid of ketenes [3]
45/77  •  Preparation of chelates of aldehydes or ketones [3]
45/78  •  Separation; Purification; Stabilisation; Use of additives [3]
45/79  •  by solid-liquid treatment; by chemisorption [3]
45/80  •  by liquid-liquid treatment [3]
45/81  •  by change in the physical state, e.g. crystallisation [3]
45/82  •  by distillation [3]
45/83  •  by extractive distillation [3]
45/84  •  by azetropic distillation [3]
45/85  •  by treatment giving rise to a chemical modification [3]
45/86  •  Use of additives, e.g. for stabilisation [3]
45/87  •  Preparation of ketenes or dimeric ketenes [3]
45/88  •  from ketones [3]
45/89  •  from carboxylic acids, their anhydrides, esters or halides [3]
45/90  •  Separation; Purification; Stabilisation; Use of additives [3]

46/00  Preparation of quinones [3]
46/02  •  by oxidation giving rise to quinoid structures [3]
46/04  •  of unsubstituted ring carbon atoms in six-membered aromatic rings [3]
46/06  •  of at least one hydroxy group on a six-membered aromatic ring [3]
46/08  •  with molecular oxygen [3]
46/10  •  Separation; Purification; Stabilisation; Use of additives [3]

47/00  Compounds having —CHO groups
47/02  •  Saturated compounds having —CHO groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms or to hydrogen
47/04  •  Formaldehyde
47/06  •  •  Preparation from carbon monoxide [3]
47/04  •  •  Preparation by depolymerisation [3]
47/05  •  •  Preparation by oxidation of hydrocarbons [3]
47/05  •  •  Preparation by oxidation of methanol [3]
47/05  •  •  using noble metals or compounds thereof as catalysts [3]
47/058  •  •  Separation; Purification; Stabilisation; Use of additives [3]
47/06  •  •  Acetaldehyde
47/07  •  •  Preparation by oxidation [3]
47/09  •  •  Separation; Purification; Stabilisation; Use of additives [3]
47/105  •  •  containing rings [3]
47/11  •  •  monocyclic [3]
47/115  •  •  containing condensed ring systems [3]
47/12  •  •  containing more than one —CHO group
47/127  •  •  Glyoxal [3]
47/133  •  •  containing rings [3]
47/14  •  •  containing halogen
47/16  •  •  Trichloroacetaldehyde
47/17  •  •  containing rings [3]
47/19  •  •  containing hydroxyaldehyde [2, 3]
47/192  •  •  containing rings [3]
47/195  •  •  containing halogen [3]
47/198  •  •  containing ether groups, \( \text{O} \) groups,
47/20  •  •  Unsaturated compounds having —CHO groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms
47/21  •  •  with only carbon-to-carbon double bonds as unsaturation [3]
47/22  •  •  Acrylaldehyde; Methacrylaldehyde [3]
47/222  •  •  with only carbon-to-carbon triple bonds as unsaturation [3]
47/225  •  •  containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [3]
47/228  •  •  containing six-membered aromatic rings, e.g. phenylacetaldelyde [3]
47/23  •  •  polycyclic [3]
47/232  •  •  having unsaturation outside the aromatic rings [3]
47/235  •  •  containing six-membered aromatic rings and other rings [3]
47/238  •  •  having unsaturation outside the aromatic rings [3]
47/24  •  •  containing halogen
47/26  •  •  containing hydroxy groups [3]
47/263  •  •  acyclic [3]
47/267  •  •  containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [3]
47/27  •  •  containing six-membered aromatic rings [3]
47/273  •  •  containing halogen [3]
47/277  •  •  containing ether groups, \( \text{O} \) groups,

IPC (2014.01), Section C
Saturated compounds having \(-\text{CHO}\) groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings

with a three- or four-membered ring [3]

with a five-membered ring

with a six-membered ring

with a seven- to twelve-membered ring [3]

polycyclic

having a \(-\text{CHO}\) group on a condensed ring system [3]

containing halogen [3]

containing hydroxy groups

containing ether groups, \(\text{C} \equiv \text{O} - \text{C} \equiv \text{C}\) groups,

\(\text{O} - \text{C} \equiv \text{C}\) groups, or \(\text{C} \equiv \text{C}\) groups [3]

Unsaturated compounds having \(-\text{CHO}\) groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings

with a three- or four-membered ring [3]

with a five-membered ring [3]

with a six-membered ring [3]

with a seven- to twelve-membered ring [3]

polycyclic [3]

containing a condensed ring system [3]

having unsaturation outside the rings [2]

containing six-membered aromatic rings [3]

containing halogen [3]

containing hydroxy groups

containing ether groups, \(\text{C} \equiv \text{O} - \text{C} \equiv \text{C}\) groups,

\(\text{O} - \text{C} \equiv \text{C}\) groups, or \(\text{C} \equiv \text{C}\) groups [3]

Compounds having \(-\text{CHO}\) groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings

Benzaldehyde

Alkylated benzaldehydes [3]

Diformyl-benzences; Alkylated derivatives thereof [3]

polycyclic [3]

having unsaturation outside the six-membered aromatic rings [3]

containing halogen [2]

containing hydroxy groups

all hydroxy groups bound to the ring [3]

polycyclic [3]

containing ether groups, \(\text{C} \equiv \text{O} - \text{C} \equiv \text{C}\) groups,

\(\text{O} - \text{C} \equiv \text{C}\) groups, or \(\text{C} \equiv \text{C}\) groups [3]

Vanillin

Ketones; Ketenes; Dimeric ketenes; Ketonic chelates

Saturated compounds containing keto groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms

Acetone [3]

Methyl-ethyl ketone [3]

containing rings [3]

monocyclic [3]

containing condensed ring systems [3]

Ketones containing more than one keto group

Acetylacetone, i.e. 2,4-pentanedione

containing rings [3]

containing halogen

containing rings [3]

containing only fluorine as halogen [3]

containing hydroxy groups [2]

containing rings [3]

containing halogen [3]

containing ether groups, \(\text{C} \equiv \text{O} - \text{C} \equiv \text{C}\) groups,

\(\text{O} - \text{C} \equiv \text{C}\) groups, or \(\text{C} \equiv \text{C}\) groups [2, 3]

Unsaturated compounds containing keto groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms

with only carbon-to-carbon double bonds as unsaturation [3]

Methyl-vinyl ketone [3]

with only carbon-to-carbon triple bonds as unsaturation [3]

containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [3]

containing six-membered aromatic rings [3]

polycyclic [3]

having unsaturation outside the aromatic rings [3]

containing six-membered aromatic rings and other rings [3]

containing halogen [3]

containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [3]

containing six-membered aromatic rings [3]

having unsaturation outside the aromatic rings [3]

containing six-membered aromatic rings and other rings [3]

containing halogen [3]

containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [3]

containing six-membered aromatic rings [3]

having unsaturation outside the aromatic rings [3]

containing six-membered aromatic rings and other rings [3]

containing ether groups, \(\text{C} \equiv \text{O} - \text{C} \equiv \text{C}\) groups,

\(\text{O} - \text{C} \equiv \text{C}\) groups, or \(\text{C} \equiv \text{C}\) groups [3]

containing \(-\text{CHO}\) groups [3]

Saturated compounds containing keto groups bound to rings [3]

to a three- or four-membered ring [3]

to a five-membered ring [3]

to a six-membered ring [3]

to a seven- to twelve-membered ring [3]
polycyclic [3]

both carbon atoms bound to the keto group belonging to rings [3]

IPC (2014.01), Section C
C07C

49/323  •  •  •  having keto groups bound to condensed ring systems [3]
49/327  •  containing halogen [3]
49/333  •  polycyclic [3]
49/337  •  containing hydroxy groups [3]
49/345  •  •  polycyclic [3]
49/35  •  containing ether groups, \( \text{C-O-C} \) groups, \( \text{O-C} \) groups, or \( \text{C-C} \) groups [3]
49/355  •  containing \( \text{--CHO} \) groups [3]
49/365  •  Saturated compounds containing a keto group being part of a ring [3]
49/39  •  of a three- or four-membered ring [3]
49/395  •  of a five-membered ring [3]
49/403  •  of a six-membered ring [3]
49/407  •  •  Menthones [3]
49/413  •  of a seven- to twelve-membered ring [3]
49/417  •  polycyclic [3]
49/423  •  •  a keto group being part of a condensed ring system [3]
49/427  •  •  •  having two rings [3]
49/433  •  •  •  the condensed ring system containing seven carbon atoms [3]
49/437  •  •  •  Camphor; Fenitone [3]
49/443  •  •  •  the condensed ring system containing eight or nine carbon atoms [3]
49/447  •  •  •  the condensed ring system containing ten carbon atoms [3]
49/453  •  •  •  having three rings [3]
49/457  •  •  containing halogen [3]
49/463  •  •  •  a keto group being part of a six-membered ring [3]
49/467  •  •  •  polycyclic [3]
49/473  •  •  •  a keto group being part of a condensed ring system [3]
49/477  •  •  •  •  having two rings [3]
49/483  •  •  •  •  having three rings [3]
49/487  •  •  containing hydroxy groups [3]
49/493  •  •  •  a keto group being part of a three- to five-membered ring [3]
49/497  •  •  •  a keto group being part of a six-membered ring [3]
49/503  •  •  •  a keto group being part of a seven- to twelve-membered ring [3]
49/507  •  •  •  polycyclic [3]
49/513  •  •  •  a keto group being part of a condensed ring system [3]
49/517  •  •  containing ether groups, \( \text{C-O-C} \) groups, \( \text{O-C} \) groups, or \( \text{C-C} \) groups [3]
49/523  •  •  containing \( \text{--CHO} \) groups [3]
49/527  •  Unsaturated compounds containing keto groups bound to rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [3]
49/533  •  •  to a three- or four-membered ring [3]
49/537  •  •  to a five-membered ring [3]
49/543  •  •  to a six-membered ring [3]
49/547  •  •  to a seven- to twelve-membered ring [3]
49/553  •  •  polycyclic [3]
49/557  •  •  •  having unsaturation outside the rings [3]
49/563  •  •  •  containing six-membered aromatic rings [3]
49/567  •  •  •  containing halogen [3]
49/573  •  •  •  containing hydroxy groups [3]
49/577  •  •  •  containing ether groups, \( \text{C-O-C} \) groups, \( \text{O-C} \) groups, or \( \text{C-C} \) groups [3]
49/583  •  •  containing \( \text{--CHO} \) groups [3]
49/587  •  Unsaturated compounds containing a keto group being part of a ring [3]
49/593  •  •  of a three- or four-membered ring [3]
49/597  •  •  of a five-membered ring [3]
49/603  •  •  of a six-membered ring [3]
49/607  •  •  of a seven- to twelve-membered ring [3]
49/613  •  •  polycyclic [3]
49/617  •  •  •  •  a keto group being part of a condensed ring system [3]
49/623  •  •  •  •  having two rings [3]
49/627  •  •  •  •  •  the condensed ring system containing seven carbon atoms [3]
49/633  •  •  •  •  •  the condensed ring system containing eight or nine carbon atoms [3]
49/637  •  •  •  •  •  the condensed ring system containing ten carbon atoms [3]
49/643  •  •  •  •  •  having three rings [3]
49/647  •  •  •  •  •  having unsaturation outside the ring [3]
49/653  •  •  •  •  •  polycyclic [3]
49/657  •  •  •  •  •  containing six-membered aromatic rings [3]
49/665  •  •  •  •  •  a keto group being part of a condensed ring system [3]
49/67  •  •  •  •  •  having two rings, e.g. tetralones [3]
49/670  •  •  •  •  •  having three rings [3]
49/683  •  •  •  •  •  having unsaturation outside the aromatic rings [3]
49/687  •  •  •  •  •  containing halogen [3]
49/693  •  •  •  •  •  polycyclic [3]
49/697  •  •  •  •  •  containing six-membered aromatic rings [3]
49/703  •  •  •  •  •  containing hydroxy groups [3]
49/707  •  •  •  •  •  a keto group being part of a three- to five-membered ring [3]
49/713  •  •  •  •  •  a keto group being part of a six-membered ring [3]
49/717  •  •  •  •  •  a keto group being part of a seven- to twelve-membered ring [3]
49/723  •  •  •  •  •  polycyclic [3]
49/727  •  •  •  •  •  a keto group being part of a condensed ring system [3]
49/733  •  •  •  •  •  having two rings [3]
49/737  •  •  •  •  •  having three rings [3]
49/743  •  •  •  •  •  having unsaturation outside the rings, e.g. humulones, lupulones [3]
49/747  •  •  •  •  •  containing six-membered aromatic rings [3]
49/753  •  •  •  •  •  containing ether groups, \( \text{C-O-C} \) groups, \( \text{O-C} \) groups, or \( \text{C-C} \) groups [3]
49/755  •  •  •  •  •  a keto group being part of a condensed ring system with two or three rings, at least one ring being a six-membered aromatic ring [3]
49/757  •  •  •  •  •  containing \( \text{--CHO} \) groups [3]
Ketones containing a keto group bound to a six-membered aromatic ring (compounds having a keto group being part of a condensed ring system and being bound to a six-membered aromatic ring C07C 49/657-C07C 49/757)

49/76  •  Acetophenone
49/78  •  with all keto groups bound to a non-condensed ring [3]
49/782 •  polycyclic [3]
49/784 •  containing hydroxy groups [3]
49/786 •  containing halogen [3]
49/788 •  containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [3]
49/792 •  containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [3]
49/794 •  containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [3]
49/796 •  containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [3]
49/798 •  containing halogen [3]
49/800 •  containing hydroxy groups [3]
49/807 •  containing —CHO groups [3]
49/813 •  containing —C=O groups [3]
49/815 •  Ketene, i.e. C2H4O [3]
49/830 •  Ketonic chelates [3]

49/835 •  Ketonic chelates [3]
49/840 •  Ketonic chelates [3]
49/842 •  Ketonic chelates [3]
49/844 •  Ketonic chelates [3]
49/846 •  Ketonic chelates [3]
49/848 •  Ketonic chelates [3]
49/850 •  Ketonic chelates [3]
49/852 •  Ketonic chelates [3]
49/854 •  Ketonic chelates [3]
49/856 •  Ketonic chelates [3]
49/858 •  Ketonic chelates [3]
49/860 •  Ketonic chelates [3]
49/862 •  Ketonic chelates [3]
49/864 •  Ketonic chelates [3]
49/866 •  Ketonic chelates [3]
49/868 •  Ketonic chelates [3]
49/900 •  Ketonic chelates [3]
49/914 •  Ketonic chelates [3]
49/920 •  Ketonic chelates [3]

50/00 Quinones (for quinone methides, see unsaturated ketones with a keto group being part of a ring) [3]

Note(s)

In this group, quinhydrones are classified according to their quinoid part.

50/02 •  with monocyclic quinoid structure [3]
50/04 •  with monocyclic quinoid structure [3]
50/06 •  with monocyclic quinoid structure [3]
50/08 •  with monocyclic quinoid structure [3]
50/10 •  with monocyclic quinoid structure [3]
50/12 •  with monocyclic quinoid structure [3]
50/14 •  with monocyclic quinoid structure [3]
50/16 •  with monocyclic quinoid structure [3]
50/18 •  with monocyclic quinoid structure [3]
50/20 •  with monocyclic quinoid structure [3]
50/22 •  with monocyclic quinoid structure [3]
50/24 •  containing halogen [3]
50/26 •  containing halogen [3]
50/28 •  containing halogen [3]
50/30 •  containing halogen [3]
50/32 •  containing halogen [3]
50/34 •  containing halogen [3]
50/36 •  containing halogen [3]
50/38 •  containing halogen [3]
50/40 •  containing halogen [3]
50/42 •  containing halogen [3]
50/44 •  containing halogen [3]
50/46 •  containing halogen [3]
50/48 •  containing halogen [3]
50/50 •  containing halogen [3]
50/52 •  containing halogen [3]
50/54 •  containing halogen [3]
50/56 •  containing halogen [3]
50/58 •  containing halogen [3]
50/60 •  containing halogen [3]
50/62 •  containing halogen [3]
50/64 •  containing halogen [3]
50/66 •  containing halogen [3]
50/68 •  containing halogen [3]
50/70 •  containing halogen [3]
50/72 •  containing halogen [3]
50/74 •  containing halogen [3]
50/76 •  containing halogen [3]
50/78 •  containing halogen [3]
50/80 •  containing halogen [3]
50/82 •  containing halogen [3]
50/84 •  containing halogen [3]
50/86 •  containing halogen [3]
50/88 •  containing halogen [3]
50/90 •  containing halogen [3]
50/92 •  containing halogen [3]

50/00 Preparation of carboxylic acids or their salts, halides, or anhydrides [2]

51/02 •  from salts of carboxylic acids
51/04 •  from carboxylic acid halides
51/06 •  from carboxylic acid amides
51/08 •  from nitriles
51/083 •  from carboxylic acid anhydrides [3]
51/087 •  by hydrolysis [3]
51/09 •  from carboxylic acid esters or lactones (saponification of carboxylic acid esters C07C 27/02)
51/093 •  from hydrolysis of —CX3, X being halogen [3]
51/097 •  from or via nitro-substituted organic compounds [3]
51/10 •  by reaction with carbon monoxide
51/12 •  on an oxygen-containing group in organic compounds, e.g. alcohols
51/14 •  on a carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bond in organic compounds [3]
51/145 •  with simultaneous oxidation [3]
51/15 •  by reaction of organic compounds with carbon dioxide, e.g. Kolbe-Schmitt synthesis [2]
51/16 •  by oxidation (C07C 51/145 takes precedence) [3]
51/21 •  with molecular oxygen [3]
51/215 •  of saturated hydrocarbyl groups [3]
51/225 •  of paraffinic waxes [3]
51/23 •  of oxygen-containing groups to carboxyl groups [3]
51/235 •  of —CHO groups or primary alcohol groups [3]
51/245 •  of keto groups or secondary alcohol groups [3]
51/25 •  of unsaturated compounds containing no six-membered aromatic ring [3]
51/255 •  of compounds containing six-membered aromatic rings without ring-splitting [3]
51/265 •  having alkyl side chains which are oxidised to carboxyl groups [3]
51/27 •  with oxides of nitrogen or nitrogen-containing mineral acids [3]
51/275 •  of hydrocarbyl groups [3]
51/285 •  with peroxy-compounds [3]
51/29 •  with halogen-containing compounds which may be formed in situ [3]
51/295 •  with inorganic bases, e.g. by alkali fusion [3]
51/305 •  with sulfur or sulfur-containing compounds [3]
51/31 •  of cyclic compounds with ring-splitting [3]
51/34 •  by oxidation with ozone; by hydrolysis of ozonides [3]
51/347 •  by reactions not involving formation of carboxyl groups [3]
51/353 •  by isomerisation; by change of size of the carbon skeleton [3]
51/36 •  by hydrogenation of carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [3]
51/363 •  by introduction of halogen; by substitution of halogen atoms by other halogen atoms [3]
51/367 •  by introduction of functional groups containing oxygen only in singly bound form [3]
51/373 •  by introduction of functional groups containing oxygen only in doubly bound form [3]
51/377  •  •  by splitting-off hydrogen or functional groups; by hydrogenolysis of functional groups [3]

51/38  •  •  •  by decarboxylation [3]

51/41  •  Preparation of salts of carboxylic acids by conversion of the acids or their salts into salts with the same carboxylic acid part (preparation of soap C11D) [3]

51/42  •  Separation; Purification; Stabilisation; Use of additives [3]

51/43  •  •  by change of the physical state, e.g. crystallisation [3]

51/44  •  •  •  by distillation [3]

51/46  •  •  •  •  by azeotropic distillation [3]

51/47  •  •  by solid-liquid treatment; by chemisorption [3]

51/48  •  •  by liquid-liquid treatment

51/487  •  •  by treatment giving rise to chemical modification (by chemisorption C07C 51/47) [3]

51/493  •  •  •  whereby carboxylic acid esters are formed [3]

51/50  •  •  Use of additives, e.g. for stabilisation [3]

51/54  •  Preparation of carboxylic acid anhydrides (by oxidation C07C 51/16)

51/56  •  •  from organic acids, their salts, or their esters

51/567  •  •  by reactions not involving the carboxylic acid anhydride group [3]

51/573  •  •  •  Separation; Purification; Stabilisation; Use of additives [3]

51/58  •  Preparation of carboxylic acid halides

51/60  •  •  by conversion of carboxylic acids or their anhydrides into halides with the same carboxylic acid part [3]

51/62  •  •  by reactions not involving the carboxylic acid halide group [3]

51/64  •  •  Separation; Purification; Stabilisation; Use of additives [3]

53/00 Saturated compounds having only one carboxyl group bound to an acyclic carbon atom or hydrogen

53/02  •  Formic acid

53/04  •  •  Preparation from carbon monoxide

53/06  •  •  Salts thereof

53/08  •  Acetic acid

53/10  •  •  Salts thereof

53/12  •  Acetic anhydride (ketene C07C 49/90)

53/122  •  Propionic acid [3]

53/124  •  Acids containing four carbon atoms [3]

53/126  •  Acids containing more than four carbon atoms [3]

53/128  •  •  the carboxyl group being bound to a carbon atom bound to at least two other carbon atoms, e.g. neoacids [3]

53/132  •  •  containing rings [3]

53/134  •  •  monocyclic [3]

53/136  •  •  containing condensed ring systems [3]

53/138  •  •  containing an adamantane ring system [3]

53/15  •  containing halogen [3]

53/16  •  •  Halogenated acetic acids [3]

53/18  •  •  containing fluorine [3]

53/19  •  •  •  containing three or more carbon atoms [3]

53/21  •  •  containing fluorine [3]

53/23  •  •  containing rings [3]

53/38  •  Acyl halides [3]

53/40  •  •  Acetyl halides [3]

53/42  •  •  of acids containing three or more carbon atoms [3]

53/44  •  •  containing rings [3]

53/46  •  •  containing halogen outside the carboxyl halide group [3]

53/48  •  •  Halogenated acetyl halides [3]

53/50  •  •  of acids containing three or more carbon atoms [3]

55/00 Saturated compounds having more than one carboxyl group bound to acyclic carbon atoms [2]

55/02  •  •  Diacrylic acids

55/06  •  •  Oxalic acid

55/07  •  •  •  Salts thereof [3]

55/08  •  •  Malonic acid

55/10  •  •  Succinonic acid

55/12  •  •  Glutaric acid

55/14  •  •  Adipic acid

55/16  •  •  Pimelic acid

55/18  •  •  Azelaic acid

55/20  •  •  Sebacic acid

55/21  •  •  Diacrylic acids having twelve carbon atoms [3]

55/22  •  •  Tricarboxylic acids

55/24  •  containing more than three carboxyl groups

55/26  •  containing rings [3]

55/28  •  •  monocylic [3]

55/30  •  •  containing condensed ring systems [3]

55/32  •  containing halogen [3]

55/34  •  •  containing rings [3]

55/36  •  Acyl halides [3]

55/38  •  •  containing rings [3]

55/40  •  •  containing halogen outside the carboxyl halide group [3]

57/00 Unsaturated compounds having carboxyl groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms [2]

57/02  •  with only carbon-to-carbon double bonds as unsaturation

57/03  •  •  Monocarboxylic acids [3]

57/04  •  •  •  Acrylic acid; Methacrylic acid [3]

57/045  •  •  •  •  Preparation by oxidation in the liquid phase [3]

57/05  •  •  •  •  Preparation by oxidation in the gaseous phase [3]

57/055  •  •  •  •  •  starting from unsaturated aldehydes [3]

57/065  •  •  •  •  •  Preparation by splitting-off H—X, X being halogen, OR, or NR₃, R being hydrogen or a hydrocarbon group [3]

57/07  •  •  •  •  Separation; Purification; Stabilisation; Use of additives [3]

57/075  •  •  •  •  •  •  Use of additives, e.g. for stabilisation [3]

57/08  •  •  •  Crotonic acid [3]

57/10  •  •  Sorbic acid [3]

57/12  •  •  •  Straight chain carboxylic acids containing eighteen carbon atoms [3]

57/13  •  •  •  Diacrylic acids [3]

57/145  •  •  •  Maleic acid [3]

57/15  •  •  •  Fumaric acid [3]

57/155  •  •  •  Citraconic acid [3]

57/16  •  •  •  •  •  •  Muconic acid [3]

57/18  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  with only carbon-to-carbon triple bonds as unsaturation

57/20  •  •  Propionic acid

57/22  •  •  Acetylene dicarboxylic acid

57/24  •  •  Diacetylene or polycyclylene dicarboxylic acids

57/26  •  •  containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [3]

57/28  •  •  containing an adamantane ring system [3]

57/30  •  •  •  containing six-membered aromatic rings [3]

57/32  •  •  •  Phenylacetic acid [3]
57/34  •  containing more than one carboxyl group [3]
57/36  •  Phenylmalonic acid [3]
57/38  •  polyyclic [3]
57/40  •  containing condensed ring systems [3]
57/42  •  having unsaturation outside the rings [3]
57/44  •  Cinnamic acid [3]
57/46  •  containing six-membered aromatic rings and other rings, e.g. cyclohexylenylacetic acid [3]
57/48  •  having unsaturation outside the aromatic rings [3]
57/50  •  containing condensed ring systems [3]
57/52  •  containing halogen [3]
57/54  •  Halogenated acrylic or methacrylic acids [3]
57/56  •  containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [3]
57/58  •  containing six-membered aromatic rings [3]
57/60  •  •  having unsaturation outside the rings [3]
57/62  •  containing six-membered aromatic rings and other rings [3]
57/64  •  Acyl halides [3]
57/66  •  with only carbon-to-carbon double bonds as unsaturation [3]
57/68  •  with only carbon-to-carbon triple bonds as unsaturation [3]
57/70  •  containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [3]
57/72  •  containing six-membered aromatic rings [3]
57/74  •  containing six-membered aromatic rings and other rings [3]
57/76  •  containing halogen outside the carbonyl halide groups [3]

59/00 Compounds having carboxyl groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms and containing any of the groups OH, →C-C groups, or →C-C groups [2]

59/01  •  Saturated compounds having only one carboxyl group and containing hydroxy or O-metal groups [3]
59/06  •  Glycolic acid [3]
59/08  •  Lactic acid [3]
59/10  •  Polyhydroxy carboxylic acids
59/105  •  •  having five or more carbon atoms, e.g. aldonic acids [3]
59/11  •  containing rings [3]
59/115  •  containing halogen [3]
59/125  •  Saturated compounds having only one carboxyl group and containing ether groups, →C-C groups, or →C-C groups [3]

59/13  •  containing rings [3]
59/135  •  containing halogen [3]
59/147  •  Saturated compounds having only one carboxyl group and containing —CHO groups [3]
59/153  •  Glyoxylic acid [3]
59/185  •  Saturated compounds having only one carboxyl group and containing keto groups [3]
59/19  •  Pyruvic acid [3]
59/195  •  Acetoacetic acid [3]
59/205  •  containing rings [3]
59/21  •  containing halogen [3]
59/215  •  containing singly bound oxygen-containing groups [3]
59/225  •  containing —CHO groups [3]
59/235  •  Saturated compounds having more than one carboxyl group [3]
59/245  •  containing hydroxy or O-metal groups [3]
59/255  •  •  Tartaric acid [3]
59/265  •  •  Citric acid [3]
59/285  •  •  Polyhydroxy dicarboxylic acids having five or more carbon atoms, e.g. saccharic acids [3]
59/29  •  •  containing rings [3]
59/295  •  •  containing halogen [3]
59/305  •  containing ether groups, →C-C groups, or →C-C groups [3]
59/31  •  •  containing rings [3]
59/315  •  •  containing halogen [3]
59/325  •  •  containing —CHO groups [3]
59/347  •  containing keto groups [3]
59/353  •  •  containing rings [3]
59/40  •  Unsaturated compounds [3]
59/42  •  containing hydroxy or O-metal groups [3]
59/44  •  •  Ricinoleic acid [3]
59/46  •  containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [3]
59/48  •  containing six-membered aromatic rings [3]
59/50  •  •  Mandelic acid [3]
59/52  •  a hydroxy or O-metal group being bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [3]
59/54  •  containing six-membered aromatic rings and other rings [3]
59/56  •  containing halogen [3]
59/58  •  containing ether groups, →C-C groups, or →C-C groups [3]
59/60  •  the non-carboxylic part of the ether being unsaturated [3]
59/62  •  containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [3]
59/64  •  containing six-membered aromatic rings [3]
59/66  •  •  the non-carboxylic part of the ether containing six-membered aromatic rings [3]
59/68  •  •  •  the oxygen atom of the ether group being bound to a non-condensed six-membered aromatic ring [3]
59/70  •  •  •  Ethers of hydroxy-acetic acid [3]
59/72  •  containing six-membered aromatic rings and other rings [3]
59/74  •  containing —CHO groups [3]
59/76  •  containing keto groups [3]
59/80  •  containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [3]
59/82  •  •  the keto group being part of a ring [3]
59/84  •  containing six-membered aromatic rings [3]
59/86  •  containing six-membered aromatic rings and other rings [3]
59/88  •  containing halogen [3]
61/00 Compounds having carboxyl groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings

61/04 • Saturated compounds having a carboxyl group bound to a three- or four-membered ring [3]
61/06 • Saturated compounds having a carboxyl group bound to a five-membered ring [3]
61/08 • Saturated compounds having a carboxyl group bound to a six-membered ring [3]
61/09 • Completely hydrogenated benzenedicarboxylic acids [2, 3]
61/10 • Saturated compounds having a carboxyl group bound to a seven- to twelve-membered ring [3]
61/12 • Saturated polycyclic compounds [3]
61/125 • • having a carboxyl group bound to a condensed ring system [3]
61/13 • • • having two rings [3]
61/135 • • • having three rings [3]
61/15 • Saturated compounds containing halogen [3]
61/16 • Unsaturated compounds [3]
61/20 • • having a carboxyl group bound to a five-membered ring [3]
61/22 • • having a carboxyl group bound to a six-membered ring [3]
61/24 • • • Partially hydrogenated benzenedicarboxylic acids [3]
61/26 • • having a carboxyl group bound to a seven- to twelve-membered ring [3]
61/28 • • polycyclic [3]
61/29 • • • having a carboxyl group bound to a condensed ring system [3]
61/35 • • having unsaturation outside the rings [3]
61/37 • • • Chrysanthemumic acid [3]
61/39 • • containing six-membered aromatic rings [3]
61/40 • • containing halogen [3]
62/00 Compounds having carboxyl groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings and containing any of the groups OH, O-metal, —CHO, keto, ether, —C—C—C— or —C—C—C— groups, or containing —CHO groups [3]
62/02 • Saturated compounds containing hydroxy or O-metal groups [3]
62/04 • • with a six-membered ring [3]
62/06 • • polycyclic [3]
62/08 • Saturated compounds containing ether groups, —C—C—C— or —C—C—C— groups [3]
62/10 • • with a six-membered ring [3]
62/12 • • polycyclic [3]
62/14 • • • having a carboxyl group on a condensed ring system [3]
62/16 • Saturated compounds containing —CHO groups [3]
62/18 • Saturated compounds containing keto groups [3]
62/20 • • with a six-membered ring [3]
62/22 • • polymeric [3]
62/24 • • the keto group being part of a ring [3]
62/26 • • containing singly bound oxygen-containing groups [3]
62/28 • • containing —CHO groups [3]
62/30 • Unsaturated compounds [3]
62/32 • • containing hydroxy or O-metal groups [3]
62/34 • • • containing other groups, —C—C—C— or —C—C—C— groups, or containing —CHO groups [3]
62/36 • • containing —CHO groups [3]
62/38 • • containing keto groups [3]
63/00 Compounds having carboxyl groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings [2]
63/04 • Monocyclic monocarboxylic acids
63/06 • Benzoic acid
63/08 • • Salts thereof
63/10 • • Halides thereof
63/14 • Monocyclic dicarboxylic acids
63/15 • • all carboxyl groups bound to carbon atoms of the six-membered aromatic ring [3]
63/16 • • • 1,2-Benzenedicarboxylic acid [3]
63/20 • • • • Salts thereof [3]
63/22 • • • • Halides thereof [3]
63/24 • • • 1,3-Benzenedicarboxylic acid [3]
63/26 • • • 1,4-Benzenedicarboxylic acid [3]
63/28 • • • • Salts thereof [3]
63/30 • • • • Halides thereof [3]
63/307 • Monocyclic tricarboxylic acids [3]
63/313 • Monocyclic acids containing more than three carboxyl groups [3]
63/33 • Polycyclic acids [2, 3]
63/331 • • with all carboxyl groups bound to non-condensed rings [3]
63/333 • • • 4,4'-Diphenyldicarboxylic acids [2, 3]
63/337 • • with carboxyl groups bound to condensed ring systems [2, 3]
63/34 • • • containing two rings [3]
63/36 • • • • containing one carboxyl group [3]
63/38 • • • • containing two carboxyl groups both bound to carbon atoms of the condensed ring system [3]
63/40 • • • • containing three or more carboxyl groups all bound to carbon atoms of the condensed ring system [3]
63/42 • • • containing three or more rings [3]
63/44 • • • containing one carboxyl group [3]
63/46 • • • • containing two carboxyl groups both bound to carbon atoms of the condensed ring system [3]
63/48 • • • • containing three or more carboxyl groups all bound to carbon atoms of the condensed ring system [3]
63/49 • • containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [3]
63/64 • Monocyclic acids with unsaturation outside the aromatic ring [3]
63/66 • Polycyclic acids with unsaturation outside the aromatic rings [3]
63/68 • containing halogen [3]
63/70 • • Monocarboxylic acids [3]
Compounds having carboxyl groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings and containing any of the groups OH, O-metal, —CHO, keto, ether, or C,— groups, or

65/01 containing hydroxyl or O-metal groups [3]
65/03 monocylic and having all hydroxy or O-metal groups bound to the ring [3]
65/05 o-Hydroxy carboxylic acids [3]
65/10 Salicylic acid [3]
65/105 polycyclic [3]
65/11 with carboxyl groups on a condensed ring system containing two rings [3]
65/15 with carboxyl groups on a condensed ring system containing more than two rings [3]
65/17 containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [3]
65/19 having unsaturation outside the aromatic ring [3]
65/21 containing ether groups, C,— groups, or C,— groups [3]
65/24 polycyclic [3]
65/26 containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [3]
65/28 having unsaturation outside the aromatic rings [3]
65/30 containing —CHO groups [3]
65/32 containing keto groups [3]
65/34 polycyclic [3]
65/36 containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [3]
65/38 having unsaturation outside the aromatic rings [3]
65/40 containing singly bound oxygen-containing groups [3]
65/42 containing —CHO groups [3]

66/00 Quinone carboxylic acids [2]
66/02 Anthraquinone carboxylic acids [2]
67/00 Preparation of carboxylic acid esters

Note(s)
In this group, lactones used as reactants are considered as being esters.

67/02 by interreacting ester groups, i.e. transesterification
67/03 by reacting an ester group with a hydroxy group [2]
67/035 by reacting carboxylic acids or symmetrical anhydrides with saturated hydrocarbons [3]
67/04 by reacting carboxylic acids or symmetrical anhydrides onto unsaturated carbon-to-carbon bonds [2]
67/05 with oxidation [2, 3]
67/055 in the presence of platinum group metals or their compounds [3]
67/08 by reacting carboxylic acids or symmetrical anhydrides with the hydroxy or O-metal group of organic compounds [2]
67/10 by reacting carboxylic acids or symmetrical anhydrides with ester groups or with a carbon-halogen bond [2]
67/11 being mineral ester groups [3]
67/12 from asymmetrical anhydrides [2]
67/14 from carboxylic acid halides [2]
67/16 from carboxylic acids, esters or anhydrides wherein one oxygen atom has been replaced by a sulfur, selenium or tellurium atom [2]
67/18 by conversion of a group containing nitrogen into an ester group [2]
67/20 from amides or lactams [2]
67/22 from nitriles [2]
67/24 by reacting carboxylic acids or derivatives thereof with a carbon-to-oxygen ether bond, e.g. acetal, tetrahydrofuran [2]
67/26 with an oxirane ring [2]
67/27 from ortho-esters [3]
67/28 by modifying the hydroxyl moiety of the ester, such modification not being an introduction of an ester group [2]
67/283 by hydrogenation of unsaturated carbon-to-carbon bonds [3]
67/287 by introduction of halogen; by substitution of halogen atoms by other halogen atoms [3]
67/29 by introduction of oxygen-containing functional groups [3]
67/293 by isomerisation; by change of size of the carbon skeleton [3]
67/297 by splitting-off hydrogen or functional groups; by hydrogenolysis of functional groups [3]
67/30 by modifying the acid moiety of the ester, such modification not being an introduction of an ester group [2]
67/303 by hydrogenation of unsaturated carbon-to-carbon bonds [3]
67/307 by introduction of halogen; by substitution of halogen atoms by other halogen atoms [3]
67/31 by introduction of functional groups containing oxygen only in singly bound form [3]
67/313 by introduction of doubly bound oxygen containing functional groups, e.g. carboxyl groups [3]
67/317 by splitting-off hydrogen or functional groups; by hydrogenolysis of functional groups [3]
67/32 Decarboxylation [2, 3]
67/327 by elimination of functional groups containing oxygen only in singly bound form [3]
67/333 by isomerisation; by change of size of the carbon skeleton (introduction or elimination of carboxyl groups C07C 67/313, C07C 67/32) [3]
67/34 Migration of C,— groups in the molecule [2, 3]
67/343 by increase in the number of carbon atoms [3]
67/347 by addition to unsaturated carbon-to-carbon bonds [3]
67/36 by reaction with carbon monoxide or formates (C07C 67/02, C07C 67/03, C07C 67/10 take precedence) [2]
67/37 by reaction of ethers with carbon monoxide [2]
67/38 by addition to an unsaturated carbon-to-carbon bond [2]
Esters of carboxylic acids; Esters of carbonic or haloformic acids

Preparation of esters of carbonic or haloformic acids [2]

Esters of hydroxy compounds having the esterified carboxyl group bound to an acyclic carbon atom [3]

Note(s)
Attention is drawn to Note (6) following the title of this subclass.

69/000

Esters of carboxylic acids; Esters of carboxylic or haloformic acids

Note(s)
Esters having a variably-specified acid moiety, i.e. covered by more than one of groups C07C 69/02, C07C 69/34, C07C 69/52, C07C 69/608, C07C 69/612, C07C 69/62, C07C 69/66, C07C 69/74, C07C 69/76, C07C 69/95, C07C 69/96, are covered by groups C07C 69/003-C07C 69/017 according to their hydroxyl group moiety.

69/02

Esters of acrylic saturated monocarboxylic acids having the carboxyl group bound to an acyclic carbon atom or to hydrogen

69/025

Esters of saturated alcohols having the esterified hydroxy group bound to a carbon atom of a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring [3]

69/035

Esters of unsaturated alcohols having the esterified hydroxy group bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [3]

69/04

Formic acid esters

69/06

of monohydroxylic compounds

69/07

of unsaturated alcohols [2]

69/08

of dihydroxylic compounds

69/10

of trihydroxylic compounds

69/12

Acetic acid esters

69/14

of monohydroxylic compounds

69/145

of unsaturated alcohols [2]

69/15

Vinyl acetate [2]

69/155

Allyl acetate [2]

69/157

containing six-membered aromatic rings [3]

69/16

of dihydroxylic compounds

69/18

of trihydroxylic compounds

69/21

of hydroxy compounds with more than three hydroxy groups [2]

69/22

having three or more carbon atoms in the acid moiety

69/24

esterified with monohydroxylic compounds

69/26

Synthetic waxes

69/28

esterified with dihydroxylic compounds

69/30

esterified with trihydroxylic compounds

69/33

esterified with hydroxy compounds having more than three hydroxy groups [2]

69/34

Esters of acrylic saturated polycarboxylic acids having an esterified carboxyl group bound to an acyclic carbon atom [3]

69/347

esterified with unsaturated alcohols having the esterified hydroxy group bound to an acyclic carbon atom [3]

69/353

esterified with a hydroxy compound having the esterified hydroxy group bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [3]

69/36

Oxalic acid esters [3]

69/38

Malonic acid esters [3]

69/40

Succinic acid esters [3]

69/42

Glutaric acid esters [3]

69/44

Adipic acid esters [3]

69/46

Pimelic acid esters [3]

69/48

Azelaic acid esters [3]

69/50

Sebacic acid esters [3]

69/52

Esters of acrylic unsaturated carboxylic acids having the esterified hydroxy group bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [3]

69/527

of unsaturated hydroxy compounds [3]

69/533

Monocarboxylic acid esters having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond [3]

69/54

Acrylic acid esters; Methacrylic acid esters [3]

69/56

Crotonic acid esters; Vinyl acetic acid esters [3]

69/58

Esters of straight chain acids with eighteen carbon atoms in the acid moiety [3]

69/587

Monocarboxylic acid esters having at least two carbon-to-carbon double bonds [3]

69/593

Dicarboxylic acid esters having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond [3]

69/60

Maleic acid esters; Fumaric acid esters [3]

69/602

Dicarboxylic acid esters having at least two carbon-to-carbon double bonds [3]
69/757 • having any of the groups OH, O-metal, —CHO, 
ketone, ether, acyloxy, <\(-\text{C}=-\text{C}\), groups, 
-\text{C}=-\text{C}, groups, or 
-\text{C}=-\text{C} in the acid moiety [3]

69/76 • Esters of carboxylic acids having an esterified 
carboxyl group bound to a carbon atom of a six-
membered aromatic ring

69/767 • esterified with unsaturated alcohols having the 
esterified hydroxy group bound to an acyclic 
carbon atom [3]

69/773 • esterified with a hydroxy compound having the 
esterified hydroxy group bound to a carbon atom 
of a six-membered aromatic ring [3]

69/78 • Benzoic acid esters
69/80 • Phthalic acid esters [2]
69/82 • Terephthalic acid esters
69/83 • of unsaturated alcohols [2]
69/84 • of monocyclic hydroxy carboxylic acids, the 
hydroxy groups and the carboxyl groups of which 
are bound to carbon atoms of a six-membered 
aromatic ring

69/86 • • with esterified hydroxy groups
69/88 • • with esterified carboxyl groups
69/90 • • with esterified hydroxy and carboxyl groups
69/92 • • with esterified hydroxy groups [2]
69/94 • • of polycyclic hydroxy carboxylic acids, the 
hydroxy groups and the carboxyl groups of which 
are bound to carbon atoms of six-membered 
aromatic rings [2]

69/95 • Esters of quinone carboxylic acids [2]
69/96 • Esters of carboxylic or halofumaric acids [2]

71/00 Esters of oxyacids of halogens

Compounds containing carbon and nitrogen with or without 
hydrogen, halogens or oxygen [5]

201/00 Preparation of esters of nitric or nitrous acid or of 
compounds containing nitro or nitroso groups bound 
to a carbon skeleton [5]

201/02 • Preparation of esters of nitric acid [5]
201/04 • Preparation of esters of nitrous acid [5]
201/06 • Preparation of nitro compounds [5]
201/08 • by substitution of hydrogen atoms by nitro 
groups [5]
201/10 • by substitution of functional groups by nitro 
groups [5]
201/12 • by reactions not involving the formation of nitro 
groups [5]
201/14 • by formation of nitro groups together with 
reactions not involving the formation of nitro 
groups [5]
201/16 • Separation; Purification; Stabilisation; Use of 
additives [5]

203/00 Esters of nitric or nitrous acid [5]
203/02 • Esters of nitric acid [5]
203/04 • having nitrate groups bound to acyclic carbon 
atoms [5]
203/06 • • Glycerol trinitrate [5]
203/08 • having nitrate groups bound to carbon atoms of 
rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]

IPC (2014.01), Section C
Compounds containing nitro groups bound to a carbon skeleton [5]

- having nitro groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms [5]
- of a saturated carbon skeleton [5]
- of an unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]
- containing six-membered aromatic rings [5]
- having nitro groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
- having nitro groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings [5]
- the carbon skeleton being further substituted by halogen atoms [5]
- having nitro groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms [5]
- of an unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]
- having nitro groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
- having nitro groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings [5]
- the six-membered aromatic ring or a condensed ring system containing that ring being substituted by halogen atoms [5]
- the carbon skeleton being further substituted by hydroxy groups [5]
- having nitro groups and hydroxy groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms [5]
- of a saturated carbon skeleton [5]
- of a carbon skeleton containing six-membered aromatic rings [5]
- having nitro groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms and hydroxy groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings [5]
- having nitro groups or hydroxy groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
- having nitro groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings and hydroxy groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms [5]
- having nitro groups and hydroxy groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings [5]
- having nitro groups and hydroxy groups bound to carbon atoms of the same non-condensed six-membered aromatic ring [5]
- having one nitro group bound to the ring [5]
- having two nitro groups bound to the ring [5]
- having three, and only three, nitro groups bound to the ring [5]
- having nitro groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings being part of a condensed ring system [5]
- and being further substituted by halogen atoms [5]
- the carbon skeleton being further substituted by etherified hydroxy groups [5]
- having nitro groups and etherified hydroxy groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms of the carbon skeleton [5]
- the carbon skeleton being saturated [5]
- the oxygen atom of at least one of the etherified hydroxy groups being further bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [5]
- the carbon skeleton containing six-membered aromatic rings [5]
- having nitro groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms and etherified hydroxy groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings of the carbon skeleton [5]
- having nitro groups or etherified hydroxy groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings of the carbon skeleton [5]
- having nitro groups or etherified hydroxy groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings and etherified hydroxy groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms of the carbon skeleton [5]
- having nitro groups and etherified hydroxy groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings of the carbon skeleton [5]
- to carbon atoms of the same non-condensed six-membered aromatic ring or to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings being part of the same condensed ring system [5]
- the oxygen atom of at least one of the etherified hydroxy groups being further bound to an acyclic carbon atom [5]
- the oxygen atom of at least one of the etherified hydroxy groups being further bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring, e.g. nitrophenyl ethers [5]
- the carbon skeleton being further substituted by esterified hydroxy groups [5]
- having nitro groups and esterified hydroxy groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms of the carbon skeleton [5]
- having nitro groups or esterified hydroxy groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings of the carbon skeleton [5]
- having nitro groups or esterified hydroxy groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings of the carbon skeleton [5]
- to carbon atoms of the same non-condensed six-membered aromatic ring or to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings being part of the same condensed ring system [5]
- the carbon skeleton being further substituted by —CHO groups [5]
- the carbon skeleton being further substituted by at least one doubly-bound oxygen atom, not being part of a —CHO group [5]
- the carbon skeleton containing carbon atoms of quinone rings [5]
- Anthraquinones containing nitro groups [5]
- the carbon skeleton being further substituted by singly-bound oxygen atoms [5]
- the carbon skeleton being further substituted by carboxyl groups [5]
- having nitro groups and carboxyl groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms of the carbon skeleton [5]
- the carbon skeleton being saturated [5]
- Nitro-acetic acids [5]
- the carbon skeleton containing six-membered aromatic rings [5]
- having nitro groups and carboxyl groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings of the carbon skeleton [5]
Preparation of compounds containing amino groups bound to a carbon skeleton [5]

- by substitution of hydrogen atoms by amino groups [5]
- by substitution of functional groups by amino groups [5]
- by substitution of halogen atoms [5]
- with formation of amino groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms or to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
- with formation of amino groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings or from amines having nitrogen atoms bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings [5]
- with formation of quaternary ammonium compounds [5]
- by substitution of hydroxy groups or of esterified or esterified hydroxy groups [5]
- with formation of amino groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms or to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
- with formation of amino groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings or from amines having nitrogen atoms bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings [5]
- with formation of quaternary ammonium compounds [5]
- by substitution of other functional groups [5]
- by reductive alkylation of ammonia, amines or compounds having groups reducible to amino groups, with carbonyl compounds [5]
- by reduction with hydrogen [5]
- by reduction with other reducing agents [5]
- by reduction of nitrogen-to-oxygen or nitrogen-to-nitrogen bonds [5]
- by reduction of nitro groups [5]
- by reduction of nitro groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms or to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]

Compounds containing amino groups bound to a carbon skeleton [5]

- having amino groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms [5]
- of an acrylic saturated carbon skeleton [5]
- Monoamines [5]
- Mono-, di- or tri-methylamine [5]
- Mono-, di- or tri-ethylamine [5]
- containing only n- or iso-propyl groups [5]
211/07  containing one, two or three alkyl groups, each having the same number of carbon atoms in excess of three [5]
211/08  containing alkyl groups having a different number of carbon atoms [5]
211/09  Diamines [5]
211/10  Diaminoethanes [5]
211/11  Diaminopropanes [5]
211/12  1,6-Diaminohexanes [5]
211/13  Amines containing three or more amino groups bound to the carbon skeleton [5]
211/14  Amines containing amino groups bound to at least two aminoalyl groups, e.g. diethylenetriamines [5]
211/15  the carbon skeleton being further substituted by halogen atoms or by nitro or nitroso groups [5]
211/16  of a saturated carbon skeleton containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
211/17  containing only non-condensed rings [5]
211/18  containing at least two amino groups bound to the carbon skeleton [5]
211/19  containing condensed ring systems [5]
211/20  of an acyclic unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]
211/21  Monoamines [5]
211/22  containing at least two amino groups bound to the carbon skeleton [5]
211/23  the carbon skeleton containing carbon-to-carbon triple bonds [5]
211/24  the carbon skeleton being further substituted by halogen atoms or by nitro or nitroso groups [5]
211/25  of an unsaturated carbon skeleton containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
211/26  of an unsaturated carbon skeleton containing at least one six-membered aromatic ring [5]
211/27  having amino groups linked to the six-membered aromatic ring by saturated carbon chains [5]
211/28  having amino groups linked to the six-membered aromatic ring by unsaturated carbon chains [5]
211/29  the carbon skeleton being further substituted by halogen atoms or by nitro or nitroso groups [5]
211/30  the six-membered aromatic ring being part of a condensed ring system formed by two rings [5]
211/31  the six-membered aromatic ring being part of a condensed ring system formed by at least three rings [5]
211/32  containing dibenzocycloheptane or dibenzocycloheptene ring systems or condensed derivatives thereof [5]
211/33  having amino groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
211/34  of a saturated carbon skeleton [5]
211/35  containing only non-condensed rings [5]
211/36  containing at least two amino groups bound to the carbon skeleton [5]
211/37  being further substituted by halogen atoms or by nitro or nitroso groups [5]
211/38  containing condensed ring systems [5]
211/39  of an unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]
211/40  containing only non-condensed rings [5]
211/41  containing condensed ring systems [5]
211/42  with six-membered aromatic rings being part of the condensed ring systems [5]
211/43  having amino groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings of the carbon skeleton [5]
211/44  having amino groups bound to only one six-membered aromatic ring [5]
211/45  Monoamines [5]
211/46  Aniline [5]
211/47  Toluidines; Homologues thereof [5]
211/49  having at least two amino groups bound to the carbon skeleton [5]
211/50  with at least two amino groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings of the carbon skeleton [5]
211/51  Phenylenediamines [5]
211/52  the carbon skeleton being further substituted by halogen atoms or by nitro or nitroso groups [5]
211/53  having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the amino groups further bound to a hydrocarbon radical substituted by amino groups [5]
211/54  having amino groups bound to two or three six-membered aromatic rings [5]
211/55  Diphenylamines [5]
211/56  the carbon skeleton being further substituted by halogen atoms or by nitro or nitroso groups [5]
211/57  having amino groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings being part of condensed ring systems of the carbon skeleton [5]
211/58  Naphthylamines; N-substituted derivatives thereof [5]
211/59  the carbon skeleton being further substituted by halogen atoms or by nitro or nitroso groups [5]
211/60  containing a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring forming part of at least one of the condensed ring systems [5]
211/61  with at least one of the condensed ring systems formed by three or more rings [5]
211/62  Quaternary ammonium compounds [5]
211/63  having quaternised nitrogen atoms bound to acyclic carbon atoms [5]
211/64  having quaternised nitrogen atoms bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings [5]
211/65  Metal complexes of amines [5]
213/00  Preparation of compounds containing amino and hydroxy, amino and etherified hydroxy or amino and esterified hydroxy groups bound to the same carbon skeleton [5]
213/02  by reactions involving the formation of amino groups from compounds containing hydroxy groups or etherified or esterified hydroxy groups [5]
213/04  by reaction of ammonia or amines with olefin oxides or halohydrins [5]
213/06  from hydroxy amines by reactions involving the etherification or esterification of hydroxy groups [5]
213/08  by reactions not involving the formation of amino groups, hydroxy groups or etherified or esterified hydroxy groups [5]
213/10  Separation; Purification; Stabilisation; Use of additives [5]
215/00  Compounds containing amino and hydroxy groups bound to the same carbon skeleton [5]
215/02  having hydroxy groups and amino groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms of the same carbon skeleton [5]
215/04  the carbon skeleton being saturated [5]
215/06  and acyclic [5]
215/08  with only one hydroxy group and one amino group bound to the carbon skeleton [5]
with one amino group and at least two hydroxy groups bound to the carbon skeleton [5]

the nitrogen atom of the amino group being further bound to hydrocarbon groups substituted by hydroxy groups [5]

the nitrogen atom of the amino group being further bound to hydrocarbon groups substituted by amino groups [5]

the nitrogen atom of the amino group being further bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings [5]

with hydroxy groups and at least two amino groups bound to the carbon skeleton [5]

the carbon skeleton being saturated and containing rings [5]

the carbon skeleton being unsaturated [5]

and acyclic [5]

and containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]

and containing six-membered aromatic rings [5]

containing hydroxy groups and carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings bound to the same carbon atom of the carbon skeleton [5]

containing hydroxy groups and carbon atoms of two six-membered aromatic rings bound to the same carbon atom of the carbon skeleton [5]

containing hydroxy groups and carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings bound to the same carbon atom of the carbon skeleton and at least one hydroxy group bound to another carbon atom of the carbon skeleton [5]

1-Aryl-2-amino-1,3-propane diols [5]

with rings other than six-membered aromatic rings being part of the carbon skeleton [5]

having amino groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings and hydroxy groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms or to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings of the same carbon skeleton [5]

with quaternised amino groups bound to the carbon skeleton [5]

having amino groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings being part of the carbon skeleton [5]

having amino groups further bound to a carbon atom of another six-membered aromatic ring [5]

having amino groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings being part of condensed ring systems [5]

being formed by two rings [5]

being formed by at least three rings [5]

with quaternised amino groups bound to the carbon skeleton [5]

Compounds containing amino and etherified hydroxy groups bound to the same carbon skeleton [5]

having etherified hydroxy groups and amino groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms of the same carbon skeleton [5]

the carbon skeleton being acyclic and saturated [5]

having only one etherified hydroxy group and one amino group bound to the carbon skeleton, which is not further substituted [5]

the oxygen atom of the etherified hydroxy group being further bound to an acyclic carbon atom [5]

to an acyclic carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical containing six-membered aromatic rings [5]
the oxygen atom of the etherified hydroxy group being further bound to a carbon atom of a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring [5]

the oxygen atom of the etherified hydroxy group being further bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [5]

the six-membered aromatic ring or condensed ring system containing that ring not being further substituted [5]

the six-membered aromatic ring or condensed ring system containing that ring being further substituted [5]

by halogen atoms, by trihalomethyl, nitro or nitroso groups, or by singly-bound oxygen atoms [5]

by carbon atoms having at least two bonds to oxygen atoms [5]

the six-membered aromatic ring being part of a condensed ring system containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]

having only one etherified hydroxy group and one amino group bound to the carbon skeleton, which is further substituted by halogen atoms or by nitro or nitroso groups [5]

having one amino group and at least two singly-bound oxygen atoms, with at least one being part of an etherified hydroxy group, bound to the carbon skeleton, e.g. ethers of polyhydroxy amines [5]

having the oxygen atom of at least one of the etherified hydroxy groups further bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [5]

the six-membered aromatic ring or condensed ring system containing that ring being further substituted [5]

by halogen atoms, by trihalomethyl, nitro or nitroso groups, or by singly-bound oxygen atoms [5]

by carbon atoms having at least two bonds to oxygen atoms [5]

the six-membered aromatic ring being part of a condensed ring system containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]

having at least two singly-bound oxygen atoms, with at least one being part of an etherified hydroxy group, bound to the same carbon atom of the carbon skeleton, e.g. amino-ketals, ortho esters [5]

having etherified hydroxy groups and at least two amino groups bound to the carbon skeleton [5]

the carbon skeleton being saturated and containing rings [5]

the carbon skeleton being acyclic and unsaturated [5]

the carbon skeleton being unsaturated and containing rings [5]

Ethers of hydroxy amines of undetermined structure, e.g. obtained by reactions of epoxides with hydroxy amines [5]

having etherified hydroxy groups or amino groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings of the same carbon skeleton [5]

having etherified hydroxy groups bound to carbon atoms of at least one six-membered aromatic ring and amino groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms or to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings of the same carbon skeleton [5]

with amino groups linked to the six-membered aromatic ring, or to the condensed ring system containing that ring, by carbon chains not further substituted by singly-bound oxygen atoms [5]

with amino groups and the six-membered aromatic ring, or the condensed ring system containing that ring, bound to the same carbon atom of the carbon chain [5]

linked by carbon chains having two carbon atoms between the amino groups and the six-membered aromatic ring or the condensed ring system containing that ring [5]

linked by carbon chains having at least three carbon atoms between the amino groups and the six-membered aromatic ring or the condensed ring system containing that ring [5]

with singly-bound oxygen atoms and six-membered aromatic rings bound to the same carbon atom of the carbon chain [5]

with singly-bound oxygen atoms, six-membered aromatic rings and amino groups bound to the same carbon atom of the carbon chain [5]

linked by carbon chains having two carbon atoms between the amino groups and the six-membered aromatic ring or the condensed ring system containing that ring [5]

linked by carbon chains having at least three carbon atoms between the amino groups and the six-membered aromatic ring or the condensed ring system containing that ring [5]

with rings other than six-membered aromatic rings being part of the carbon skeleton [5]

having amino groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings and etherified hydroxy groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms or to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings of the same carbon skeleton [5]

having amino groups and etherified hydroxy groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings of the same carbon skeleton [5]

having amino groups and etherified hydroxy groups bound to carbon atoms of non-condensed six-membered aromatic rings [5]

of the same non-condensed six-membered aromatic ring [5]

the oxygen atom of at least one of the etherified hydroxy groups being further bound to an acyclic carbon atom [5]

to an acyclic carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical containing six-membered aromatic rings [5]

the oxygen atom of at least one of the etherified hydroxy groups being further bound to a carbon atom of a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring [5]
Compounds containing amino and esterified hydroxy groups bound to the same carbon skeleton [5]

219/02 having esterified hydroxy groups and amino groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms of the same carbon skeleton [5]

219/04 the carbon skeleton being acyclic and saturated [5]

219/06 having the hydroxy groups esterified by carboxylic acids having the esterifying carboxyl groups bound to hydrogen atoms or to acyclic carbon atoms of an acyclic saturated carbon skeleton [5]

219/08 having at least one of the hydroxy groups esterified by a carboxylic acid having the esterifying carboxyl group bound to an acyclic carbon atom of an acyclic unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]

219/10 having at least one of the hydroxy groups esterified by a carboxylic acid having the esterifying carboxyl group bound to an acyclic carbon atom of a carbon skeleton containing rings [5]

219/12 having at least one of the hydroxy groups esterified by a carboxylic acid having the esterifying carboxyl group bound to a carbon atom of a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring [5]

219/14 having at least one of the hydroxy groups esterified by a carboxylic acid having the esterifying carboxyl group bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [5]

219/16 having at least one of the hydroxy groups esterified by an inorganic acid or a derivative thereof [5]

219/18 the carbon skeleton being saturated and containing rings [5]

219/20 the carbon skeleton being unsaturated [5]

219/22 and containing six-membered aromatic rings [5]

219/24 having esterified hydroxy groups or amino groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings of the same carbon skeleton [5]

219/26 having esterified hydroxy groups bound to carbon atoms of at least one six-membered aromatic ring and amino groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms or to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings of the same carbon skeleton [5]

219/28 having amino groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms of the carbon skeleton [5]

219/30 with amino groups linked to the six-membered aromatic ring, or to the condensed ring system containing that ring, by carbon chains further substituted by singly-bound oxygen atoms [5]

219/32 having amino groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings and esterified hydroxy groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms or to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings of the same carbon skeleton [5]

219/34 having amino groups and esterified hydroxy groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings of the same carbon skeleton [5]

221/00 Preparation of compounds containing amino groups and doubly-bound oxygen atoms bound to the same carbon skeleton [5]

223/00 Compounds containing amino and —CHO groups bound to the same carbon skeleton [5]

223/02 having amino groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms of the carbon skeleton [5]

223/04 having amino groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings of the carbon skeleton [5]

223/06 having amino groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings of the carbon skeleton [5]

225/00 Compounds containing amino groups and doubly-bound oxygen atoms bound to the same carbon skeleton, at least one of the doubly-bound oxygen atoms not being part of a —CHO group, e.g. amino ketones [5]

225/02 having amino groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms of the carbon skeleton [5]

225/04 the carbon skeleton being saturated [5]

225/06 and acyclic [5]

225/08 and containing rings [5]

225/10 with doubly-bound oxygen atoms bound to carbon atoms not being part of rings [5]

225/12 with doubly-bound oxygen atoms bound to carbon atoms being part of rings [5]

225/14 the carbon skeleton being unsaturated [5]

225/16 and containing six-membered aromatic rings [5]

225/18 the carbon skeleton containing also rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]

225/20 having amino groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings of the carbon skeleton [5]

225/22 having amino groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings of the carbon skeleton [5]

225/24 the carbon skeleton containing carbon atoms of quinone rings [5]

225/26 having amino groups bound to carbon atoms of quinone rings or of condensed ring systems containing quinone rings [5]

225/28 of non-condensed quinone rings [5]

225/30 of condensed quinone ring systems formed by two rings [5]

225/32 of condensed quinone ring systems formed by at least three rings [5]

225/34 Amino anthraquinones [5]

225/36 the carbon skeleton being further substituted by singly-bound oxygen atoms [5]

227/00 Preparation of compounds containing amino and carboxyl groups bound to the same carbon skeleton [5]

227/02 Formation of carboxyl groups in compounds containing amino groups, e.g. by oxidation of amino alcohols [5]
Compounds containing amino and carboxyl groups bound to the same carbon skeleton [5]

229/00

Compounds containing amino and carboxyl groups bound to the same carbon skeleton [5]

229/02 • having amino and carboxyl groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms of the same carbon skeleton [5]

229/04 • the carbon skeleton being acyclic and saturated [5]

229/06 • having only one amino and one carboxyl group bound to the carbon skeleton [5]

229/08 • • • • • the nitrogen atom of the amino group further bound to the carbon skeleton [5]

229/10 • • • • • the nitrogen atom of the amino group further bound to acyclic carbon atoms or to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]

229/12 • • • • • to carbon atoms of acyclic carbon skeletons [5]

229/14 • • • • • to carbon atoms of carbon skeletons containing rings [5]

229/16 • • • • • to carbon atoms of hydrocarbon radicals substituted by amino or carboxyl groups, e.g. ethylenediamine-tetra-acetic acid, imidodiacetic acids [5]

229/18 • • • • • the nitrogen atom of the amino group further bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings [5]

229/20 • • • • • the carbon skeleton being further substituted by halogen atoms or by nitro or nitroso groups [5]

229/22 • • • • • the carbon skeleton being further substituted by oxygen atoms [5]
233/00 Carboxylic acid amides [5]
233/01 • having carbon atoms of carboxamide groups bound to hydrogen atoms or to acyclic carbon atoms [5]
233/02 • having nitrogen atoms of carboxamide groups bound to hydrogen atoms or to carbon atoms of unsubstituted hydrocarbon radicals [5]
233/03 • with carbon atoms of carboxamide groups bound to hydrogen atoms [5]
233/04 • with carbon atoms of carboxamide groups bound to carbon atoms of an acyclic saturated carbon skeleton [5]
233/05 • having the nitrogen atoms of the carboxamide groups bound to hydrogen atoms or to acyclic carbon atoms [5]
233/06 • having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring [5]
233/07 • having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [5]
233/08 • with carbon atoms of carboxamide groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms of a saturated carbon skeleton containing rings [5]
233/09 • with carbon atoms of carboxamide groups bound to carbon atoms of an acyclic unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]
233/10 • with carbon atoms of carboxamide groups bound to carbon atoms of an unsaturated carbon skeleton containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
233/11 • with carbon atoms of carboxamide groups bound to carbon atoms of an unsaturated carbon skeleton containing six-membered aromatic rings [5]
233/12 • having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by halogen atoms or by nitro or nitroso groups [5]
233/13 • with the substituted hydrocarbon radical bound to the nitrogen atom of the carboxamide group by an acyclic carbon atom [5]
233/14 • with the substituted hydrocarbon radical bound to the nitrogen atom of the carboxamide group by a carbon atom of a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring [5]
233/15 • with the substituted hydrocarbon radical bound to the nitrogen atom of the carboxamide group by a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [5]
233/16 • having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by singly-bound oxygen atoms [5]
233/17 • with the substituted hydrocarbon radical bound to the nitrogen atom of the carboxamide group by an acyclic carbon atom [5]
233/18 • • having the carbon atom of the carboxamide group bound to a hydrogen atom or to a carbon atom of an acyclic saturated carbon skeleton [5]
233/19 • • • having the carbon atom of the carboxamide group bound to an acyclic carbon atom of a saturated carbon skeleton containing rings [5]
233/20 • • • having the carbon atom of the carboxamide group bound to a carbon atom of an acyclic unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]
233/21 • • • having the carbon atom of the carboxamide group bound to an acyclic carbon atom of an unsaturated carbon skeleton containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
233/22 • • • having the carbon atom of the carboxamide group bound to an acyclic carbon atom of a carbon skeleton containing six-membered aromatic rings [5]
233/23 • • • • • having the substituted hydrocarbon radical bound to the nitrogen atom of the carboxamide group by a carbon atom of a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring [5]
233/24 • • • • • with the substituted hydrocarbon radical bound to the nitrogen atom of the carboxamide group by a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [5]
233/25 • • • • • having the carbon atom of the carboxamide group bound to a hydrogen atom or to a carbon atom of an acyclic saturated carbon skeleton [5]
233/26 • • • • • having the carbon atom of the carboxamide group bound to an acyclic carbon atom of a saturated carbon skeleton containing rings [5]
233/27 • • • • • having the carbon atom of the carboxamide group bound to a carbon atom of an acyclic unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]
233/28 • • • • • having the carbon atom of the carboxamide group bound to an acyclic carbon atom of an unsaturated carbon skeleton containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
233/29 • • • • • having the carbon atom of the carboxamide group bound to an acyclic carbon atom of a carbon skeleton containing six-membered aromatic rings [5]
233/30 • • • • • having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by doubly-bound oxygen atoms [5]
with the substituted hydrocarbon radical bound to the nitrogen atom of the carboxamide group by an acyclic carbon atom [5]

with the substituted hydrocarbon radical bound to the nitrogen atom of the carboxamide group by a carbon atom of a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring [5]

with the substituted hydrocarbon radical bound to the nitrogen atom of the carboxamide group by a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by amino groups [5]

with the substituted hydrocarbon radical bound to the nitrogen atom of the carboxamide group by an acyclic carbon atom [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a hydrogen atom or to a carbon atom of an acyclic saturated carbon skeleton [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of an acyclic unsaturated carbon skeleton containing rings [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of an acyclic unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of an unsaturated carbon skeleton containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to an acyclic carbon atom of a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a hydrogen atom or to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a hydrogen atom or to a carbon atom of a saturated carbon skeleton [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of an unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by amino groups [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of an acyclic unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to an acyclic carbon atom of a carbon skeleton containing six-membered aromatic rings [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a hydrogen atom or to a carbon atom of a saturated carbon skeleton [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of an unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by carboxyl groups [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by carboxyl groups [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by carboxyl groups [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to carbon atoms of carboxyl groups, e.g. oxamides [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to hydrogen atoms or to carbon atoms of unsubstituted hydrocarbon radicals [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by halogen atoms or by nitro or nitroso groups [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by singly-bound oxygen atoms [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by doubly-bound oxygen atoms [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by amino groups [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by carboxyl groups [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to hydrogen atoms or to carbon atoms of unsubstituted hydrocarbon radicals [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by halogen atoms or by nitro or nitroso groups [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by singly-bound oxygen atoms [5]
with the substituted hydrocarbon radical bound to the nitrogen atom of the carboxamide group by an acyclic carbon atom [5]

of an acyclic saturated carbon skeleton [5]

of a saturated carbon skeleton containing rings [5]

of an acyclic unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]

of an unsaturated carbon skeleton containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]

doing the substituted hydrocarbon radical bound to the nitrogen atom of the carboxamide group by a carbon atom of a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by doubly-bound oxygen atoms [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by amino groups [5]

with the substituted hydrocarbon radical bound to the nitrogen atom of the carboxamide group by an acyclic carbon atom [5]

with the substituted hydrocarbon radical bound to the nitrogen atom of the carboxamide group by a carbon atom of a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring [5]

with the substituted hydrocarbon radical bound to the nitrogen atom of the carboxamide group by a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by carboxyl groups [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by carboxyl groups [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by carboxyl groups [5]

having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by amino groups [5]

of an acyclic saturated carbon skeleton [5]

of a saturated carbon skeleton containing rings [5]

of an acyclic unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]

of an unsaturated carbon skeleton containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]

of a carbon skeleton containing six-membered aromatic rings [5]

having nitrogen atoms of carboxamide groups bound to an acyclic carbon atom and to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring wherein at least one ortho-hydrogen atom has been replaced [5]

having nitrogen atoms of carboxamide groups quaternised [5]

having nitrogen atoms of carboxamide groups further acylated [5]

with carbon atoms of the carboxamide groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms [5]

with at least one carbon atom of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [5]
having carbon atoms of carboxamide groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings and singly-bound oxygen atoms bound to the same carbon skeleton [5]

• with carbon atoms of carboxamide groups and singly-bound oxygen atoms bound to carbon atoms of the same non-condensed six-membered aromatic ring [5]

• having the nitrogen atoms of the carboxamide groups bound to hydrogen atoms or to acyclic carbon atoms [5]

• having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to an acyclic carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by singly-bound oxygen atoms [5]

• having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to an acyclic carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring substituted by carboxyl groups [5]

• having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring [5]

• having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [5]

• with carbon atoms of carboxamide groups and singly-bound oxygen atoms, bound in ortho-position to carbon atoms of the same non-condensed six-membered aromatic ring [5]

• having the nitrogen atoms of the carboxamide groups bound to hydrogen atoms or to acyclic carbon atoms [5]

• having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring [5]

• having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring [5]

• having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [5]

• with carbon atoms of carboxamide groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings being part of condensed ring systems and singly-bound oxygen atoms, bound to the same carbon skeleton [5]

• having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to an acyclic carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by carboxyl groups [5]

• having carbon atoms of carboxamide groups and doubly-bound oxygen atoms bound to the same carbon skeleton [5]

• with the carbon atoms of the carboxamide groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms [5]

• of a saturated carbon skeleton [5]

• of an unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]

• the carbon skeleton containing rings [5]

• having carbon atoms of carboxamide groups and keto groups bound to the same carbon atom, e.g. acetocetamides [5]

• with the carbon atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring [5]

• with the carbon atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [5]

• having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups quaternised [5]

• having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups further acylated [5]

\[237/00\] Carboxylic acid amides, the carbon skeleton of the acid part being further substituted by amino groups [5]

• having the carbon atoms of the carboxamide groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms of the carbon skeleton [5]

• the carbon skeleton being acyclic and saturated [5]

• having the nitrogen atoms of the carboxamide groups bound to hydrogen atoms or to acyclic carbon atoms [5]

• having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to an acyclic carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by singly-bound oxygen atoms [5]

• having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to an acyclic carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by nitrogen atoms not being part of nitro or nitroso groups [5]

• having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to an acyclic carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by nitrogen atoms not being part of nitro or nitroso groups [5]

• the carbon skeleton being acyclic and unsaturated [5]

• the carbon skeleton being unsaturated and containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]

• the carbon skeleton containing six-membered aromatic rings [5]

• having nitrogen atoms of amino groups bound to the carbon skeleton of the acid part, further acylated [5]

• having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring of the carbon skeleton [5]

• of a ring being part of a condensed ring system formed by at least four rings, e.g. tetracycline [5]

• having the carbon atom of at least one of the carboxamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a non-condensed six-membered aromatic ring of the carbon skeleton [5]

• having the nitrogen atom of the carboxamide group bound to hydrogen atoms or to acyclic carbon atoms [5]

• having the nitrogen atom of the carboxamide group bound to an acyclic carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by oxygen atoms [5]

• having the nitrogen atom of the carboxamide group bound to an acyclic carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by nitrogen atoms not being part of nitro or nitroso groups [5]
Compounds containing nitrogen-to-halogen bonds; Hydroxylamino compounds or ethers or esters thereof [5]

- Compounds containing nitrogen-to-halogen bonds [5]
- N-halogenated amines [5]
- N-halogenated carboxamides [5]
- Hydroxylamino compounds or their ethers or esters [5]

- having nitrogen atoms of hydroxylamino groups further bound to carbon atoms of unsubstituted hydrocarbon radicals or of hydrocarbon radicals substituted by halogen atoms or by nitro or nitroso groups [5]
- having nitrogen atoms of hydroxylamino groups further bound to carbon atoms of hydrocarbon radicals substituted by singly-bound oxygen atoms [5]
- having nitrogen atoms of hydroxylamino groups further bound to carbon atoms of hydrocarbon radicals substituted by doubly-bound oxygen atoms [5]
- having nitrogen atoms of hydroxylamino groups further bound to carbon atoms of hydrocarbon radicals substituted by nitro or nitroso groups not being part of nitro or nitroso groups [5]
- having nitrogen atoms of hydroxylamino groups further bound to carbon atoms of hydrocarbon radicals substituted by carbonyl groups [5]
- having oxygen atoms of hydroxylamino groups ethylated [5]
- having oxygen atoms of hydroxylamino groups esterified [5]

Preparation of compounds containing chains of nitrogen atoms singly-bound to each other, e.g. hydrazines, triazanes [5]

- Preparation of hydrazines [5]
- Preparation of hydrazides [5]

Compounds containing chains of nitrogen atoms singly-bound to each other, e.g. hydrazines, triazanes [5]

- N-nitro compounds [5]
- N-nitroso compounds [5]
- N-nitroso-amines [5]
- N-nitroso-carboxamides [5]
- Hydrazines [5]
- Preparation of hydrazides [5]
- having nitrogen atoms of hydrazine groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms [5]
- of a saturated carbon skeleton [5]
- of an unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]
- containing rings [5]
- having nitrogen atoms of hydrazine groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
- having nitrogen atoms of hydrazine groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings [5]
- Hydrazines having nitrogen atoms of hydrazine groups acylated by carboxylic acids [5]
- with acylating carboxyl groups bound to hydrogen atoms or to acyclic carbon atoms [5]
- to hydrogen atoms or to carbon atoms of a saturated carbon skeleton [5]
- to carbon atoms of an unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]
- the carbon skeleton containing rings [5]
- to carbon atoms of a carbon skeleton further substituted by nitrogen atoms [5]
- with acylating carboxyl groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
- with acylating carboxyl groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings [5]
- Hydrazines having nitrogen atoms of hydrazine groups being quaternised [5]
- Hydrazines having nitrogen atoms of hydrazine groups further singly-bound to hetero atoms [5]
245/22 • containing chains of three or more nitrogen atoms with one or more nitrogen-to-nitrogen double bonds [5]
245/24 • Chains of only three nitrogen atoms, e.g. diazooamines [5]

247/00 Compounds containing azido groups [5]
247/02 • with azido groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms of a carbon skeleton [5]
247/04 • being saturated [5]
247/06 • and containing rings [5]
247/08 • being unsaturated [5]
247/10 • and containing rings [5]
247/12 • being further substituted by carboxyl groups [5]
247/14 • with azido groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
247/16 • with azido groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings of a carbon skeleton [5]
247/18 • being further substituted by carboxyl groups [5]
247/20 • with azido groups acylated by carboxylic acids [5]
247/22 • with the acylating carboxyl groups bound to hydrogen atoms, to acyclic carbon atoms or to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
247/24 • with at least one of the acylating carboxyl groups bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [5]

249/00 Preparation of compounds containing nitrogen atoms doubly-bound to a carbon skeleton (of diazo compounds C07C 245/12) [5]
249/02 • of compounds containing imino groups [5]
249/04 • of oximes [5]
249/06 • by nitrosation of hydrocarbons or substituted hydrocarbons [5]
249/08 • by reaction of hydroxylamines with carbonyl compounds [5]
249/10 • from nitro compounds or salts thereof [5]
249/12 • by reactions not involving the formation of oxyimino groups [5]
249/14 • Separation; Purification; Stabilisation; Use of additives [5]
249/16 • of hydrazones [5]

251/00 Compounds containing nitrogen atoms doubly-bound to a carbon skeleton (diazo compounds C07C 245/12) [5]
251/02 • containing imino groups [5]
251/04 • having carbon atoms of imino groups bound to hydrogen atoms or to acyclic carbon atoms [5]
251/06 • to carbon atoms of a saturated carbon skeleton [5]
251/08 • being acyclic [5]
251/10 • to carbon atoms of an unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]
251/12 • being acyclic [5]
251/14 • containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
251/16 • containing six-membered aromatic rings [5]
251/18 • having carbon atoms of imino groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
251/20 • having carbon atoms of imino groups being part of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
251/22 • Quinone imines [5]
251/24 • having carbon atoms of imino groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings [5]
251/26 • having nitrogen atoms of imino groups further bound to halogen atoms [5]
251/28 • having nitrogen atoms of imino groups acylated [5]
251/30 • having nitrogen atoms of imino groups quaternised [5]
251/32 • Oximes [5]
251/34 • with oxygen atoms of oxyimino groups bound to hydrogen atoms or to carbon atoms of unsubstituted hydrocarbon radicals [5]
251/36 • with the carbon atoms of the oxyimino groups bound to hydrogen atoms or to acyclic carbon atoms [5]
251/38 • to carbon atoms of a saturated carbon skeleton [5]
251/40 • to carbon atoms of an unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]
251/42 • with the carbon atom of at least one of the oxyimino groups bound to a carbon atom of a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring [5]
251/44 • with the carbon atom of at least one of the oxyimino groups being part of a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring [5]
251/46 • Quinone oximes [5]
251/48 • with the carbon atom of at least one of the oxyimino groups bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [5]
251/50 • having oxygen atoms of oxyimino groups bound to carbon atoms of substituted hydrocarbon radicals [5]
251/52 • of hydrocarbon radicals substituted by halogen atoms or by nitro or nitroso groups [5]
251/54 • of hydrocarbon radicals substituted by singly-bound oxygen atoms [5]
251/56 • of hydrocarbon radicals substituted by doubly-bound oxygen atoms [5]
251/58 • of hydrocarbon radicals substituted by nitrogen atoms not being part of nitro or nitroso groups [5]
251/60 • of hydrocarbon radicals substituted by carboxyl groups [5]
251/62 • having oxygen atoms of oxyimino groups esterified [5]
251/64 • by carboxylic acids [5]
251/66 • with the esterifying carboxyl groups bound to hydrogen atoms, to acyclic carbon atoms or to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
251/68 • with at least one of the esterifying carboxyl groups bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [5]
251/70 • Metal complexes of oximes [5]
251/72 • Hydrazones [5]
251/74 • having doubly-bound carbon atoms of hydrazone groups bound to hydrogen atoms or to acyclic carbon atoms [5]
251/76 • to carbon atoms of a saturated carbon skeleton [5]
251/78 • to carbon atoms of an unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]
251/80 • the carbon skeleton containing rings [5]
251/82 • having doubly-bound carbon atoms of hydrazone groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
251/84 • having doubly-bound carbon atoms of hydrazone groups being part of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
251/86 • having doubly-bound carbon atoms of hydrazone groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings [5]
251/88 • having also the other nitrogen atom doubly-bound to a carbon atom, e.g. azines [5]

253/00 Preparation of carboxylic acid nitriles (of cyanogen or compounds thereof C01C 3/00) [5]
253/02 • by reaction of nitrogen oxide with organic compounds [5]
253/04 • by reaction of cyanogen halides, e.g. ClCN, with organic compounds [5]
253/06 • from N-formylated amino compounds [5]
253/08 • by addition of hydrogen cyanide or salts thereof to unsaturated compounds [5]
253/10 • to compounds containing carbon-to-carbon double bonds [5]
253/12 • to compounds containing carbon-to-carbon triple bonds [5]
253/14 • by reaction of cyanides with halogen-containing compounds with replacement of halogen atoms by cyano groups [5]
253/16 • by reaction of cyanides with lactones or compounds containing hydroxy groups or etherified or esterified hydroxy groups [5]
253/18 • by reaction of ammonia or amines with compounds containing carbon-to-carbon multiple bonds other than in six-membered aromatic rings [5]
253/20 • by dehydratation of carboxylic acid amides [5]
253/22 • by reaction of ammonia with carboxylic acids with replacement of carboxyl groups by cyano groups [5]
253/24 • by amination of hydrocarbons or substituted hydrocarbons [5]
253/26 • containing carbon-to-carbon multiple bonds, e.g. unsaturated aldehydes [5]
253/28 • containing six-membered aromatic rings, e.g. styrene [5]
253/30 • by reactions not involving the formation of cyano groups [5]
253/32 • Separation; Purification; Stabilisation; Use of additives [5]
253/34 • Separation; Purification [5]

255/00 Carboxylic acid nitriles (cyanogen or compounds thereof C01C 3/00) [5]
255/01 • having cyano groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms [5]
255/02 • of an acyclic and saturated carbon skeleton [5]
255/03 • Mononitriles [5]
255/04 • containing two cyano groups bound to the carbon skeleton [5]
255/05 • containing at least three cyano groups bound to the carbon skeleton [5]
255/06 • of an acyclic and unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]
255/07 • Mononitriles [5]
255/08 • Acrylonitrile; Methacrylonitrile [5]
255/09 • containing at least two cyano groups bound to the carbon skeleton [5]
255/10 • containing cyano groups and halogen atoms, or nitro or nitroso groups, bound to the same acyclic carbon skeleton [5]
255/11 • containing cyano groups and singly-bound oxygen atoms bound to the same saturated acyclic carbon skeleton [5]
255/12 • containing cyano groups and hydroxy groups bound to the carbon skeleton [5]
255/13 • containing cyano groups and etherified hydroxy groups bound to the carbon skeleton [5]
255/14 • containing cyano groups and esterified hydroxy groups bound to the carbon skeleton [5]
255/15 • containing cyano groups and singly-bound oxygen atoms bound to the same unsaturated acyclic carbon skeleton [5]
255/16 • containing cyano groups and singly-bound oxygen atoms bound to the same carbon atom of an acyclic carbon skeleton [5]
255/17 • containing cyano groups and doubly-bound oxygen atoms bound to the same acyclic carbon skeleton [5]
255/18 • containing cyano groups bound to carbon atoms of carboxyl groups [5]
255/19 • containing cyano groups and carboxyl groups, other than cyano groups, bound to the same saturated acyclic carbon skeleton [5]
255/20 • the carbon skeleton being further substituted by singly-bound oxygen atoms [5]
255/21 • the carbon skeleton being further substituted by doubly-bound oxygen atoms [5]
255/22 • containing cyano groups and at least two carboxyl groups bound to the carbon skeleton [5]
255/23 • containing cyano groups and carboxyl groups, other than cyano groups, bound to the same unsaturated acyclic carbon skeleton [5]
255/24 • containing cyano groups and singly-bound nitrogen atoms, not being further bound to other hetero atoms, bound to the same saturated acyclic carbon skeleton [5]
255/25 • Aminocetonitriles [5]
255/26 • containing cyano groups, amino groups and singly-bound oxygen atoms bound to the carbon skeleton [5]
255/27 • containing cyano groups, amino groups and doubly-bound oxygen atoms bound to the carbon skeleton [5]
255/28 • containing cyano groups, amino groups and carboxyl groups, other than cyano groups, bound to the carbon skeleton [5]
255/29 • containing cyano groups and acylated amino groups bound to the carbon skeleton [5]
255/30 • containing cyano groups and singly-bound nitrogen atoms, not being further bound to other hetero atoms, bound to the same unsaturated acyclic carbon skeleton [5]
255/31 • having cyano groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms of a carbon skeleton containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
255/32 • having cyano groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms of a carbon skeleton containing at least one six-membered aromatic ring [5]
255/33 • with cyano groups linked to the six-membered aromatic ring, or to the condensed ring system containing that ring, by saturated carbon chains [5]
255/34 • with cyano groups linked to the six-membered aromatic ring, or to the condensed ring system containing that ring, by unsaturated carbon chains [5]
255/35 • the carbon skeleton being further substituted by halogen atoms, or by nitro or nitroso groups [5]
255/36 • the carbon skeleton being further substituted by hydroxy groups [5]
the carbon skeleton being further substituted by etherified hydroxy groups \[5\]

the carbon skeleton being further substituted by esterified hydroxy groups \[5\]

with hydroxy groups esterified by derivatives of 2,2-dimethylcyclopropane carboxylic acids, e.g. chrysanthemumic acids \[5\]

the carbon skeleton being further substituted by doubly-bound oxygen atoms \[5\]

to carbon atoms of non-condensed rings \[5\]

to carbon atoms of rings being part of condensed ring systems \[5\]

to carbon atoms of 2,2-dimethylcyclopropane rings, e.g. nitrite of chrysanthemumic acids \[5\]

giving carbon groups to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings of a carbon skeleton \[5\]

to carbon atoms of non-condensed six-membered aromatic rings \[5\]

containing at least two cyano groups bound to the carbon skeleton \[5\]

to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings being part of condensed ring systems \[5\]

containing cyano groups and hydroxy groups bound to the carbon skeleton \[5\]

containing cyano groups and etherified hydroxy groups bound to the carbon skeleton \[5\]

containing cyano groups and esterified hydroxy groups bound to the carbon skeleton \[5\]

containing cyano groups and doubly-bound oxygen atoms bound to the carbon skeleton \[5\]

containing cyano groups and carboxyl groups, other than cyano groups, bound to the carbon skeleton \[5\]

containing cyano groups and singly-bound nitrogen atoms, not being further bound to other hetero atoms, bound to the carbon skeleton \[5\]

the carbon skeleton being further substituted by singly-bound oxygen atoms \[5\]

at least one of the singly-bound nitrogen atoms being acylated \[5\]

containing cyano groups and nitrogen atoms being part of imino groups bound to the same carbon skeleton \[5\]

containing cyano groups and azido groups bound to the same carbon skeleton \[5\]

Compounds containing carboxyl groups, the doubly-bound oxygen atom of a carboxyl group being replaced by a doubly-bound nitrogen atom, this nitrogen atom not being further bound to an oxygen atom, e.g. imino-ethers, amidines \[5\]

with replacement of the other oxygen atom of the carboxyl group by halogen atoms, e.g. imino-halides \[5\]

without replacement of the other oxygen atom of the carboxyl group, e.g. imino-ethers \[5\]

having carbon atoms of imino-carboxyl groups bound to hydrogen atoms, to acyclic carbon atoms, or to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings \[5\]

having carbon atoms of imino-carboxyl groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings \[5\]

with replacement of the other oxygen atom of the carboxyl group by nitrogen atoms, e.g. amidines \[5\]

having carbon atoms of amidino groups bound to hydrogen atoms \[5\]

having carbon atoms of amidino groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms \[5\]

having carbon atoms of amidino groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings \[5\]

having carbon atoms of amidino groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings \[5\]

having nitrogen atoms of amidino groups acylated \[5\]

having nitrogen atoms of amidino groups further bound to nitrogen atoms, e.g. hydrazidines \[5\]

Compounds containing carboxyl groups, an oxygen atom of a carboxyl group being replaced by a nitrogen atom, this nitrogen atom being further bound to an oxygen atom and not being part of nitro or nitroso groups \[5\]

with replacement of the other oxygen atom of the carboxyl group by halogen atoms \[5\]

without replacement of the other oxygen atom of the carboxyl group, e.g. hydroxamic acids \[5\]

having carbon atoms of hydroxamic groups bound to hydrogen atoms or to acyclic carbon atoms \[5\]

having carbon atoms of hydroxamic groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings \[5\]

having carbon atoms of hydroxamic groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings \[5\]

with replacement of the other oxygen atom of the carboxyl group by nitrogen atoms, e.g. N-hydroxyamidines \[5\]

having carbon atoms of hydroxyamidine groups bound to hydrogen atoms or to acyclic carbon atoms \[5\]

having carbon atoms of hydroxyamidine groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings \[5\]

having carbon atoms of hydroxyamidine groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings \[5\]
Derivatives of cyanic acid [5]

by reactions of cyanic acid or its derivatives [5]

from or via carbamates or carbamoyl halides [5]

from or via heterocyclic compounds, e.g. pyrolysis of furoxans [5]

by reaction of amines with carbonyl halides, e.g. with phosgene [5]

from or via nitrogen analogues of carboxylic acids, e.g. from hydroxamic acids, involving a Hofmann, Curtius or Losshen-type rearrangement (C07C 209/56 takes precedence) [5]

by catalytic reaction of nitro compounds with carbon monoxide [5]

by reactions not involving the formation of isocyanate groups [5]

Separation; Purification; Stabilisation; Use of additives [5]

Separation; Purification [5]

Derivatives of isocyanic acid [5]

having isocyanate groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms [5]

of a saturated carbon skeleton [5]

of an unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]

the carbon skeleton containing rings [5]

having isocyanate groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]

having isocyanate groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings [5]

containing at least two isocyanate groups bound to the same carbon skeleton [5]

having isocyanate groups acylated [5]

Carbodiimides [5]

Preparation of derivatives of carboximide, i.e. compounds containing any of the groups

\[ \mathrm{N}(-\mathrm{C}-\mathrm{O})_- , \mathrm{N}(-\mathrm{C}-\mathrm{Hal})_- , \mathrm{N}(-\mathrm{C}-\mathrm{Hal})_+ \]

the nitrogen atom not being part of nitro or nitroso groups [5]

from isocyanates with formation of carbamate groups [5]

from amines with formation of carbamate groups [5]

by reactions not involving the formation of carbamate groups [5]

Separation; Purification; Stabilisation; Use of additives [5]

Derivatives of carbamic acid, i.e. compounds containing any of the groups

\[ \mathrm{C}(-\mathrm{C}(-\mathrm{O})_-) , \mathrm{C}(-\mathrm{C}(-\mathrm{Hal})_-) , \mathrm{C}(-\mathrm{C}(-\mathrm{Hal})_+) \]

\[ \mathrm{N}(-\mathrm{C}-\mathrm{Hal})_- , \mathrm{N}(-\mathrm{C}-\mathrm{Hal})_+ \]

the nitrogen atom not being part of nitro or nitroso groups [5]

Carbamic acids; Salts of carbamic acids

(unsubstituted carbamic acid or salts thereof C01B 21/12) [5]

Carbamic acid halides [5]

Esters of carbamic acids [5]

having oxygen atoms of carbamate groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms [5]

having oxygen atoms of carbamate groups bound to hydrogen atoms or to acyclic carbon atoms [5]

having oxygen atoms of carbamate groups bound to hydrogen atoms or to acyclic carbon atoms [5]

having oxygen atoms of carbamate groups bound to hydrogen atoms or to acyclic carbon atoms [5]

having oxygen atoms of carbamate groups bound to hydrogen atoms or to acyclic carbon atoms [5]

having oxygen atoms of carbamate groups bound to hydrogen atoms or to acyclic carbon atoms [5]
271/46 • • • • to carbon atoms of hydrocarbon radicals substituted by halogen atoms or by nitro or nitroso groups [5]

271/48 • • • • • to carbon atoms of hydrocarbon radicals substituted by singly-bound oxygen atoms [5]

271/50 • • • • • to carbon atoms of hydrocarbon radicals substituted by doubly-bound oxygen atoms [5]

271/52 • • • • • to carbon atoms of hydrocarbon radicals substituted by nitrogen atoms not being part of nitro or nitroso groups [5]

271/54 • • • • • with the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carbamate groups bound to a carbon atom of a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring [5]

271/56 • • • • • with the nitrogen atom of at least one of the carbamate groups bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [5]

271/60 • • • • having oxygen atoms of carbamate groups bound to nitrogen atoms [5]

271/62 • Compounds containing any of the groups

\[ -\text{C}\equiv\text{N} - \text{X} \text{ or } -\text{C}-\text{N} - \text{Hal} \] X being a hetero atom, Y being any atom, e.g. N-acylcarbamates [5]

271/64 • • • Y being a hydrogen or a carbon atom, e.g. benzoylcarbamates [5]

271/66 • • • Y being a hetero atom [5]

271/68 • Compounds containing any of the groups

\[ -\text{N} - \text{X} \text{ or } -\text{N} - \text{Hal} \] [5]

273/00 Preparation of urea or its derivatives, i.e. compounds containing any of the groups

\[ \text{N} - \text{C} - \text{N} \text{ or } \text{N} - \text{C} - \text{O} \text{ or } \text{N} - \text{C} - \text{Hal} \] the nitrogen atoms not being part of nitro or nitroso groups [5]

273/02 • • • • of urea, its salts, complexes or addition compounds [5]

273/04 • • • from carbon dioxide and ammonia [5]

273/06 • • • from cyanamide or calcium cyanamide [5]

273/08 • • • from ammoniacal liquor [5]

273/10 • • • combined with the synthesis of ammonia [5]

273/12 • • • combined with the synthesis of melamine [5]

273/14 • • • Separation; Purification; Stabilisation; Use of additives [5]

273/16 • • • Separation; Purification [5]

273/18 • • • of substituted ureas [5]

275/00 Derivatives of urea, i.e. compounds containing any of the groups

\[ \text{N} - \text{C} - \text{N} \text{ or } \text{N} - \text{C} - \text{O} \text{ or } \text{N} - \text{C} - \text{Hal} \] the nitrogen atoms not being part of nitro or nitroso groups [5]

275/02 • • • Salts; Complexes; Addition compounds [5]

275/04 • • • having nitrogen atoms of urea groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms [5]

275/06 • • • of an acyclic and saturated carbon skeleton [5]

275/08 • • • • being further substituted by halogen atoms, or by nitro or nitroso groups [5]

275/10 • • • • being further substituted by singly-bound oxygen atoms [5]

275/12 • • • • being further substituted by doubly-bound oxygen atoms [5]

275/14 • • • • being further substituted by nitrogen atoms not being part of nitro or nitroso groups [5]

275/16 • • • • being further substituted by carboxyl groups [5]

275/18 • • • • of a saturated carbon skeleton containing rings [5]

275/20 • • • • of an unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]

275/22 • • • • containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]

275/24 • • • • containing six-membered aromatic rings [5]

275/26 • • • • having nitrogen atoms of urea groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]

275/28 • • • • having nitrogen atoms of urea groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings of a carbon skeleton [5]

275/30 • • • • being further substituted by halogen atoms, or by nitro or nitroso groups [5]

275/32 • • • • being further substituted by singly-bound oxygen atoms [5]

275/34 • • • • having nitrogen atoms of urea groups and singly-bound oxygen atoms bound to carbon atoms of the same non-condensed six-membered aromatic ring [5]

275/36 • • • • • with at least one of the oxygen atoms further bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring, e.g. N-aryloxyphenylureas [5]

275/38 • • • • being further substituted by doubly-bound oxygen atoms [5]

275/40 • • • • being further substituted by nitrogen atoms not being part of nitro or nitroso groups [5]

275/42 • • • • being further substituted by carboxyl groups [5]

275/44 • • • • having nitrogen atoms of urea groups doubly-bound to carbon atoms [5]

275/46 • • • • containing any of the groups

\[ \text{N} - \text{C} - \text{N} \text{ or } \text{N} - \text{C} - \text{O} \text{ or } \text{N} - \text{C} - \text{Hal} \] X being a hetero atom, Y being any atom, e.g. acylureas [5]

275/48 • • • • Y being a hydrogen or a carbon atom [5]

275/50 • • • • Y being a hydrogen or an acyclic carbon atom [5]

275/52 • • • • Y being a carbon atom of a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring [5]

275/54 • • • • Y being a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring, e.g. benzoylureas [5]

275/56 • • • • X being a nitrogen atom [5]

275/58 • • • • Y being a hetero atom [5]

275/60 • • • • Y being an oxygen atom, e.g. allophanic acids [5]

275/62 • • • • • Y being a nitrogen atom, e.g. biuret [5]

275/64 • • • • • having nitrogen atoms of urea groups singly-bound to oxygen atoms [5]

275/66 • • • • • having nitrogen atoms of urea groups singly-bound to halogen atoms or to nitro or nitroso groups [5]

275/68 • • • • • N-nitroso ureas [5]

275/70 • • • • Compounds containing any of the groups

\[ -\text{N} - \text{X} \text{ or } -\text{N} - \text{Hal} \] e.g. isoureas [5]
277/00 Preparation of guanidine or its derivatives, i.e. compounds containing the group \[ \text{N}^+(-\text{C}(-\text{N})\text{C})\text{N}(-\text{Y})\text{X} \], the singly-bound nitrogen atoms not being part of nitro or nitroso groups [5]

277/02 • of guanidine from cyanamide, calcium cyanamide or dicyandiamides [5]
277/04 • of guanidine from ammonium thiocyanate [5]
277/06 • Purification or separation of guanidine [5]
277/08 • of substituted guanidines [5]

279/00 Derivatives of guanidine, i.e. compounds containing the group \[ \text{N}^+(-\text{C}(-\text{N})\text{C})\text{N}(-\text{Y})\text{X} \], the singly-bound nitrogen atoms not being part of nitro or nitroso groups [5]

279/02 • Guanidine; Salts, complexes or addition compounds thereof [5]
279/04 • having nitrogen atoms of guanidine groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms of a carbon skeleton [5]
279/06 • being further substituted by halogen atoms, or by nitro or nitroso groups [5]
279/08 • being further substituted by singly-bound oxygen atoms [5]
279/10 • being further substituted by doubly-bound oxygen atoms [5]
279/12 • being further substituted by nitrogen atoms not being part of nitro or nitroso groups [5]
279/14 • being further substituted by carboxyl groups [5]
279/16 • having nitrogen atoms of guanidine groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
279/18 • having nitrogen atoms of guanidine groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings [5]
279/20 • containing any of the groups

\[
\text{N}^+(-\text{C}(-\text{N})\text{C})\text{N}(-\text{Y})\text{X} \quad \text{X being a hetero atom, Y being any atom, e.g. acylguanidines} [5]
\]

279/22 • Y being a hydrogen or a carbon atom, e.g. benzoylguanidines [5]
279/24 • Y being a hetero atom [5]
279/26 • X and Y being nitrogen atoms, i.e. biguanides [5]
279/28 • having nitrogen atoms of guanidine groups bound to cyano groups, e.g. cyanoguanidines, dicyandiamides [5]
279/30 • having nitrogen atoms of guanidine groups bound to nitro or nitroso groups [5]
279/32 • N-nitroguanidines [5]
279/34 • N-nitroguanidine [5]
279/36 • Substituted N-nitroguanidines [5]

281/00 Derivatives of carbonic acid containing functional groups covered by groups C07C 269/00-C07C 279/00 in which at least one nitrogen atom of these functional groups is further bound to another nitrogen atom not being part of a nitro or nitroso group [5]

281/02 • Compounds containing any of the groups

\[
\text{N}^+(-\text{C}(-\text{N})\text{C})\text{N}(-\text{Y})\text{X} \quad \text{X being any atom, e.g. acylguanidines} [5]
\]

281/04 • the other nitrogen atom being further doubly-bound to a carbon atom [5]

281/06 • Compounds containing any of the groups

\[
\text{N}^+(-\text{C}(-\text{N})\text{C})\text{N}(-\text{Y})\text{X} \quad \text{X being any atom, e.g. acylguanidines} [5]
\]

281/08 • the other nitrogen atom being further doubly-bound to a carbon atom, e.g. semicarbazides [5]
281/10 • the carbon atom being further bound to an acyclic carbon atom or to a carbon atom of a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring [5]
281/12 • the carbon atom being part of a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring [5]
281/14 • the carbon atom being further bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [5]
281/16 • Compounds containing any of the groups

\[
\text{N}^+(-\text{C}(-\text{N})\text{C})\text{N}(-\text{Y})\text{X} \quad \text{X being any atom, e.g. acylguanidines} [5]
\]

281/18 • the other nitrogen atom being further doubly-bound to a carbon atom, e.g. guanylhydrazones [5]
281/20 • the two nitrogen atoms of the functional groups being doubly-bound to each other, e.g. azoformamide [5]

291/00 Compounds containing carbon and nitrogen and having functional groups not covered by groups C07C 201/00-C07C 281/00 [5]

291/02 • containing nitrogen-oxide bonds [5]
291/04 • containing amino-oxide bonds [5]
291/06 • Nitrile oxides [5]
291/08 • Azoxy compounds [5]
291/10 • Isocyanides [5]
291/12 • Fulminates [5]
291/14 • containing at least one carbon atom bound to a nitro or nitroso group and doubly-bound to a hetero atom [5]

Compounds containing carbon together with sulfur, selenium or tellurium, with or without hydrogen, halogens, oxygen or nitrogen [5]

301/00 Esters of sulfurous acid [5]
301/02 • having sulfite groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings [5]

303/00 Preparation of esters or amides of sulfuric acids; Preparation of sulfonic acids or of their esters, halides, anhydrides or amides [5]

303/02 • of sulfonic acids or halides thereof [5]
303/04 • by substitution of hydrogen atoms by sulfo or halosulfonyl groups [5]
303/06 • by reaction with sulfuric acid or sulfur trioxide [5]
303/08 • by reaction with halogenosulfonic acids [5]
303/10 • by reaction with sulfur dioxide and halogen or by reaction with sulfuryl halides [5]
303/12 • by reaction with thionylhalides [5]
303/14 • by sulfoxidation, i.e. by reaction with sulfur dioxide and oxygen with formation of sulfo or halosulfonyl groups [5]
303/16 • by oxidation of thials, sulfides, hydrolypolysulfides, or polysulfides with formation of sulfo or halosulfonyl groups [5]
307/00 Amides of sulfuric acids, i.e. compounds having singly-bound oxygen atoms of sulfate groups replaced by nitrogen atoms, not being part of nitro or nitroso groups [5]

307/02 • Monoamides of sulfuric acids or esters thereof, e.g. sulfamic acids [5]
307/04 • Diamides of sulfuric acids [5]
307/06 • having nitrogen atoms of the sulfamide groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms [5]
307/08 • having nitrogen atoms of the sulfamide groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
307/10 • having nitrogen atoms of the sulfamide groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings [5]

309/00 Sulfonic acids; Halides, esters, or anhydrides thereof [5]

309/01 • Sulfonic acids [5]
309/02 • having sulfo groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms [5]
309/03 • • of an acyclic saturated carbon skeleton [5]
309/04 • • containing only one sulfo group [5]
309/05 • • containing at least two sulfo groups bound to the carbon skeleton [5]
309/06 • • containing halogen atoms, or nitro or nitroso groups bound to the carbon skeleton [5]
309/07 • • containing oxygen atoms bound to the carbon skeleton [5]
309/08 • • • containing hydroxyl groups bound to the carbon skeleton [5]
309/09 • • • containing etherified hydroxyl groups bound to the carbon skeleton [5]
309/10 • • • • with the oxygen atom of at least one of the etherified hydroxyl groups further bound to an acyclic carbon atom [5]
309/11 • • • • with the oxygen atom of at least one of the etherified hydroxyl groups further bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [5]
309/12 • • • • containing esterified hydroxyl groups bound to the carbon skeleton [5]
309/13 • • • • containing nitrogen atoms, not being part of nitro or nitroso groups, bound to the carbon skeleton [5]
309/14 • • • • containing amino groups bound to the carbon skeleton [5]
309/15 • • • • • the nitrogen atom of at least one of the amino groups being part of any of the

\[
\begin{align*}
&\text{containing doubly-bound nitrogen atoms bound to the carbon skeleton [5]} \\
&\text{containing carboxyl groups bound to the carbon skeleton [5]} \\
&\text{containing amino groups bound to the same carbon skeleton [5]} \\
&\text{of an unsaturated carbon skeleton containing rings [5]} \\
&\text{containing nitrogen atoms, not being part of nitro or nitroso groups, bound to the carbon skeleton [5]} \\
&\text{containing carboxyl groups bound to the carbon skeleton [5]} \\
&\text{of an unsaturated carbon skeleton containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]} \\
&\text{of a carbon skeleton containing six-membered aromatic rings [5]} \\
&\text{having sulfogroups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings of a carbon skeleton [5]} \\
&\text{containing nitrogen atoms, not being part of nitro or nitroso groups, bound to the carbon skeleton [5]} \\
&\text{containing carboxyl groups bound to the carbon skeleton [5]} \\
&\text{having sulfogroups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings of a carbon skeleton [5]}
\end{align*}
\]

309/16 • • • • • containing hydroxyl groups bound to the carbon skeleton [5]
309/17 • • • • • containing carboxyl groups bound to the carbon skeleton [5]
309/18 • • • • • containing amino groups bound to the same carbon skeleton [5]
309/19 • • • • of a saturated carbon skeleton containing rings [5]
309/20 • • • • of an acyclic unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]
309/21 • • • • containing nitrogen atoms, not being part of nitro or nitroso groups, bound to the carbon skeleton [5]
309/22 • • • • containing carboxyl groups bound to the carbon skeleton [5]
309/23 • • • • of an unsaturated carbon skeleton containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
309/24 • • • • of a carbon skeleton containing six-membered aromatic rings [5]
309/25 • • • • having sulfogroups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings of a carbon skeleton [5]
309/26 • • • • containing nitrogen atoms, not being part of nitro or nitroso groups, bound to the carbon skeleton [5]
309/27 • • • • containing carboxyl groups bound to the carbon skeleton [5]
309/28 • • • • having sulfogroups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings of a carbon skeleton [5]
of non-condensed six-membered aromatic rings \[5\]

of six-membered aromatic rings substituted by alkyl groups \[5\]

by alkyl groups containing at least three carbon atoms \[5\]

containing at least two non-condensed six-membered aromatic rings in the carbon skeleton \[5\]

of six-membered aromatic rings being part of condensed ring systems \[5\]

formed by two rings \[5\]

Naphthalene sulfonic acids \[5\]

substituted by alkyl groups \[5\]

by alkyl groups containing at least three carbon atoms \[5\]

formed by at least three rings \[5\]

containing halogen atoms bound to the carbon skeleton \[5\]

containing nitro or nitroso groups bound to the carbon skeleton \[5\]

containing singly-bound oxygen atoms bound to the carbon skeleton \[5\]

having the sulfo groups bound to carbon atoms of non-condensed six-membered aromatic rings \[5\]

having at least one of the sulfo groups bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring being part of a condensed ring system \[5\]

containing doubly-bound oxygen atoms bound to the carbon skeleton \[5\]

containing nitrogen atoms, not being part of nitro or nitroso groups, bound to the carbon skeleton \[5\]

having the sulfo groups bound to carbon atoms of non-condensed six-membered aromatic rings \[5\]

having at least one of the sulfo groups bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring being part of a condensed ring system \[5\]

the carbon skeleton being further substituted by halogen atoms \[5\]

the carbon skeleton being further substituted by singly-bound oxygen atoms \[5\]

having at least one of the sulfo groups bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring being part of a condensed ring system \[5\]

at least one of the nitrogen atoms being part of any of the groups

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{X} & \quad \text{Y} \\
\text{N} & \quad \text{C} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{N} \\
\text{C} & \quad \text{Y}
\end{align*}
\]

of any of the groups

X being a hetero atom, Y being any atom \[5\]

the carbon skeleton being further substituted by doubly-bound oxygen atoms \[5\]

the carbon skeleton containing carbon atoms of quinone rings \[5\]

at least one of the nitrogen atoms being part of any of the groups

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{N} & \quad \text{C} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{N} \\
\text{C} & \quad \text{Y}
\end{align*}
\]

X being a hetero atom, Y being any atom \[5\]

Y being a hydrogen or a carbon atom \[5\]

Y being a hetero atom \[5\]

containing carboxyl groups bound to the carbon skeleton \[5\]

Carboxylic acid groups or esters thereof \[5\]

Nitrogen analogues of carboxyl groups \[5\]

the carbon skeleton being further substituted by singly-bound oxygen atoms \[5\]

the carbon skeleton being further substituted by nitrogen atoms, not being part of nitro or nitroso groups \[5\]

Sulfonated fats, oils or waxes of undetermined constitution \[5\]

Esters of sulfonic acids \[5\]

having sulfur atoms of esterified sulfo groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms \[5\]

doing sulfur atoms of esterified sulfo groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings \[5\]

having sulfur atoms of esterified sulfo groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings of a carbon skeleton \[5\]

doing carbon atoms of non-condensed six-membered aromatic rings \[5\]

doing carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings being part of condensed ring systems \[5\]

containing singly-bound oxygen atoms bound to the carbon skeleton \[5\]

containing nitrogen atoms, not being part of nitro or nitroso groups, bound to the carbon skeleton \[5\]

containing carboxyl groups bound to the carbon skeleton \[5\]

Halides of sulfonic acids \[5\]

having halosulfonyl groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms \[5\]

doing saturated carbon skeleton \[5\]

doing unsaturated carbon skeleton \[5\]

having halosulfonyl groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings \[5\]

having halosulfonyl groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings of a carbon skeleton \[5\]

containing singly-bound oxygen atoms bound to the carbon skeleton \[5\]

containing nitrogen atoms, not being part of nitro or nitroso groups, bound to the carbon skeleton \[5\]

containing nitrogen atoms, not being part of nitro or nitroso groups, bound to the carbon skeleton \[5\]
Amides of sulfonic acids, i.e. compounds having singly-bound oxygen atoms of sulfo groups replaced by nitrogen atoms, not being part of nitro or nitroso groups [5]

- Sulfonamides having sulfur atoms of sulfonamide groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms [5]
- of an acyclic saturated carbon skeleton [5]
- having the nitrogen atoms of the sulfonamide groups bound to hydrogen atoms or to acyclic carbon atoms [5]
- to acyclic carbon atoms of hydrocarbon radicals substituted by singly-bound oxygen atoms [5]
- having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the sulfonamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring [5]
- having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the sulfonamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [5]
- the carbon skeleton being further substituted by at least two halogen atoms [5]
- of a saturated carbon skeleton containing rings [5]
- of an acyclic unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]
- of an unsaturated carbon skeleton containing rings [5]
- the carbon skeleton containing six-membered aromatic rings [5]
- Sulfonamides having sulfur atoms of sulfonamide groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
- Sulfonamides having sulfur atoms of sulfonamide groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings [5]
- having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the sulfonamide groups bound to hydrogen atoms or to an acyclic carbon atom [5]
- to an acyclic carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by singly-bound oxygen atoms [5]
- to an acyclic carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by hydrogen or a carbon atom [5]
- having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the sulfonamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring [5]
- having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the sulfonamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [5]
- Sulfonamides, the carbon skeleton of the acid part being further substituted by singly-bound nitrogen atoms, not being part of nitro or nitroso groups [5]
- having the sulfur atoms of the sulfonamide groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms [5]
- of an acyclic saturated carbon skeleton [5]
- of a saturated carbon skeleton containing rings [5]
- of an acyclic unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]
- of an unsaturated carbon skeleton containing rings [5]
- having the sulfur atom of at least one of the sulfonamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring [5]
- having the sulfur atom of at least one of the sulfonamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [5]
- Sulfonamides, the carbon skeleton of the acid part being further substituted by singly-bound nitrogen atoms, not being part of nitro or nitroso groups [5]
- having the sulfur atoms of the sulfonamide groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms [5]
- of an acyclic saturated carbon skeleton [5]
- of a saturated carbon skeleton containing rings [5]
- of an acyclic unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]
- of an unsaturated carbon skeleton containing rings [5]
- having the sulfur atom of at least one of the sulfonamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring [5]
- having the sulfur atom of at least one of the sulfonamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [5]
- having sulfur atoms of sulfonamide groups and amino groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings of the same carbon skeleton [5]
- having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the sulfonamide groups bound to hydrogen atoms or to an acyclic carbon atom [5]
- to an acyclic carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by singly-bound oxygen atoms [5]
- to an acyclic carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by nitrogen atoms, not being part of nitro or nitroso groups [5]
- to an acyclic carbon atom of a hydrocarbon radical substituted by carboxyl groups [5]
- having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the sulfonamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring [5]
- having the nitrogen atom of at least one of the sulfonamide groups bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [5]
- Sulfonamides, the carbon skeleton of the acid part being further substituted by singly-bound oxygen atoms [5]
- having the sulfur atoms of the sulfonamide groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms [5]
- of an acyclic saturated carbon skeleton [5]
- of a saturated carbon skeleton containing rings [5]
- of an acyclic unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]
- of an unsaturated carbon skeleton containing rings [5]
- at least one of the singly-bound nitrogen atoms being part of any of the groups
- X being a hetero atom, Y being a hetero atom, e.g. N-acylaminosulfonamides [5]
- Y being a hydrogen or a carbon atom [5]
- Y being a hetero atom [5]
- having nitrogen atoms of sulfonamide groups further bound to another hetero atom [5]
- to nitro nitrogen atoms [5]
- Compounds containing any of the groups
- X being a hetero atom, Y being any atom [5]
- Y being a hydrogen or a carbon atom [5]
- Y being a hetero atom [5]
Preparation of sulfones; Preparation of sulfoxides

- by formation of sulfone or sulfoxide groups by oxidation of sulfides, or by formation of sulfone groups by oxidation of sulfoxides
- by reactions not involving the formation of sulfone or sulfoxide groups
- Separation; Purification; Stabilisation; Use of additives

Sulfinic acids; Sulfenic acids; Halides, esters or anhydrides thereof; Amides of sulfinic or sulfenic acids, i.e. compounds having singly-bound oxygen atoms of sulfinic or sulfenic groups replaced by nitrogen atoms, not being part of nitro or nitroso groups

- Sulfinic acids; Derivatives thereof
- Sulfenic acids; Esters thereof
- Sulfenamides
- Sulfenic acids; Derivatives thereof
- Sulfenic acids; Esters thereof
- having sulfur atoms of sulfenic groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms
- having sulfur atoms of sulfenic groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings
- having sulfur atoms of sulfenic groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings
- N-sulfonilsulfoxides
- X and Y being nitrogen atoms, e.g. N-sulfonylguanidine
- N-sulfonylisocyanates

Sulfinic acids; Sulfenic acids; Halides, esters or anhydrides thereof; Amides of sulfinic or sulfenic acids, i.e. compounds having singly-bound oxygen atoms of sulfinic or sulfenic groups replaced by nitrogen atoms, not being part of nitro or nitroso groups

- Sulfinic acids; Derivatives thereof
- Sulfenic acids; Esters thereof
- Sulfenamides
- Sulfenic acids; Derivatives thereof
- Sulfenic acids; Esters thereof
- having sulfur atoms of sulfenic groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms
- having sulfur atoms of sulfenic groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings
- having sulfur atoms of sulfenic groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings
- having sulfur atoms of sulfenic groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings

With the nitrogen atoms of the sulfonylurea belonging to the same non-membered aromatic rings being part of the same non-condensed ring or of a condensed ring system containing that ring

With the nitrogen atoms of the sulfonylurea belonging to the same non-membered aromatic rings being part of the same non-condensed ring or of a condensed ring system containing that ring
321/00 Thiols, sulfides, hydropolysulfides or polysulfides [5]

321/02 • Thiols having mercapto groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms [5]

321/04 • of an acyclic saturated carbon skeleton [5]

321/06 • of a saturated carbon skeleton containing rings [5]

321/08 • of an acyclic unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]

321/10 • of an unsaturated carbon skeleton containing rings [5]

321/12 • Sulfides, hydropolysulfides, or polysulfides having thio groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms [5]

321/14 • of an acyclic saturated carbon skeleton [5]

321/16 • of a saturated carbon skeleton containing rings [5]

321/18 • of an acyclic unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]

321/20 • of an unsaturated carbon skeleton containing rings [5]

321/22 • Thiols, sulfides, hydropolysulfides, or polysulfides having thio groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]

321/24 • Thiols, sulfides, hydropolysulfides, or polysulfides having thio groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings [5]

321/26 • Thiols [5]

321/28 • Sulfides, hydropolysulfides, or polysulfides having thio groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings [5]

321/30 • Sulfides having the sulfur atom of at least one thio group bound to two carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings [5]

323/00 Thiols, sulfides, hydropolysulfides or polysulfides substituted by halogen, oxygen or nitrogen atoms, or by sulfur atoms not being part of thio groups [5]

323/01 • containing thio groups and halogen atoms, or nitro or nitroso groups bound to the same carbon skeleton [5]

323/02 • containing thio groups and halogen atoms, or nitro or nitroso groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms of the carbon skeleton [5]

323/03 • the carbon skeleton being acyclic and saturated [5]

323/04 • the carbon skeleton being acyclic and unsaturated [5]

323/05 • the carbon skeleton being saturated and containing rings [5]

323/06 • the carbon skeleton being unsaturated and containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]

323/07 • the carbon skeleton containing six-membered aromatic rings [5]

323/08 • having sulfur atoms of thio groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings of the carbon skeleton [5]

323/09 • having sulfur atoms of thio groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings of the carbon skeleton [5]

323/10 • containing thio groups and singly-bound oxygen atoms bound to the same carbon skeleton [5]

323/11 • having the sulfur atoms of the thio groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms of the carbon skeleton [5]

323/12 • the carbon skeleton being acyclic and saturated [5]

323/13 • the carbon skeleton being saturated and containing rings [5]

323/14 • the carbon skeleton being acyclic and unsaturated [5]

323/15 • the carbon skeleton being unsaturated and containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]

323/16 • the carbon skeleton containing six-membered aromatic rings [5]

323/17 • having the sulfur atom of at least one of the thio groups bound to a carbon atom of a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring of the carbon skeleton [5]

323/18 • having the sulfur atom of at least one of the thio groups bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring of the carbon skeleton [5]

323/19 • with singly-bound oxygen atoms bound to acyclic carbon atoms of the carbon skeleton [5]

323/20 • with singly-bound oxygen atoms bound to carbon atoms of the same non-condensed six-membered aromatic ring [5]

323/21 • with the sulfur atom of the thio group bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring being part of a condensed ring system [5]
• containing thio groups and doubly-bound oxygen atoms bound to the same carbon skeleton \[5\]
• containing thio groups and nitrogen atoms, not being part of nitro or nitroso groups, bound to the same carbon skeleton \[5\]
• having the sulfur atoms of the thio groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms of the carbon skeleton \[5\]
• the carbon skeleton being acyclic and saturated \[5\]
• the carbon skeleton being acyclic and saturated \[5\]
• the carbon skeleton being acyclic and unsaturated \[5\]
• the carbon skeleton being unsaturated and containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings \[5\]
• the carbon skeleton containing six-membered aromatic rings \[5\]
• having the sulfur atom of at least one of the thio groups bound to a carbon atom of a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring of the carbon skeleton \[5\]
• having the sulfur atom of at least one of the thio groups bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring of the carbon skeleton \[5\]
• having at least one of the nitrogen atoms bound to an acyclic carbon atom of the carbon skeleton \[5\]
• having at least one of the nitrogen atoms bound to a carbon atom of the same non-condensed six-membered aromatic ring \[5\]
• the thio group being a mercapto group \[5\]
• the thio group being a sulfide group \[5\]
• the sulfur atom of the sulfide group being further bound to an acyclic carbon atom \[5\]
• the sulfur atom of the sulfide group being further bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring \[5\]
• with the sulfur atom of the thio group bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring having part of a condensed ring system \[5\]
• at least one of the nitrogen atoms being part of any of the groups \[5\]

$\text{N}^\text{Y} \begin{array}{c} \text{X} \\ \text{N}^\text{X} \end{array}$ \text{ or } \begin{array}{c} \text{X} \\ \text{N}^\text{X} \end{array}$

Y being a hetero atom, X being any atom \[5\]
• Y being a hydrogen or a carbon atom \[5\]
• Y being a hydrogen or an acyclic carbon atom \[5\]
• Y being a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring \[5\]
• Y being a hetero atom \[5\]
• X or Y being nitrogen atoms \[5\]
• having at least one of the nitrogen atoms doubly-bound to the carbon skeleton \[5\]
• having at least one of the nitrogen atoms, not being part of nitro or nitroso groups, further bound to other hetero atoms \[5\]
• to oxygen atoms \[5\]
• to nitrogen atoms \[5\]
• to sulfur atoms \[5\]
• containing thio groups and carboxyl groups bound to the same carbon skeleton \[5\]
• containing thio groups and carboxyl groups bound to the same carbon skeleton \[5\]
• having the sulfur atoms of the thio groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms of the carbon skeleton \[5\]
• the carbon skeleton being acyclic and saturated \[5\]
• the carbon skeleton being saturated and containing rings \[5\]
• the carbon skeleton being acyclic and unsaturated \[5\]
• the carbon skeleton being unsaturated and containing rings other than six-membered aromatic rings \[5\]
• the carbon skeleton containing six-membered aromatic rings \[5\]
• containing thio groups and sulfur atoms, not being part of nitro or nitroso groups \[5\]
• with acetylated amino groups bound to the carbon skeleton \[5\]
• with the carbon atom of at least one of the carboxyl groups bound to nitrogen atoms \[5\]
• having the sulfur atom of at least one of the thio groups bound to a carbon atom of a ring other than a six-membered aromatic ring of the carbon skeleton \[5\]
• having the sulfur atom of at least one of the thio groups bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring \[5\]
• the sulfur atom of the sulfide group being further bound to a carbon atom \[5\]
• the sulfur atom of the sulfide group being further bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring \[5\]
• with the sulfur atom of the thio group bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring containing sulfur atoms of sulfonamide groups, bound to the carbon skeleton \[5\]
• containing sulfur atoms of sulfonamide groups, bound to the carbon skeleton \[5\]

### 327/00 Thioaldehydes; Thioketones; Thioquinones; Oxides thereof \[5\]
327/02 Thioketones; Oxides thereof \[5\]
327/04 Thioquinones; Oxides thereof \[5\]

### 327/00 Thioacrylic acids \[5\]
327/02 Monothioacrylic acids \[5\]
327/04 having thio groups \[5\]
327/06 to hydrogen atoms or to carbon atoms of an acyclic saturated carbon skeleton \[5\]
327/08 to carbon atoms of a saturated carbon skeleton containing rings \[5\]
327/10 to carbon atoms of an unsaturated carbon skeleton \[5\]
327/12 to carbon atoms of an unsaturated carbon skeleton containing rings \[5\]
327/14 having thio groups \[5\]
327/16 having thio groups \[5\]
327/18 Dithioacrylic acids \[5\]
327/20 Esters of monothioacrylic acids \[5\]
327/22  •  •  having carbon atoms of esterified thiocarboxyl groups bound to hydrogen atoms or to acyclic carbon atoms [5]
327/24  •  •  having carbon atoms of esterified thiocarboxyl groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
327/26  •  •  having carbon atoms of esterified thiocarboxyl groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings [5]
327/28  •  •  having sulfur atoms of esterified thiocarboxyl groups bound to carbon atoms of hydrogen radical substituted by singly-bound oxygen atoms [5]
327/30  •  •  having sulfur atoms of esterified thiocarboxyl groups bound to carbon atoms of hydrogen radical substituted by nitrogen atoms, not being part of nitro or nitroso groups [5]
327/32  •  •  having sulfur atoms of esterified thiocarboxyl groups bound to carbon atoms of hydrogen radical substituted by carbonyl groups [5]
327/34  •  •  with amino groups bound to the same hydrocarbon radicals [5]
327/36  •  •  Esters of dithiocarboxylic acids [5]
327/38  •  •  Amides of thiocarboxylic acids [5]
327/40  •  •  having carbon atoms of thiocarboxamide groups bound to hydrogen atoms or to acyclic carbon atoms [5]
327/42  •  •  to hydrogen atoms or to carbon atoms of a saturated carbon skeleton [5]
327/44  •  •  to carbon atoms of an unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]
327/46  •  •  having carbon atoms of thiocarboxamide groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
327/48  •  •  having carbon atoms of thiocarboxamide groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings [5]
327/50  •  •  Compounds containing any of the groups
\[ \text{X being a hetero atom, } Y \text{ being any atom} \]
327/52  •  •  •  Y being a hydrogen or a carbon atom [5]
327/54  •  •  •  Y being a hetero atom [5]
327/56  •  •  •  having nitrogen atoms of thiocarboxamide groups further bound to another hetero atom [5]
327/58  •  Derivatives of thiocarboxylic acids, the doubly-bound oxygen atoms being replaced by hydrogen nitro or nitroso groups [5]
327/60  •  •  Thiocarboxylic acids having sulfur atoms of thyocarboxyl groups further doubly-bound to oxygen atoms [5]

329/00  **Thiocarboxylic acids; Halides, esters or anhydrides thereof** [5]
329/02  •  •  Monothiocarboxylic acids; Derivatives thereof [5]
329/04  •  •  Esters of monothiocarboxylic acids [5]
329/06  •  •  •  having sulfur atoms of thiocarboxylic groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms [5]
329/08  •  •  having sulfur atoms of thiocarboxylic groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
329/10  •  •  having sulfur atoms of thiocarboxylic groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings [5]
329/12  •  •  Dithiocarboxylic acids; Derivatives thereof [5]
329/14  •  •  Esters of dithiocarboxylic acids [5]
329/16  •  •  •  having sulfur atoms of dithiocarboxylic groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms [5]
329/18  •  •  •  •  having sulfur atoms of dithiocarboxylic groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
329/20  •  •  •  •  having sulfur atoms of dithiocarboxylic groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings [5]

331/00  **Derivatives of thiocyanic acid or of isothiocyanic acid** [5]
331/02  •  •  Thiocyanates [5]
331/04  •  •  •  having sulfur atoms of thiocyanate groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms [5]
331/06  •  •  •  having sulfur atoms of thiocyanate groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
331/08  •  •  •  •  having sulfur atoms of thiocyanate groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings [5]
331/10  •  •  •  •  having sulfur atoms of thiocyanate groups bound to carbon atoms of hydrogen radical substituted by singly-bound oxygen atoms [5]
331/12  •  •  •  •  having sulfur atoms of thiocyanate groups bound to carbon atoms of hydrogen radical substituted by nitrogen atoms, not being part of nitro or nitroso groups [5]
331/14  •  •  •  •  •  •  having sulfur atoms of thiocyanate groups bound to carbon atoms of hydrogen radical substituted by carbonyl groups [5]
331/16  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  Isothiocyanates [5]
331/18  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  of a saturated carbon skeleton [5]
331/20  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  of an unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]
331/24  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  the carbon skeleton containing six-membered aromatic rings [5]
331/26  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  having isothiocyanate groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
331/28  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  having isothiocyanate groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings [5]
331/30  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  containing at least two isothiocyanate groups bound to the same carbon skeleton [5]
331/32  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  having isothiocyanate groups acylated [5]

333/00  **Derivatives of thiocarbamic acids, i.e. compounds containing any of the groups**
\[ \text{the nitrogen atom not being part of nitro or nitroso groups} \]
333/02  •  •  Monothiocarbamic acids; Derivatives thereof [5]
333/04  •  •  •  •  having sulfur atoms of thiocarbamic groups bound to hydrogen atoms or to acyclic carbon atoms [5]
333/06  •  •  •  •  •  having sulfur atoms of thiocarbamic groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]
333/08  •  •  •  •  •  •  having sulfur atoms of thiocarbamic groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings [5]
having nitrogen atoms of thiocarbamic groups bound to other hetero atoms [5]

333/14 • Dithiocarbamic acids; Derivatives thereof [5]

333/16 • • Salts of dithiocarbamic acids [5]

333/18 • • Esters of dithiocarbamic acids [5]

333/20 • • • having nitrogen atoms of dithiocarbamate groups bound to hydrogen atoms or to acyclic carbon atoms [5]

333/22 • • • having nitrogen atoms of dithiocarbamate groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]

333/24 • • • having nitrogen atoms of dithiocarbamate groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings [5]

333/26 • • • containing any of the groups

333/28 • • • having nitrogen atoms of dithiocarbamate groups bound to other hetero atoms [5]

333/30 • • • having sulfur atoms of dithiocarbamic groups bound to other sulfur atoms [5]

333/32 • • • Thiuramsulfides; Thiurampolysulfides [5]

335/00 Thioearas, i.e. compounds containing any of the groups having nitrogen atoms not being part of nitro or nitroso groups [5]

335/02 • Thiourea [5]

335/04 • Derivatives of thiourea [5]

335/06 • having nitrogen atoms of thiourea groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms [5]

335/08 • • • of a saturated carbon skeleton [5]

335/10 • • • of an unsaturated carbon skeleton [5]

335/12 • • • • the carbon skeleton containing six-membered aromatic rings [5]

335/14 • • • having nitrogen atoms of thiourea groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]

335/16 • • • having nitrogen atoms of thiourea groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings of a carbon skeleton [5]

335/18 • • • being further substituted by singly-bound oxygen atoms [5]

335/20 • • • being further substituted by nitrogen atoms, not being part of nitro or nitroso groups [5]

335/22 • • • being further substituted by carboxyl groups [5]

335/24 • • containing any of the groups

atom, Y being any atom [5]

335/26 • • • Y being a hydrogen or a carbon atom, e.g. benzyolthioureas [5]

335/28 • • • Y being a hetero atom, e.g. thiobiuret [5]

335/30 • Isothioureas [5]

335/32 • • • having sulfur atoms of isothiourea groups bound to acyclic carbon atoms [5]

335/34 • • • having sulfur atoms of isothiourea groups bound to carbon atoms of rings other than six-membered aromatic rings [5]

335/36 • • • having sulfur atoms of isothiourea groups bound to carbon atoms of six-membered aromatic rings [5]

335/38 • • • containing any of the groups

atom, Y being any atom [5]

335/40 • having nitrogen atoms of thiourea or isothiourea groups further bound to other hetero atoms [5]

335/42 • • Sulfonylthioureas; Sulfonylisothioureas [5]

335/44 • • Sulfonylthioureas; Sulfonylisothioureas [5]

337/00 Derivatives of thiocarbonic acids containing functional groups covered by groups C07C 333/00 or C07C 335/00 in which at least one nitrogen atom of these functional groups is further bound to another nitrogen atom not being part of a nitro or nitroso group [5]

337/02 • Compounds containing any of the groups

337/06 • • Compounds containing any of the groups

337/08 • • • the other nitrogen atom being further doubly-bound to a carbon atom [5]

337/10 • • • the two nitrogen atoms of the functional group being doubly-bound to each other [5]

381/00 Compounds containing carbon and sulfur and having functional groups not covered by groups C07C 301/00-C07C 337/00 [5]

381/02 • Thiosulfates [5]

381/04 • Thiosulfonates [5]
In this subclass, the following terms or expressions are used with the meanings indicated:

In this subclass, in compounds containing a hetero ring covered by group C07D which are covered by subclass C07H.

This subclass

HETEROCYCLIC COMPOUNDS (macromolecular compounds C08) [2]

Note(s)

1. This subclass does not cover compounds containing saccharide radicals (as defined in Note (3) following the title of subclass C07H), which are covered by subclass C07H.
2. In this subclass, in compounds containing a hetero ring covered by group C07D 295/00 and at least one other hetero ring, the hetero ring covered by group C07D 295/00 is considered as an acyclic chain containing nitrogen atoms.
3. In this subclass, the following terms or expressions are used with the meanings indicated:
   • “hetero ring” is a ring having at least one halogen, nitrogen, oxygen, sulfur, selenium or tellurium atom as a ring member;
   • “bridged” means the presence of at least one fusion other than ortho, peri or spiro;
two rings are "condensed" if they share at least one ring member, i.e. "spiro" and "bridged" are considered as condensed;
• "condensed ring system" is a ring system in which all rings are condensed among themselves;
• "number of relevant rings" in a condensed ring system equals the number of scissions necessary to convert the ring system into one acyclic chain;
• "relevant rings" in a condensed ring system, i.e. the rings which taken together describe all the links between every atom of the ring system, are chosen according to the following criteria consecutively:
  a. lowest number of ring members;
  b. highest number of hetero atoms as ring members;
  c. lowest number of members shared with other rings;
  d. last place in the classification scheme.

4. Attention is drawn to Note (3) after class C07, which defines the last place priority rule applied in the range of subclasses C07C-C07K and within these subclasses.

5. Therapeutic activity of compounds is further classified in subclass A61P.

6. In this subclass, in the absence of an indication to the contrary:
   a. compounds having only one hetero ring are classified in the last appropriate place in one of the groups C07D 203/00-C07D 347/00. The same applies for compounds having more hetero rings covered by the same main group, neither condensed among themselves nor condensed with a common carbocyclic ring system;
   b. compounds having two or more hetero rings covered by different main groups neither condensed among themselves nor condensed with a common carbocyclic ring system are classified in the last appropriate place in one of the groups C07D 401/00-C07D 421/00;
   c. compounds having two or more relevant hetero rings, covered by the same or by different main groups, which are condensed among themselves or condensed with a common carbocyclic ring system, are classified in the last appropriate place in one of the groups C07D 451/00-C07D 519/00.

7. In this subclass:
   • where a compound may exist in tautomeric forms, it is classified as though existing in the form which is classified last in the system. Therefore, double bonds between ring members and non-ring members and double bonds between ring members themselves are considered equivalent in determining the degree of hydrogenation of the ring. Formuæ are considered to be written in Kekule form;
   • hydrocarbon radicals containing a carbocyclic ring and an acyclic chain by which it is linked to the hetero ring and being substituted on both the carbocyclic ring and the acyclic chain by hetero atoms or by carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, are classified according to the substituents on the acyclic chain. For example, the compound
     \[
     \text{NH} - \text{CH} - \text{CH} - \text{COOCH}_3
     \]

Subclass index

COMPOUNDS CONTAINING ONE HETERO RING
HAVING NITROGEN AS RING HETERO ATOM

only nitrogen atoms

one nitrogen atom

Polynethylenemine................................................................. 295/00
Preparation of lactams.......................................................... 201/00
three-membered ring............................................................ 203/00
four-membered ring.............................................................. 205/00
five-membered ring............................................................. 207/00, 209/00
six-membered ring.............................................................. 211/00, 213/00, 215/00, 217/00, 219/00, 221/00
seven-membered ring........................................................... 223/00
Other compounds........................................................................ 225/00, 227/00
two nitrogen atoms

four-membered ring.............................................................. 229/00
five-membered ring............................................................. 231/00, 233/00, 235/00
six-membered ring.............................................................. 237/00, 239/00, 241/00
Piperazine............................................................... 295/00
seven-membered ring........................................................... 243/00
Other compounds........................................................................ 245/00, 247/00
three nitrogen atoms

five-membered ring............................................................. 249/00
six-membered ring............................................................. 251/00, 253/00
Other compounds........................................................................ 255/00
four or more nitrogen atoms.................................................... 257/00, 259/00

nitrogen and oxygen atoms

five-membered ring............................................................. 261/00, 263/00, 271/00
six-membered ring............................................................. 265/00, 273/00
morpholine................................................................................. 295/00

IPC (2014.01), Section C 89
COMPOUNDS CONTAINING TWO OR MORE HETERO RINGS

HAVING SELENIUM OR TELLURIUM AS RING HETERO ATOM

only selenium or tellurium atoms

- together with nitrogen atoms
- together with oxygen atoms
- together with sulfur atoms

HAVING HALOGEN AS RING HETERO ATOM

COMPOUNDS CONTAINING TWO OR MORE HETERO RINGS

IN THE SAME RING SYSTEM

HAVING NITROGEN AS RING HETERO ATOM

only nitrogen

-at least one six-membered ring with one nitrogen atom

Tropane, granatane
Quinine, quinuclidine, isoquinuclidine
Emetine, berberine
Lysergic acid, ergot alkaloids
Yohimbine
Vincamine
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alkaloids</th>
<th>463/00</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Other compounds</td>
<td>487/00, 507/00, 513/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purine</td>
<td>473/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peridine</td>
<td>475/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thienamycin</td>
<td>477/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitrogen and oxygen</td>
<td>491/00, 498/00, 507/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morphone</td>
<td>489/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxapenicillins</td>
<td>503/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxacephalosporins</td>
<td>505/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitrogen and sulfur</td>
<td>507/00, 513/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penicillins</td>
<td>499/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cephalosporins</td>
<td>501/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur</td>
<td>507/00, 515/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Having Oxygen as Ring Hetero Atom**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Oxygen and Nitrogen</th>
<th>491/00, 498/00, 507/00</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Morphine</td>
<td>489/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxapenicillins</td>
<td>503/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxacephalosporins</td>
<td>505/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxygen and sulfur</td>
<td>497/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxygen, nitrogen, and sulfur</td>
<td>507/00, 515/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Having Sulfur as Ring Hetero Atom**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sulfur and Oxygen</th>
<th>495/00</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sulfur, nitrogen, and oxygen</td>
<td>497/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Having Selenium, Tellurium, or Halogen as Ring Hetero Atom</td>
<td>517/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Having Nitrogen as Ring Hetero Atom**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nitrogen</th>
<th>401/00</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>At least one six-membered ring with one nitrogen atom</td>
<td>403/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other compounds</td>
<td>405/00, 413/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitrogen and oxygen</td>
<td>417/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thiamine</td>
<td>415/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur</td>
<td>419/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Having Oxygen as Ring Hetero Atom**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Oxygen</th>
<th>405/00, 413/00</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oxygen and sulfur</td>
<td>411/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxygen, nitrogen, and sulfur</td>
<td>419/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Having Sulfur as Ring Hetero Atom**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sulfur and Nitrogen</th>
<th>409/00</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Thiamine</td>
<td>417/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulfur and oxygen</td>
<td>415/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulfur, nitrogen, and oxygen</td>
<td>419/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Having Selenium, Tellurium, or Halogen as Ring Hetero Atom**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compounds containing two or more ring systems, having each two or more hetero rings</th>
<th>519/00</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Emetine</td>
<td>455/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ergot</td>
<td>457/00, 519/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Granatamine</td>
<td>451/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morphine</td>
<td>489/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nicotine</td>
<td>401/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Papaverine</td>
<td>217/20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quinine</td>
<td>453/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strychnine</td>
<td>498/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tropane</td>
<td>451/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Heterocyclic compounds having only nitrogen as ring hetero atom [2]

201/00 Preparation, separation, purification, or stabilisation of unsubstituted lactams [2]
201/02 Preparation of lactams [2]
201/04 * from or via oximes by Beckmann rearrangement [2]
201/06 * from ketones by simultaneous oxime formation and rearrangement [2]
201/08 * from carboxylic acids or derivatives thereof, e.g. hydroxy carboxylic acids, lactones, nitriles [2]
201/10 * from cycloaliphatic compounds by simultaneous nitrosylation and rearrangement [2]
201/12 * by depolymerising polyamides [2]
201/14 Preparation of salts or adducts of lactams [2]
201/16 Separation or purification [2]
201/18 Stabilisation [2]

203/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing three-membered rings with one nitrogen atom as the only ring hetero atom [2]
203/02 Preparation by ring-closure [2]
203/04 not condensed with other rings [2]
203/06 * having no double bonds between ring members or between ring members and non-ring members [2]
203/08 * with only hydrogen atoms, hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals, directly attached to the ring nitrogen atom [2]
203/10 * Radicals substituted by singly bound oxygen atoms [2]
203/12 * Radicals substituted by nitrogen atoms not forming part of a nitro radical [2]
203/14 * with carbocyclic rings directly attached to the ring nitrogen atom [2]
203/16 * with acylated ring nitrogen atoms [2]
203/18 * by carboxylic acids, or by sulfur or nitrogen analogues thereof [2]
203/20 * by carbonic acid, or by sulfur or nitrogen analogues thereof, e.g. carbamates [2]
203/22 * with hetero atoms directly attached to the ring nitrogen atom [2]
203/24 * Sulfur atoms [2]
203/26 * condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems [2]

205/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing four-membered rings with one nitrogen atom as the only ring hetero atom [2]
205/02 not condensed with other rings [2]
205/04 * having no double bonds between ring members or between ring members and non-ring members [2]
205/06 * having one double bond between ring members or between a ring member and a non-ring member [2]
205/08 * with one oxygen atom directly attached in position 2, e.g. beta-lactams [2]
205/085 * with a nitrogen atom directly attached in position 3 [5]
205/09 * with a sulfur atom directly attached in position 4 [5]
205/095 * and with a nitrogen atom directly attached in position 3 [5]
205/10 * having two double bonds between ring members or between ring members and non-ring members [2]
205/12 * condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems [2]

207/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing five-membered rings not condensed with other rings, with one nitrogen atom as the only ring hetero atom [2]

Note(s)
Pyrrrolidines having only hydrogen atoms attached to the ring carbon atoms are classified in group C07D 295/00.

207/02 * with only hydrogen or carbon atoms directly attached to the ring nitrogen atom [2]
207/04 * having no double bonds between ring members or between ring members and non-ring members [2]
207/06 * with radicals, containing only hydrogen and carbon atoms, attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
207/08 * with hydrocarbon radicals, substituted by hetero atoms, attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
207/09 * Radicals substituted by nitrogen atoms not forming part of a nitro radical [3]
207/10 * with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
207/12 * Oxygen or sulfur atoms [2]
207/14 * Nitrogen atoms not forming part of a nitro radical [2]
207/16 * Carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals [2]
207/18 * having one double bond between ring members or between a ring member and a non-ring member [2]
207/20 * with only hydrogen atoms, hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
207/22 * with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
207/24 * Oxygen or sulfur atoms [2]
207/26 * 2-Pyrroolidones [2]
207/263 * with only hydrogen atoms or radicals containing only hydrogen and carbon atoms directly attached to other ring carbon atoms [3]
207/267  • • • • • • with only hydrogen atoms or radicals containing only hydrogen and carbon atoms directly attached to the ring nitrogen atom [3]

207/27  • • • • • • with substituted hydrocarbon radicals directly attached to the ring nitrogen atom [3]

207/273  • • • • • • with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached to other ring carbon atoms [3]

207/277  • • • • • • Carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals [3]

207/28  • • • • • • 2-Pyrrolidone-5-carboxylic acids; Functional derivatives thereof, e.g., esters, nitriles [2, 3]

207/30  • having two double bonds between ring members or between ring members and non-ring members [2]

207/32  • • • • • • with only hydrogen atoms, hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]

207/323  • • • • • • with only hydrogen atoms or radicals containing only hydrogen and carbon atoms directly attached to the ring nitrogen atoms [3]

207/325  • • • • • • with substituted hydrocarbon radicals directly attached to the ring nitrogen atom [3]

207/327  • • • • • • Radicals substituted by carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals [3]

207/33  • • • • • • with substituted hydrocarbon radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [3]

207/333  • • • • • • Radicals substituted by oxygen or sulfur atoms [3]

207/335  • • • • • • Radicals substituted by nitrogen atoms not forming part of a nitro radical [3]

207/337  • • • • • • Radicals substituted by carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals [3]

207/34  • • • • • • with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]

207/36  • • • • • • Oxygen or sulfur atoms [2]

207/38  • • • • • • 2-Pyrrolones [2]

207/40  • • • • • • 2,5-Pyrrolidine-diones [2]

207/404  • • • • • • with only hydrogen atoms or radicals containing only hydrogen and carbon atoms directly attached to other ring carbon atoms, e.g. succinimide [3]

207/408  • • • • • • Radicals containing only hydrogen and carbon atoms attached to ring carbon atoms [3]

207/412  • • • • • • Acyclic radicals containing more than six carbon atoms [3]

207/416  • • • • • • with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached to other ring carbon atoms [3]

207/42  • • • • • • Nitro radicals [2]

207/44  • • • • • • having three double bonds between ring members or between ring members and non-ring members [2]

207/444  • • • • • • having two doubly-bound oxygen atoms directly attached in positions 2 and 5 [3]

207/448  • • • • • • with only hydrogen atoms or radicals containing only hydrogen and carbon atoms directly attached to other ring carbon atoms, e.g. maleimide [3]

207/452  • • • • • • with hydrocarbon radicals, substituted by hetero atoms, directly attached to the ring nitrogen atom [3]

207/456  • • • • • • with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached to other ring carbon atoms [3]

207/46  • • • • • • with hetero atoms directly attached to the ring nitrogen atom [2]

207/48  • • • • • • Sulfur atoms [2]

207/50  • • • • • • Nitrogen atoms [2]

209/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing five-membered rings, condensed with other rings, with one nitrogen atom as the only ring hetero atom [2]

209/02  • • • • • • condensed with one carbocyclic ring [2]

209/04  • • • • • • Indoles; Hydrogenated indoles [2]

209/06  • • • • • • Preparation of indole from coal-tar [2]

209/08  • • • • • • with only hydrogen atoms or radicals containing only hydrogen and carbon atoms, directly attached to carbon atoms of the hetero ring [2]

209/10  • • • • • • with substituted hydrocarbon radicals attached to carbon atoms of the hetero ring [2]

209/12  • • • • • • Radicals substituted by oxygen atoms [2]

209/14  • • • • • • Radicals substituted by nitrogen atoms, not forming part of a nitro radical [2]

209/16  • • • • • • Tryptamines [2]

209/18  • • • • • • Radicals substituted by carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals [2]

209/20  • • • • • • substituted additionally by nitrogen atoms, e.g. tryptophane [2]

209/22  • • • • • • with an aralkyl radical attached to the ring nitrogen atom [2]

209/24  • • • • • • with an alkyf or cycloalkyl radical attached to the ring nitrogen atom [2]

209/26  • • • • • • with an acyl radical attached to the ring nitrogen atom [2]

209/28  • • • • • • 1-(4-Chlorobenzoyl)-2-methylindolyl-3-acetic acid, substituted in position 5 by an oxygen or nitrogen atom; Esters thereof [2]

209/30  • • • • • • with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, directly attached to carbon atoms of the hetero ring [2]

209/32  • • • • • • Oxygen atoms [2]

209/34  • • • • • • in position 2 [2]
Heterocyclic compounds containing hydrogenated pyridine rings, not condensed with other rings [2]

Note(s)

1. In this group, the following term is used with the meaning indicated:

   • “hydrogenated” means having less than three double bonds between ring members or between ring members and non-ring members.

2. Piperidines having only hydrogen atoms attached to ring carbon atoms are classified in group C07D 295/00.

   211/02 Preparation by ring-closure or hydrogenation [2]
   211/04 with only hydrogen or carbon atoms directly attached to the ring nitrogen atom [2]
   211/06 having no double bonds between ring members or between ring members and non-ring members [2]
   211/08 with hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2, 3]
   211/10 • with radicals containing only carbon and hydrogen atoms attached to ring carbon atoms [2, 3]
   211/12 • with only hydrogen atoms attached to the ring nitrogen atom [2, 3]
   211/14 • with hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals attached to the ring nitrogen atom [2]
   211/16 • with acylated ring nitrogen atom [2]
   211/18 with substituted hydrocarbon radicals attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
   211/20 • with hydrocarbon radicals, substituted by singly bound oxygen or sulfur atoms [2]
   211/22 • by oxygen atoms [2]
   211/24 • by sulfur atoms to which a second hetero atom is attached [2]
   211/26 • with hydrocarbon radicals, substituted by nitrogen atoms [2]
   211/28 • to which a second hetero atom is attached [2]
   211/30 • with hydrocarbon radicals, substituted by doubly bound oxygen or sulfur atoms or by two oxygen or sulfur atoms singly bound to the same carbon atom [2]
   211/32 • by oxygen atoms [2]
   211/34 • with hydrocarbon radicals, substituted by carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals [2]
   211/36 • with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
   211/38 • Halogen atoms or nitro radicals [2]
   211/40 • Oxygen atoms [2]
   211/42 • attached in position 3 or 5 [2]
   211/44 • attached in position 4 [2]
   211/46 • having a hydrogen atom as the second substituent in position 4 [2]
   211/48 • having an acyclic carbon atom attached in position 4 [2]
   211/50 • • Aroyl radical [2]
   211/52 • • having an aryl radical as the second substituent in position 4 [2]
   211/54 • Sulfur atoms [2]
   211/56 • Nitrogen atoms (nitro radicals C07D 211/38) [2]
   211/58 • attached in position 4 [2]
   211/60 • Carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals [2]
211/62 • • • • attached in position 4 [2]
211/64 • • • • • having an aryl radical as the second substituent in position 4 [2]
211/66 • • • • • having a hetero atom as the second substituent in position 4 [2]
211/68 • • • • having one double bond between ring members or between a ring member and a non-ring member [2]
211/70 • • • • • with only hydrogen atoms, hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
211/72 • • • • • with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms, with at the most one bond to halogen, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
211/74 • • • • • Oxygen atoms [2]
211/76 • • • • • attached in position 2 or 6 [2]
211/78 • • • • • Carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen [2]
211/80 • • • • • having two double bonds between ring members or between ring members and non-ring members [2]
211/82 • • • • • with only hydrogen atoms, hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
211/84 • • • • • with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
211/86 • • • • • Oxygen atoms [2]
211/88 • • • • • attached in positions 2 and 6, e.g. glutarimide [2]
211/90 • • • • • Carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen [2]
211/92 • • • with a hetero atom directly attached to the ring nitrogen atom [2]
211/94 • • • Oxygen atom, e.g. piperidine N-oxide [2]
211/96 • • • Sulfur atom [2]
211/98 • • Nitrogen atom [2]

213/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing six-membered rings, not condensed with other rings, with one nitrogen atom as the only ring hetero atom and three or more double bonds between ring members or between ring members and non-ring members [2]

213/02 • • • • having three double bonds between ring members or between ring members and non-ring members [2]
213/04 • • • • having no bond between the ring nitrogen atom and a non-ring member or having only hydrogen or carbon atoms directly attached to the ring nitrogen atom [2]
213/06 • • • • containing only hydrogen and carbon atoms in addition to the ring nitrogen atom [2]
213/08 • • • • Preparation by ring-closure [2]
213/09 • • • • • involving the use of ammonia, amines, amine salts, or nitriles [3]
213/10 • • • • • from acetaldehyde or cyclic polymers thereof [3]
213/12 • • • • • from unsaturated compounds [3]
213/127 • • • • Preparation from compounds containing pyridine rings [3]
213/133 • • • • Preparation by dehydrogenation of hydrogenated pyridine compounds [3]
213/14 • • • • Preparation from compounds containing heterocyclic oxygen [2]

213/16 • • • • containing only one pyridine ring [2]
213/18 • • • • • Salts thereof [2]
213/20 • • • • • Quaternary compounds thereof [2]
213/22 • • • • • containing two or more pyridine rings directly linked together, e.g. bipyrindyl [2]
213/24 • • • • • with substituted hydrocarbon radicals attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
213/26 • • • • • Radicals substituted by halogen atoms or nitro radicals [2]
213/28 • • • • • Radicals substituted by singly-bound oxygen or sulfur atoms [2]
213/30 • • • • • Oxygen atoms [2]
213/32 • • • • • Sulfur atoms [2]
213/34 • • • • • to which a second hetero atom is attached [2]
213/36 • • • • • Radicals substituted by singly-bound nitrogen atoms (nitro radicals C07D 213/26) [2]
213/38 • • • • • having only hydrogen or hydrocarbon radicals attached to the substituent nitrogen atom [2]
213/40 • • • • • Acylated substituent nitrogen atom [2]
213/42 • • • • • having hetero atoms attached to the substituent nitrogen atom (nitro radicals C07D 213/26) [2]
213/44 • • • • • Radicals substituted by doubly-bound oxygen, sulfur, or nitrogen atoms, or by two such atoms singly-bound to the same carbon atom [2]
213/46 • • • • • Oxygen atoms [2]
213/48 • • • • • Aldehydo radicals [2]
213/50 • • • • • Ketonic radicals [2]
213/51 • • • • • Acetal radicals [2]
213/52 • • • • • Sulfur atoms [2]
213/53 • • • • • Nitrogen atoms [2]
213/54 • • • • • Radicals substituted by carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals [2]
213/55 • • • • • Acids; Esters [2]
213/56 • • • • • Amides [2]
213/57 • • • • • Nitriles [2]
213/58 • • • • • Amidines [2]
213/59 • • • • • with at least one of the bonds being to sulfur [2]
213/60 • • • • • with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
213/61 • • • • • Halogen atoms or nitro radicals [2]
213/62 • • • • • Oxygen or sulfur atoms [2]
213/63 • • • • • One oxygen atom [2]
213/64 • • • • • attached in position 2 or 6 [2]
213/643 • • • • • 2-Phenoxypyridines; Derivatives thereof [5]
213/647 • • • • • and having in the molecule an acyl radical containing a saturated three-membered ring, e.g. chrysanthemic acid esters [5]
213/65 • • • • • attached in position 3 or 5 [2]
213/66 • • • • • having in position 3 an oxygen atom and in each of the positions 4 and 5 a carbon atom bound to an oxygen, sulfur, or nitrogen atom, e.g. pyridoxal [2]
213/67 2-Methyl-3-hydroxy-4,5-bis{(hydroxy-methyl)} pyridine, i.e. pyridoxine [2]

213/68 attached in position 4 [2]

213/69 Two or more oxygen atoms [2]

213/70 Sulfur atoms [4]

213/71 to which a second hetero atom is attached [4]


213/73 Unsubstituted amino or imino radicals [2]

213/74 Amino or imino radicals substituted by hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals [2]

213/75 Amino or imino radicals, acylated by carboxylic or carboxonic acids, or by sulfur or nitrogen analogues thereof, e.g. carbamates [2]

213/76 to which a second hetero atom is attached (nitro radicals C07D 213/61) [2]

213/77 Hydrazine radicals [2]

213/78 Carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms, with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals [2]

213/79 Acids; Esters [2]

213/80 in position 3 [2]

213/803 Processes of preparation [3]

213/807 by oxidation of pyridines or condensed pyridines [3]

213/81 Amides; Imides [2]

213/82 in position 3 [2]

213/83 Thioacids; Thioesters; Thioureas; Thioureas [2]

213/84 Nitriles [2]

213/85 in position 3 [2]

213/86 Hydrazides; Thio or imino analogues thereof [2]

213/87 in position 3 [2]

213/88 Nicotinoylhydrazones [2]

213/89 with hetero atoms directly attached to the ring nitrogen atom [2]

213/90 having more than three double bonds between ring members or between ring members and non-ring members [2]

215/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing quinoline or hydrogenated quinoline ring systems [2]

215/02 having no bond between the ring nitrogen atom and a non-ring member or having only hydrogen atoms or carbon atoms directly attached to the ring nitrogen atom [2]

215/04 with only hydrogen atoms or radicals containing only hydrogen and carbon atoms, directly attached to the ring carbon atoms [2]

215/06 having only hydrogen atoms, hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals, attached to the ring nitrogen atom [2]

215/08 with acylated ring nitrogen atom [2]

215/10 Quaternary compounds [2]

215/12 with substituted hydrocarbon radicals attached to ring carbon atoms [2]

215/14 Radicals substituted by oxygen atoms [2]

215/16 with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]

215/18 Halogen or nitro radicals [2]

215/20 Oxygen atoms [2]

215/22 attached in position 2 or 4 [2]

215/227 only one oxygen atom which is attached in position 2 [5]

215/233 only one oxygen atom which is attached in position 4 [5]

215/24 attached in position 8 [2]

215/26 Alcoholes; Esters thereof [2]

215/28 with halogen or nitro radicals in positions 5, 6 or 7 [2]

215/30 Metal salts; Chelates [2]

215/32 Esters [2]

215/34 Carbamates [2]

215/36 Sulfur atoms (C07D 215/24 takes precedence) [2]

215/38 Nitrogen atoms (nitro radicals C07D 215/16) [2]

215/40 attached in position 8 [2]

215/42 attached in position 4 [2]

215/44 with aryl radicals attached to said nitrogen atoms [2]

215/46 with hydrocarbon radicals, substituted by nitrogen atoms, attached to said nitrogen atoms [2]

215/48 Carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen [2]

215/50 attached in position 4 [2]

215/52 with aryl radicals attached in position 2 [2]

215/54 attached in position 3 [2]

215/56 with oxygen atoms in position 4 [2]

215/58 with hetero atoms directly attached to the ring nitrogen atom [2]

215/60 N-oxides [2]
Heterocyclic compounds containing acridine or hydrogenated acridine ring systems [2]

- with only hydrogen, hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals, directly attached to carbon atoms of the ring system [2]
- with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached to carbon atoms of the ring system [2]
- Oxygen atoms [2]
- Nitrogen atoms [2]
- attached in position 9 [2]
- Aminoalkyl-amin radicals attached in position 9 [2]
- with hydrocarbon radicals, substituted by nitrogen atoms, attached to the ring nitrogen atom [2]
- with acyl radicals, substituted by nitrogen atoms, attached to the ring nitrogen atom [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing six-membered rings having one nitrogen atom as the only ring hetero atom, not provided for by groups C07D 211/00-C07D 219/00 [2]

- condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems [2]
- Ortho- or peri-condensed ring systems [2]
- Ring systems of three rings [2]
- Aza-anthracenes [2]
- Aza-phenanthrenes [2]
- Phenanthridines [2]
- Aza-phenalenones, e.g. 1,8-naphthalimide [2]
- containing carbocyclic rings other than six-membered [2]
- Ring systems of four or more rings [2]
- Spiro-condensed ring systems [2]
- Bridged ring systems [2]
- Camphidines [2]
- Benzomorphans [2]
- Morphinans [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing seven-membered rings having one nitrogen atom as the only ring hetero atom [2]

- not condensed with other rings [2]
- with only hydrogen atoms, halogen atoms, hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
- with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms (halogen atoms C07D 223/04) [2]
- Oxygen atoms [2]
- attached in position 2 [2]
- Nitrogen atoms not forming part of a nitro radical [2]
- condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems [2]
- Benzazepines; Hydrogenated benzazepines [2]
- Dibenzoazepines; Hydrogenated dibenzoazepines [2]
- Dibenz[b, f] azepines; Hydrogenated dibenz[b, f] azepines [2]
- with hydrocarbon radicals, substituted by nitrogen atoms, attached to the ring nitrogen atom [2]
- having a double bond between positions 10 and 11 [2]
- having a single bond between positions 10 and 11 [2]
- with hetero atoms directly attached to the ring nitrogen atom [2]
- containing carbocyclic rings other than six-membered [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing rings of more than seven members having one nitrogen atom as the only ring hetero atom [2]

- Polyethyleneimines with at least five ring members and having only hydrogen atoms attached to the ring carbon atoms are classified in group C07D 295/00.
- not condensed with other rings [2]
- condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems [2]
- condensed with one six-membered ring [2]
- condensed with two six-membered rings [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing rings having one nitrogen atom as the only ring hetero atom, according to more than one of groups C07D 203/00-C07D 225/00 [2]

- Polyethyleneimines with at least five ring members and having only hydrogen atoms attached to the ring carbon atoms are classified in group C07D 295/00.
- with only hydrogen or carbon atoms directly attached to the ring nitrogen atom [2]
- with only hydrogen atoms, hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
- with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
- Oxygen atoms [2]
- One doubly-bound oxygen atom in position 2, e.g. lactams [3]
- Two doubly-bound oxygen atoms attached to the carbon atoms adjacent to the ring nitrogen atom, e.g. dicarboxylic acid imides [3]
- Nitrogen atoms not forming part of a nitro radical [2]
- with hetero atoms directly attached to the ring nitrogen atom [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing rings of less than five members having two nitrogen atoms as the only ring hetero atoms [2]

- containing three-membered rings [3]
- Heterocyclic compounds containing 1,2-diazole or hydrogenated 1,2-diazole rings [2]
- not condensed with other rings [2]
- having no double bonds between ring members or between ring members and non-ring members [2]
- having one double bond between ring members or between a ring member and a non-ring member [2]
231/08 • • • with oxygen or sulfur atoms directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
231/10 • • • having two or three double bonds between ring members or between ring members and non-ring members [2]
231/12 • • • with only hydrogen atoms, hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
231/14 • • • with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
231/16 • • • Halogen atoms or nitro radicals [2]
231/18 • • • One oxygen or sulfur atom [2]
231/20 • • • One oxygen atom attached in position 3 or 5 [2]
231/22 • • • with aryl radicals attached to ring nitrogen atoms [2]
231/24 • • • having sulfone or sulfonic acid radicals in the molecule [2]
231/26 • • • 1-Phenyl-3-methyl-5-pyrazolones, unsubstituted or substituted on the phenyl ring [2]
231/28 • • • Two oxygen or sulfur atoms [2]
231/30 • • • attached in position 3 and 5 [2]
231/32 • • • Oxygen atoms [2]
231/34 • • • • • • with only hydrogen atoms or radicals containing only hydrogen and carbon atoms, attached in position 4 [2]
231/36 • • • • • • with hydrocarbon radicals, substituted by hetero atoms, attached in position 4 [2]
231/38 • • • • • • Nitrogen atoms (nitro radicals C07D 231/16) [2]
231/40 • • • • • • Acylated on said nitrogen atom [2]
231/42 • • • • • • Benzene-sulfonamido pyrazoles [2]
231/44 • • • • • • Oxygen and nitrogen or sulfur and nitrogen atoms [2]
231/46 • • • • • • Oxygen atom in position 3 or 5 and nitrogen atom in position 4 [2]
231/48 • • • • • • with hydrocarbon radicals attached to said nitrogen atom [2]
231/50 • • • • • • Acylated on said nitrogen atom [2]
231/52 • • • • • • Oxygen atom in position 3 and nitrogen atom in position 5, or vice-versa [2]
231/54 • • • condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems [2]
231/56 • • • Benzopyrazoles; Hydrogenated benzopyrazoles [2]

233/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing 1,3-diazole or hydrogenated 1,3-diazole rings, not condensed with other rings [2]

233/02 • • • having no double bonds between ring members or between ring members and non-ring members [2]
233/04 • • • having one double bond between ring members or between a ring member and a non-ring member [2]
233/06 • • • with only hydrogen atoms or radicals containing only hydrogen and carbon atoms, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
233/08 • • • with alkyl radicals, containing more than four carbon atoms, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
233/10 • • • with only hydrogen atoms or radicals containing only hydrogen and carbon atoms, directly attached to ring nitrogen atoms [2]
233/12 • • • • • • with substituted hydrocarbon radicals attached to ring nitrogen atoms [2]
233/14 • • • • • • Radicals substituted by oxygen atoms [2]
233/16 • • • • • • Radicals substituted by nitrogen atoms [2]
233/18 • • • • • • Radicals substituted by carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals [2]
233/20 • • • • • • with substituted hydrocarbon radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
233/22 • • • • • • Radicals substituted by oxygen atoms [2]
233/24 • • • • • • Radicals substituted by nitrogen atoms not forming part of a nitro radical [2]
233/26 • • • • • • Radicals substituted by carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms [2]
233/28 • • • • • • with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
233/30 • • • • • • Oxygen or sulfur atoms [2]
233/32 • • • • • • One oxygen atom [2]
233/34 • • • • • • Ethylene-urea [2]
233/36 • • • • • • with hydrocarbon radicals, substituted by nitrogen atoms, attached to ring nitrogen atoms [2]
233/38 • • • • • • with acyl radicals or hetero atoms directly attached to ring nitrogen atoms [2]
233/40 • • • • • • Two or more oxygen atoms [2]
233/42 • • • • • • Sulfur atoms [2]
233/44 • • • • • • Nitrogen atoms not forming part of a nitro radical [2]
233/46 • • • • • • with only hydrogen atoms attached to said nitrogen atoms [2]
233/48 • • • • • • with acyclic hydrocarbon or substituted acyclic hydrocarbon radicals, attached to said nitrogen atoms [2]
233/50 • • • • • • with carbocyclic radicals directly attached to said nitrogen atoms [2]
233/52 • • • • • • with hetero atoms directly attached to said nitrogen atoms [2]
233/54 • • • having two double bonds between ring members or between ring members and non-ring members [2]
233/56 • • • • • • with only hydrogen atoms or radicals containing only hydrogen and carbon atoms, attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
233/58 • • • • • • with only hydrogen atoms or radicals containing only hydrogen and carbon atoms, attached to ring nitrogen atoms [2]
233/60 • • • • • • with hydrocarbon radicals, substituted by oxygen or sulfur atoms, attached to ring nitrogen atoms [2]
233/61 • • • • • • with hydrocarbon radicals, substituted by nitrogen atoms not forming part of a nitro radical, attached to ring nitrogen atoms [3]
233/62 • • • • • • with triarylmethyl radicals attached to ring nitrogen atoms [2]
233/64 • • • • • • with substituted hydrocarbon radicals attached to ring carbon atoms, e.g. histidine [2]
233/66 • • • • • • with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
233/68 • • • • • • Halogen atoms [2]
233/70 • • • • • • One oxygen atom [2]
233/72 • • • • • • Two oxygen atoms, e.g. hydantoin [2]
Heterocyclic compounds containing 1,3-diazole or hydrogenated 1,3-diazole rings, condensed with other rings [2]

- Condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems [2]
- Benzimidazoles; Hydrogenated benzimidazoles [2]
- With only hydrogen atoms, hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals, directly attached in position 2 [2]
- Radicals containing only hydrogen and carbon atoms [2]
- Radicals substituted by halogen atoms or nitro radicals [2]
- Radicals substituted by oxygen atoms [2]
- Radicals substituted by nitrogen atoms (by nitro radicals C07D 235/10) [2]
- Radicals substituted by carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals [2]
- With aryl radicals directly attached in position 2 [2]
- Two benzimidazolyl-2 radicals linked together directly or via a hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radical [2]
- With hetero atoms directly attached to ring nitrogen atoms (C07D 235/10 takes precedence) [2]
- With hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached in position 2 [2]
- Oxygen atoms [2]
- Sulfur atoms [2]
- Nitrogen atoms not forming part of a nitro radical [2]
- Benzimidazole-2-carboxylic acids, unsubstituted or substituted; Esters thereof; Thio-analogues thereof [2]
239/24 • having three or more double bonds between ring members or between ring members and non-ring members [2]

239/26 • with only hydrogen atoms, hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]

239/28 • with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]

239/30 • Halogen atoms or nitro radicals [2]

239/32 • One oxygen, sulfur or nitrogen atom [2]

239/34 • One oxygen atom [2]

239/36 • as doubly bound oxygen atom or as unsubstituted hydroxy radical [2]

239/38 • One sulfur atom [2]

239/40 • as doubly bound sulfur atom or as unsubstituted mercapto radical [2]

239/42 • One nitrogen atom (nitro radicals C07D 239/30) [2]

239/46 • Two or more oxygen, sulfur or nitrogen atoms [2]

239/47 • One nitrogen atom and one oxygen or sulfur atom, e.g. cytosine [3]

239/48 • Two nitrogen atoms [2]

239/49 • with an aralkyl radical, or substituted aralkyl radical, attached in position 5, e.g. trimethoprim [3]

239/50 • Three nitrogen atoms [2]

239/52 • Two oxygen atoms [2]

239/54 • as doubly bound oxygen atoms or as unsubstituted hydroxy radicals [2]

239/545 • with other hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [5]

239/553 • with halogen atoms or nitro radicals directly attached to ring carbon atoms, e.g. fluourouracil [5]

239/557 • with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, directly attached to ring carbon atoms, e.g. orotic acid [5]

239/56 • One oxygen atom and one sulfur atom [2]

239/58 • Two sulfur atoms [2]

239/60 • Three or more oxygen or sulfur atoms [2]

239/62 • Barbituric acids [2]

239/64 • Salts of organic bases; Organic double compounds [2]

239/66 • Thiobarbituric acids [2]

239/68 • Salts of organic bases; Organic double compounds [2]

239/69 • Benzenesulfonamido-pyrimidines [3]

239/70 • condenced with carboxyclic rings or ring systems [2]

239/72 • Quinazolines; Hydrogenated quinazolines [2]

239/74 • with only hydrogen atoms, hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals, attached to ring carbon atoms of the hetero ring [2]

239/76 • N-oxides [2]

239/78 • with hetero atoms directly attached in position 2 [2]

239/80 • Oxygen atoms [2]

239/82 • • • • with an aryl radical attached in position 4 [2]

239/84 • • • • Nitrogen atoms [2]

239/86 • • • • with hetero atoms directly attached in position 4 [2]

239/88 • • • • Oxygen atoms [2]

239/90 • • • • with acyclic radicals attached in position 2 or 3 [2]

239/91 • • • • with aryl or aralkyl radicals attached in position 2 or 3 [2]

239/92 • • • • with hetero atoms directly attached to nitrogen atoms of the hetero ring [2]

239/93 • • • • Sulfur atoms [2]

239/94 • • • • Nitrogen atoms [2]

239/95 • • • • with hetero atoms directly attached in positions 2 and 4 [2]

239/96 • • • • Two oxygen atoms [2]

241/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing 1,4-diazine or hydrogenated 1,4-diazine rings [2]

Note(s)
Piperazines with only hydrogen atoms directly attached to ring carbon atoms are classified in group C07D 295/00.

241/02 • not condensed with other rings [2]

241/04 • having no double bonds between ring members or between ring members and non-ring members [2]

241/06 • having one or two double bonds between ring members or between ring members and non-ring members [2]

241/08 • with oxygen atoms directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]

241/10 • having three double bonds between ring members or between ring members and non-ring members [2]

241/12 • with only hydrogen atoms, hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]

241/14 • with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]

241/16 • • • • Halogen atoms; Nitro radicals [2]

241/18 • Oxygen or sulfur atoms [2]

241/20 • Nitrogen atoms (nitro radicals C07D 241/16) [2]

241/22 • • • • Benzenesulfonamido pyrazines [2]

241/24 • Carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals [2]

241/26 • • • • with nitrogen atoms directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]

241/28 • • • • in which said hetero-bond carbon atoms have double bonds to oxygen, sulfur or nitrogen atoms [2, 5]

241/30 • • • • in which said hetero-bond carbon atoms are part of a substructure — C(=X)—X—C(=X)—X— in which X is an oxygen or sulfur atom or an imino radical, e.g. imidoylguanidines [2, 5]

241/32 • • • • • (Amino-pyrazinoyl) guanidines [2, 5]

241/34 • • • • • (Amino-pyrazine carbonamido) guanidines [2, 5]
Heterocyclic compounds containing rings having two nitrogen atoms as the only ring hetero atoms [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing rings having two nitrogen atoms as the only ring hetero atoms, according to more than one of groups C07D 229/00-C07D 245/00 [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing seven-membered rings having two nitrogen atoms as the only ring hetero atoms [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing five-membered rings having three nitrogen atoms as the only ring hetero atoms [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing 1,3,5-triazine rings [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing 1,3,5-triazole rings [2]
251/36  •  •  •  •  •  having halogen atoms directly attached to ring nitrogen atoms [2]
251/38  •  •  •  Sulfur atoms [2]
251/40  •  •  •  •  Nitrogen atoms [2]
251/42  •  •  •  •  •  One nitrogen atom [2]
251/44  •  •  •  •  •  with halogen atoms attached to the two other ring carbon atoms [2]
251/46  •  •  •  •  •  with oxygen or sulfur atoms attached to the two other ring carbon atoms [2]
251/48  •  •  •  •  •  Two nitrogen atoms [2]
251/50  •  •  •  •  •  with a halogen atom attached to the third ring carbon atom [2]
251/52  •  •  •  •  •  with an oxygen or sulfur atom attached to the third ring carbon atom [2]
251/54  •  •  •  •  •  Three nitrogen atoms [2]
251/56  •  •  •  •  •  Preparation of melamine [2]
251/58  •  •  •  •  •  •  from cyanamide, dicyanamide or calcium cyanamide [2]
251/60  •  •  •  •  •  •  from urea or from carbon dioxide and ammonia [2]
251/62  •  •  •  •  •  •  Purification of melamine [2]
251/64  •  •  •  •  •  •  Condensation products of melamine with aldehydes; Derivatives thereof (polycondensation products C08G) [2]
251/66  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  Derivatives of melamine in which a hetero atom is directly attached to a nitrogen atom of melamine [2]
251/68  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  Triazinylamino stilbenes [2]
251/70  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  Other substituted melamines [2]
251/72  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems [2]

253/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing six-membered rings having three nitrogen atoms as the only ring hetero atoms, not provided for by group C07D 251/00 [2]
253/02  •  •  •  •  not condensed with other rings [2]
253/04  •  •  • 1,2,3-Triazines [2]
253/06  •  •  • 1,2,4-Triazines [2]
253/065  •  •  •  •  •  having three double bonds between ring members or between ring members and non-ring members [5]
253/07  •  •  •  •  •  with hetero atoms, or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [5]
253/075  •  •  •  •  •  •  Two hetero atoms, in positions 3 and 5 [5]
253/08  •  •  •  •  •  condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems [2]
253/10  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  Condensed 1,2,4-triazines; Hydrogenated condensed 1,2,4-triazines [5]

255/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing rings having three nitrogen atoms as the only ring hetero atoms, not provided for by groups C07D 249/00-C07D 253/00 [2]
255/02  •  •  •  •  not condensed with other rings [2]
255/04  •  •  •  •  condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems [2]

257/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing rings having four nitrogen atoms as the only ring hetero atoms [2]
257/02  •  •  •  •  not condensed with other rings [2]
257/04  •  •  •  •  Five-membered rings [2]
257/06  •  •  •  •  with nitrogen atoms directly attached to the ring carbon atom [2]
257/08  •  •  •  •  Six-membered rings [2]
257/10  •  •  •  •  condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems [2]
257/12  •  •  •  •  Six-membered rings having four nitrogen atoms [2]

259/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing rings having more than four nitrogen atoms as the only ring hetero atoms [2]

Heterocyclic compounds having nitrogen and oxygen as the only ring hetero atoms [2]

261/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing 1,2-oxazole or hydrogenated 1,2-oxazole rings [2]
261/02  •  •  •  not condensed with other rings [2]
261/04  •  •  •  having one double bond between ring members or between a ring member and a non-ring member [2]
261/06  •  •  •  having two or more double bonds between ring members or between ring members and non-ring members [2]
261/08  •  •  •  •  •  with only hydrogen atoms, hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
261/10  •  •  •  •  •  with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
261/12  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  Oxygen atoms [2]
261/14  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  Nitrogen atoms [2]
261/16  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  Benzene-sulfonamido isoxazoles [2]
261/18  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  Carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms, with at the most one bond to halogen [2]
261/20  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems [2]

263/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing 1,3-oxazole or hydrogenated 1,3-oxazole rings [2]
263/02  •  •  •  not condensed with other rings [2]
263/04  •  •  •  having no double bonds between ring members or between ring members and non-ring members [2]
263/06  •  •  •  •  •  with hydrocarbon radicals, substituted by oxygen atoms, attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
263/08  •  •  •  •  •  having one double bond between ring members or between a ring member and a non-ring member [2]
263/10  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  with only hydrogen atoms, hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
263/12  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  with radicals containing only hydrogen and carbon atoms [2]
263/14  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  with radicals substituted by oxygen atoms [2]
263/16  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
263/18  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  Oxygen atoms [2]
263/20  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  attached in position 2 [2]
263/22  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  with only hydrogen atoms or radicals containing only hydrogen and carbon atoms, directly attached to other ring carbon atoms [2]
263/24  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  with hydrocarbon radicals, substituted by oxygen atoms, attached to other ring carbon atoms [2]
Heterocyclic compounds containing six-membered rings having one nitrogen atom and one oxygen atom as the only ring hetero atoms

Note(s)
Morpholines having only hydrogen atoms attached to the ring carbon atoms are classified in group C07D 265/00.

265/02 • • • • • 1,2-Oxazines; Hydrogenated 1,2-oxazines [2]
265/04 • • 1,3-Oxazines; Hydrogenated 1,3-oxazines [2]
265/06 • • not condensed with other rings [2]
265/08 • • having one double bond between ring members or between a ring member and a non-ring member [2]
265/10 • • • • • with oxygen atoms directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
265/12 • • condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems [2]
265/14 • • condensed with one six-membered ring [2]
265/16 • • • • • with only hydrogen or carbon atoms directly attached in positions 2 and 4 [2]
265/18 • • • • • with hetero atoms directly attached in position 2 [2]

265/20 • • • • • with hetero atoms directly attached in position 4 [2]
265/22 • • • • • Oxygen atoms [2]
265/24 • • • • • with hetero atoms directly attached in positions 2 and 4 [2]
265/26 • • • • • Two oxygen atoms, e.g. isatoic anhydride [2]
265/28 • 1,4-Oxazines; Hydrogenated 1,4-oxazines [2]
265/30 • • not condensed with other rings [2]
265/32 • • • • • with oxygen atoms directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
265/33 • • • • • Two oxygen atoms, in positions 3 and 5 [5]
265/34 • • condensed with carbocyclic rings [2]
265/36 • • • • • condensed with one six-membered ring [2]
265/38 • • • • • [b, e]-condensed with two six-membered rings [2]

267/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing rings of more than six members having one nitrogen atom and one oxygen atom as the only ring hetero atoms

267/02 • Seven-membered rings [2]
267/04 • • having the hetero atoms in positions 1 and 2 [2]
267/06 • • having the hetero atoms in positions 1 and 3 [2]
267/08 • • having the hetero atoms in positions 1 and 4 [2]
267/10 • • • not condensed with other rings [2]
267/12 • • • • • condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems [2]
267/14 • • • • • condensed with one six-membered ring [2]
267/16 • • • • • condensed with two six-membered rings [2]
267/18 • • • • • [b, e]-condensed [2]
267/20 • • • • • [b, f]-condensed [2]
267/22 • • Eight-membered rings [2]

269/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing rings having one nitrogen atom and one oxygen atom as the only ring hetero atoms according to more than one of groups C07D 261/00-C07D 267/00 [2]

269/02 • having the hetero atoms in positions 1 and 3 [2]

271/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing five-membered rings having two nitrogen atoms and one oxygen atom as the only ring hetero atoms

271/02 • not condensed with other rings [2]
271/04 • • 1,2,3-Oxadiazoles; Hydrogenated 1,2,3-oxadiazoles [2]
271/06 • • 1,2,4-Oxadiazoles; Hydrogenated 1,2,4-oxadiazoles [2]
271/07 • • • with oxygen, sulfur or nitrogen atoms, directly attached to ring carbon atoms, the nitrogen atoms not forming part of a nitro radical [5]
271/08 • • 1,2,5-Oxadiazoles; Hydrogenated 1,2,5-oxadiazoles [2]
271/10 • • 1,3,4-Oxadiazoles; Hydrogenated 1,3,4-oxadiazoles [2]
271/107 • • • with two aryl or substituted aryl radicals attached in positions 2 and 5 [5]
271/113 • • • with oxygen, sulfur or nitrogen atoms, directly attached to ring carbon atoms, the nitrogen atoms not forming part of a nitro radical [5]
271/12 • • condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems [2]

273/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing rings having nitrogen and oxygen atoms as the only ring hetero atoms, not provided for by groups C07D 261/00-C07D 271/00 [2]

273/01 • having one nitrogen atom [3]
Heterocyclic compounds having nitrogen and sulfur as the only ring hetero atoms [2]

275/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing 1, 2-thiazole or hydrogenated 1,2-thiazole rings [2]

275/02 • not condensed with other rings [2]
275/03 • with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [5]
275/04 • condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems [2]
275/06 • with hetero atoms directly attached to the ring sulfur atom [2]

277/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing 1,3-thiazole or hydrogenated 1,3-thiazole rings [2]

277/02 • not condensed with other rings [2]
277/04 • having no double bonds between ring members or between ring members and non-ring members [2]
277/06 • with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
277/08 • having one double bond between ring members or between a ring member and a non-ring member [2]
277/10 • with only hydrogen atoms, hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
277/12 • with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
277/14 • Oxygen atoms [2]
277/16 • Sulfur atoms [2]
277/18 • Nitrogen atoms [2]
277/20 • having two or three double bonds between ring members or between ring members and non-ring members [2]
277/22 • with only hydrogen atoms, hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
277/24 • Radicals substituted by oxygen atoms [2]
277/26 • Radicals substituted by sulfur atoms [2]
277/28 • Radicals substituted by nitrogen atoms [2]
277/30 • Radicals substituted by carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals [2]
277/32 • with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
277/34 • Oxygen atoms [2]
277/36 • Sulfur atoms [2]
277/38 • Nitrogen atoms [2]
277/40 • Unsubstituted amino or imino radicals [2]

277/42 • • • • Amino or imino radicals substituted by hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals [2]
277/44 • • • • Acylated amino or imino radicals [2]
277/46 • • • • by carboxylic acids, or sulfur or nitrogen analogues thereof [2]
277/48 • • • • by radicals derived from carboxic acid, or sulfur or nitrogen analogues thereof, e.g. carbonylguanidines [2]
277/50 • • • • Nitrogen atoms bound to hetero atoms [2]
277/52 • • • • to sulfur atoms, e.g. sulfonamides [2]
277/54 • • • • Nitrogen and either oxygen or sulfur atoms [2]
277/56 • • • • Carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen [2]
277/58 • • • • Nitro radicals [2]
277/587 • with aliphatic hydrocarbon radicals substituted by carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms, said aliphatic radicals being substituted in the alpha-position to the ring by a \( \text{Z} \) being a singly or a doubly bound hetero atom [5]
277/593 • • • • Z being doubly bound oxygen or doubly bound nitrogen, which nitrogen is part of a possibly substituted oximino radical [5]

277/60 • condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems [2]
277/62 • Benzothiazoles [2]
277/64 • with only hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals attached in position 2 [2]
277/66 • with aromatic rings or ring systems directly attached in position 2 [2]
277/68 • with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached in position 2 [2]
277/70 • • • • Sulfur atoms [2]
277/72 • • • • 2-Mercaptobenzothiazole [2]
277/74 • • • • Sulfur atoms substituted by carbon atoms [2]
277/76 • • • • Sulfur atoms attached to a second hetero atom [2]
277/78 • • • • • to a second sulfur atom [2]
277/80 • • • • • to a nitrogen atom [2]
277/82 • • • • • Nitrogen atoms [2]
277/84 • • • Naphthothiazoles [2]

279/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing six-membered rings having one nitrogen atom and one sulfur atom as the only ring hetero atoms [2]

Notes

Thiomorpholines having only hydrogen atoms attached to the ring carbon atoms are classified in group C07D 295/00.

279/02 • 1,2-Thiazines; Hydrogenated 1,2-thiazines [2]
279/04 • 1,3-Thiazines; Hydrogenated 1,3-thiazines [2]
279/06 • not condensed with other rings [2]
279/08 • condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems [2]
279/10 • 1,4-Thiazines; Hydrogenated 1,4-thiazines [2]
279/12 • not condensed with other rings [2]
Heterocyclic compounds containing rings of more than six members having one nitrogen atom and one sulfur atom as the only ring hetero atoms [2]

- Seven-membered rings [2]
- not with the hetero atoms in positions 1 and 4 [2]
- not condensed with other rings [2]
- condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems [2]
- condensed with one six-membered ring [2]
- condensed with two six-membered rings [2]
- [b, e]-condensed [2]
- [b, i]-condensed [2]
- Eight-membered rings [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing rings having one nitrogen atom and one sulfur atom as the only ring hetero atoms, according to more than one of groups C07D 275/00-C07D 283/00 [2]

- having the hetero atoms in positions 1 and 3 [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing rings having nitrogen and sulfur atoms as the only ring hetero atoms, not provided for by groups C07D 275/00-C07D 283/00 [2]

- Five-membered rings [5]
- Thiadiazoles; Hydrogenated thiadiazoles [2, 5]
- not condensed with other rings [2, 5]
- 1,2,3-Thiadiazoles; Hydrogenated 1,2,3-thiadiazoles [2, 5]
- 1,2,4-Thiadiazoles; Hydrogenated 1,2,4-thiadiazoles [2, 5]
- 1,2,5-Thiadiazoles; Hydrogenated 1,2,5-thiadiazoles [2, 5]
- 1,3,4-Thiadiazoles; Hydrogenated 1,3,4-thiadiazoles [2, 5]
- with oxygen, sulfur or nitrogen atoms, directly attached to ring carbon atoms, the nitrogen atoms not forming part of a nitro radical [5]
- Oxygen atoms [5]
- Nitrogen atoms [5]

Heterocyclic compounds containing rings having nitrogen and sulfur atoms as the only ring hetero atoms [2]

- not condensed with other rings [2]
- Five-membered rings [2]
- Six-membered rings [2]
- condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing rings having nitrogen and selenium or nitrogen and tellurium, with or without oxygen or sulfur atoms, as the ring hetero atoms [2]

- not condensed with other rings [2]
- Five-membered rings [2]
- Six-membered rings [2]
- condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing polymethylene-imine rings with at least five ring members, 3-azabiclyco [3.2.2] nonane, piperazine, morpholine or thiomorpholine rings, having only hydrogen atoms directly attached to the ring carbon atoms [2]

- containing only hydrogen and carbon atoms in addition to the ring hetero elements [2]
- Preparation; Separation; Stabilisation; Use of additives [5]
- containing only one hetero ring [5]
- with the ring nitrogen atoms directly attached to acyclic carbon atoms [5]
with the ring nitrogen atoms directly attached to carbocyclic rings [5]

Radicals derived from carboxylic acids [5]

Radicals derived from aromatic carboxylic acids [5]

Radicals derived from thio- or thiono carboxylic acids [5]

Radicals derived from nitrogen analogues of carboxylic acids [5]

Radicals derived from carbonic acid, or sulfur or nitrogen analogues thereof [2]

Radicals derived from carbonic acid [5]

Radicals derived from sulfur analogues of carbonic acid [5]

Radicals derived from nitrogen analogues of carbonic acid [5]

with hetero atoms directly attached to ring nitrogen atoms [2]

Oxygen atoms [5]

Sulfur atoms [5]

Nitrogen atoms [5]

non-acylated [5]

acylated with carboxylic or carbonic acids, or their nitrogen or sulfur analogues [5]

**Heterocyclic compounds having oxygen atoms, with or without sulfur, selenium, or tellurium atoms, as ring hetero atoms [2]**

**301/00 Preparation of oxiranes [2]**

**301/02** · Synthesis of the oxirane ring [2]

**301/03** · by oxidation of unsaturated compounds, or of mixtures of unsaturated and saturated compounds [3]

**301/04** · with air or molecular oxygen [2, 3]

**301/06** · in the liquid phase [2, 3]

**301/08** · in the gaseous phase [2, 3]

**301/10** · with catalysts containing silver or gold [2, 3]

**301/12** · with hydrogen peroxide or inorganic peroxides or peracids [2, 3]

**301/14** · with organic peracids, or salts, anhydrides or esters thereof [2, 3]

**301/16** · formed in situ, e.g. from carboxylic acids and hydrogen peroxide [2, 3]

**301/18** · from polybasic carboxylic acids [2, 3]

**301/19** · with organic hydperoxides [3]

**301/22** · by oxidation of saturated compounds with air or molecular oxygen (of mixtures of unsaturated and saturated compounds C07D 301/04) [2]

**301/24** · by splitting-off Hal—Y from compounds containing the radical Hal—C—C—OY [2]

**301/26** · Y being hydrogen [2]

**301/27** · Condensation of epihalohydrins or halohydrins with compounds containing active hydrogen atoms (macromolecular compounds C08) [3]

**301/28** · by reaction with hydroxyl radicals [2, 3]

**301/30** · by reaction with carboxyl radicals [2, 3]

**301/32** · Separation; Purification [2]

**301/36** · Use of additives, e.g. for stabilisation [3]

**303/00 Compounds containing three-membered rings having one oxygen atom as the only ring hetero atom [2]**

**303/02** · Compounds containing oxirane rings [2]

**303/04** · containing only hydrogen and carbon atoms in addition to the ring oxygen atoms [2]
in which the oxirane rings are condensed with a carbocyclic ring system having three or more relevant rings [2]  
with hydrocarbon radicals, substituted by halogen atoms, nitro radicals or nitroso radicals [2]  
in which the oxirane rings are condensed with a carbocyclic ring system having three or more relevant rings [2]  
with hydrocarbon radicals, substituted by singly or doubly bound oxygen atoms [2]  
by free hydroxyl radicals [2]  
by esterified hydroxyl radicals [2]  
containing oxirane rings condensed with carbocyclic ring systems having three or more relevant rings [3]  
by etherified hydroxyl radicals [2]  
Ethers with hydroxy compounds containing no oxirane rings [2]  
with monohydroxy compounds [2]  
Oxiranyl methyl ethers of compounds having one hydroxy group bound to a six-membered aromatic ring, the oxiranylmethyl radical not being further substituted, i.e. \( \text{C}_5\text{H}_4\text{O} - \text{C}_1\text{H}_2 - \text{O} - \text{A} - \text{Y} \)  
with polyhydroxy compounds [2]  
having one or more free hydroxyl radicals [2]  
having all hydroxyl radicals etherified with oxirane containing compounds [3]  
Ethers with hydroxy compounds containing oxirane rings [2]  
Ethers of oxirane-containing polyhydroxy compounds in which all hydroxyl radicals are etherified with oxirane-containing hydroxy compounds [2]  
in which the oxirane rings are condensed with a carbocyclic ring system having three or more relevant rings [3]  
by aldehydo- or ketonic radicals [2]  
with hydrocarbon radicals, substituted by sulfur, selenium, or tellurium atoms [2]  
with hydrocarbon radicals, substituted by nitrogen atoms (nitro, nitroso radicals C07D 303/08) [2]  
with hydrocarbon radicals, substituted by carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrite radicals [2]  
by ester radicals [2]  
Acyclic compounds having a chain of seven or more carbon atoms, e.g. epoxidised fats [2]  
Esterified with oxirane-containing hydroxy compounds [2]  
by amide or nitrile radicals [2]  
with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, directly attached to ring carbon atoms, e.g. ester or nitrite radicals [3]  
Heterocyclic compounds containing four-membered rings having one oxygen atom as the only ring hetero atoms [2]  
not condensed with other rings [2]  
having no double bonds between ring members or between ring members and non-ring members [2]  
with only hydrogen atoms, hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals, directly attached to the ring atoms [2]  
with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrite radicals, directly attached to ring atoms [2]  
having one or more double bonds between ring members or between ring members and non-ring members [2]  
Beta-lactones [2]  
condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems [2]  
Heterocyclic compounds containing five-membered rings having one oxygen atom as the only ring hetero atom [2]  
not condensed with other rings [2]  
having no double bonds between ring members or between ring members and non-ring members [2]  
with only hydrogen atoms or radicals containing only hydrogen and carbon atoms, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]  
Preparation of tetrahydrofuran [2]  
with substituted hydrocarbon radicals attached to ring carbon atoms [2]  
Radicals substituted by oxygen atoms [2]  
Radicals substituted by nitrogen atoms not forming part of a nitro radical [2]  
Radicals substituted by carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrite radicals [2]  
with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrite radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]  
Oxygen atoms [2]  
Nitrogen atoms not forming part of a nitro radical [2]  
Carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen [2]  
having one double bond between ring members or between a ring member and a non-ring member [2]  
with only hydrogen atoms, hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]  
with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrite radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]  
Oxygen atoms [2]  
in position 2, the oxygen atom being in its keto or unsubstituted enol form [5]  
having two or three double bonds between ring members or between ring members and non-ring members [2]  
with only hydrogen atoms or radicals containing only hydrogen and carbon atoms, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]  
with substituted hydrocarbon radicals attached to ring carbon atoms [2]  
Radicals substituted by oxygen atoms [2]
Singly bound oxygen atoms [2]

Furfuryl alcohol [2]

Oxygen atoms acylated by a cyclopropane containing carboxylic acid radical, e.g. chrysanthemumates [3]

Doubly bound oxygen atoms, or two oxygen atoms singly bound to the same carbon atom [2]

Furfural [2]

Preparation from natural products [2]

Radicals substituted by nitrogen atoms not forming part of a nitro radical [2]

Radicals substituted by carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals [2]

with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals [2]

One oxygen atom, e.g. butenolide [2]

Two oxygen atoms, e.g. succinic anhydride [2]

Three oxygen atoms, e.g. ascorbic acid [2]

Sulfur atoms [2]

Nitrogen atoms [2]

Carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen [2]

Nitro radicals [2]

attached in position 5 [2]

with hydrocarbon radicals, substituted by nitrogen-containing radicals, attached in position 2 [2]

by amino or imino, or substituted amino or imino radicals [2]

by hydrazino or hydrazono or such substituted radicals [2]

having carboxylic acyl radicals or their thio or nitrogen analogues directly attached to the hydrazino or hydrazono radical, e.g. hydrazides [2]

having carboxylic acyl radicals or their thio or nitrogen analogues directly attached to the hydrazino or hydrazono radical, e.g. semicarbazides [2, 3]

ortho- or peri-condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems [2]

Benzo [b] furans; Hydrogenated benzo [b] furans [2]

with only hydrogen atoms, hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals, directly attached to carbon atoms of the hetero ring [2]

Radicals substituted by oxygen atoms [2]

Radicals substituted by nitrogen atoms not forming part of a nitro radical [2]

with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached to carbon atoms of the hetero ring [2]

Oxygen atoms [2]

Carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen [2]

attached in position 2 [2]

with an oxygen atom directly attached in position 7 [2]

Benzo [c] furans; Hydrogenated benzo [c] furans [2]

with one oxygen atom directly attached in position 1 or 3 [2]

3,3-Diphenylphthalides [5]

with two oxygen atoms directly attached in positions 1 and 3 [2]

with an oxygen atom in position 1 and a nitrogen atom in position 3, or vice versa [2]

Dibenzofurans; Hydrogenated dibenzofurans [2]

Naphtofurans; Hydrogenated naphtofurans [2]

condensed with a ring other than six-membered [2]

Not further condensed cyclopenta [b] furans or hydrogenated cyclopenta [b] furans [3]

with hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals directly attached in position 2, e.g. prostacyclins [5]

spiro-condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems, e.g. griseofulvins [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing six-membered rings having one oxygen atom as the only ring hetero atom, not condensed with other rings [2]

having no double bonds between ring members or between ring members and non-ring members [2]

with only hydrogen atoms, hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]

Radicals substituted by oxygen atoms [2]

with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]

Oxygen atoms [2]

only hydrogen atoms and one oxygen atom directly attached to ring carbon atoms, e.g. tetrahydropyranyl ethers [2]

Nitrogen atoms not forming part of a nitro radical [2]

having one double bond between ring members or between a ring member and a non-ring member [2]

containing only hydrogen and carbon atoms in addition to the ring hetero atom [2]

with hydrogen atoms and substituted hydrocarbon radicals directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]

Radicals substituted by oxygen atoms [2]

Methylol radicals [2]

Carboxaldehyde radicals [2]

with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]

Oxygen atoms, e.g. delta-lactones [2]

having two double bonds between ring members or between ring members and non-ring members [2]

having three or more double bonds between ring members or between ring members and non-ring members [2]

with oxygen atoms directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
311/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing six-membered rings having one oxygen atom as the only hetero atom, condensed with other rings [2]

311/02 • ortho- or peri-condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems [2]

311/04 • Benzo [b] pyrans, not hydrogenated in the carbocyclic ring [2]

311/06 • with oxygen or sulfur atoms directly attached in position 2 [2]

311/08 • not hydrogenated in the hetero ring [2]

311/10 • unsubstituted [2]

311/12 • substituted in position 3 and unsubstituted in position 7 [2]

311/14 • substituted in position 6 and unsubstituted in position 7 [2]

311/16 • substituted in position 7 [2]

311/18 • substituted otherwise than in position 3 or 7 [2]

311/20 • hydrogenated in the hetero ring [2]

311/22 • with oxygen or sulfur atoms directly attached in position 4 [2]

311/24 • with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached in position 2 [2]

311/26 • with aromatic rings attached in position 2 or 3 [2]

311/28 • with aromatic rings attached in position 2 only [2]

311/30 • not hydrogenated in the hetero ring, e.g. flavones [2]

311/32 • 2, 3-Dihydro derivatives, e.g. flavanones [2]

311/34 • with aromatic rings attached in position 3 only [2]

311/36 • not hydrogenated in the hetero ring, e.g. isoflavones [2]

311/38 • 2, 3-Dihydro derivatives, e.g. isoflavanones [2]

311/40 • Separation, e.g. from natural material; Purification [2]

311/42 • with oxygen or sulfur atoms in positions 2 and 4 [2]

311/44 • with one hydrogen atom in position 3 [2]

311/46 • unsubstituted in the carbocyclic ring [2]

311/48 • with two such benzopyran radicals linked together by a carbon chain [2]

311/50 • with elements other than carbon and hydrogen in position 3 [2]

311/52 • Enol-esters or -ethers, or sulfur analogues thereof [2]

311/54 • substituted in the carbocyclic ring [2]

311/56 • without hydrogen atoms in position 3 [2]

311/58 • other than with oxygen or sulfur atoms in position 2 or 4 [2]

311/60 • with aryl radicals attached in position 2 [2]

311/62 • with oxygen atoms directly attached in position 3, e.g. anthocyanidins [2]

311/64 • with oxygen atoms directly attached in position 8 [2]

311/66 • with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached in position 2 [2]

311/68 • with nitrogen atoms directly attached in position 4 [2]

311/70 • with two hydrocarbon radicals attached in position 2 and elements other than carbon and hydrogen in position 6 [2]

311/72 • 3, 4-Dihydro derivatives having in position 2 at least one methyl radical and in position 6 one oxygen atom, e.g. tocopherols [2]

311/74 • Benzo [b] pyrans, hydrogenated in the carbocyclic ring [2]

311/76 • Benzo [c] pyrans [2]

311/78 • Ring systems having three or more relevant rings [2]

311/80 • Dibenzoypyrazins; Hydrogenated dibenzopyrazins [2]

311/82 • Xanthenes [2]

311/84 • with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached in position 9 [2]

311/86 • Oxygen atoms, e.g. xanthones [2]

311/88 • Nitrogen atoms [2]

311/90 • with hydrocarbon radicals, substituted by amino radicals, directly attached in position 9 [2]

311/92 • Naphthopyrans; Hydrogenated naphthopyrans [2]

311/94 • condensed with rings other than six-membered or with ring systems containing such rings [2, 5]

311/96 • spiro-condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems [2]

313/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing rings of more than six members having one oxygen atom as the only ring hetero atom [2]

313/02 • Seven-membered rings [2]

313/04 • not condensed with other rings [2]

313/06 • condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems [2]

313/08 • condensed with one six-membered ring [2]

313/10 • condensed with two six-membered rings [2]

313/12 • [b, e]-condensed [2]

313/14 • [b, f]-condensed [2]

313/16 • Eight-membered rings [2]

313/18 • not condensed with other rings [2]

313/20 • condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems [2]

315/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing rings having one oxygen atom as the only ring hetero atom according to more than one of groups C07D 303/00-C07D 313/00 [2]

317/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing five-membered rings having two oxygen atoms as the only ring hetero atoms [2]

317/02 • having the hetero atoms in positions 1 and 2 [2]

317/04 • not condensed with other rings [2]

317/06 • condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems [2]

317/08 • having the hetero atoms in positions 1 and 3 [2]
317/10  •  •  •  not condensed with other rings \[2\]
317/12  •  •  •  with only hydrogen atoms or radicals containing only hydrogen and carbon atoms, directly attached to ring carbon atoms \[2\]
317/14  •  •  •  with substituted hydrocarbon radicals attached to ring carbon atoms \[2\]
317/16  •  •  •  Radicals substituted by halogen atoms or nitro radicals \[2\]
317/18  •  •  •  Radicals substituted by singly bound oxygen or sulfur atoms \[2\]
317/20  •  •  •  Free hydroxyl or mercaptan \[2\]
317/22  •  •  •  Etherified \[2\]
317/24  •  •  •  esterified \[2\]
317/26  •  •  •  Radicals substituted by doubly bound oxygen or sulfur atoms or by two such atoms singly bound to the same carbon atom \[2\]
317/28  •  •  •  Radicals substituted by nitrogen atoms (nitro radicals C07D 317/16) \[2\]
317/30  •  •  •  Radicals substituted by carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals \[2\]
317/32  •  •  •  with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached to ring carbon atoms \[2\]
317/34  •  •  •  Oxygen atoms \[2\]
317/36  •  •  •  •  Alkylene carbonates; Substituted alkylene carbonates \[2\]
317/38  •  •  •  •  Ethylene carbonate \[2\]
317/40  •  •  •  •  Vinylene carbonate; Substituted vinylene carbonates \[2\]
317/42  •  •  •  Halogen atoms or nitro radicals \[2\]
317/44  •  •  •  Ortho- or peri-condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems \[2\]
317/46  •  •  •  •  Condensed with one six-membered ring \[2\]
317/48  •  •  •  Methyleneoxybenzenes or hydrogenated methyleneoxybenzenes, unsubstituted on the hetero ring \[2\]
317/50  •  •  •  •  •  with only hydrogen atoms, hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals, directly attached to atoms of the carbocyclic ring \[2\]
317/52  •  •  •  •  Radicals substituted by halogen atoms or nitro radicals \[2\]
317/54  •  •  •  •  Radicals substituted by oxygen atoms \[2\]
317/56  •  •  •  •  Radicals substituted by sulfur atoms \[2\]
317/58  •  •  •  •  Radicals substituted by nitrogen atoms (nitro radicals C07D 317/52) \[2\]
317/60  •  •  •  •  Radicals substituted by carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals \[2\]
317/62  •  •  •  •  with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached to atoms of the carbocyclic ring \[2\]
317/64  •  •  •  •  Oxygen atoms \[2\]
317/66  •  •  •  •  Nitrogen atoms not forming part of a nitro radical \[2\]
317/68  •  •  •  •  Carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen \[2\]
317/70  •  •  •  •  •  Condensed with ring systems containing two or more relevant rings \[2\]
317/72  •  •  •  •  Spiro-condensed with carbocyclic rings \[2\]
319/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing six-membered rings having two oxygen atoms as the only ring hetero atoms \[2\]
319/02  •  •  •  •  1,2-Dioxanes; Hydrogenated 1,2-dioxanes \[2\]
319/04  •  •  •  •  1,3-Dioxanes; Hydrogenated 1,3-dioxanes \[2\]
319/06  •  •  •  •  not condensed with other rings \[2\]
319/08  •  •  •  •  Condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems \[2\]
319/10  •  •  •  •  1,4-Dioxanes; Hydrogenated 1,4-dioxanes \[2\]
319/12  •  •  •  •  not condensed with other rings \[2\]
319/14  •  •  •  •  Condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems \[2\]
319/16  •  •  •  •  •  Condensed with one six-membered ring \[2\]
319/18  •  •  •  •  •  •  Ethylenedioxybenzenes, not substituted on the hetero ring \[2\]
319/20  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  With substituents attached to the hetero ring \[2\]
319/22  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  Condensed with one naphthalene or hydrogenated naphthalene ring system \[2\]
319/24  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  [b, e]-Condensed with two six-membered rings \[2\]
321/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing rings having two oxygen atoms as the only ring hetero atoms, not provided for by groups C07D 317/00- C07D 319/00 \[2\]
321/02  •  •  •  Seven-membered rings \[2\]
321/04  •  •  •  not condensed with other rings \[2\]
321/06  •  •  •  •  •  1, 3-Dioxepines; Hydrogenated 1,3-dioxepines \[2\]
321/08  •  •  •  •  •  1, 4-Dioxepines; Hydrogenated 1,4-dioxepines \[2\]
321/10  •  •  •  •  •  •  Condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems \[2\]
321/12  •  •  •  •  •  •  Eight-membered rings \[2\]
323/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing more than two oxygen atoms as the only ring hetero atoms \[2\]
323/02  •  •  •  •  Five-membered rings \[2\]
323/04  •  •  •  •  Six-membered rings \[2\]
323/06  •  •  •  •  Trioxane \[2\]
325/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing rings having oxygen as the only ring hetero atom according to more than one of groups C07D 303/00- C07D 323/00 \[2\]
327/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing rings having oxygen and sulfur atoms as the only ring hetero atoms \[2\]
327/02  •  •  •  •  One oxygen atom and one sulfur atom \[2\]
327/04  •  •  •  •  Five-membered rings \[2\]
327/06  •  •  •  •  Six-membered rings \[2\]
327/08  •  •  •  •  •  [b, e]-Condensed with two six-membered carbocyclic rings \[2\]
327/10  •  •  •  •  •  •  Two oxygen atoms and one sulfur atom, e.g. cyclic sulfates \[2\]
329/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing rings having oxygen and selenium or oxygen and tellurium atoms as the only ring hetero atoms \[2\]
Heterocyclic compounds containing rings of less than five members, having one sulfur atom as the only ring hetero atom [2]

333/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing five-membered rings having one sulfur atom as the only ring hetero atom [2]

- Three-membered rings [2]
- Four-membered rings [2]

333/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing five-membered rings having one sulfur atom as the only ring hetero atom [2]

- not condensed with other rings [2]
- with only hydrogen atoms, hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals, directly attached to the ring carbon atoms [2]
- Hydrogen atoms or radicals containing only hydrogen and carbon atoms [2]
- Thiophene [2]
- Radicals substituted by halogen atoms or nitro or nitroso radicals [2]
- Radicals substituted by halogen atoms or nitro or nitroso radicals [2]
- Radicals substituted by singly bound hetero atoms other than halogen [2]
- by oxygen atoms [2]
- by sulfur atoms [2]
- by nitrogen atoms (nitro, nitroso radicals C07D 333/12) [2]
- Radicals substituted by doubly bound hetero atoms, or by two hetero atoms other than halogen singly bound to the same carbon atom [2]
- Radicals substituted by carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals [2]
- with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals [2]
- Halogen atoms [2]
- Hetero atoms other than halogen [2]
- Oxygen atoms [2]
- Sulfur atoms [2]
- Nitrogen atoms [2]
- Carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals [2]
- Thiophene-2-carboxylic acid [2]
- with nitro or nitroso radicals directly attached to ring carbon atoms [2]
- Attached in position 5 [2]
- substituted on the ring sulfur atom [2]
- by oxygen atoms [2]
- condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems [2]
- with only hydrogen atoms, hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals, directly attached to carbon atoms of the hetero ring [2]
- Radicals substituted by oxygen atoms [2]
- Radicals substituted by nitrogen atoms [2]
- Radicals substituted by carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals [2]

333/02 with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached to carbon atoms of the hetero ring [2]

333/40 Oxygen atoms [2]

333/66 Nitrogen atoms not forming part of a nitro radical [2]

333/68 Carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen [2]

333/70 attached in position 2 [2]


333/74 Naphthothiophenes [2]

333/76 Dibenzothiophenes [2]

333/78 condensed with rings other than six-membered or with ring systems containing such rings [2, 5]

333/80 Seven-membered rings [2]

335/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing six-membered rings having one sulfur atom as the only ring hetero atom [2]

- not condensed with other rings [2]
- condensed with carboxylic rings or ring systems [2]
- Benzothiopyrans; Hydrogenated benzothiopyrans [2]
- Naphthothiopyrans; Hydrogenated naphthothiopyrans [2]
- Dibenzothiopyrans; Hydrogenated dibenzothiopyrans [2]
- Thioxanthenes [2]
- with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, directly attached in position 9 [2]
- Oxygen atoms, e.g. thioxanthenes [2]
- Nitrogen atoms [2]
- with hydrocarbon radicals, substituted by amino radicals, directly attached in position 9 [2]

337/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing rings of more than six members having one sulfur atom as the only ring hetero atom [2]

- Seven-membered rings [2]
- not condensed with other rings [2]
- condensed with carboxylic rings or ring systems [2]
- condensed with one six-membered ring [2]
- condensed with two six-membered rings [2]
- [b, e]-condensed [2]
- [b, f]-condensed [2]
- Eight-membered rings [2]

339/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing rings having two sulfur atoms as the only ring hetero atom [2]

- Five-membered rings [2]
- having the hetero atoms in positions 1 and 2, e.g. lipoic acid [2]
- having the hetero atoms in positions 1 and 3, e.g. cyclic dithiocarbonate [2]
- Six-membered rings [2]
Heterocyclic compounds containing rings having three or more sulfur atoms as the only ring hetero atoms [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing rings having sulfur and selenium or sulfur and tellurium atoms as the only ring hetero atoms [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing rings having selenium or tellurium atoms as the only ring hetero atoms [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing rings having halogen atoms as ring hetero atoms [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing two or more hetero rings [2]

Note(s)

Groups C07D 401/00-C07D 421/00 cover compounds containing two or more relevant hetero rings at least two of which are covered by different main groups of groups C07D 203/00-C07D 347/00, neither condensed among themselves nor condensed with a common carbocyclic ring or ring system.

Heterocyclic compounds containing two or more hetero rings, having nitrogen atoms as the only ring hetero atoms, at least one ring being a six-membered ring with only one nitrogen atom [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing two or more hetero rings, having nitrogen atoms as the only ring hetero atoms, not provided for by group C07D 405/00 [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing rings having oxygen atoms as the only hetero atoms, not provided for by group C07D 405/00 [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing rings having oxygen atoms as the only ring hetero atoms [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing two or more relevant hetero rings at least one ring having oxygen and sulfur atoms as the only ring hetero atoms [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing two or more relevant hetero rings at least one ring having nitrogen and sulfur atoms as the only ring hetero atoms [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing two or more relevant hetero rings at least one ring having sulfur atoms as the only ring hetero atoms [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing rings having two or more relevant hetero rings at least one ring having sulfur atoms as the only ring hetero atoms, not provided for by group C07D 405/00 [2]
Heterocyclic compounds containing condensed hetero ring systems [2]

Note(s)
1. Groups C07D 451/00-C07D 517/00 cover compounds containing one system of two or more relevant hetero rings condensed among themselves or condensed with a common carbocyclic ring system, with or without other non-condensed hetero rings.
2. For the purpose of classification in groups C07D 451/00-C07D 519/00, the degree of hydrogenation of the ring system is not taken into consideration.
3. For the purpose of classification in groups C07D 451/00-C07D 463/00, C07D 473/00-C07D 477/00, C07D 489/00, C07D 499/00-C07D 507/00, the wording of the groups has to be understood, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, as including ring systems further condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems, but excluding ring systems further condensed with other hetero rings, either directly or through a common carbocyclic ring system, e.g. sparteine is classified in group C07D 471/22, not in group C07D 455/02.
4. In groups C07D 471/00, C07D 487/00, C07D 491/00-C07D 498/00 or C07D 513/00-C07D 517/00, the subdivision is based on the number of relevant hetero rings.

Heterocyclic compounds containing 8-azabicyclo [3.2.1] octane, 9-azabicyclo [3.3.1] nonane, or 3-oxa-9-azatricyclo [3.3.1.02,4] nonane ring systems, e.g. tropane or granatane alkaloids, scopolamine; Cyclic acetics thereof [2]

451/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing 8-azabicyclo [3.2.1] octane, 9-azabicyclo [3.3.1] nonane, or 3-oxa-9-azatricyclo [3.3.1.02,4] nonane ring systems, e.g. tropane or granatane alkaloids, scopolamine; Cyclic acetics thereof [2]

451/02 containing not further condensed 8-azabicyclo [3.2.1] octane or 3-oxa-9-azatricyclo [3.3.1.02,4] nonane ring systems, e.g. tropane; Cyclic acetics thereof [2]

451/04 with hetero atoms directly attached in position 3 of the 8-azabicyclo [3.2.1] octane or in position 7 of the 3-oxa-9-azatricyclo [3.3.1.02,4] nonane ring system [2]

451/06 Oxygen atoms [2]

451/08 Diarylmethoxy radicals [2]

451/10 acylated by aliphatic or araliphatic carboxylic acids, e.g. atropine, scopolamine [2]

451/12 acylated by aromatic or heteroaromatic carboxylic acids, e.g. cocaine [2]

451/14 containing 9-azabicyclo [3.3.1] nonane ring systems, e.g. granatane, 2-aza-adamantane; Cyclic acetics thereof [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing quinuclidine or iso-quinuclidine ring systems, e.g. quinine alkaloids [2]

453/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing quinuclidine or iso-quinuclidine ring systems, e.g. quinine alkaloids [2]

453/02 containing not further condensed quinuclidine ring systems [2]

453/04 having a quinolyl-4, a substituted quinolyl-4 or an alkylenedioxy-quinolyl-4 radical linked through only one carbon atom, attached in position 2, e.g. quinine [2]

453/06 containing iso-quinuclidine ring systems [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing quinolizine ring systems, e.g. etemine alkaloids, protoberberine; Alkylenedioxy derivatives of dibenzo [a, g] quinolizines, e.g. berberine [2]
Heterocyclic compounds containing indolo [4, 3-f, g] quinoline ring systems, e.g. derivatives of ergoline, of the formula: \[ \text{[4.2.0] octane ring systems, i.e. compounds} \]

The numbering may be different according to the RING INDEX and given by the formula:

Heterocyclic compounds containing benz [g] indolo [2, 3-a] quinoline ring systems, e.g. yohimbine; 16, 18-lactones thereof, e.g. reserpic acid lactone [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing indolo [3, 2, 1-d, e] pyrido [3, 2, 1-i, j] [1, 5]-naphthyridine ring systems, e.g. vincamine (dimeric indolo alkaloids C07D 519/04) [3]

Heterocyclic compounds containing 1-azabicyclo [4.2.0] octane ring systems, i.e. compounds containing a ring system of the formula: \( \text{[4.2.0] octane ring systems, i.e. compounds} \)

Preparation (by microbiological processes C12P 17/18) [6]

by forming the ring or condensed ring systems [6]

from compounds already containing the ring or condensed ring systems, e.g. by dehydrogenation of the ring, by introduction, elimination or modification of substituents [6]

Modification of a carboxyl group directly attached in position 2, e.g. esterification [6]

with a carbon atom having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. an ester or nitrile radical, directly attached in position 2 [6]

with hydrogen atoms, hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals attached in position 7 [6]

with hetero atoms directly attached in position 7 [6]

Nitrogen atoms [6]

further acylated by radicals derived from carboxylic acids or by nitrogen or sulfur analogues thereof [6]

with the acylating radicals further substituted by hetero atoms or by carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen [6]

further substituted by nitrogen atoms [6]

Heterocyclic compounds containing nitrogen atoms as the only ring hetero atoms in the condensed system, at least one ring being a six-membered ring with one nitrogen atom, not provided for by groups C07D 451/00-C07D 463/00 [2, 5]

in which the condensed system contains two hetero rings [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2, 5]

Peri-condensed systems [2]

Bridged systems [2]

Spiro-condensed systems [2]

in which the condensed system contains three hetero rings [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Peri-condensed systems [2]

Bridged systems [2]

Spiro-condensed systems [2]

in which the condensed systems contains four or more hetero rings [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing purine ring systems [2]

with oxygen, sulfur, or nitrogen atoms directly attached in positions 2 and 6 [2]

two oxygen atoms [2]

with radicals containing only hydrogen and carbon atoms, attached in position 1 or 3 [2]

with methyl radicals in positions 1 and 3, e.g. theophylline [2]

with methyl radicals in positions 3 and 7, e.g. theobromine [2]

with methyl radicals in positions 1, 3, and 7, e.g. caffeine [2]

with two methyl radicals in positions 1 and 3 and two methyl radicals in positions 7, 8, or 9 [2]

two nitrogen atoms [2]

one oxygen and one nitrogen atom, e.g. guanine [2]

two sulfur atoms [2]

one oxygen and one sulfur atom [2]

one nitrogen and one sulfur atom [2]
Heterocyclic compounds containing 1-azabicyclo[3.2.0]heptane ring systems, i.e. compounds containing a ring system of the formula: \( \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{N}_4\text{O}_2\text{C}\), e.g. carbapenemycins, thienamycins; Such ring systems being further condensed, e.g. 2,3-condensed with an oxygen-, nitrogen- or sulfur-containing hetero ring [5]

- Preparation (by microbiological processes C12P 17/18) [6]
- by forming the ring or condensed ring systems [6]
- from compounds already containing the ring or condensed ring systems, e.g. by dehydrogenation of the ring, by introduction, elimination or modification of substituents [6]
- Modification of a carboxyl group directly attached in position 2, e.g. esterification [6]
- with hydrogen atoms, hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals, directly attached in position 4, and with a carbon atom having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. an ester or nitrile radical, directly attached in position 2 [6]
- with hydrogen atoms, hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals, attached in position 6 [6]
- with hetero atoms or carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. an ester or nitrile radical, directly attached in position 6 [6]

Heterocyclic compounds containing 4aH-8, 9 e-Iminoethano-phenanthro[4, 5-b, c, d] furan ring systems, e.g. derivatives of [4, 5-epoxy]-morphinan of the formula: [2]

**Note(s)**

The numbering may be different according to the RING INDEX and given by the formula:

- with oxygen atoms attached in positions 3 and 6, e.g. morphine, morphinone [2]
- Salts; Organic complexes [2]
- with a hetero atom directly attached in position 14 [2]
- Oxygen atom [2]
- containing 4aH-8, 9 e-Iminoethano- phenanthro[4, 5-b, c, d] furan ring systems condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems [3]
- with a bridge between positions 6 and 14 [2, 3]
- the bridge containing only two carbon atoms [2, 3]

Heterocyclic compounds containing in the condensed ring system both one or more rings having oxygen atoms as the only ring hetero atoms and one or more rings having nitrogen atoms as the only ring hetero atoms, not provided for by groups C07D 451/00-C07D 459/00, C07D 463/00, C07D 477/00 or C07D 489/00 [2]

- in which the condensed system contains two hetero rings [2]
- Ortho-condensed systems [2, 5]
- Peri-condensed systems [2]
- Bridged systems [2]
- Spiro-condensed systems [2]
- in which the condensed system contains three hetero rings [2]
- Ortho-condensed systems [2]
- Peri-condensed systems [2]
- Bridged systems [2]
- Spiro-condensed systems [2]
- in which the condensed system contains four or more hetero rings [2]
Heterocyclic compounds containing in the condensed system the only ring hetero atoms in the oxygen-containing ring [3] in which the condensed system contains two hetero rings [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing in the condensed system containing one ring with oxygen as ring hetero atom and two rings with nitrogen as ring hetero atom [3] in which the condensed system contains three hetero rings [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing in the condensed system containing one ring with oxygen as ring hetero atom and one ring with nitrogen as ring hetero atom [3] in which the condensed system contains four or more hetero rings [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing in the condensed system containing one ring with oxygen as ring hetero atom and two rings with nitrogen as ring hetero atom [3] in which the condensed system contains three hetero rings [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing in the condensed system containing two rings with oxygen as ring hetero atom and one ring with nitrogen as ring hetero atom [3] in which the condensed system contains four or more hetero rings [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing in the condensed system containing two rings with oxygen as ring hetero atom and two rings with nitrogen as ring hetero atom [3] in which the condensed system contains four or more hetero rings [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing in the condensed system containing one ring with oxygen as ring hetero atom and one ring with nitrogen as ring hetero atom [3] in which the condensed system contains three hetero rings [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing in the condensed system containing one ring with oxygen as ring hetero atom and two rings with nitrogen as ring hetero atom [3] in which the condensed system contains four or more hetero rings [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing in the condensed system containing one ring with oxygen as ring hetero atom and one ring with nitrogen as ring hetero atom [3] in which the condensed system contains three hetero rings [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing in the condensed system containing two rings with oxygen as ring hetero atom and one ring with nitrogen as ring hetero atom [3] in which the condensed system contains four or more hetero rings [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing in the condensed system containing one ring with oxygen as ring hetero atom and one ring with nitrogen as ring hetero atom [3] in which the condensed system contains three hetero rings [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing in the condensed system containing one ring with oxygen as ring hetero atom and one ring with nitrogen as ring hetero atom [3] in which the condensed system contains three hetero rings [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing in the condensed system containing one ring with oxygen as ring hetero atom and two rings with nitrogen as ring hetero atom [3] in which the condensed system contains four or more hetero rings [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing in the condensed system containing one ring with oxygen as ring hetero atom and one ring with nitrogen as ring hetero atom [3] in which the condensed system contains three hetero rings [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing in the condensed system containing one ring with oxygen as ring hetero atom and two rings with nitrogen as ring hetero atom [3] in which the condensed system contains four or more hetero rings [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing in the condensed system containing one ring with oxygen as ring hetero atom and one ring with nitrogen as ring hetero atom [3] in which the condensed system contains three hetero rings [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing in the condensed system containing one ring with oxygen as ring hetero atom and two rings with nitrogen as ring hetero atom [3] in which the condensed system contains four or more hetero rings [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing in the condensed system containing one ring with oxygen as ring hetero atom and one ring with nitrogen as ring hetero atom [3] in which the condensed system contains three hetero rings [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing in the condensed system containing one ring with oxygen as ring hetero atom and two rings with nitrogen as ring hetero atom [3] in which the condensed system contains four or more hetero rings [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing in the condensed system containing one ring with oxygen as ring hetero atom and one ring with nitrogen as ring hetero atom [3] in which the condensed system contains three hetero rings [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing in the condensed system containing one ring with oxygen as ring hetero atom and two rings with nitrogen as ring hetero atom [3] in which the condensed system contains four or more hetero rings [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing in the condensed system containing one ring with oxygen as ring hetero atom and one ring with nitrogen as ring hetero atom [3] in which the condensed system contains three hetero rings [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing in the condensed system containing one ring with oxygen as ring hetero atom and two rings with nitrogen as ring hetero atom [3] in which the condensed system contains four or more hetero rings [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]

Ortho-condensed systems [2]
 Compounds being unsubstituted in position 3 or with substituents other than only two methyl radicals attached in position 3, and with a carbon atom having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. an ester or nitrile radical, directly attached in position 2 [6]

Compounds with a double bond between positions 2 and 3 and a carbon atom having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. an ester or nitrile radical, directly attached in position 2 [5, 6]

Compounds with a free primary amino radical attached in position 6 [2]

Compounds with an amino radical acylated by carboxylic acids, attached in position 6 [2]

Compounds having a nitrogen atom directly attached in position 2

Compounds containing a ring system of the formula: , e.g. cephalosporins; Such ring systems being further condensed, e.g. 2,3-condensed with an oxygen-, nitrogen- or sulfur-containing hetero ring [2]

Preparation [2]

from compounds already containing the ring or condensed ring systems, e.g. by dehydrogenation of the ring, by introduction, elimination or modification of substituents [2]

Acylation of 7-aminocephalosporanic acid [2]

by forming the ring or condensed ring systems (by microbiological processes C12P 35/00) [2]

from compounds containing the penicillin ring system [2]

Separation; Purification [2]

Compounds having a nitrogen atom directly attached in position 7 [2]

with a double bond between positions 2 and 3 [2]

7-Aminocephalosporanic or substituted 7-aminocephalosporanic acids [2]

7-Acylaminocephalosporanic or substituted 7-acylaminocephalosporanic acids in which the acyl radicals are derived from carboxylic acids [2]

with radicals containing only hydrogen and carbon atoms, attached in position 3 [2]

with hydrocarbon radicals, substituted by hetero atoms or heterocyclic rings, attached in position 3 [2]

Methylene radicals, substituted by oxygen atoms; Lactones thereof with the 2-carboxyl group [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing 5-thia-1-azabicyclo [4.2.0] octane ring systems, i.e. compounds containing a ring system of the formula:

with alicyclic rings as additional substituents on the carbon chain [2]

with aromatic rings as additional substituents on the carbon chain [2]

with hetero rings as additional substituents on the carbon chain [2]

by carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms [2]

with carboxyclic rings directly attached to the carboxamido radical [2]

with hetero rings directly attached to the carboxamido radical [2]

Compounds with an amino radical, acylated by carboxamide radical [2]

Compounds with a nitrogen-containing hetero ring, attached with the ring nitrogen atom in position 6 [2]

with only atoms other than nitrogen atoms directly attached in position 6 and a carbon atom having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. an ester or nitrile radical, directly attached in position 2 [5, 6]

with a hydrocarbon radical or a substituted hydrocarbon radical, directly attached in position 6 [16]

with hetero atoms or with carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. an ester or nitrile radical, directly attached in position 6 [6]
Heterocyclic compounds containing 5-oxa-1-azabicyclo[4.2.0]octane ring systems, i.e. compounds containing a ring system of the formula: 

![Chemical structure](image)

with nitrogen- or sulfur-containing hetero atoms directly attached in position 2, e.g. esterification [6]

503/10 • with a carbon atom having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. an ester or nitrile radical, directly attached in position 2 [6]

503/12 • unsubstituted in position 6 [6]

503/14 • with hydrogen atoms, hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals, other than a carbon atom having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. an ester or nitrile radical [6]

503/16 • Radicals substituted by hetero atoms or by carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. an ester or nitrile radical [6]

503/18 • • • • • • • by oxygen atoms [6]

503/20 • • • • • • • by sulfur atoms [6]

503/22 • • • • • • • by nitrogen atoms [6]

505/00 Heterocyclic compounds containing 5-oxa-1-azabicyclo[4.2.0]octane ring systems, i.e. compounds containing a ring system of the formula: 

![Chemical structure](image)

• by forming the ring or condensed ring systems [6]

503/04 • • from compounds already containing the ring or condensed ring systems, e.g. by dehydrogenation of the ring, by introduction, elimination or modification of substituents [6]

503/06 • • from compounds already containing the ring or condensed ring systems, e.g. by dehydrogenation of the ring, by introduction, elimination or modification of substituents [6]

503/08 • • Modification of a carboxyl group directly attached in position 2, e.g. esterification [6]

503/10 • with a carbon atom having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. an ester or nitrile radical, directly attached in position 2 [6]

503/12 • unsubstituted in position 6 [6]

503/14 • • • • • • with hydrogen atoms, hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals, other than a carbon atom having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. an ester or nitrile radical [6]

503/16 • • • • • • • Radicals substituted by hetero atoms or by carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. an ester or nitrile radical [6]

503/18 • • • • • • • by oxygen atoms [6]

503/20 • • • • • • • by sulfur atoms [6]

503/22 • • • • • • • by nitrogen atoms [6]

503/02 • Preparation (by microbiological processes C12P 17/18) [6]

503/04 • • from compounds already containing the ring or condensed ring systems, e.g. by dehydrogenation of the ring, by introduction, elimination or modification of substituents [6]

503/06 • • from compounds already containing the ring or condensed ring systems, e.g. by dehydrogenation of the ring, by introduction, elimination or modification of substituents [6]

503/08 • • Modification of a carboxyl group directly attached in position 2, e.g. esterification [6]

503/10 • with a carbon atom having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, e.g. an ester or nitrile radical, directly attached in position 2 [6]

503/12 • unsubstituted in position 6 [6]

503/14 • • • • • • with hetero atoms directly attached in position 7 [6]

503/16 • • • • • • • Nitrogen atoms [6]

503/18 • • • • • • • further acylated by radicals derived from carboxylic acids or by nitrogen or sulfur analogues thereof [6]

503/20 • • • • • • • with the acylating radicals further substituted by hetero atoms or by carbon atoms having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen [6]

503/22 • • • • • • • further substituted by singly-bound nitrogen atoms [6]

503/24 • • • • • • • further substituted by doubly-bound nitrogen atoms [6]
Heterocyclic compounds containing a condensed beta-lactam ring system, not provided for by groups C07D 463/00, C07D 477/00 or C07D 499/00-C07D 505/00; Such ring systems being further condensed [6]

- containing 3-oxa-1-azabicyclo [3.2.0] heptane ring systems [6]
- containing 2-oxa-1-azabicyclo [4.2.0] octane ring systems [6]
- containing 3-oxa-1-azabicyclo [4.2.0] octane ring systems [6]
- containing 4-oxa-1-azabicyclo [4.2.0] octane ring systems [6]

Heterocyclic compounds containing in the condensed system at least one hetero ring having nitrogen and sulfur atoms as the only ring hetero atoms, not provided for in groups C07D 463/00, C07D 477/00 or C07D 499/00-C07D 507/00 [2, 6]

- in which the condensed system contains two hetero rings [2]
- Ortho-condensed systems [2]
- Peri-condensed systems [2]
- Bridged systems [2]
- Spiro-condensed systems [2]
- in which the condensed system contains three hetero rings [2]
- Ortho-condensed systems [2]
- Peri-condensed systems [2]
- Bridged systems [2]
- Spiro-condensed systems [2]
- in which the condensed system contains four or more hetero rings [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing in the condensed system at least one hetero ring having nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur atoms as the only ring hetero atoms, not provided for in groups C07D 463/00, C07D 477/00 or C07D 499/00-C07D 507/00 [2]

- in which the condensed system contains two hetero rings [2]
- Ortho-condensed systems [2]
- Peri-condensed systems [2]
- Bridged systems [2]
- Spiro-condensed systems [2]
- in which the condensed system contains three hetero rings [2]
- Ortho-condensed systems [2]
- Peri-condensed systems [2]
- Bridged systems [2]
- Spiro-condensed systems [2]
- in which the condensed system contains four or more hetero rings [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing in the condensed system at least one hetero ring having selenium, tellurium, or halogen atoms as ring hetero atoms [2]

- in which the condensed system contains two hetero rings [2]
- Ortho-condensed systems [2]
- Peri-condensed systems [2]
- Bridged systems [2]
- Spiro-condensed systems [2]
- in which the condensed system contains three hetero rings [2]
- Ortho-condensed systems [2]
- Peri-condensed systems [2]

Heterocyclic compounds containing more than one system of two or more relevant hetero rings condensed among themselves or condensed with a common carbocyclic ring system not provided for in groups C07D 453/00 or C07D 455/00 [2]

- Ergot alkaloids of the cyclic peptide type [2]
- Dimeric indole alkaloids, e.g. vincaleucoblastine [2]
- containing at least one condensed beta-lactam ring system, provided for by groups C07D 463/00, C07D 477/00 or C07D 499/00-C07D 507/00, e.g. a penem or a cepham system [6]

Heterocyclic compounds containing unspecified hetero rings [2]

Note(s) [2009.01]

This group is only used for the classification of heterocyclic compounds the chemical structure of which are not specified, i.e. only in those cases where the heterocyclic compounds cannot be classified in any of groups C07D 201/00-C07D 519/00.
In this subclass, organic acid salts, alcoholates, phenates, chelates or mercaptides are classified as the parent compounds.

Attention is drawn to Note (3) after the title of section C, which Note indicates to which version of the periodic table of chemical elements and within these subclasses.

Attention is drawn to Note (3) after class C07, which defines the last place priority rule applied in the range of subclasses C07C-C07K.

In this subclass, organic acid salts, alcoholates, phenates, chelates or mercaptides are classified as the parent compounds.

1/00 Compounds containing elements of Groups 1 or 11 of the Periodic System

1/02 • Lithium compounds
1/04 • Sodium compounds
1/06 • Potassium compounds
1/08 • Copper compounds
1/10 • Silver compounds
1/12 • Gold compounds

3/00 Compounds containing elements of Groups 2 or 12 of the Periodic System

3/02 • Magnesium compounds
3/04 • Calcium compounds
3/06 • Zinc compounds
3/08 • Cadmium compounds
3/10 • Mercury compounds
3/12 • Aromatic substances containing mercury
3/14 • Heterocyclic substances containing mercury

5/00 Compounds containing elements of Groups 3 or 13 of the Periodic System

5/02 • Boron compounds
5/04 • Esters of boric acids
5/05 • Cyclic compounds having at least one ring containing boron but no carbon in the ring [2]
5/06 • Aluminium compounds

7/00 Compounds containing elements of Groups 4 or 14 of the Periodic System

7/02 • Silicon compounds
7/04 • Esters of silicic acids
7/06 • with hydroxyaryl compounds
7/07 • Cyclic esters [2]
7/08 • Compounds having one or more C—Si linkages
7/10 • containing nitrogen
7/12 • Organo silicon halides
7/14 • Preparation thereof from halogenated silanes and hydrocarbons
7/16 • Preparation thereof from silicon and halogenated hydrocarbons
7/18 • Compounds having one or more C—Si linkages as well as one or more C—O—Si linkages
7/20 • Purification; Separation
7/21 • Cyclic compounds having at least one ring containing silicon but no carbon in the ring [2]
7/22 • Tin compounds
7/24 • Lead compounds
7/26 • Tetra-alkyl lead compounds
7/28 • Titanium compounds
7/30 • Germanium compounds [2]

9/00 Compounds containing elements of Groups 5 or 15 of the Periodic System

9/02 • Phosphorus compounds [2]
9/04 • Reaction products of phosphorus sulfur compounds with hydrocarbons
9/06 • without P—C bonds
9/08 • • Esters of oxyacids of phosphorus
9/09 • • • Esters of phosphoric acids [2]
9/10 • • • • Phosphatides, e.g. lecithin
9/11 • • • • • with hydroxyalkyl compounds without further substituents on alkyl [2]
9/113 • • • • • with unsaturated acyclic alcohols [2]
9/117 • • • • • with cycloaliphatic alcohols [2]
9/12 • • • • • with hydroxyaryl compounds [2]
9/14 • • • • containing P-halide groups [2]
9/141 • • • • Esters of phosphorous acids [2]
9/142 • • • • • with hydroxyalkyl compounds without further substituents on alkyl [2]
9/143 • • • • • with unsaturated acyclic alcohols [2]
9/144 • • • • • with cycloaliphatic alcohols [2]
9/145 • • • • • with hydroxyaryl compounds [2]
9/146 • • • • containing P-halide groups [2]
9/16 • • • Esters of thiophosphoric acids or thiophosphorous acids
9/165 • • • • Esters of thiophosphoric acids or thiophosphorous acids
9/17 • • • • with hydroxyalkyl compounds without further substituents on alkyl [2]
9/173 • • • • • with unsaturated acyclic alcohols [2]
9/177 • • • • • with cycloaliphatic alcohols [2]
9/18 • • • • • with hydroxyaryl compounds [2]
9/20 • • • • containing P-halide groups [2]
9/201 • • • • Esters of thiophosphorous acids [2]
9/202 • • • • • with hydroxyalkyl compounds without further substituents on alkyl [2]
9/203 • • • • • with unsaturated acyclic alcohols [2]
9/204 • • • • • with cycloaliphatic alcohols [2]
9/205 • • • • • with hydroxyaryl compounds [2]
9/206 • • • • containing P-halide groups [2]
9/22 • • • • • Amides of acids of phosphorus
9/24 • • • • Esteramides
9/26 • • • • containing P-halide groups
9/28 • with one or more P—C bonds
9/30 • • • • • Phosphinic acids (R₂=P(O)OH); Thiophosphinic acids
9/32 • • • • Ester thereof
9/34 • • • • Halides thereof
9/36 • • • • Amides thereof
9/38 • • • • Phosphonic acids (R—P(O)(OH)₂); Thiophosphonic acids
9/40 Phosphinic acids (R₂=P—OH); Thio phosphinic acids
9/48 Phosphonous acids (R—P (OH)₂); Thio phosphonous acids
9/50 Organo-phosphines
9/52 Halophosphines
9/53 Organo-phosphine oxides; Organo-phosphine sulfides
9/535 Organo-phosphoranes
9/54 Quaternary phosphonium compounds
9/547 Heterocyclic compounds, e.g. containing phosphorus as a ring hetero atom [5]
9/553 having one nitrogen atom as the only ring hetero atom [5]
9/564 Three-membered rings [5]
9/568 Four-membered rings [5]
9/572 Five-membered rings [5]
9/576 Six-membered rings [5]
9/58 Pyridine rings [5]
9/59 Hydrogenated pyridine rings [5]
9/60 Quinoline or hydrogenated quinoline ring systems [5]
9/62 Isoquinoline or hydrogenated isoquinoline ring systems [5]
9/64 Acridine or hydrogenated acridine ring systems [5]
9/645 having two nitrogen atoms as the only ring hetero atoms [5]
9/6503 Five-membered rings [5]
9/6506 having the nitrogen atoms in positions 1 and 3 [5]
9/6509 Six-membered rings [5]
9/6512 having the nitrogen atoms in positions 1 and 3 [5]
9/6515 having three nitrogen atoms as the only ring hetero atoms [5]
9/6518 Five-membered rings [5]
9/6521 Six-membered rings [5]
9/6524 having four or more nitrogen atoms as the only ring hetero atoms [5]
9/6527 having nitrogen and oxygen atoms as the only ring hetero atoms [5]
9/653 Five-membered rings [5]
9/6533 Six-membered rings [5]
9/6536 having nitrogen and sulfur atoms with or without oxygen atoms, as the only ring hetero atoms [5]
9/6539 Five-membered rings [5]
9/6541 condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems [5]
9/6544 Six-membered rings [5]
9/6547 condensed with carbocyclic rings or ring systems [5]
9/655 having oxygen atoms, with or without sulfur, selenium, or tellurium atoms, as the only ring hetero atoms [5]
9/6553 having sulfur atoms, with or without selenium or tellurium atoms, as the only ring hetero atoms [5]
9/6558 containing at least two different or differently substituted hetero rings neither condensed among themselves nor condensed with a common carbocyclic ring or ring system [5]
9/6561 containing systems of two or more relevant hetero rings condensed among themselves or condensed with a common carbocyclic ring or ring system, with or without other non-condensed hetero rings [5]
9/6564 having phosphorus atoms, with or without nitrogen, oxygen, sulfur, selenium or tellurium atoms, as ring hetero atoms [5]
9/6568 having phosphorus atoms as the only ring hetero atoms [5]
9/6571 having phosphorus and oxygen atoms as the only ring hetero atoms [5]
9/6574 having phosphorus and sulfur atoms with or without nitrogen atoms, as ring hetero atoms [5]
9/6581 having phosphorus and nitrogen atoms with or without oxygen atoms, as ring hetero atoms [5]
9/6584 having one phosphorus atom as ring hetero atom [5]
9/6587 having two phosphorus atoms as ring hetero atoms [5]
9/6589 having three phosphorus atoms as ring hetero atoms [5]
9/6593 1,3,5-Triaza-2,4,6-triphosphorines [5]
9/6596 having atoms other than oxygen, sulfur, selenium, tellurium, nitrogen or phosphorus as ring hetero atoms [5]
9/66 Arsenic compounds
9/68—C bonds
9/70 Organo-arsenic compounds
9/72 Aliphatic compounds
9/74 Aromatic compounds
9/76 containing hydroxyl groups
9/78 containing amino groups
9/80 Heterocyclic compounds
9/82 Arsenic compounds containing one or more pyridine rings
9/84 Arsenic compounds containing one or more quinoline ring systems
9/86 Arsenic compounds containing one or more isoquinoline ring systems
9/88 Arsenic compounds containing one or more acridine ring systems
9/90 Antimony compounds
9/92 Aromatic compounds
9/94 Bismuth compounds
11/00 Compounds containing elements of Groups 6 or 16 of the Periodic System
13/00 Compounds containing elements of Groups 7 or 17 of the Periodic System
15/00 Compounds containing elements of Groups 8, 9, 10 or 18 of the Periodic System
15/02 Iron compounds
15/03 Sideramines; The corresponding desferri compounds
15/04 Nickel compounds
15/06 Cobalt compounds
17/00 Metallocenes [2]
17/02 of metals of Groups 8, 9 or 10 of the Periodic System [2]
C07F

Metal compounds according to more than one of main groups C07F 1/00-C07F 17/00 [5]

C07G

COMPOUNDS OF UNKNOWN CONSTITUTION (sulfonated fats, oils or waxes of undetermined constitution C07C 309/62)

Note(s)

1. This subclass does not cover peptides or proteins, of unknown constitution, which are covered by subclass C07K.
2. Attention is drawn to Note (3) after class C07, which defines the last place priority rule applied in the range of subclasses C07C-C07K and within these subclasses.
3. Therapeutic activity of compounds is further classified in subclass A61P.

1/00 Low-molecular-weight derivatives of lignin (high-molecular-weight derivatives of lignin C08H 7/00) [1, 2011.01]

11/00 Antibiotics

13/00 Vitamins of unknown constitution

15/00 Hormones

3/00 Glycosides

5/00 Alkaloids

99/00 Subject matter not provided for in other groups of this subclass [2009.01]

9/00 Ammonium bituminosulfonate, e.g. Ichthyol

C07H

SUGARS; DERIVATIVES THEREOF; NUCLEOSIDES; NUCLEOTIDES; NUCLEIC ACIDS (derivatives of aldonic or saccharic acids C07C, C07D; aldonic acids, saccharic acids C07C 59/105, C07C 59/285; cyanohydrins C07C 255/16; glycal C07D; compounds of unknown constitution C07G; polysaccharides, derivatives thereof C08B; DNA or RNA concerning genetic engineering, vectors, e.g. plasmids, or their isolation, preparation or purification C12N 15/00; sugar industry C13) [2]

Note(s)

1. This subclass covers compounds containing saccharide radicals (see the definitions in Note (3) below).
2. This subclass does not cover polysaccharides which for the purpose of this subclass are defined as having more than five saccharide radicals attached to each other by glycosidic linkages.
3. In this subclass, the following expressions are used with the meanings indicated:
   • "saccharide radical" which is derived from acyclic polyhydroxy-aldehydes or acyclic polyhydroxy-ketones, or from their cyclic tautomers, by removing hydrogen atoms or by replacing hetero bonds to oxygen by the same number of hetero bonds to halogen, nitrogen, sulfur, selenium, or tellurium, in accordance with either of the following definitions:
     a. It consists of an uninterrupted carbon skeleton and oxygen atoms directly attached thereto, and
        i. is considered to be terminated by every bond to a carbon atom of a cyclic structure and by every bond to a carbon atom having three bonds to hetero atoms, e.g. ester or nitrile radicals, and
        iii. contains within the carbon skeleton an unbranched sequence of at least five carbon atoms in which at least three carbon atoms — at least two in the case of a skeleton having only four carbon atoms — have one single bond to an oxygen atom as the only hetero bond, and
        A. in a cyclic or acyclic sequence, at least one other carbon atom has two single bonds to oxygen atoms as the only hetero bonds, or
        B. in an acyclic sequence, at least one other carbon atom has one double bond to an oxygen atom as the only hetero bond,
        the said sequence containing at the most one double bond, i.e. C=C or possibly ketalised C(=O), in addition to the hetero bonds mentioned above under (A) or (B), e.g. the compounds
        \[
        \begin{array}{c}
        \text{CHO} \\
        \text{CHO} \\
        \text{CHO} \\
        \text{CHO} \\
        \text{CHOH} \\
        \end{array}
        \]
        an unbranched sequence of at the most six carbon atoms, having bonds to oxygen as defined in this Note
        \[
        \begin{array}{c}
        \text{CHO} \\
        \text{CHO} \\
        \text{CHO} \\
        \text{CHO} \\
        \text{CHO} \\
        \end{array}
        \]
        n being an integer, are classified in group C07H 3/02;
        b. It is also a radical derived from a radical as defined in (a) above by replacing at the most four of the specified hetero bonds to oxygen by the same number of hetero bonds to halogen, nitrogen, sulfur, selenium, or tellurium;
           • "heterocyclic radical" or "hetero ring" is considered to exclude saccharide radicals as defined above.
4. Attention is drawn to Note (3) after class C07, which defines the last place priority rule applied in the range of subclasses C07C-C07K and within these subclasses.
5. Therapeutic activity of compounds is further classified in subclass A61P.

**Subclass index**

GENERAL PROCESSES........................................................................................................1/00

**COMPUNDS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1/00</th>
<th>Processes for the preparation of sugar derivatives [2]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1/02</td>
<td>• Phosphorylation [2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/04</td>
<td>• Introducing polyphosphoric acid radicals [2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/06</td>
<td>• Separation; Purification [2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/08</td>
<td>• from natural products [2]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3/00</th>
<th>Compounds containing only hydrogen atoms and saccharide radicals having only carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen atoms (preparation by hydrolysis of di-or polysaccharides C13; separation or purification of sucrose, glucose, fructose, lactose or maltose C13) [2]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3/02</td>
<td>• Monosaccharides [2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3/04</td>
<td>• Disaccharides [2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3/06</td>
<td>• Oligosaccharides, i.e. having three to five saccharide radicals attached to each other by glycosidic linkages [2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3/08</td>
<td>• Deoxysugars; Unsaturated sugars (1,2-dideoxy-1-enoses C07D); Osones [2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3/10</td>
<td>• Anhydro sugars, e.g. epoxides [2]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>5/00</th>
<th>Compounds containing saccharide radicals in which the hetero bonds to oxygen have been replaced by the same number of hetero bonds to halogen, nitrogen, sulfur, selenium, or tellurium [2]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5/02</td>
<td>• to halogen [2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5/04</td>
<td>• to nitrogen [2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5/06</td>
<td>• Aminosugars [2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5/08</td>
<td>• to sulfur, selenium, or tellurium [2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5/10</td>
<td>• to sulfur [2]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>7/00</th>
<th>Compounds containing non-saccharide radicals linked to saccharide radicals by a carbon-to-carbon bond [2]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7/02</td>
<td>• Acyclic radicals [2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7/027</td>
<td>• Keto-aldonic acids [4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7/033</td>
<td>• Uronic acids [4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7/04</td>
<td>• Carboxyclic radicals [2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7/06</td>
<td>• Heterocyclic radicals [2]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>9/00</th>
<th>Compounds containing a hetero ring sharing at least two hetero atoms with a saccharide radical [2]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9/02</td>
<td>• the hetero ring containing only oxygen as ring hetero atoms [2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9/04</td>
<td>• Cyclic acetals [2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9/06</td>
<td>• the hetero ring containing nitrogen as ring hetero atoms [2]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>11/00</th>
<th>Compounds containing saccharide radicals esterified by inorganic acids; Metal salts thereof (halo-sugars C07H 5/02; thio-, seleno-, or telluro-sugars C07H 5/08) [2]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11/02</td>
<td>• Nitrates; Nitrites [2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11/04</td>
<td>• Phosphates; Phosphites; Polyphosphates [2]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>13/00</th>
<th>Compounds containing saccharide radicals esterified by carbonic acid or derivatives thereof, or by organic acids, e.g. phosphonic acids [2]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13/02</td>
<td>• by carbonic acids [2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13/04</td>
<td>• having the esterifying carboxyl radicals attached to acyclic carbon atoms [2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13/06</td>
<td>• • Fatty acids [2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13/08</td>
<td>• • having the esterifying carboxyl radicals directly attached to carboxyclic rings [2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13/10</td>
<td>• • having the esterifying carboxyl radicals directly attached to heterocyclic rings [2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13/12</td>
<td>• by acids having the group —X—C(=X)—X—, or halides thereof, in which X means nitrogen, oxygen, sulfur, selenium, or tellurium, e.g. carboxylic acid, carbamic acid [2]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 15/00 | Compounds containing hydrocarbon or substituted hydrocarbon radicals directly attached to hetero atoms of saccharide radicals [2] |

**Note(s)**

In this group, acyl radicals directly attached to hetero atoms of the saccharide radicals are not considered as substituted hydrocarbon radicals.

| 15/02 | • Acyclic radicals, not substituted by cyclic structures [2] |
| 15/04 | • • attached to an oxygen atom of a saccharide radical [2] |
| 15/06 | • • • being a hydroxyalkyl group esterified by a fatty acid [4] |
| 15/08 | • • • Polyoxyalkylene derivatives [2] |
| 15/10 | • • • containing unsaturated carbon-to-carbon bonds [2] |
| 15/12 | • • • attached to a nitrogen atom of a saccharide radical [2] |
| 15/14 | • • • attached to a sulfur, selenium or tellurium atom of a saccharide radical [2] |
| 15/16 | • • • Lincomycin; Derivatives thereof [2] |
| 15/18 | • Acyclic radicals, substituted by carboxyclic rings [2] |
1. This subclass covers compounds containing a cyclopenta[a]hydrophenanthrene skeleton or a ring structure derived therefrom:
   • by contraction or expansion of one ring by one or two atoms,
   • by contraction or expansion of two rings each by one atom,

C07H

15/20  Carbocyclic rings [2]
15/203  Monocyclic carbocyclic rings other than
cyclohexane rings; Bicyclic carbocyclic ring
systems [4]
15/207  Cyclohexane rings not substituted by nitrogen
atoms, e.g. kasugamycins [4]
15/22  Cyclohexane rings, substituted by nitrogen
atoms [4]
15/222  • Cyclohexane rings, substituted by at least two
nitrogen atoms [4]
15/224  • with only one saccharide radical directly
attached to the cyclohexane rings, e.g.
destomycin, fortimicin, neamine [4]
15/226  • with at least two saccharide radicals directly
attached to the cyclohexane rings [4]
15/228  • • • attached to adjacent ring-carbon atoms of
the cyclohexane rings [4]
15/23  • • • • with only two saccharide radicals in
the molecule, e.g. ambutryosin,
butyrosin, xylostatin, ribostamycin [4]
15/232  • • • • with at least three saccharide radicals
in the molecule, e.g. lidovomycin,
neomycin, paromomycin [4]
15/234  • • • • • attached to non-adjacent ring carbon
atoms of the cyclohexane rings, e.g.
kanamycins, tobramycin, nebramycin,
gentamicin A3, [4]
15/236  • • • • • a saccharide radical being substituted
by an alkylamino radical in position 3
and by two substituents different from
hydrogen in position 4, e.g. gentamicin
complex, sisomicin, verdamycin [4]
15/238  • • • Cyclohexane rings substituted by two guanidine
radicals, e.g. streptomycins [4]
15/24  • Condensed ring systems having three or more
rings [2]
15/244  • • Amthraquinone radicals, e.g. sennosides [4]
15/248  • • Colchicine radicals, e.g. colchicosides [4]
15/252  • • • Naphthacene radicals, e.g. daunomycins,
adriamycins [4]
15/256  • • Polyterpene radicals [4]
15/26  • Acyclic or carbocyclic radicals, substituted by hetero
rings [2]

17/00  Compounds containing heterocyclic radicals directly
attached to hetero atoms of saccharide radicals [2]
17/02  • Heterocyclic radicals containing only nitrogen as ring
hetero atoms [2]
17/04  • Heterocyclic radicals containing only oxygen as ring
hetero atoms [2]
17/06  • Benzopyran radicals [4]
17/065  • • Benzo[b]pyrans [4]
17/07  • • • Benzo[b]pyran-4-ones [4]
17/075  • • • Benzo[b]pyran-2-ones [4]
17/08  • Hetero rings containing eight or more ring
members, e.g. erythromycins [2]

19/00  Compounds containing a hetero ring sharing one
ring hetero atom with a saccharide radical;
Nucleosides; Mononucleotides; Anhydro derivatives
thereof [2, 4]
19/01  • sharing oxygen [4]
19/02  • sharing nitrogen [2]
19/04  • • Heterocyclic radicals containing only nitrogen as
ring hetero atom [2]
19/044  • • • Pyrrole radicals [4]
19/048  • • • Pyridine radicals [4]
19/052  • • • Imidazole radicals [4]
19/056  • • • Triazole or tetrazole radicals [4]
19/06  • • • Pyrimidine radicals [2]
19/067  • • • with ribosyl as the saccharide radical [4]
19/073  • • • with 2-deoxyriboseyl as the saccharide
radical [4]
19/09  • • • with arabinosyl as the saccharide radical [4]
19/10  • • • with the saccharide radical being esterified
by phosphoric or polyphosphoric acids [2]
19/11  • • • • • containing cyclic phosphate [4]
19/12  • • Triazine radicals [2]
19/14  • • Pyrrolo-pyrimidine radicals [2]
19/16  • • Purine radicals [2]
19/167  • • • • • with ribosyl as the saccharide radical [4]
19/173  • • • • • with 2-deoxyriboseyl as the saccharide
radical [4]
19/19  • • • • • with arabinosyl as the saccharide radical [4]
19/20  • • • • • with the saccharide radical being esterified
by phosphoric or polyphosphoric acids [2]
19/207  • • • • • the phosphoric or polyphosphoric acids
being esterified by a further hydroxylic
compound, e.g. flavine-adenine
dinucleotide or nicotinamide-adenine
dinucleotide [4]
19/213  • • • • containing cyclic phosphate [4]
19/22  • • Pteridine radicals [2]
19/23  • • Heterocyclic radicals containing two or more
heterocyclic rings condensed among
themselves or condensed with a common
carbocyclic ring system, not provided for in
groups C07H 19/14-C07H 19/22 [4]
19/24  • • Heterocyclic radicals containing oxygen or sulfur
as ring hetero atom [2]

21/00  Compounds containing two or more mononucleotide
units having separate phosphate or phosphoryl
groups linked by saccharide radicals of nucleoside
groups, e.g. nucleic acids [2]
21/02  • with ribosyl as saccharide radical [2]
21/04  • • with deoxyriboseyl as saccharide radical [2]

23/00  Compounds containing boron, silicon, or a metal, e.g.
chelates, vitamin B12 (esters with inorganic acids
C07H 11/00; metal salts, see parent compounds) [2]

99/00  Subject matter not provided for in other groups of
this subclass [2006.01]

C07J  STEROIDS (secosteroids C07C) [2]

Note(s)
1. This subclass covers compounds containing a cyclopenta[a]hydrophenanthrene skeleton or a ring structure derived therefrom:
   • by contraction or expansion of one ring by one or two atoms,
   • by contraction or expansion of two rings each by one atom,
• by contraction of one ring by one atom and expansion of one ring by one atom,
• by substitution of one or two carbon atoms of the cyclopenta[a]hydrophenanthrene skeleton, which are not shared by rings, by hetero atoms, in combination with the above defined contraction or expansion or not, or
• by condensation with carbocyclic or heterocyclic rings in combination with one or more of the foregoing alterations or not.
2. Attention is drawn to Note (3) after class C07, which defines the last place priority rule applied in the range of subclasses C07C-C07K and within these subclasses.
3. Therapeutic activity of compounds is further classified in subclass A61P.

### Subclass index

**NORMAL STEROIDS**
- containing halogen or oxygen
  - oxygen other than as ring hetero atom: 1/00, 3/00, 5/00, 7/00, 9/00, 11/00, 13/00, 15/00
  - oxygen as ring hetero atom: 17/00, 19/00, 21/00
- containing sulfur: 31/00, 33/00
- containing nitrogen: 41/00, 43/00
- other steroids: 51/00

**STEROIDS WITH MODIFIED SKELETON**
- retrosteroids: 15/00
- nor-, homosteroids: 61/00, 63/00, 65/00, 67/00, 69/00
- condensed with carbocyclic rings: 53/00
- heterosteroids: 71/00, 73/00

**PREPARATION OF STEROIDS IN GENERAL**: 75/00

---

**Normal steroids, i.e. cyclopenta[a]hydrophenanthrenes, containing carbon, hydrogen, halogen, or oxygen [2]**

1/00 Normal steroids containing carbon, hydrogen, halogen, or oxygen, not substituted in position 17 beta by a carbon atom, e.g. oestrane, androstane [2]

3/00 Normal steroids containing carbon, hydrogen, halogen, or oxygen, substituted in position 17 beta by one carbon atom [2]

5/00 Normal steroids containing carbon, hydrogen, halogen, or oxygen, substituted in position 17 beta by a chain of two carbon atoms, e.g. pregnane, and substituted in position 21 by only one singly bound oxygen atom [2]

7/00 Normal steroids containing carbon, hydrogen, halogen, or oxygen, substituted in position 17 beta by a chain of two carbon atoms (C07J 5/00 takes precedence) [2]

9/00 Normal steroids containing carbon, hydrogen, halogen, or oxygen, substituted in position 17 beta by a chain of more than two carbon atoms, e.g. cholane, cholesane, coprostone [2]

11/00 Normal steroids containing carbon, hydrogen, halogen, or oxygen, not substituted in position 3 [2]

13/00 Normal steroids containing carbon, hydrogen, halogen, or oxygen, having a carbon-to-carbon double bond from or to position 17 [2]

15/00 Stereoechemically pure steroids containing carbon, hydrogen, halogen, or oxygen, having a partially or totally inverted skeleton, e.g. retrosteroids, L-isomers [2]

17/00 Normal steroids containing carbon, hydrogen, halogen, or oxygen, having an oxygen-containing hetero ring not condensed with the cyclopenta[a]hydrophenanthrene skeleton [2]

19/00 Normal steroids containing carbon, hydrogen, halogen, or oxygen, substituted in position 17 by a lactone ring [2]

21/00 Normal steroids containing carbon, hydrogen, halogen, or oxygen, having an oxygen-containing hetero ring spiro-condensed with the cyclopenta[a]hydrophenanthrene skeleton [2]

**Normal steroids, i.e. cyclopenta[a]hydrophenanthrenes, containing sulfur [2]**

31/00 Normal steroids containing one or more sulfur atoms not belonging to a hetero ring [2]

33/00 Normal steroids having a sulfur-containing hetero ring spiro-condensed or not condensed with the cyclopenta[a]hydrophenanthrene skeleton [2]

**Normal steroids, i.e. cyclopenta[a]hydrophenanthrenes, containing nitrogen [2]**

41/00 Normal steroids containing one or more nitrogen atoms not belonging to a hetero ring [2]

43/00 Normal steroids having a nitrogen-containing hetero ring spiro-condensed or not condensed with the cyclopenta[a]hydrophenanthrene skeleton [2]

51/00 Normal steroids with unmodified cyclopenta[a]hydrophenanthrene skeleton not provided for in groups C07J 1/00-C07J 43/00 [2]

53/00 Steroids in which the cyclopenta[a]hydrophenanthrene skeleton has been modified by condensation with carbocyclic rings or by formation of an additional ring by means of a direct link between two ring carbon atoms [2]
69/00 Steroids in which the cyclopenta[a]hydrophenanthrene skeleton has been modified by contraction of only one ring by one atom and expansion of only one ring by one atom [2]

71/00 Steroids in which the cyclopenta[a]hydrophenanthrene skeleton is condensed with a heterocyclic ring (spiro-condensed heterocyclic rings C07J 21/00, C07J 33/00, C07J 43/00) [2]

73/00 Steroids in which the cyclopenta[a]hydrophenanthrene skeleton has been modified by substitution of one or two carbon atoms by hetero atoms [2]

75/00 Processes for the preparation of steroids, in general [4]

PEPTIDES (peptides containing β-lactam rings C07D; cyclic dipeptides not having in their molecule any other peptide link than those which form their ring, e.g. piperazine-2,5-diones, C07D; ergot alkaloids of the cyclic peptide type C07D 519/02; single cell proteins, enzymes C12N; genetic engineering processes for obtaining peptides C12N 15/00) [4]

1. In this subclass, the following terms or expressions are used with the meanings indicated:

   a. “amino acids” are compounds in which at least one amino group and at least one carboxyl group are bound to the same carbon skeleton and the nitrogen atom of the amino group may form part of a ring;

   b. “normal peptide link” is one between an alpha-amino group of an amino acid and the carboxyl group — in position 1 — of another alpha-amino acid;

   c. “abnormal peptide link” is a link where at least one of the linked amino acids is not an alpha-amino acid or a link formed by at least one carboxyl or amino group being part of the side chain of an alpha-amino acid;

   d. “peptides” are compounds containing at least two amino acid units, which are bound through at least one normal peptide link, including oligopeptides, polypeptides and proteins, where

   i. “linear peptides” may comprise rings formed through S—S bridges, or through an hydroxy or a mercapro group of an hydroxy- or a mercapta-amino acid and the carboxyl group of another amino acid (e.g. peptide lactones) but not comprise rings which are formed only through peptide links;

   ii. “cyclic peptides” are peptides comprising at least one ring formed only through peptide links; the cyclisation may occur only through normal peptide links or through abnormal peptide links, e.g. through the 4-amino group of 2,4-diamino-butanioic acid. Thus, cyclic compounds in which at least one link in the ring is a non-peptide link are considered as “linear peptides”;

   iii. “depsipeptides” are compounds containing a sequence of at least two alpha-amino acids and at least one alpha-hydroxy carboxylic acid, which are bound through at least one normal peptide link and ester links, derived from the hydroxy carboxylic acids, where

      a. “linear depsipeptides” may comprise rings formed through S—S bridges, or through an hydroxy or a mercapro group of an hydroxy-, or mercapta-amino acid and the carboxyl group of another amino- or hydroxy-acid but do not comprise rings formed only through peptide or ester links derived from hydroxy carboxylic acids, e.g. Gly-Ala-Gly—OCH₂CO₂H and Gly—OCH₂CO-Ala-Gly are considered as “linear depsipeptides”, but HOCH₂CO-Gly-Ala-Gly does not contain an ester link, and is thus a derivative of Gly-Ala-Gly which is covered by C07K 5/08;

      b. “cyclic depsipeptides” are peptides containing at least one ring formed only through peptide or ester links — derived from hydroxy carboxylic acids —, e.g. \( \text{HO-Ala-Gly—OCH₂CO₂H} \).

   iv. “hybrid peptides” are peptides produced through fusion or covalent binding of two or more heterologous peptides.

2. Attention is drawn to Note (3) after class C07, which defines the last place priority rule applied in the range of subclasses C07C-C07K and within these subclasses.

3. Therapeutic activity of compounds is further classified in subclass A61P.

4. When classifying in this subclass, classification is also made in group B01D 15/08 insofar as subject matter of general interest relating to chromatography is concerned.

5. Fragments of peptides or peptides modified by removal or addition of amino acids, by substitution of amino acids by others, or by combination of these modifications are classified as the parent peptides. However, fragments of peptides having only four or less amino acids are also classified in group C07K 5/00.

6. Peptides prepared by chemical processes and having an amino acid sequence derived from naturally occurring peptides are classified with the natural one.

7. Peptides prepared by recombinant DNA technology are not classified according to the host, but according to the original peptide expressed, e.g. HIV peptide expressed in E. coli is classified with HIV peptides.
1/00 General processes for the preparation of peptides [4]
1/02 • in solution [4]
1/04 • on carriers [4]
1/06 • using protecting groups or activating agents [4]
1/08 • using activating agents [4]
1/10 • using coupling agents [4]
1/107 • by chemical modification of precursor peptides [6]
1/113 • without change of the primary structure [6]
1/12 • by hydrolysis [4]
1/13 • Labelling of peptides [6]
1/14 • Extraction; Separation; Purification [4, 6]
1/16 • by chromatography [6]
1/18 • Ion-exchange chromatography [6]
1/20 •Partition-, reverse-phase or hydrophobic interaction chromatography [6]
1/22 • Affinity chromatography or related techniques based upon selective absorption processes [6]
1/24 • by electrochemical means [6]
1/26 • Electrophoresis [6]
1/28 • Isoelectric focusing [6]
1/30 • by precipitation [6]
1/32 • as complexes [6]
1/34 • by filtration, ultrafiltration or reverse osmosis [6]
1/36 • by a combination of two or more processes of different types [6]

2/00 Peptides of undefined number of amino acids; Derivatives thereof [6]

4/00 Peptides having up to 20 amino acids in an undefined or only partially defined sequence; Derivatives thereof [6]
4/02 • from viruses [6]
4/04 • from bacteria [6]
4/06 • from fungi [6]
4/08 • from algae; from lichens [6]
4/10 • from plants [6]
4/12 • from animals; from humans [6]

5/00 Peptides having up to four amino acids in a fully defined sequence; Derivatives thereof [4]

Note(s)
In this group, the following expression is used with the meaning indicated:
• “first amino acid” means the first amino acid from the left side, i.e. the N-terminal amino acid, of the peptide sequence.

5/02 • containing at least one abnormal peptide link [4]
5/023 • in which at least a beta-amino acid is involved [6]
5/027 • in which at least a gamma-amino acid is involved, e.g. statine [6]

5/03 • in which at least a delta-amino acid is involved, e.g. isosteres [6]
5/033 • in which at least an epsilon- or zeta-amino acid is involved [6]
5/037 • the abnormal link being formed by the side chain of an alpha-amino acid, e.g. gamma-Glu, epsilon-Lys, glutathione [6]
5/04 • containing only normal peptide links [4]
5/06 • Dipeptides [4]
5/062 • the side chain of the first amino acid being acyclic, e.g. Gly, Ala [6]
5/065 • the side chain of the first amino acid containing carboxylic rings, e.g. Phe, Tyr [6]
5/068 • the side chain of the first amino acid containing more amino groups than carboxyl groups, or derivatives thereof, e.g. Lys, Arg [6]
5/072 • the side chain of the first amino acid containing more carboxyl groups than amino groups, or derivatives thereof, e.g. Asp, Glu, Asn [6]
5/075 • Asp-Phe; Derivatives thereof, e.g. aspartame [6]
5/078 • the first amino acid being heterocyclic, e.g. Pro, His, Trp [6]
5/08 • Tripeptides [4]
5/083 • the side chain of the first amino acid being acyclic, e.g. Gly, Ala [6]
5/087 • the side chain of the first amino acid containing carboxylic rings, e.g. Phe, Tyr [6]
5/09 • the side chain of the first amino acid containing more amino groups than carboxyl groups, or derivatives thereof, e.g. Lys, Arg [6]
5/093 • the side chain of the first amino acid containing more carboxyl groups than amino groups, or derivatives thereof, e.g. Asp, Glu, Asn [6]
5/097 • the first amino acid being heterocyclic, e.g. Pro, His, Trp, e.g. thyroliberin, melanostatin [6]
5/10 • Tetrapeptides [4]
5/103 • the side chain of the first amino acid being acyclic, e.g. Gyl, Ala [6]
5/107 • the side chain of the first amino acid containing carboxylic rings, e.g. Phe, Tyr [6]
5/11 • the side chain of the first amino acid containing more amino groups than carboxyl groups, or derivatives thereof, e.g. Lys, Arg [6]
5/113 • the side chain of the first amino acid containing more carboxyl groups than amino groups, or derivatives thereof, e.g. Asp, Glu, Asn [6]
5/117 • the first amino acid being heterocyclic, e.g. Pro, His, Trp [6]
5/12 • Cyclic peptides [4]

7/00 Peptides having 5 to 20 amino acids in a fully defined sequence; Derivatives thereof [4, 6]
Peptides having up to 20 amino acids; Gastrins; Somatostatins; Melanotropins; Derivatives thereof [6]

9/00 Peptides having up to 20 amino acids, containing saccharide radicals and having a fully defined sequence; Derivatives thereof [4, 6]

11/00 Desipipeptides having up to 20 amino acids in a fully defined sequence; Derivatives thereof [4, 6]

11/02 cyclic, e.g. valinomycins [4]

14/00 Peptides having more than 20 amino acids; Gastrins; Somatostatins; Melanotropins; Derivatives thereof [6]

14/005 from viruses [6]
14/01 DNA viruses [6]
14/015 Paroviridae, e.g. feline panleukopenia virus, human parvovirus [6]
14/02 Hepadnaviridae, e.g. hepatitis B virus [6]
14/025 Papovaviridae, e.g. papillomavirus, polyomavirus, SV40, BK virus, JC virus [6]
14/03 Herpetoviridae, e.g. pseudorabies virus [6]
14/035 Herpes simplex virus I or II [6]
14/04 Varicella-zoster virus [6]
14/045 Cytomegalovirus [6]
14/05 Epstein-Barr virus [6]
14/055 Marek's disease virus [6]
14/06 Infectious bovine rhinotracheitis virus [6]
14/065 Poxxviridae, e.g. avipoxvirus [6]
14/07 Vaccinia virus; Variola virus [6]
14/075 Adenoviridae [6]
14/08 RNA viruses [6]
14/085 Picornaviridae, e.g. coxsackie virus, echovirus, enterovirus [6]
14/09 Foot-and-mouth disease virus [6]
14/095 Rhinovirus [6]
14/10 Hepatitis A virus [6]
14/105 Poliovirus [6]
14/11 Orthomyxoviridae, e.g. influenza virus [6]
14/115 Paramyxoviridae, e.g. parainfluenza virus [6]
14/12 Mumps virus; Measles virus [6]
14/125 Newcastle disease virus [6]
14/13 Canine distemper virus [6]
14/135 Respiratory syncytial virus [6]
14/14 Reoviridae, e.g. rotavirus, bluetongue virus, Colorado tick fever virus [6]
14/145 Rhabdoviridae, e.g. rabies virus, Duvenhage virus, Mokola virus, vesicular stomatitis virus [6]
14/15 Retroviridae, e.g. bovine leukemia virus, feline leukemia virus, human T-cell leukemia-lymphoma virus [6]
14/155 Lentiviridae, e.g. human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), visna-maedi virus, equine infectious anaemia virus [6]
14/16 HIV-1 [6]
14/165 Coronaviridae, e.g. avian infectious bronchitis virus [6]
14/17 Porcine transmissible gastroenteritis virus [6]
14/175 Bunyaviridae, e.g. California encephalitis virus, Rift valley fever virus, Hantaan virus [6]
14/18 Togaviridae, e.g. flavivirus, pestivirus, yellow fever virus, hepatitis C virus, Japanese encephalitis virus [6]
14/185 Hog cholera virus [6]
14/19 Rubella virus [6]
14/195 from bacteria [6]

Note(s)
In groups C07K 14/20-C07K 14/365, where appropriate, after the bacteria terminology, the indication of the order (O), family (F) or genus (G) of the bacteria is given in brackets.

14/20 from Spirochaetales (O), e.g. Treponema, Leptospira [6]
14/205 from Campylobacter (G) [6]
14/21 from Pseudomonadaceae (F) [6]
14/215 from Halobacteriaceae (F) [6]
14/22 from Neisseriaceae (F), e.g. Acinetobacter [6]
14/225 from Alcaligenes (G) [6]
14/23 from Brucella (G) [6]
14/235 from Bordetella (G) [6]
14/24 Enterobacteriaceae (F), e.g. Citrobacter, Serratia, Proteus, Providencia, Morganella, Yersinia [6]
14/245 from Escherichia (G) [6]
14/25 from Shigella (G) [6]
14/255 Salmonella (G) [6]
14/26 Klebsiella (G) [6]
14/265 Enterobacter (G) [6]
14/27 Erwinia (G) [6]
14/275 Hafnia (G) [6]
14/278 from Vibrionaceae (F) [6]
14/285 Pasteurellaceae (F), e.g. Haemophilus influenza [6]
14/29 from Richettsiales (O) [6]
14/295 from Chlamydiaceae (O) [6]
14/30 from Mycoplasmatales, e.g. Pleuropneumonia-like organisms (PPLO) [6]
14/305 from Micrococaceae (F) [6]
14/31 from Staphylococcus (G) [6]
14/315 from Streptococcus (G), e.g. Enterococci [6]
14/32 from Bacillus (G) [6]
14/325 Bacillus thuringiensis crystal peptide (delta-endotoxin) [6]
14/33 from Clostridium (G) [6]
14/335 from Lactobacillus (G) [6]
14/34 from Corynebacterium (G) [6]
14/345 from Brevibacterium (G) [6]
14/35 from Mycobacteriae (F) [6]
14/355 from Nocardia (G) [6]
14/36 from Actinomycyes; from Streptomyces (G) [6]
14/365 from Actinoplanes (G) [6]
14/37 from fungi [6]
14/375 from Basidiozymetes [6]
14/38 from Aspergillus [6]
14/385 from Penicillium [6]
14/39 from yeasts [6]
14/395 from Saccharomycoses [6]
14/40 from Candida [6]
14/405 from algae [6]
14/41 from lichens [6]
14/415 from plants [6]
14/42 Lectins, e.g. concanavalin, phytohaemagglutin [6]
14/425 Zeins [6]
14/43 Thaumatin [6]
14/435 from animals; from humans [6]
14/44 from protoza [6]
14/445 Plasmodium [6]
14/45 Toxoplasma [6]
14/455 Eimeria [6]
14/46 from vertebrates [6]
14/465 from birds [6]
14/47 from mammals [6]
14/475 Growth factors; Growth regulators [6]
14/48 Nerve growth factor (NGF) [6]
14/485 Epidermal growth factor (EGF) (urogastrone) [6]
14/49 Platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF) [6]
14/495 Transforming growth factor (TGF) [6]
14/50 Fibroblast growth factor (FGF) [6]
14/505 Erythropoietin (EPO) [6]
14/51 Bone morphogenetic factor; Osteogenin; Osteogenic factor; Bone-inducing factor [6]
14/515 Angiogenin factor; Angiogenin [6]
14/52 Cytokines; Lymphokines; Interferons [6]
14/525 Tumour necrosis factor (TNF) [6]
14/53 Colony-stimulating factor (CSF) [6]
14/535 Granulocyte CSF; Granulocyte-macrophage CSF [6]
14/54 Interleukins (IL) [6]
14/545 IL-1 [6]
14/55 IL-2 [6]
14/555 Interferons (IFN) [6]
14/56 IFN-alpha [6]
14/565 IFN-beta [6]
14/57 IFN-gamma [6]
14/575 Hormones [6]
14/58 Atrial natriuretic factor complex; Atriopeptin; Atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP); Cardiotin; Cardiodilatin [6]
14/585 Calcitonins [6]
14/59 Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH); Chorionic gonadotropins, e.g. HCG; Luteinising hormone (LH); Thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) [6]
14/595 Gastrins; Cholecystokinins (CCK) [6]
14/60 Growth hormone-releasing factor (GH-RF) (Somatoliberin) [6]
14/605 Glucagons [6]
14/61 Growth hormone (GH) (Somatotropin) [6]
14/615 Extraction from natural sources [6]
14/62 Insulins [6]
14/625 Extraction from natural sources [6]
14/63 Moliins [6]
14/635 Parathyroid hormone (parahormone); Parathyroid hormone-related peptides [6]
14/64 Relaxins [6]
14/645 Secretins [6]
14/65 Insulin-like growth factors (Somatomedins), e.g. IGF-1; IGF-2 [6]
14/655 Somatostatins [6]
14/66 Thyrotopoietins [6]
14/665 derived from pro-opiomelanocortin, pro-enkephalin or pro-dynorphin [6]
14/67 Lipotropins, e.g. beta- or gamma-lipotropin [6]
14/675 Beta-endorphins [6]
14/68 Melanocyte-stimulating hormone (MSH) [6]
14/685 Alpha-melanotropin [6]
14/69 Beta-melanotropin [6]
14/695 Corticotropin (ACTH) [6]
14/70 Enkephalins [6]
14/705 Receptors; Cell surface antigens; Cell surface determinants [6]
14/71 for growth factors; for growth regulators [6]
14/715 for cytokines; for lymphokines; for interferons [6]
14/72 for hormones [6]
14/725 T-cell receptors [6]
14/73 CD4 [6]
14/735 Fc receptors [6]
14/74 Major histocompatibility complex (MHC) [6]
14/745 Blood coagulation or fibrinolysis factors [6]
14/75 Fibrinogen [6]
14/755 Factors VIII [6]
14/76 Albumins [6]
14/765 Serum albumin, e.g. HSA [6]
14/77 Ovalbumin [6]
14/775 Apolipoproteins [6]
14/78 Connective tissue peptides, e.g. collagen, elastin, laminin, fibronectin, vitronecut, cold insoluble globulin (CIG) [6]
14/785 Alveolar surfactant peptides; Pulmonary surfactant peptides [6]
14/79 Transferrins, e.g. lactoferrins, ovotransferrins [6]
14/795 Porphyrin- or corrin-ring-containing peptides [6]
14/80 Cytochromes [6]
14/805 Haemoglobin; Myoglobin [6]
14/81 Protease inhibitors [6]
14/815 from leeches, e.g. hirudin, eglin [6]
14/82 Translation products from oncogenes [6]
14/825 Metallothioneins [6]

**16/00 Immunoglobulins, e.g. monoclonal or polyclonal antibodies [6]**

16/02 from eggs [6]
16/04 from milk [6]
16/06 from serum [6]
16/08 against material from viruses [6]
16/10 from RNA viruses [6]
16/12 against material from bacteria [6]
C07K

16/14 • against material from fungi, algae or lichens [6]
16/16 • against material from plants [6]
16/18 • against material from animals or humans [6]
16/20 • from protozoa [6]
16/22 • against growth factors [6]
16/24 • against cytokines, lymphokines or interferons [6]
16/26 • against hormones [6]
16/28 • against receptors, cell surface antigens or cell surface determinants [6]
16/30 • from tumour cells [6]
16/32 • against translation products from oncogenes [6]
16/34 • against blood group antigens [6]
16/36 • against blood coagulation factors [6]
16/38 • against protease inhibitors of peptide structure [6]
16/40 • against enzymes [6]
16/42 • against immunoglobulins (anti-idiotypic antibodies) [6]
16/44 • against material not provided for elsewhere [6]
16/46 • Hybrid immunoglobulins (hybrids of an immunoglobulin with a peptide not being an immunoglobulin C07K 19/00) [6]
17/00 Carrier-bound or immobilised peptides; Preparation thereof [4]
17/02 • Peptides being immobilised on, or in, an organic carrier [4]
17/04 • entrapped within the carrier, e.g. gel, hollow fibre [4]
17/06 • attached to the carrier via a bridging agent [4]
17/08 • the carrier being a synthetic polymer [4]
17/10 • the carrier being a carbohydrate [4]
17/12 • • Celulose or derivatives thereof [4]
17/14 • Peptides being immobilised on, or in, an inorganic carrier [4]
19/00 Hybrid peptides (hybrid immunoglobulins composed solely of immunoglobulins C07K 16/46) [6]

C08 ORGANIC MACROMOLECULAR COMPOUNDS; THEIR PREPARATION OR CHEMICAL WORKING-UP; COMPOSITIONS BASED THEREON

Note(s)

1. This class does not cover the following macromolecular compounds per se:
   • peptides, e.g. proteins, which are covered by subclass C07K;
   • compounds containing two or more mononucleotide units having separate phosphate or polyphosphate groups linked by saccharide radicals of nucleoside groups, e.g. nucleic acids, which are covered by group C07H 21/00;
   • DNA or RNA concerning genetic engineering, vectors, e.g. plasmids, or their isolation, preparation or purification, which are covered by group C12N 15/00.
2. Biocidal, pest repellant, pest attractant or plant growth regulatory activity of compounds or preparations is further classified in subclass A01P.

C08B POLYSACCHARIDES; DERIVATIVES THEREOF (polysaccharides containing less than six saccharide radicals attached to each other by glycosidic linkages C07H; fermentation or enzyme-using processes C12P 19/00; production of cellulose D21) [4]

Note(s)

Therapeutic activity of compounds is further classified in subclass A61P.

Subclass index

CELLULOSE AND DERIVATIVES THEREOF
   Preparatory treatment of cellulose........................................................................................................................................1/00
   Esters..................................................................................................................................................................................3/00, 5/00, 7/00, 13/00, 17/00
   Ethers.............................................................................................................................................................................11/00, 13/00, 17/00
   Xanthates.........................................................................................................................................................................9/00
   Other derivatives...............................................................................................................................................................15/00
   Regeneration of cellulose.....................................................................................................................................................16/00

STARCH; DEGRADED OR NON-CHEMICALLY MODIFIED STARCH; AMYLOSE; AMYLOPECTIN. 30/00
CHEMICAL DERIVATIVES OF STARCH, OF AMYLOSE OR OF AMYLOPECTIN
   of starch............................................................................................................................................................................31/00
   of amylase........................................................................................................................................................................33/00
   of amylpectin.................................................................................................................................................................35/00

OTHER POLYSACCHARIDES................................................................................................................................................37/00

Preparation

1/00 Preparatory treatment of cellulose for making derivatives thereof
1/02 • Rendering cellulose suitable for esterification
1/04 • for the preparation of cellulose nitrate
1/06 • Rendering cellulose suitable for etherification
1/08 • Alkali cellulose
1/10 • Apparatus for the preparation of alkali cellulose
Preparation of cellulose esters of organic acids
- Catalysts used for the esterification
- Cellulose formate
- Cellulose acetate
- of monobasic organic acids with three or more carbon atoms
- with five or more carbon atoms
- of polybasic organic acids
- in which the organic acid residue contains substituents, e.g. NH₂, Cl
- Preparation of mixed organic cellulose esters
- Aceto-butyrates
- Esterification with maintenance of the fibrous structure of the cellulose
- Post-esterification treatments, including purification
- Hydrolysis or ripening
- Isolation of the cellulose ester
- by precipitation
- Stabilisation

Preparation of cellulose esters of inorganic acids
- Cellulose nitrate
- Post-esterification treatments, including purification
- Isolation of the cellulose nitrate
- Stabilisation
- Reducing the viscosity
- Replacing the water by organic liquids
- Cellulose sulfate

Preparation of cellulose esters of both organic and inorganic acids
- Sulfidisers; Dissolvers
- Continuous processes
- Single-stage processes

Preparation of cellulose ethers
- Alkyl or cycloalkyl ethers
- with substituted hydrocarbon radicals
- with halogen-substituted hydrocarbon radicals
- with hydroxylated hydrocarbon radicals; Esters, ethers, or acetics thereof
- substituted with acetic radicals
- substituted with carboxylic radicals
- with nitrogen-containing groups
- with basic nitrogen, e.g. aminoalkyl ethers [2]
- with carbamoyl groups [2]
- with cyano groups, e.g. cyanoalkyl ethers [2]
- Aryl or aralkyl ethers
- with substituted hydrocarbon radicals
- with olefinic unsaturated groups [2]
- Mixed ethers, i.e. ethers with two or more different etherifying groups [2]
- Post-etherification treatments, including purification
- Isolation

Preparation of cellulose ether-esters
- Cellulose ether xanthates

Preparation of other cellulose derivatives or modified cellulose
- Oxy cellulose; Hydrocellulose; Cellulose hydrate
- Carboxycellulose, e.g. prepared by oxidation with nitrogen dioxide
- Derivatives containing elements other than carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, halogen, or sulfur (esters of phosphorus acids C08B 5/00) [2]
- containing nitrogen [2]
- Fractionation of cellulose, e.g. separation of cellulose crystallites [2]
- Crosslinking of cellulose [2]

Regeneration of cellulose [2]
- Apparatus for esterification or etherification of cellulose
- for making organic esters of cellulose
- for making cellulose nitrate
- for making cellulose ethers

Preparation of starch, degraded or non-chemically modified starch, amylose, or amylopectin [4]
- Preparatory treatment, e.g. crushing of raw materials [4]
- Extraction or purification [4]
- Drying; Forming [4]
- Concentration of starch suspensions [4]
- Working-up residues from the starch extraction, including pressing water from the starch-extracted material [4]
- Degraded or non-chemically modified starch; Bleaching of starch (preparation of chemical derivatives of starch C08B 31/00) [4]
- Cold water dispersible or pregelatinised starch [4]
- Apparatus therefor [4]
- Dextrin [4]
- Amylose or amylopectin (chemical derivatives thereof C08B 33/00, C08B 35/00) [4]

Preparation of chemical derivatives of starch (chemical derivatives of amylose C08B 33/00; chemical derivatives of amylopectin C08B 35/00) [2]
- Esters [2]
- of organic acids [2]
- of inorganic acids [2]
- Ethers [2]
- Alkyl or cycloalkyl ethers [2]
- having alkyl or cycloalkyl radicals substituted by hetero atoms [2]
- Aryl or aralkyl ethers [2]
- Ether-esters [2]
- Oxidised starch [2]

Preparation of chemical derivatives of amylose [2]
- Esters [2]
- Ethers [2]
- Ether-esters [2]
- Oxidised amylose [2]

Preparation of chemical derivatives of amylopectin [2]
- Esters [2]
- Ethers [2]
- Ether-esters [2]
- Oxidised amylopectin [2]
Preparation of polysaccharides not provided for in groups C08B 1/00-C08B 35/00; Derivatives thereof (cellulose D21) [4]

C08C

TREATMENT OR CHEMICAL MODIFICATION OF RUBBERS

Note(s)

This subclass covers:
- processes directed to natural rubber or to conjugated diene rubbers (synthesis thereof C08F);
- processes directed to rubbers in general (to a specific rubber, other than provided for above, C08F-C08H).

Preparation

1/00 Treatment of rubber latex
1/02 • Chemical or physical treatment of rubber latex before or during concentration
1/04 • • Purifying; Deproteinising
1/06 • Preservation of rubber latex
1/065 • • Increasing the size of dispersed rubber particles [2]
1/07 • • • characterised by the agglomerating agents used [2]
1/075 • • Concentrating [2]
1/08 • • with the aid of creaming agents [2]
1/10 • • • by centrifugation [2]
1/12 • • • by evaporation [2]
1/14 • Coagulation
1/15 • • characterised by the coagulants used [2]
1/16 • in floc form

2/00 Treatment of rubber solutions [2]
2/02 • Purification [2]
2/04 • • Removal of catalyst residues [2]
2/06 • Winning of rubber from solutions [2]

3/00 Treatment of coagulated rubber
3/02 • Purification [2]

4/00 Treatment of rubber before vulcanisation, not provided for in groups C08C 1/00-C08C 3/02 [2]

19/00 Chemical modification of rubber [2]

Note(s)

In groups C08C 19/02-C08C 19/30 in the absence of an indication to the contrary, a process is classified in the last appropriate place.

C08F

MACROMOLECULAR COMPOUNDS OBTAINED BY REACTIONS ONLY INVOLVING CARBON-TO-Carbon UNSATURATED BONDS (production of liquid hydrocarbon mixtures from lower carbon number hydrocarbons, e.g. by oligomerisation, C10G 50/00; fermentation or enzyme-using processes to synthesise a desired chemical compound or composition or to separate optical isomers from a racemic mixture C12P; graft polymerisation of monomers containing carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds on to fibres, threads, yarns, fabrics or fibrous goods made from such materials D06M 14/00) [2]

Note(s)

1. In this subclass, boron or silicon are considered as metals.
In this subclass, the following expression is used with the meaning indicated:

- "aliphatic radical" means an acyclic or a non-aromatic carbocyclic carbon skeleton which is considered to be terminated by every bond to:
  a. an element other than carbon;
  b. a carbon atom having a double bond to one atom other than carbon;
  c. an aromatic carbocyclic ring or a heterocyclic ring.

Examples: Polymers of

- CH$_2$=CH—O—CH$_2$CH$_2$—NH—COO—CH$_2$CH$_2$—OH are classified in group C08F 16/28;
- CH$_2$=C—CH=CH$_2$ are classified in group C08F 16/36;
- C$_6$H$_5$CH=CH=CH$_2$ are classified in group C08F 12/18.

Therapeutic activity of compounds is further classified in subclass A61P.

In this subclass, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, a catalyst or a polymer is classified in the last appropriate place.

In this subclass, the following expression is used with the meaning indicated:

- if the compounding ingredients are of interest, classification is also made in subclass C08K.

### Subclass index

Processes of polymerisation; Catalysts.......................... 2/00, 4/00
Post-polymerisation treatments; Chemical modification.................. 6/00, 8/00
Homopolymers and copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond........................................ 10/00-30/00
Homopolymers........................................................................ 110/00-130/00
Copolymers........................................................................... 210/00-230/00
Homopolymers and copolymers of cyclic compounds having no unsaturated aliphatic radicals in a side chain and having one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in a ring........ 32/00, 34/00
Homopolymers........................................................................ 132/00, 134/00
Copolymers........................................................................... 232/00, 234/00
Homopolymers and copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, at least one having two or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds.......................... 36/00
Homopolymers........................................................................ 136/00
Copolymers........................................................................... 236/00
Homopolymers and copolymers of compounds having one or more carbon-to-carbon triple bonds.............. 38/00
Homopolymers........................................................................ 138/00
Copolymers........................................................................... 238/00
Copolymers of hydrocarbons and mineral oils.......................... 240/00
Copolymers of drying oils with other monomers......................... 242/00
Coulmarone-indene copolymers............................................. 244/00
Copolymers in which the nature of only the monomers in minority is defined........................................ 246/00
Graft polymers; Polymers cross-linked with unsaturated monomers 251/00-292/00
Block polymers........................................................................ 293/00-297/00
Macromolecular compounds obtained by interreacting polymers involving only carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bond reactions, in the absence of non-macromolecular monomers.......................... 299/00
Subject matter not provided for in other groups of this subclass........ 301/00

---

**Processes; Catalysts**

2/00 Processes of polymerisation [2] 2/01 • characterised by special features of the polymerisation apparatus used [7]

2/02 • Polymerisation in bulk [2]
Polymerisation catalysts [2]

4/00

4/02 • Carriers therefor [2]

Note(s)

When classifying in groups C08F 4/04-C08F 4/42, classification may also be made in group C08F 4/02, if a carrier is of particular interest.

4/04 • Azo-compounds [2]

4/06 • Metallic compounds other than hydrides and other than metallo-organic compounds; Boron halide or aluminium halide complexes with organic compounds containing oxygen [2]

4/08 • of alkali metals [2]

4/10 • of alkaline earth metals, zinc, cadmium, mercury, copper, or silver [2]

4/12 • of boron, aluminium, gallium, indium, thallium, or rare earths [2]

4/14 • Boron halides or aluminium halides; Complexes thereof with organic compounds containing oxygen [2]

4/16 • of silicon, germanium, tin, lead, titanium, zirconium or hafnium [2]

4/18 • Oxides [2]

4/20 • of antimony, bismuth, vanadium, niobium, or tantalum [2]

4/22 • of chromium, molybdenum, or tungsten [2]

4/24 • Oxides [2]

4/26 • of manganese, iron group metals, or platinum group metals [2]

4/28 • Oxygen or compounds releasing free oxygen (redox systems C08F 4/40) [2]

4/30 • Inorganic compounds [2]

4/32 • Organic compounds [2]

4/34 • Per-compounds with one peroxy-radical [2]

4/36 • Per-compounds with more than one peroxy-radical [2]

4/38 • Mixtures of peroxy-compounds [2]

4/40 • Redox systems [2]

4/42 • Metals; Metal hydrides; Metallo-organic compounds; Use thereof as catalyst precursors [2]

4/44 • selected from light metals, zinc, cadmium, mercury, copper, silver, gold, boron, gallium, indium, thallium, rare earths, or actinides [2]

4/46 • selected from alkali metals [2]

4/48 • selected from lithium, rubidium, caesium, or francium [2]

4/50 • selected from alkaline earth metals, zinc, cadmium, mercury, copper, or silver [2]

4/52 • selected from boron, aluminium, gallium, indium, thallium, or rare earths (C08F 4/14 takes precedence) [2]

4/54 • together with other compounds thereof [2]

4/56 • Alkali metals being the only metals present, e.g. Alfin catalysts [2]

4/58 • together with silicon, germanium, tin, lead, antimony, bismuth, or compounds thereof [2]

4/60 • together with refractory metals, iron group metals, platinum group metals, manganese, technetium, rhenium, or compounds thereof [2, 5]

Notes

In groups C08F 4/602-C08F 4/62, the following term is used with the meaning indicated:

• "component" comprises a transition metal or a compound thereof, pretreated or not (pretreatment C08F 4/61, C08F 4/63, C08F 4/65).

4/602 • Component covered by group C08F 4/60 with an organo-aluminium compound [5]

4/603 • Component covered by group C08F 4/60 with a metal or compound covered by group C08F 4/44 other than an organo-aluminium compound [5]

4/605 • Component covered by group C08F 4/60 with a metal or compound covered by group C08F 4/44, not provided for in a single group of groups C08F 4/602 or C08F 4/603 [5]

4/606 • Catalysts comprising at least two different metals, in metallic form or as compounds thereof, in addition to the component covered by group C08F 4/60 [5]

4/607 • Catalysts containing a specific non-metal or metal-free compound [5]

4/608 • inorganic [5]

4/609 • organic [5]

4/61 • Pretreating the metal or compound covered by group C08F 4/60 before the final contacting with the metal or compound covered by group C08F 4/44 [5]

4/611 • Pretreating with non-metals or metal-free compounds [5]
4/612 • • • • • Pretreating with metals or metal-containing compounds [5]
4/613 • • • • • with metals covered by group C08F 4/60 or compounds thereof [5]
4/614 • • • • • with magnesium or compounds thereof [5]
4/615 • • • • • with aluminium or compounds thereof [5]
4/616 • • • • • with silicon or compounds thereof [5]
4/617 • • • • • with metals or metal-containing compounds, not provided for in groups C08F 4/613-C08F 4/616 [5]
4/618 • • • • • with metals or metal-containing compounds, provided for in at least two of the groups C08F 4/613-C08F 4/617 [5]
4/619 • • • • • Component covered by group C08F 4/60 containing a transition metal-carbon bond [2006.01]
4/6192 • • • • • containing at least one cyclopentadienyl ring, condensed or not, e.g. an indenyl or a fluorenyl ring [2006.01]
4/62 • • • • • • Refractory metals or compounds thereof [2]
4/622 • • • • • Component covered by group C08F 4/62 with an organo-aluminium compound [5]
4/623 • • • • • Component covered by group C08F 4/62 with a metal or compound covered by group C08F 4/44 other than an organo-aluminium compound [5]
4/625 • • • • • Component covered by group C08F 4/62 with a metal or compound covered by group C08F 4/44, not provided for in a single group of groups C08F 4/622 or C08F 4/623 [5]
4/626 • • • • • Catalysts comprising at least two different metals, in metallic form or as compounds thereof, in addition to the component covered by group C08F 4/62 [5]
4/627 • • • • • Catalysts containing a specific non-metal or metal-free compound [5]
4/628 • • • • • inorganic [5]
4/629 • • • • • organic [5]
4/63 • • • • • Pretreating the metal or compound covered by group C08F 4/62 before the final contacting with the metal or compound covered by group C08F 4/44 [5]
4/631 • • • • • Pretreating with non-metals or metal-free compounds [5]
4/632 • • • • • Pretreating with metals or metal-containing compounds [5]
4/633 • • • • • with metals covered by group C08F 4/62 or compounds thereof [5]
4/634 • • • • • with magnesium or compounds thereof [5]
4/635 • • • • • with aluminium or compounds thereof [5]
4/636 • • • • • with silicon or compounds thereof [5]
4/637 • • • • • with metals or metal-containing compounds, not provided for in groups C08F 4/633-C08F 4/636 [5]
4/638 • • • • • with metals or metal-containing compounds, not provided for in a single group of groups C08F 4/633-C08F 4/637 [5]
4/639 • • • • • Component covered by group C08F 4/62 containing a transition metal-carbon bond [2006.01]
4/6392 • • • • • containing at least one cyclopentadienyl ring, condensed or not, e.g. an indenyl or a fluorenyl ring [2006.01]
4/64 • • • • • Titanium, zirconium, hafnium, or compounds thereof [2]
4/642 • • • • • Component covered by group C08F 4/64 with an organo-aluminium compound [5]
4/643 • • • • • Component covered by group C08F 4/64 with a metal or compound covered by group C08F 4/44 other than an organo-aluminium compound [5]
4/645 • • • • • Component covered by group C08F 4/64 with a metal or compound covered by group C08F 4/44, not provided for in a single group of groups C08F 4/642-C08F 4/643 [5]
4/646 • • • • • Catalysts comprising at least two different metals, in metallic form or as compounds thereof, in addition to the component covered by group C08F 4/64 [5]
4/647 • • • • • Catalysts containing a specific non-metal or metal-free compound [5]
4/648 • • • • • inorganic [5]
4/649 • • • • • organic [5]
4/65 • • • • • Pretreating the metal or compound covered by group C08F 4/64 before the final contacting with the metal or compound covered by group C08F 4/44 [5]
4/651 • • • • • Pretreating with non-metals or metal-free compounds [5]
4/652 • • • • • Pretreating with metals or metal-containing compounds [5]
4/653 • • • • • with metals covered by group C08F 4/64 or compounds thereof [5]
4/654 • • • • • with magnesium or compounds thereof [5]
4/655 • • • • • with aluminium or compounds thereof [5]
4/656 • • • • • with silicon or compounds thereof [5]
4/657 • • • • • with metals or metal-containing compounds, not provided for in groups C08F 4/653-C08F 4/656 [5]
4/658 • • • • • with metals or metal-containing compounds, not provided for in a single group of groups C08F 4/653-C08F 4/657 [5]
4/659 • • • • • Component covered by group C08F 4/64 containing a transition metal-carbon bond [2006.01]
4/6592 • • • • • containing at least one cyclopentadienyl ring, condensed or not, e.g. an indenyl or a fluorenyl ring [2006.01]
4/68 • • • • • Vanadium, niobium, tantalum, or compounds thereof [2]
Vanadium or compounds thereof in combination with titanium or compounds thereof [5]
Chromium, molybdenum, tungsten or compounds thereof [5]
Manganese, technetium, rhenium or compounds thereof [5]
Iron group metals, platinum group metals, or compounds thereof [2]
selected from metals not provided for in group C08F 4/44 (C08F 4/54-C08F 4/70 take precedence) [2]
selected from refractory metals [2]
selected from titanium, zirconium, hafnium, vanadium, niobium, or tantalum [2]
selected from chromium, molybdenum, or tungsten [2]
selected from iron group metals or platinum group metals [2]
pi-Allyl complexes [2]
Neutralisation of the polymerisation mass, e.g. killing the catalyst (short-stopping C08F 2/42) [2]
Fractionation [2]
Treatment of polymer solutions [2]
Removal of catalyst residues [2]
Removal of volatile materials, e.g. monomers, solvents [2]
Separation of polymers from solutions [2]
Treatment of polymer emulsions [2]
Purification [2]
Increasing the size of the dispersed particles [2]
Concentration [2]
Coagulation [2]
Treatment of polymer suspensions [2]
Treatment of polymers prepared in bulk [2]
Purification [2]
Post-polymerisation treatments (C08F 8/00 takes precedence; of conjugated diene rubbers C08C) [2]
Fractionation [2]
Treatment of polymer solutions [2]
Removal of catalyst residues [2]
Removal of volatile materials, e.g. monomers, solvents [2]
Separation of polymers from solutions [2]
Treatment of polymer emulsions [2]
Purification [2]
Post-polymerisation treatments (C08F 8/00 takes precedence; of conjugated diene rubbers C08C) [2]
Fractionation [2]
Treatment of polymer solutions [2]
Removal of catalyst residues [2]
Removal of volatile materials, e.g. monomers, solvents [2]
Separation of polymers from solutions [2]
Treatment of polymer emulsions [2]
Purification [2]
Post-polymerisation treatments (C08F 8/00 takes precedence; of conjugated diene rubbers C08C) [2]
Fractionation [2]
Treatment of polymer solutions [2]
Removal of catalyst residues [2]
Removal of volatile materials, e.g. monomers, solvents [2]
Separation of polymers from solutions [2]
Treatment of polymer emulsions [2]
Purification [2]
Post-polymerisation treatments (C08F 8/00 takes precedence; of conjugated diene rubbers C08C) [2]
Fractionation [2]
Treatment of polymer solutions [2]
Removal of catalyst residues [2]
Removal of volatile materials, e.g. monomers, solvents [2]
Separation of polymers from solutions [2]
Treatment of polymer emulsions [2]
Purification [2]
Post-polymerisation treatments (C08F 8/00 takes precedence; of conjugated diene rubbers C08C) [2]
Fractionation [2]
Treatment of polymer solutions [2]
Removal of catalyst residues [2]
Removal of volatile materials, e.g. monomers, solvents [2]
Separation of polymers from solutions [2]
Treatment of polymer emulsions [2]
Purification [2]
14/12 • • 1, 2-Dichloroethene [2]
14/14 • • Monomers containing three or more carbon atoms [2]
14/16 • • Monomers containing bromine or iodine [2]
14/18 • • Monomers containing fluorine [2]
14/20 • • Vinyl fluoride [2]
14/22 • • Vinilidene fluoride [2]
14/24 • • Trifluorochloroethene [2]
14/26 • • Tetrafluoroethene [2]
14/28 • • Hexafluoropropene [2]

16/00 Homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by an alcohol, ether, aldehydo, ketonic, acetal, or ketal radical [2]
16/02 • by an alcohol radical [2]
16/04 • • Acyclic compounds [2]
16/06 • • Polyvinyl alcohol [2]
16/08 • • Allyl alcohol [2]
16/10 • • Carbocyclic compounds [2]
16/12 • • by an ether radical [2]
16/14 • • Monomers containing only one unsaturated aliphatic radical [2]
16/16 • • Monomers containing no hetero atoms other than the ether oxygen [2]
16/18 • • • • Acyclic compounds [2]
16/20 • • • • Monomers containing three or more carbon atoms in the unsaturated aliphatic radical [2]
16/22 • • • • Carbocyclic compounds [2]
16/24 • • Monomers containing halogen [2]
16/26 • • Monomers containing oxygen atoms in addition to the ether oxygen [2]
16/28 • • • • Monomers containing nitrogen [2]
16/30 • • • • Monomers containing sulfur [2]
16/32 • • Monomers containing two or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals [2]
16/34 • • by an aldehydo radical [2]
16/36 • • by a ketonic radical [2]
16/38 • • by an acetal or ketal radical [2]

18/00 Homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by an acylxy radical of a saturated carboxylic acid, of carboxylic acid, or of a haloformalic acid [2]
18/02 • Esters of monocarboxylic acids [2]
18/04 • • Vinyl esters [2]
18/06 • • • Vinyl formate [2]
18/08 • • • Vinyl acetate [2]
18/10 • • • of monocarboxylic acids containing three or more carbon atoms [2]
18/12 • • • with unsaturated alcohols containing three or more carbon atoms [2]
18/14 • • Esters of polycarboxylic acids [2]
18/16 • • • with alcohols containing three or more carbon atoms [2]
18/18 • • • Diallyl phthalate [2]
18/20 • • Esters containing halogen [2]
18/22 • • Esters containing nitrogen [2]
18/24 • • Esters of carboxylic or haloformalic acids [2]

20/00 Homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and only one being terminated by only one carboxyl radical or a salt, anhydride, ester, amide, imide, or nitrile thereof [2]
20/02 • Monocarboxylic acids having less than ten carbon atoms; Derivatives thereof [2]
20/04 • • Acids; Metal salts or ammonium salts thereof [2]
20/06 • • • Acrylic acid; Methacrylic acid; Metal salts or ammonium salts thereof [2]
20/08 • • Anhydrides [2]
20/10 • • Esters [2]
20/12 • • • of monohydric alcohols or phenols [2]
20/14 • • • • Methyl esters [2]
20/16 • • • • • of phenols or of alcohols containing two or more carbon atoms [2]
20/18 • • • • • • • with acrylic or methacrylic acids [2]
20/20 • • • • • • • of polyhydric alcohols or phenols [2]
20/22 • • • • Esters containing halogen [2]
20/24 • • • • • • containing perhaloalkyl radicals [2]
20/26 • • • • Esters containing oxygen in addition to the carboxy oxygen [2]
20/28 • • • • • • containing no aromatic rings in the alcohol moiety [2]
20/30 • • • • • • containing aromatic rings in the alcohol moiety [2]
20/32 • • • • • • containing epoxy radicals [2]
20/34 • • • • Esters containing nitrogen [2]
20/36 • • • • • • containing oxygen in addition to the carboxy oxygen [2]
20/38 • • • • • • Esters containing sulfur [2]
20/40 • • • • Esters of unsaturated alcohols [2]
20/42 • • • Nitriles [2]
20/44 • • • Acrylonitrile [2]
20/50 • • • • containing four or more carbon atoms [2]
20/52 • • • • Amides or imides [2]
20/54 • • • • Amides [2]
20/56 • • • • Acrylamide; Methacrylamide [2]
20/58 • • • • • containing oxygen in addition to the carbonamido oxygen [2]
20/60 • • • • • containing nitrogen in addition to the carbonamido nitrogen [2]
20/62 • Monocarboxylic acids having ten or more carbon atoms; Derivatives thereof [2]
20/64 • • Acids; Metal salts or ammonium salts thereof [2]
20/66 • • Anhydrides [2]
20/68 • • Esters [2]
20/70 • • • Nitrides; Amides; Imides [2]

22/00 Homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by a carboxyl radical and containing at least one other carboxy radical in the molecule; Salts, anhydrides, esters, amides, imides, or nitriles thereof [2]
22/02 • Acids; Metal salts or ammonium salts thereof [2]
22/04 • • Anhydrides, e.g. cyclic anhydrides [2]
22/06 • • Maleic anhydride [2]
22/10 • • • Esters [2]
22/12 • • • of phenols or saturated alcohols [2]
22/14 • • • Esters having no free carboxylic acid groups [2]
22/16 • • • Esters having free carboxylic acid groups [2]
22/18 • • • Esters containing halogen [2]

24/00 Homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by a heterocyclic ring containing oxygen (cyclic esters of polyfunctional acids C08F 18/00; cyclic anhydrides of unsaturated acids C08F 20/00, C08F 22/00) [2]

26/00 Homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by a single or double bond to nitrogen or by a heterocyclic ring containing nitrogen [2]

28/00 Homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by a carbon to sulfur or by a heterocyclic ring containing sulfur [2]

30/00 Homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and containing phosphorus, selenium, tellurium or a metal (metal salts, e.g. phenolates or alcoholates, see the parent compounds) [2]

32/00 Homopolymers or copolymers of cyclic compounds having no unsaturated aliphatic radicals in a side chain, and having one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in a carbocyclic ring system [2]

34/00 Homopolymers or copolymers of cyclic compounds having no unsaturated aliphatic radicals in a side chain and having one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in a heterocyclic ring (cyclic esters of polyfunctional acids C08F 18/00; cyclic anhydrides or imides C08F 22/00) [2]

36/00 Homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, at least one having two or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds (C08F 32/00 takes precedence) [2]

38/00 Homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more carbon-to-carbon triple bonds [2]

Homopolymers [2]

110/00 Homopolymers of unsaturated aliphatic hydrocarbons having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond [2]

112/00 Homopolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by an aromatic carbocyclic ring [2]

114/00 Homopolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by a halogen [2]

138 IPC (2014.01), Section C
114/04 • Monomers containing two carbon atoms [2]
114/06 • • Vinyl chloride [2]
114/08 • • Vinylidene chloride [2]
114/12 • • 1,2-Dichloroethene [2]
114/14 • Monomers containing three or more carbon atoms [2]
114/16 • Monomers containing bromine or iodine [2]
114/18 • Monomers containing fluorne [2]
114/20 • • Vinyl fluoride [2]
114/22 • • Vinylidene fluoride [2]
114/24 • • Trifluoroethylchloroethene [2]
114/26 • • Tetrafluoroethene [2]
114/28 • • Hexafluoropropene [2]
116/00 Homopolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by an alcohol, ether, aldehyde, ketonic, acetal, or ketal radical [2]
116/02 • by an alcohol radical [2]
116/04 • • Acylic compounds [2]
116/06 • • Polyvinyl alcohol [2]
116/08 • • Allyl alcohol [2]
116/10 • Carbocyclic compounds [2]
116/12 • by an ether radical [2]
116/14 • Monomers containing only one unsaturated aliphatic radical [2]
116/16 • • Monomers containing no hetero atoms other than the ether oxygen [2]
116/18 • • • Acylic compounds [2]
116/20 • • • Monomers containing three or more carbon atoms in the unsaturated aliphatic radical [2]
116/34 • by an aldehyde radical [2]
116/36 • by a ketonic radical [2]
116/38 • by an acetal or ketal radical [2]
118/00 Homopolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by an acyloxy radical of a saturated carboxylic acid, of carbonic acid, or of a haloforamic acid [2]
118/02 • Esters of monocarboxylic acids [2]
118/04 • • Vinyl esters [2]
118/06 • • Vinyl formate [2]
118/08 • • Vinyl acetate [2]
118/10 • • of monocarboxylic acids containing three or more carbon atoms [2]
118/12 • with unsaturated alcohols containing three or more carbon atoms [2]
118/14 • Esters of polycarboxylic acids [2]
118/16 • with alcohols containing three or more carbon atoms [2]
118/18 • • Diallyl phthalate [2]
120/00 Homopolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and only one being terminated by only one carboxy radical or a salt, anhydride, ester, amide, imide, or nitrile thereof [2]
120/02 • Monocarboxylic acids having less than ten carbon atoms; Derivatives thereof [2]
120/04 • • Acids; Metal salts or ammonium salts thereof [2]
120/06 • • • Acrylic acid; Methacrylic acid; Metal salts or ammonium salts thereof [2]
120/08 • • Anhydrides [2]
120/10 • • Esters [2]
120/12 • • • of monoalcohols or phenols [2]
120/14 • • • Methyl esters [2]
120/16 • • • of phenols or of alcohols containing two or more carbon atoms [2]
120/18 • • • • with acrylic or methacrylic acids [2]
120/20 • • • of polyalcohols or phenols [2]
120/22 • • • Esters containing halogen [2]
120/24 • • • containing perhaloalkyl radicals [2]
120/26 • • • Esters containing oxygen in addition to the carboxy oxygen [2]
120/28 • • • containing no aromatic rings in the alcohol moiety [2]
120/30 • • • containing aromatic rings in the alcohol moiety [2]
120/32 • • • containing epoxy radicals [2]
120/34 • • • Esters containing nitrogen [2]
120/36 • • • containing oxygen in addition to the carboxy oxygen [2]
120/38 • • • Esters containing sulfur [2]
120/40 • • • Esters of unsaturated alcohols [2]
120/42 • • • Nitriles [2]
120/44 • • • acryliconitrite [2]
120/50 • • • containing four or more carbon atoms [2]
120/52 • • • Amides or imides [2]
120/54 • • • Amides [2]
120/56 • • • • Acrylamide; Methacrylamide [2]
120/58 • • • containing oxygen in addition to the carbonamido oxygen [2]
120/60 • • • containing nitrogen in addition to the carbonamido nitrogen [2]
120/62 • Monocarboxylic acids having ten or more carbon atoms; Derivatives thereof [2]
120/64 • • Acids; Metal salts or ammonium salts thereof [2]
120/66 • • Anhydrides [2]
120/68 • • • Esters [2]
120/70 • • • Nitriles; Amides; Imides [2]
122/00 Homopolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by a carboxy radical and containing at least one other carboxy radical in the molecule; Salts, anhydrides, esters, amides, imides, or nitriles thereof [2]
122/02 • • Acids; Metal salts or ammonium salts thereof [2]
122/04 • • Anhydrides, e.g. cyclic anhydrides [2]
122/06 • • Maleic anhydride [2]
122/10 • • Esters [2]
122/12 • • • of phenols or saturated alcohols [2]
122/14 • • • Esters having no free carboxylic acid groups [2]
122/16 • • • Esters having free carboxylic acid groups [2]
122/18 • • • Esters containing halogen [2]
122/20 • • • Esters containing oxygen in addition to the carboxy oxygen [2]
122/22 • • • Esters containing nitrogen [2]
122/24 • • • Esters containing sulfur [2]
122/26 • • • of unsaturated alcohols [2]
122/28 • • • Diallyl maleate [2]
122/30 • • Nitriles [2]
122/32 • • • Alpha-cyano-acrylic acid; Esters thereof [2]
122/34 • • • Vinylidene cyanoide [2]
122/36 • • • Amides or imides [2]
122/38 • • • Amides [2]
Homopolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by a heterocyclic ring containing oxygen (cyclic esters of polyfunctional acids C08F 118/00; cyclic anhydrides of unsaturated acids C08F 120/00, C08F 122/00) [2]

Homopolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by a single or double bond to nitrogen or by a heterocyclic ring containing nitrogen [2]

Homopolymers of cyclic compounds containing no condensed rings [2]

Homopolymers of cyclic compounds having no unsaturated aliphatic radicals in a side chain, and having one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in a carboxyclic ring system [2]

Homopolymers of cyclic compounds containing no unsaturated aliphatic radicals in a side chain, and having one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in a carboxyclic ring containing oxygen (cyclic esters of polyfunctional acids C08F 118/00; cyclic anhydrides or imides C08F 122/00) [2]

Homopolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, at least one having two or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds (C08F 132/00 takes precedence) [2]

Homopolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by a heterocyclic ring containing oxygen (cyclic esters of polyfunctional acids C08F 118/00; cyclic anhydrides of unsaturated acids C08F 120/00, C08F 122/00) [2]

Homopolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by a heterocyclic ring containing nitrogen [2]

Homopolymers of cyclic compounds containing no condensed rings [2]

Homopolymers of cyclic compounds having no unsaturated aliphatic radicals in a side chain, and having one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in a carboxyclic ring containing oxygen [2]

Homopolymers of cyclic compounds containing no unsaturated aliphatic radicals in a side chain, and having one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in a carboxyclic ring containing sulfur [2]

Homopolymers of cyclic compounds containing no unsaturated aliphatic radicals in a side chain, and having one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in a carboxyclic ring containing nitrogen [2]

Homopolymers of cyclic compounds containing no unsaturated aliphatic radicals in a side chain, and having one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in a carboxyclic ring containing sulfur [2]

Homopolymers of cyclic compounds containing no unsaturated aliphatic radicals in a side chain, and having one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in a carboxyclic ring containing oxygen (cyclic esters of polyfunctional acids C08F 118/00; cyclic anhydrides or imides C08F 122/00) [2]

Homopolymers of cyclic compounds containing no unsaturated aliphatic radicals in a side chain, and having one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in a carboxyclic ring containing nitrogen [2]

Homopolymers of cyclic compounds containing no unsaturated aliphatic radicals in a side chain, and having one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in a carboxyclic ring containing sulfur [2]

Homopolymers of cyclic compounds containing no unsaturated aliphatic radicals in a side chain, and having one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in a carboxyclic ring containing oxygen (cyclic esters of polyfunctional acids C08F 118/00; cyclic anhydrides or imides C08F 122/00) [2]

Homopolymers of cyclic compounds containing no unsaturated aliphatic radicals in a side chain, and having one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in a carboxyclic ring containing nitrogen [2]

Homopolymers of cyclic compounds containing no unsaturated aliphatic radicals in a side chain, and having one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in a carboxyclic ring containing sulfur [2]

Homopolymers of cyclic compounds containing no unsaturated aliphatic radicals in a side chain, and having one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in a carboxyclic ring containing oxygen (cyclic esters of polyfunctional acids C08F 118/00; cyclic anhydrides or imides C08F 122/00) [2]

Homopolymers of cyclic compounds containing no unsaturated aliphatic radicals in a side chain, and having one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in a carboxyclic ring containing nitrogen [2]

Homopolymers of cyclic compounds containing no unsaturated aliphatic radicals in a side chain, and having one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in a carboxyclic ring containing sulfur [2]

Homopolymers of cyclic compounds containing no unsaturated aliphatic radicals in a side chain, and having one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in a carboxyclic ring containing oxygen (cyclic esters of polyfunctional acids C08F 118/00; cyclic anhydrides or imides C08F 122/00) [2]

Homopolymers of cyclic compounds containing no unsaturated aliphatic radicals in a side chain, and having one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in a carboxyclic ring containing nitrogen [2]

Homopolymers of cyclic compounds containing no unsaturated aliphatic radicals in a side chain, and having one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in a carboxyclic ring containing sulfur [2]

Homopolymers of cyclic compounds containing no unsaturated aliphatic radicals in a side chain, and having one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in a carboxyclic ring containing oxygen (cyclic esters of polyfunctional acids C08F 118/00; cyclic anhydrides or imides C08F 122/00) [2]

Homopolymers of cyclic compounds containing no unsaturated aliphatic radicals in a side chain, and having one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in a carboxyclic ring containing nitrogen [2]

Homopolymers of cyclic compounds containing no unsaturated aliphatic radicals in a side chain, and having one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in a carboxyclic ring containing sulfur [2]

Homopolymers of cyclic compounds containing no unsaturated aliphatic radicals in a side chain, and having one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in a carboxyclic ring containing oxygen (cyclic esters of polyfunctional acids C08F 118/00; cyclic anhydrides or imides C08F 122/00) [2]

Homopolymers of cyclic compounds containing no unsaturated aliphatic radicals in a side chain, and having one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in a carboxyclic ring containing nitrogen [2]

Homopolymers of cyclic compounds containing no unsaturated aliphatic radicals in a side chain, and having one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in a carboxyclic ring containing sulfur [2]

Homopolymers of cyclic compounds containing no unsaturated aliphatic radicals in a side chain, and having one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in a carboxyclic ring containing oxygen (cyclic esters of polyfunctional acids C08F 118/00; cyclic anhydrides or imides C08F 122/00) [2]

Homopolymers of cyclic compounds containing no unsaturated aliphatic radicals in a side chain, and having one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in a carboxyclic ring containing nitrogen [2]

Homopolymers of cyclic compounds containing no unsaturated aliphatic radicals in a side chain, and having one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in a carboxyclic ring containing sulfur [2]
212/12  •  •  •  containing a branched unsaturated aliphatic radical or an alkyl radical attached to the ring [2]
212/14  •  •  •  substituted by hetero atoms or groups containing hetero atoms [2]
212/32  •  •  containing two or more rings [2]
212/34  •  •  Monomers containing two or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals [2]
212/36  •  •  Divinylbenzene [2]

214/00  Copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by a halogen [2]

214/02  •  Monomers containing chlorine [2]
214/04  •  •  Monomers containing two carbon atoms [2]
214/06  •  •  •  Vinyl chloride [2]
214/08  •  •  •  Vinylidene chloride [2]
214/10  •  •  •  with nitriles [2]
214/12  •  •  •  1,2-Dichloroethene [2]
214/14  •  •  Monomers containing three or more carbon atoms [2]
214/16  •  •  Monomers containing bromine or iodine [2]
214/18  •  Monomers containing fluorine [2]
214/20  •  •  Vinyl fluoride [2]
214/22  •  •  Vinylidene fluoride [2]
214/24  •  •  Trifluoroacetone [2]
214/26  •  •  Tetrafluoroethene [2]
214/28  •  •  Hexafluoropropene [2]

216/00  Copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by an alcohol, ether, aldehyde, ketonic, acetal, or ketal radical [2]

216/02  •  by an alcohol radical [2]
216/04  •  •  Acyclic compounds [2]
216/06  •  •  •  Polyvinyl alcohol [2]
216/08  •  •  Allyl alcohol [2]
216/10  •  •  Carbocyclic compounds [2]
216/12  •  •  •  by an ether radical [2]
216/14  •  •  Monomers containing only one unsaturated aliphatic radical [2]
216/16  •  •  •  Monomers containing no hetero atoms other than the ether oxygen [2]
216/18  •  •  •  Acyclic compounds [2]
216/20  •  •  •  •  •  Monomers containing three or more carbon atoms in the unsaturated aliphatic radical [2]

216/34  •  •  •  by an aldehyde radical [2]
216/36  •  •  •  by a ketonic radical [2]
216/38  •  •  •  •  by an acetol or ketal radical [2]

218/00  Copolymers having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by an acyloxy radical of a saturated carboxylic acid, of carboxylic acid, or of a haloformic acid [2]

218/02  •  •  Esters of monocarboxylic acids [2]
218/04  •  •  •  Vinyl esters [2]
218/06  •  •  •  •  Vinyl formate [2]
218/08  •  •  •  •  Vinyl acetate [2]
218/10  •  •  •  •  •  of monocarboxylic acids containing three or more carbon atoms [2]
218/12  •  •  •  with unsaturated alcohols containing three or more carbon atoms [2]
218/14  •  •  •  Esters of polycarboxylic acids [2]
218/16  •  •  •  •  with alcohols containing three or more carbon atoms [2]
218/18  •  •  •  •  •  Diallyl phthalate [2]

220/00  Copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and only one being terminated by only one carboxy radical or a salt, anhydride, ester, amide, imide, or nitrile thereof [2]

220/02  •  •  Monocarboxylic acids having less than ten carbon atoms; Derivatives thereof [2]
220/04  •  •  •  Acids; Metals salts or ammonium salts thereof [2]
220/06  •  •  •  •  Acrylic acid; Methacrylic acid; Metal salts or ammonium salts thereof [2]
220/08  •  •  •  Anhydrides [2]
220/10  •  •  •  •  Esters [2]
220/12  •  •  •  •  •  of monohydrate alcohols or phenols [2]
220/14  •  •  •  •  •  Methyl esters [2]
220/16  •  •  •  •  •  of phenols or of alcohols containing two or more carbon atoms [2]
220/18  •  •  •  •  •  •  with acrylic or methacrylic acids [2]
220/20  •  •  •  •  •  •  polyhydrocarbons or phenols [2]
220/22  •  •  •  •  •  Esters containing halogen [2]
220/24  •  •  •  •  •  •  containing perhaloalkyl radicals [2]
220/26  •  •  •  •  •  •  Esters containing oxygen in addition to the carboxy oxygen [2]
220/28  •  •  •  •  •  •  containing no aromatic rings in the alcohol moiety [2]
220/29  •  •  •  •  •  •  containing aromatic rings in the alcohol moiety [2]
220/32  •  •  •  •  •  containing epoxy radicals [2]
220/34  •  •  •  •  •  Esters containing nitrogen [2]
220/36  •  •  •  •  •  •  containing oxygen in addition to the carboxy oxygen [2]
220/38  •  •  •  •  •  •  Esters containing sulfur [2]
220/40  •  •  •  •  •  •  Esters of unsaturated alcohols [2]
220/42  •  •  •  •  •  Nitriles [2]
220/44  •  •  •  •  •  •  Acrylonitrile [2]
220/46  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  with carboxylic acids, sulfonic acids or salts thereof [2]
220/48  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  with nitrogen-containing sultonic acids or salts thereof [2]
220/50  •  •  •  •  •  •  containing four or more carbon atoms [2]
220/52  •  •  •  •  •  •  Amides or imides [2]
220/54  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  Amides [2]
220/56  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  Acrylamide; Methacrylamide [2]
220/58  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  containing oxygen in addition to the ammido nitrogen [2]
220/58  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  containing nitrogen in addition to the ammido nitrogen [2]
220/60  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  Monocarboxylic acids having ten or more carbon atoms; Derivatives thereof [2]
220/64  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  Acids; Metals salts or ammonium salts thereof [2]
220/66  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  Anhydrides [2]
220/68  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  Esters [2]
220/70  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  Nitriles; Amides; Imides [2]

222/00  Copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by a carboxy radical and containing at least one other carboxy radical in the molecule; Salts, anhydrides, esters, amides, imides, or nitriles thereof [2]
Copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by a heterocyclic ring containing nitrogen [2]

- by a single or double bond to nitrogen [2]
- by a heterocyclic ring containing nitrogen [2]

Copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by a single or double bond to nitrogen or by a heterocyclic ring containing nitrogen [2]

- by a single or double bond to nitrogen [2]
- by a heterocyclic ring containing nitrogen [2]

Copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by a bond to sulfur or by a heterocyclic ring containing sulfur [2]

- by a bond to sulfur [2]
- by a heterocyclic ring containing sulfur [2]

Copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and containing phosphorus, selenium, tellurium, or a metal (metal salts, e.g. phenolates or alcoholates, see the parent compounds) [2]

- containing phosphorus [2]
- containing a metal [2]
- containing boron [2]
- containing silicon [2]
- containing germanium [2]
Macromolecular compounds obtained by polymerising monomers on to polymers of aromatic monomers as defined in group C08F 12/00 [2]

Macromolecular compounds obtained by polymerising monomers on to polymers of halogen containing monomers as defined in group C08F 14/00 [2]

Macromolecular compounds obtained by polymerising monomers on to polymers of oxygen-containing monomers as defined in group C08F 16/00 [2]

Macromolecular compounds obtained by polymerising monomers on to polymers of esters of unsaturated acids with saturated acids as defined in group C08F 18/00 [2]

Macromolecular compounds obtained by polymerising monomers on to polymers of esters of unsaturated esters with polycarboxylic acids [2]

Macromolecular compounds obtained by polymerising monomers on to polymers of polyacrylates [2]

Macromolecular compounds obtained by polymerising monomers on to polymers of unsaturated monobasic acids or derivatives thereof as defined in group C08F 20/00 [2]

Macromolecular compounds obtained by polymerising monomers on to polymers of unsaturated polybasic acids or derivatives thereof as defined in group C08F 22/00 [2]

Macromolecular compounds obtained by polymerising monomers on to polymers of unsaturated polyaldehydes or derivatives thereof as defined in group C08F 24/00 [2]

Macromolecular compounds obtained by polymerising monomers on to polymers of unsaturated polyketones or derivatives thereof as defined in group C08F 26/00 [2]

Macromolecular compounds obtained by polymerising monomers on to polymers of unsaturated polyamides or derivatives thereof as defined in group C08F 28/00 [2]
C08F

290/00 Macromolecular compounds obtained by polymerising monomers on to macromolecular compounds not provided for in groups C08F 251/00-C08F 287/00 [2]

290/00 Macromolecular compounds obtained by polymerising monomers on to polymers modified by introduction of aliphatic unsaturated end or side groups [6]

290/02 • on to polymers modified by introduction of unsaturated end groups [6]
290/04 • Polymers provided for in subclasses C08C or C08F [6]
290/06 • Polymers provided for in subclass C08G [6]
290/08 • on to polymers modified by introduction of unsaturated side groups [6]
290/10 • Polymers provided for in subclass C08B [6]
290/12 • Polymers provided for in subclasses C08C or C08F [6]
290/14 • Polymers provided for in subclass C08G [6]

291/00 Macromolecular compounds obtained by polymerising monomers on to macromolecular compounds according to more than one of the groups C08F 251/00-C08F 289/00 [2]

291/02 • on to elastomers [2]
291/04 • on to halogen-containing macromolecules [2]
291/06 • on to oxygen-containing macromolecules [2]
291/08 • on to macromolecules containing hydroxy radicals [2]
291/10 • on to macromolecules containing epoxy radicals [2]
291/12 • on to nitorgen-containing macromolecules [2]
291/14 • on to sulfur-containing macromolecules [2]
291/16 • on to macromolecules containing more than two metal atoms [2]
291/18 • on to irradiated or oxidised macromolecules (epoxidised C08F 291/10) [2]

C08G MACROMOLECULAR COMPOUNDS OBTAINED OTHERWISE THAN BY REACTIONS ONLY INVOLVING CARBON-TO-CARBON UNSATURATED BONDS (fermentation or enzyme-using processes to synthesise a desired chemical compound or composition or to separate optical isomers from a racemic mixture C12P) [2]

Note(s)

1. Therapeutic activity of compounds is further classified in subclass A61P.
2. In this subclass, group C08G 18/00 takes precedence over the other groups. A further classification is given if the polymers are obtained by reactions forming specific linkages for which an appropriate group is provided.
3. Within each main group of this subclass, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.
4. This subclass covers also compositions based on monomers which form macromolecular compounds classifiable in this subclass.
   In this subclass:
   a. if the monomers are defined, classification is made in groups C08G 2/00-C08G 79/00, C08G 83/00 according to the polymer to be formed;
   b. if the monomers are defined in a way that a composition cannot be classified within one main group of this subclass, the composition is classified in group C08G 85/00;
   c. if the compounding ingredients are of interest per se, classification is also made in subclass C08K.

Subclass index

MACROMOLECULAR COMPOUNDS OBTAINED FROM ALDEHYDES OR KETONES ................................................. 2/00-16/00
Polycetals .................................................................................................................................................... 2/00, 4/00
MACROMOLECULAR COMPOUNDS OBTAINED FROM ISOCYANATES OR ISOTHIOCYANATES...18/00
EPOXY RESINS........................................................................................................................................... 59/00
MACROMOLECULAR COMPOUNDS OBTAINED BY REACTIONS FORMING A LINKAGE IN THE MAIN CHAIN ........................................................................................................................................ 61/00-79/00
a carbon-to-carbon link ............................................................................................................................... 61/00
a linkage containing oxygen.................................................................63/00-67/00
a linkage containing nitrogen.............................................................69/00-73/00
a linkage containing sulfur.................................................................75/00
a linkage containing silicon...............................................................77/00
a linkage containing atoms other than carbon, oxygen, nitrogen, sulfur, or silicon..................................................79/00
MACROMOLECULAR COMPOUNDS OBTAINED BY INTERACTING POLYMERS IN THE ABSENCE OF MONOMERS.................................................................81/00
OTHER MACROMOLECULAR COMPOUNDS.................................................83/00
GENERAL PROCESSES........................................................................85/00

2/00 Addition polymers of aldehydes or cyclic oligomers thereof or of ketones; Addition copolymers thereof with less than 50 molar percent of other substances [2]
2/02 • Polymisation initiated by wave energy or by particle radiation [2]
2/04 • Polymisation by using compounds which act upon the molecular weight, e.g. chain-transferring agents [2]
2/06 • Catalysts [2]
2/08 • Polymisation of formaldehyde [2]
2/10 • Polymisation of cyclic oligomers of formaldehyde [2]
2/12 • Polymisation of acetaldehyde or cyclic oligomers thereof [2]
2/14 • Polymisation of single aldehydes not provided for in groups C08G 2/08-C08G 2/12 [2]
2/16 • Polymisation of single ketones [2]
2/18 • Copolymisation of aldehydes or ketones [2]
2/20 • • with other aldehydes or ketones [2]
2/22 • • with epoxide compounds [2]
2/24 • • with acetics [2]
2/26 • • with compounds containing carbon-to-carbon unsaturation [2]
2/28 • Post-polymerisation treatments [2]
2/30 • Chemical modification by after-treatment [2]
2/32 • • by esterification [2]
2/34 • • by etherification [2]
2/36 • • by depolymerisation [2]
2/38 • Block or graft polymers prepared by polymerisation of aldehydes or ketones on to macromolecular compounds [2]

4/00 Condensation polymers of aldehydes or ketones with polyalcohols; Addition polymers of heterocyclic oxygen compounds containing in the ring at least once the grouping —O—C—O— (of cyclic oligomers of aldehydes C08G 2/00) [2]

6/00 Condensation polymers of aldehydes or ketones only [2]
6/02 • of aldehydes with ketones [2]

8/00 Condensation polymers of aldehydes or ketones with phenols only [2]
8/02 • of ketones [2]
8/04 • of aldehydes [2]
8/06 • • of furfural [2]
8/08 • • of formaldehyde, e.g. of formaldehyde formed in situ [2]
8/10 • • • with phenol [2]
8/12 • • • with monohydric phenols having only one hydrocarbon substituent ortho or para to the OH group, e.g. p-tolyl-butyl phenol [2]
8/14 • • • with halogenated phenols [2]
8/16 • • • with amino- or nitrophenols [2]
8/18 • • • with phenols substituted by carboxylic or sulfonic acid groups [2]
8/20 • • • • with polyhydric phenols [2]
8/22 • • • • Resorcinol [2]
8/24 • • • • with mixtures of two or more phenols which are not covered by only one of the groups C08G 8/10-C08G 8/20 [2]
8/26 • from mixtures of aldehydes and ketones [2]
8/28 • Chemically modified polycondensates [2]
8/30 • • by unsaturated compounds, e.g. terpenes [2]
8/32 • • by organic acids or derivatives thereof, e.g. fatty oils [2]
8/34 • • by natural resins or resin acids, e.g. rosin [2]
8/36 • • • by etherifying [2]
8/38 • Block or graft polymers prepared by polycondensation of aldehydes or ketones on to macromolecular compounds [2]

10/00 Condensation polymers of aldehydes or ketones with aromatic hydrocarbons or halogenated aromatic hydrocarbons only [2]
10/02 • of aldehydes [2]
10/04 • • Chemically modified polycondensates [2]
10/06 • Block or graft polymers prepared by polycondensation of aldehydes or ketones on to macromolecular compounds [2]

12/00 Condensation polymers of aldehydes or ketones with only compounds containing hydrogen attached to nitrogen (amino phenols C08G 8/16) [2]
12/02 • of aldehydes [2]
12/04 • • with acyclic or carboxyclic compounds [2]
12/06 • • Amines [2]
12/08 • • • aromatic [2]
12/10 • • • with acyclic compounds having the moiety X=C(—N)2 in which X is O, S, or —N [2]
12/12 • • • • Ureas; Thioureas [2]
12/14 • • • • Dicyandiamides; Dicyandiamidines; Guanidines; Biguanides; Biuret; Semicarbazides [2]
12/16 • • • • • Dicyandiamides [2]
12/18 • • • • with cyanamide [2]
12/20 • • • • with urethanes or thiourethanes [2]
12/22 • • • • with carboxylic acid amides [2]
12/24 • • • • with sulfonic acid amides [2]
12/26 • • • • with heterocyclic compounds [2]
12/28 • • • • with substituted diazines, diazoles or triazoles [2]
12/30 • • • • with substituted triazines [2]
12/32 • • • • Melamines [2]
12/34 • • • • and acyclic or carboxyclic compounds [2]
12/36 • • • • Ureas; Thioureas [2]
12/38 • • • • • and melamines [2]
14/00 Condensation polymers of aldehydes or ketones with two or more other monomers covered by at least two of the groups C08G 8/00-C08G 12/00 [2]

14/04 • with phenols [2]
14/06 • and monomers containing hydrogen attached to nitrogen [2]

14/067 • Acyclic or carbocyclic monomers [5]
14/073 • Amines [5]
14/08 • Ureas; Thioureas [2, 5]
14/09 • Heterocyclic monomers [5]
14/10 • Melamines [2, 5]
14/12 • Chemically modified polycondensates [2]
14/14 • Block or graft polymers prepared by polycondensation of aldehydes or ketones on to macromolecular compounds [2]

16/00 Condensation polymers of aldehydes or ketones with monomers not provided for in the groups C08G 4/00-C08G 14/00 [2]

16/02 • of aldehydes [2]
16/04 • Chemically modified polycondensates [2]
16/06 • Block or graft polymers prepared by polycondensation of aldehydes or ketones on to macromolecular compounds [2]

18/00 Polymeric products of isocyanates or isothiocyanates [2]

Note(s)
In this group, it is desirable to add the indexing code of group C08G 101/00.

18/02 • of isocyanates or isothiocyanates only [2]
18/04 • with vinyl compounds [2]
18/06 • with compounds having active hydrogen [2]
18/08 • Processes [2]
18/09 • comprising oligomerisation of isocyanates or isothiocyanates involving reaction of a part of the isocyanate or isothiocyanate groups with each other in the reaction mixture [7]
18/10 • Prepolymer processes involving reaction of isocyanates or isothiocyanates with compounds having active hydrogen in a first reaction step [2]
18/12 • using two or more compounds having active hydrogen in the first polymerisation step [2]
18/16 • Catalysts [2]
18/18 • containing secondary or tertiary amines or salts thereof [2]
18/20 • Heterocyclic amines; Salts thereof [2]
18/22 • containing metal compounds [2]
18/24 • of tin [2]
18/26 • of lead [2]
18/28 • characterised by the compounds used containing active hydrogen [2]

Note(s)
For the purpose of this group, the addition of water for the preparation of cellular materials is not taken into consideration.
Polycondensates containing more than one epoxy group per molecule; Macromolecules obtained by reaction of epoxy polycondensates with monofunctional low-molecular-weight compounds; Macromolecules obtained by polymerising compounds containing more than one epoxy group per molecule using curing agents or catalysts which react with the epoxy groups \[2\]

- Polycondensates containing more than one epoxy group per molecule \[2\]
- of polyhydroxy compounds with epilohydrins or precursors thereof \[2\]
- of polyhydric phenols \[2\]
- from phenol-aldehyde condensates \[2\]
- of polyamines with epilohydrins or precursors thereof \[2\]
- of polycarboxylic acids with epilohydrins or precursors thereof \[2\]
- Polycondensates modified by chemical after-treatment \[2\]
  - by monocarboxylic acids or by anhydrides, halides or low-molecular-weight esters thereof \[2\]
  - by acrylic or methacrylic acid \[4\]
- Macromolecules obtained by polymerising compounds containing more than one epoxy group per molecule using curing agents or catalysts which react with the epoxy groups \[2\]
  - characterised by the epoxy compounds used \[2\]

**Note(s)**
Preparation and curing of epoxy polycondensates, in which the epoxy polycondensate is not exclusively a low-molecular-weight compound and in which the method of curing is not important, are classified only in group C08G 59/02.

- Di-epoxy compounds \[2\]
- carbocyclic \[2\]
- heterocyclic \[2\]
- containing acyclic nitrogen atoms \[2\]
- containing atoms other than carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, and nitrogen \[2\]
- Epoxy compounds containing three or more epoxy groups \[2\]
  - obtained by epoxidation of an unsaturated polymer \[2\]
  - together with mono-epoxy compounds \[2\]
  - together with di-epoxy compounds \[2\]
  - characterised by the curing agents used \[2\]
- Polycarboxylic acids; Anhydrides, halides, or low-molecular-weight esters thereof \[2\]
- Amides \[2\]
  - together with other curing agents \[2\]
  - with polycarboxylic acids or with anhydrides, halides, or low-molecular-weight esters thereof \[2\]
- Amines \[2\]
- Amino carboxylic acids \[2\]
- Amino amides \[2\]
  - together with other curing agents \[2\]
  - with polycarboxylic acids or with anhydrides, halides, or low-molecular-weight esters thereof \[2\]
- with amides \[2\]
- Alcohols or phenols \[2\]
- Amino alcohols \[2\]
- Mercaptans \[2\]

**Note(s)**
In groups C08G 61/00-C08G 79/00, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions forming two different linkages in the main chain are classified only according to the linkage present in excess.

Macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions forming a carbon-to-carbon link in the main chain of the macromolecule (C08G 2/00-C08G 16/00 take precedence) \[2\]

- Macromolecular compounds containing only carbon atoms in the main chain of the macromolecule, e.g. polyylylenes \[2\]
- only aliphatic carbon atoms \[2\]
- prepared by ring-opening of carbocyclic compounds \[2\]
- of carbocyclic compounds containing one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in the ring \[2\]
- only aromatic carbon atoms, e.g. polyphenylenes \[2\]
- Macromolecular compounds containing atoms other than carbon in the main chain of the macromolecule \[2\]

Macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions forming a carbocyclic ester link in the main chain of the macromolecule (polyester-amides C08G 69/44; polyester-imides C08G 73/16) \[2, 5\]

**Note(s)**
Compounds characterised by the chemical constitution of the polyesters are classified in the groups for the type of polyester compound. Compounds characterised by the preparation process of the polyesters are classified in the groups for the process employed (groups C08G 63/78-C08G 63/87). Compounds characterised both by the chemical constitution and by the preparation process are classified according to each of these aspects.

- Polyesters derived from hydroxy carboxylic acids or from polycarboxylic acids and polyhydroxy compounds \[2\]
- derived from hydroxy carboxylic acids \[2\]
- Lactones or lactides \[2\]
- derived from polycarboxylic acids and polyhydroxy compounds \[2\]
- the acids or hydroxy compounds containing cycloaliphatic rings \[5\]
- Acids containing aromatic rings \[5\]
  - containing two or more aromatic rings \[5\]
- Hydroxy compounds containing aromatic rings \[5\]
- Acids or hydroxy compounds containing cycloaliphatic rings \[5\]
- Dicarboxylic acids and dihydroxy compounds \[2\]
- the acids or hydroxy compounds containing carbocyclic rings \[2\]
- Acids containing aromatic rings \[5\]
- Terephthalic acids \[5\]
- containing two or more aromatic rings \[5\]
Macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions forming a carbonic ester link in the main chain of the macromolecule (polycarbonate-aminos C08G 69/44; polycarbonate-imides C08G 73/16) [5]

Note(s)

Polymers containing both carboxylic ester groups and carbonate groups are always classified in group C08G 63/64, even when the carbonate groups are present in excess.

64/02 • Aliphatic polycarbonates [5]
64/04 • Aromatic polycarbonates [5]
64/06 • not containing aliphatic unsaturation [5]
64/08 • containing atoms other than carbon, hydrogen or oxygen [5]
64/10 • containing halogens [5]
64/12 • containing nitrogen [5]
64/14 • containing a chain-terminating or -crosslinking agent [5]
64/16 • Aliphatic-aromatic or araliphatic polycarbonates [5]
64/18 • Block or graft polymers [5]
64/20 • General preparatory processes [5]
64/22 • using carbonyl halides [5]
64/24 • and phenols [5]
64/26 • using halocarbonates [5]
64/28 • and phenols [5]
64/30 • using carbonates [5]
Macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions forming an ether link in the main chain of the macromolecule (epoxy resins C08G 59/00; polyethylene-ethers C08G 75/12; polyethers containing less than eleven monomer units C07C) [2]

Macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions forming a carboxylic amide link in the main chain of the macromolecule (polyhydrazides C08G 73/08; polyamide acids C08G 73/10; polyamide-imides C08G 73/14) [2]

Polyamides derived from amino carboxylic acids or from polyamines and polycarboxylic acids [2]

Solid state polycondensation [2]

Alpha-amino-carboxylic acids [2]

Alpha-betaines [2]

Beta-lactams [2]

Pyrrolidones or piperidones [2]

Derived from polyamines and polycarboxylic acids [2]

Preparatory processes [2]

Solid state polycondensation [2]

Aromatic diamines and aromatic dicarboxylic acids with both amino and carboxylic groups aromatically bound [2]

Using polymerised unsaturated fatty acids [2]

Derived from amino acids, polyamines, and polycarboxylic acids [2]

Polyamides prepared from aldehydes and polyamines [2]

Polyamides containing oxygen in the form of ether groups (C08G 69/12, C08G 69/32 take precedence) [2]

Polyamides containing atoms other than carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, and nitrogen (C08G 69/12, C08G 69/32 take precedence) [2]

Polyester-amides [2]

Post-polymerisation treatment [2]

Polymers modified by chemical after-treatment [2]

With aldehydes [2]
C08G

73/06 • Polycondensates having nitrogen-containing heterocyclic rings in the main chain of the macromolecule; Polyhydrazides; Polyamid acids or similar polyimide precursors [2]
73/08 • Polyhydrazides; Polytriazoles; Polyanimotriazoles; Polyoxadiazoles [2]
73/10 • Polyimides; Polyester-imides; Polymamide-imides; Polyamide acids or similar polyimide precursors [2]
73/12 • Unsaturated polyimide precursors [2]
73/14 • Polyamide-imides [2]
73/16 • Polyester-imides [2]
73/18 • Polybenzimidazoles [2]
73/20 • Pyrones [2]
73/22 • Polybenzoxazoles [2]
73/24 • Copolymers of a fluoronitroso organic compound and another fluoro organic compound, e.g. nitroso rubbers [2]
73/26 • of trifluoronitrosomethane with a fluoro-olefin [2]
75/00 Macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions forming in the main chain of the macromolecule a linkage containing sulfur, with or without nitrogen, oxygen, or carbon [2]
75/02 • Polythioethers [2]
75/04 • from mercapto compounds or metallic derivatives thereof [2]
75/06 • from cyclic thioethers [2]
75/08 • from thiranes [2]
75/10 • from sulfur or sulfur-containing compounds and aldehydes or ketones [2]
75/12 • Polythioether-ethers [2]
75/14 • Polysulfides [2]
75/16 • by polycondensation of organic compounds with inorganic polysulfides [2]
75/18 • Polysulfoxides [2]
75/20 • Polysulfones [2]
75/22 • Copolymers of sulfur dioxide with unsaturated aliphatic compounds [2]
75/23 • Polyesulfethers [2]
75/24 • Polysulfonates [2]
75/26 • Polythioesters [2]
75/28 • Polysulfocarbonates [2]
75/30 • Polysulfonamides; Polysulfonimidates [2]
75/32 • Polthyiazoles; Polthydiiazoles [2]
77/00 Macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions forming in the main chain of the macromolecule a linkage containing silicon, with or without sulfur, nitrogen, oxygen, or carbon [2]
77/02 • Polysilicates [2]
77/04 • Polysiloxanes [2]
77/06 • Preparatory processes [2]
77/08 • characterised by the catalysts used [2]
77/10 • Equilibration processes [2]
77/12 • containing silicon bound to hydrogen [2]
77/14 • containing silicon bound to oxygen-containing groups [2]
77/16 • to hydroxy groups [2]
77/18 • to alkoxy or aryloxy groups [2]
77/20 • containing silicon bound to unsaturated aliphatic groups [2]
77/22 • containing silicon bound to organic groups containing atoms other than carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen [2]
77/24 • halogen-containing groups [2]
77/26 • nitrogen-containing groups [2]
77/28 • sulfur-containing groups [2]
77/30 • phosphorus-containing groups [2]
77/32 • Post-polymerisation treatment [2]
77/34 • Purification [2]
77/36 • Fractionation [2]
77/38 • Polysiloxanes modified by chemical after-treatment [2]
77/382 • containing atoms other than carbon, hydrogen, oxygen or silicon [5]
77/385 • containing halogens [5]
77/388 • containing nitrogen [5]
77/392 • containing sulfur [5]
77/395 • containing phosphorus [5]
77/398 • containing boron or metal atoms [5]
77/42 • Block- or graft-polymers containing polysiloxane sequences (polymerising aliphatic unsaturated monomers on to a polysiloxane C08F 283/12) [2]
77/44 • containing only polysiloxane sequences [2]
77/442 • containing vinyl polymer sequences [5]
77/445 • containing polyester sequences [5]
77/448 • containing polycarbonate sequences [5]
77/452 • containing nitrogen-containing sequences [5]
77/455 • containing polyamide, polyestamid or polyimide sequences [5]
77/458 • containing polycrylate sequences [5]
77/46 • containing polyether sequences [2]
77/48 • in which at least two but not all the silicon atoms are connected by linkages other than oxygen atoms (C08G 77/42 takes precedence) [2]
77/50 • by carbon linkages [2]
77/52 • containing aromatic rings [2]
77/54 • Nitrogen-containing linkages [2]
77/56 • Boron-containing linkages [2]
77/58 • Metal-containing linkages [2]
77/60 • in which all the silicon atoms are connected by linkages other than oxygen atoms [2]
77/62 • Nitrogen atoms [2]
79/00 Macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions forming in the main chain of the macromolecule a linkage containing atoms other than silicon, sulfur, nitrogen, oxygen, and carbon [2]
79/02 • a linkage containing phosphorus [2]
79/04 • Phosphorus linked to oxygen or to oxygen and carbon [2]
79/06 • Phosphorus linked to carbon only [2]
79/08 • a linkage containing boron [2]
79/10 • a linkage containing aluminium [2]
79/12 • a linkage containing tin [2]
79/14 • a linkage containing two or more elements other than carbon, nitrogen, sulfur, and silicon [2]
81/00 Macromolecular compounds obtained by interreacting polymers in the absence of monomers, e.g. block polymers (involving only carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bond reactions C08F 299/00) [2]
81/02 • at least one of the polymers being obtained by reactions involving only carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [2]
83/00 Macromolecular compounds not provided for in groups C08G 2/00-C08G 81/00 [2]
85/00 General processes for preparing compounds provided for in this subclass [2]
Indexing scheme associated with group C08G 18/00, relating to cellular products. [5]

101/00 Manufacture of cellular products [5]

C08H DERIVATIVES OF NATURAL MACROMOLECULAR COMPOUNDS (polysaccharides C08B; natural rubber C08C; natural resins or their derivatives C08F; working up pitch, asphalt or bitumen C10C 3/00)

Note(s)
Therapeutic activity of compounds is further classified in subclass A61P.

1/00 Macromolecular products derived from proteins (food proteins A23, e.g. A23J; glue, gelatine C09H)

7/00 Lignin; Modified lignin; High-molecular-weight products derived therefrom (low-molecular-weight derivatives of lignin C07G 1/00) [2011.01]

8/00 Macromolecular compounds derived from lignocellulosic materials [2010.01]

99/00 Subject matter not provided for in other groups of this subclass [2010.01]

C08J WORKING-UP; GENERAL PROCESSES OF COMPOUNDING; AFTER-TREATMENT NOT COVERED BY SUBCLASSES C08B, C08C, C08F, C08G or C08H (working, e.g. shaping, of plastics B29) [2]

Note(s)
1. This subclass covers processes, not covered by subclasses C08B-C08H, for treating polymers.
2. In this subclass, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.
3. When classifying in this subclass, additional classification may be made in class C08L relating to the materials used.

3/00 Processes of treating or compounding macromolecular substances [2]

5/00 Manufacture of articles or shaped materials containing macromolecular substances (manufacture of semi-permeable membranes B01D 67/00-B01D 71/00) [2]

1/02 Protein-aldehyde condensates
1/04 Casein-aldehyde condensates
1/06 derived from horn, hoofs, hair, skin, or leather

3/00 Vulcanised oils, e.g. factice

3/02 Making solutions, dispersions, lattices or gels by other methods than by solution, emulsion or suspension polymerisation techniques [2]

3/03 in aqueous media [5]
3/05 from solid polymers [5]
3/07 from polymer solutions [5]
3/075 Macromolecular gels [6]
3/11 from solid polymers [5]
3/12 Powdering or granulating [2]
3/14 by precipitation from solutions [2]
3/16 by coagulating dispersions [2]
3/18 Plasticising macromolecular compounds (plasticisers C08K) [2]
3/20 Compounding polymers with additives, e.g. colouring [2]
3/205 in the presence of a liquid phase [5]
3/21 the polymer being premixed with a liquid phase [5]
3/215 at least one additive being also premixed with a liquid phase [5]
3/22 using masterbatch techniques [2]
3/24 Crosslinking, e.g. vulcanising, of macromolecules (mechanical aspects B29C 35/00; crosslinking agents C08K) [2]
3/26 of latex [2]
3/28 Treatment by wave energy or particle radiation [2]
5/02 Direct processing of dispersions, e.g. latex, to articles [2]
5/04 Reinforcing macromolecular compounds with loose or coherent fibrous material [2]
5/06 using pretreated fibrous materials [2]
5/08 glass fibres [2]
5/10 characterised by the additives used in the polymer mixture [2]
5/12 Bonding of a preformed macromolecular material to the same or other solid material such as metal, glass, leather, e.g. using adhesives [2]
5/14 Manufacture of abrasive or friction articles or materials [2]
5/15 Manufacture of articles or materials having reduced friction [2]
5/18 Manufacture of films or sheets [2]
5/20 Manufacture of shaped structures of ion-exchange resins [2]
5/22 Films, membranes or diaphragms [2]
5/24 Impregnating materials with prepolymer which can be polymerised in situ, e.g. manufacture of prepregs [2]

7/00 Chemical treatment or coating of shaped articles made of macromolecular substances (coating with metallic material C23C; electrolytic deposition of metals C25) [2]

7/02 with solvents, e.g. swelling agents [2]
7/04 Coating [2]
7/06 with compositions not containing macromolecular substances [2]
7/12 Chemical modification [2]
7/14 with acids, their salts or anhydrides [2]
7/16 with polymerisable compounds [2]
9/00 Working-up of macromolecular substances to porous or cellular articles or materials; After-treatment thereof (mechanical aspects of shaping of plastics or substances in a plastic state for the production of porous or cellular articles B29C) [2]

9/02 using blowing gases generated by the reacting monomers or modifying agents during the preparation or modification of macromolecules [2]

9/04 using blowing gases generated by a previously added blowing agent [2]

9/06 by a chemical blowing agent [2]

9/08 developing carbon dioxide [2]

9/10 developing nitrogen [2]

9/12 by a physical blowing agent [2]

9/14 organic [2]

Notes

In groups C08J 9/16-C08J 9/22, the following term is used with the meaning indicated:

• “expandable” includes also expanding, pre-expanded or expanded.

9/16 Making expandable particles [2, 5]

9/18 by impregnating polymer particles with the blowing agent [2]

9/20 by suspension polymerisation in the presence of the blowing agent [2]

9/22 After-treatment of expandable particles; Forming foamed products [2, 5]

9/24 Surface treatment [5]

9/28 Forming foamed products [5]

9/232 by sintering expandable particles [5]

9/236 using binding agents [5]

9/24 by surface fusion and bonding of particles to form voids, e.g. sintering (of expandable particles C08J 9/232) [2, 5]

9/26 by elimination of a solid phase from a macromolecular composition or article, e.g. leaching out [2]

9/28 by elimination of a liquid phase from a macromolecular composition or article, e.g. drying of coagulum [2]

9/30 by mixing gases into liquid compositions or plástisols, e.g. frothing with air [2]

9/32 from compositions containing micro-balloons, e.g. syntactic foams [2]

9/33 Agglomerating foam fragments, e.g. waste foam [5]

9/34 Chemical features in the manufacture of articles consisting of a foamed macromolecular core and a macromolecular surface layer having a higher density than the core [2]

9/35 Composite foams, i.e. continuous macromolecular foams containing discontinuous cellular particles or fragments [5]

9/36 After-treatment (C08J 9/22 takes precedence) [2, 5]

9/38 Destruction of cell membranes [2]

9/40 Impregnation [2]

9/42 with macromolecular compounds [2]

11/00 Recovery or working-up of waste materials (recovery of plastics B29B 17/00; polymerisation processes involving purification or recycling of waste polymers or their depolymerisation products C08B, C08C, C08F, C08G, C08H) [4]

11/02 of solvents, plasticisers or unreacted monomers [4]

11/04 of polymers [2]

11/06 without chemical reactions [4]

11/08 using selective solvents for polymer components [4]

11/10 by chemically breaking down the molecular chains of polymers or breaking of crosslinks, e.g. devulcanisation (depolymerisation to the original monomer C07) [4]

11/12 dry-heat treatment only [4]

11/14 by treatment with steam or water [4]

11/16 by treatment with inorganic material (C08J 11/14 takes precedence) [4]

11/18 by treatment with organic material [4]

11/20 by treatment with hydrocarbons or halogenated hydrocarbons [4]

11/22 by treatment with organic oxygen-containing compounds [4]

11/24 containing hydroxyl groups [4]

11/26 containing carboxylic acid groups, their anhydrides or esters [4]

11/28 by treatment with organic compounds containing nitrogen, sulfur or phosphorus [4]

99/00 Subject matter not provided for in other groups of this subclass [2006.01]

C08K USE OF INORGANIC OR NON-MACROMOLECULAR ORGANIC SUBSTANCES AS COMPOUNDING INGREDIENTS (paints, inks, varnishes, dyes, polishes, adhesives C09) [2]

Notes

1. In this subclass, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, an ingredient is classified in the last appropriate place.

2. In this subclass:
   • a mixture of ingredients is classified in the most indented group covering all the essential ingredients of the mixture, e.g.:
     • a mixture of a monohydroxyl and a polyhydroxyl group alcohol C08K 5/05;
     • a mixture of two polyhydroxyl saccharides C08K 5/053;
     • a mixture of an alcohol and an ether C08K 5/04;
     • a mixture of an ether and an amine C08K 5/00;
     • a mixture of an amine and a metal C08K 13/02;
     • ammonium salts are classified in the same way as metal salts.

3. In this subclass, any ingredient of a mixture which is not identified by the classification according to Note (2) above, and the use of which is determined to be novel and non-obvious, must also be classified in this subclass according to Note (1). The ingredient can be either a single compound or a composition in itself.

152 IPC (2014.01), Section C
4. Any ingredient of a mixture which is not identified by the classification according to Notes (2) or (3) above, and which is considered to represent information of interest for search, may also be classified in this subclass according to Note (1). This can, for example, be the case when it is considered of interest to enable searching of mixtures using a combination of classification symbols. Such non-obligatory classification should be given as “additional information”.

3/00 Use of inorganic ingredients [2]

3/02 • Elements [2]
3/04 • Carbon [2]
3/06 • Sulfur [2]
3/08 • Metals [2]
3/10 • Metal compounds [2]
3/12 • Hydrides [2]
3/14 • Carbides [2]
3/16 • Halogen-containing compounds [2]
3/18 • Oxygen-containing compounds, e.g. metal carbonyls [2]
3/20 • Oxides; Hydroxides [2]
3/22 • of metals [2]
3/24 • Acids; Salts thereof [2]
3/26 • Carbonates; Bicarbonates [2]
3/28 • Nitrogen-containing compounds [2]
3/30 • Sulfur-, selenium-, or tellurium-containing compounds [2]
3/32 • Phosphorus-containing compounds [2]
3/34 • Silicon-containing compounds [2]
3/36 • Silica [2]
3/38 • Boron-containing compounds [2]
3/40 • Glass [2]

5/00 Use of organic ingredients [2]

5/01 • Hydrocarbons [2]
5/02 • Halogenated hydrocarbons [2]
5/03 • aromatic [2]
5/04 • Oxygen-containing compounds [2]
5/05 • Alcohols; Metal alcohates [2]
5/053 • Polyhydroxylic alcohols [6]
5/057 • Metal alcohates [6]
5/06 • Ethers; Acetals; Ketals; Ortho-esters [2]
5/07 • Aldehydes; Ketones [2]
5/08 • Quinones [2]
5/09 • Carboxylic acids; Metal salts thereof; Anhydrides thereof [2]
5/092 • Polycarboxylic acids [6]
5/095 • Carboxylic acids containing halogens [6]
5/098 • Metal salts of carboxylic acids [6]
5/10 • Esters; Ester-esters [2]
5/101 • of monocarboxylic acids [6]
5/103 • with polyalcohols [6]
5/105 • with phenols [6]
5/107 • with polyphenols [6]
5/109 • of carbonic acid [6]
5/11 • of acrylic polycarboxylic acids [2]
5/12 • of cyclic polycarboxylic acids [2]
5/13 • Phenols; Phenolates [2]
5/132 • Phenols containing keto groups [6]
5/134 • Phenols containing ester groups [6]
5/136 • Phenols containing halogens [6]
5/138 • Phenolates [6]
5/14 • Peroxides [2]
5/15 • Heterocyclic compounds having oxygen in the ring [2]
5/151 • one oxygen atom in the ring [7]
5/1515 • Three-membered rings [7]
5/1525 • Four-membered rings [7]
5/1535 • Five-membered rings [7]
5/1539 • Cyclic anhydrides [7]
5/1545 • Six-membered rings [7]
5/156 • having two oxygen atoms in the ring [7]
5/1565 • Five-membered rings [7]
5/1575 • Six-membered rings [7]
5/159 • having more than two oxygen atoms in the ring [7]
5/16 • Nitrogen-containing compounds [2]
5/17 • Amines; Quaternary ammonium compounds [2]
5/18 • with aromatically bound amino groups [2]
5/19 • Quaternary ammonium compounds [2]
5/20 • Carboxylic acid amides [2]
5/205 • Compounds containing $\text{O} - \text{C} - \text{N}^-$ groups, e.g. carbamates [6]
5/21 • Urea; Derivatives thereof, e.g. biuret [2]
5/22 • Compounds containing nitrogen bound to another nitrogen atom [2]
5/23 • Azo-compounds [2]
5/24 • Derivatives of hydrazine [2]
5/25 • Carboxylic acid hydrazides [2]
5/26 • Semicarbazides [2]
5/27 • Compounds containing a nitrogen atom bound to two other nitrogen atoms, e.g. diazoaminocompounds [2]
5/28 • Azides [2]
5/29 • Compounds containing carbon-to-nitrogen double bonds [2]
5/30 • Hydrazones; Semicarbazones [2]
5/31 • Guanidine; Derivatives thereof [2]
5/315 • Compounds containing carbon-to-nitrogen triple bonds [6]
5/32 • Compounds containing nitrogen bound to oxygen [2]
5/33 • Oximes [2]
5/34 • Heterocyclic compounds having nitrogen in the ring [2]
5/3412 • having one nitrogen atom in the ring [5]
5/3415 • Five-membered rings [5]
5/3417 • condensed with carboxylic rings [5]
5/3432 • Six-membered rings [5]
5/3435 • Piperidines [5]
5/3437 • condensed with carboxylic rings [5]
5/3442 • having two nitrogen atoms in the ring [5]
5/3445 • Five-membered rings [5]
5/3447 • condensed with carboxylic rings [5]
5/3462 • Six-membered rings [5]
5/3465 • condensed with carboxylic rings [5]
5/3467 • having more than two nitrogen atoms in the ring [5]
5/3472 • Five-membered rings [5]
5/3475 • condensed with carboxylic rings [5]
5/3477 • Six-membered rings [5]
5/3492 • Triazines [5]
5/3495 • condensed with carboxylic rings [5]
5/35 • having also oxygen in the ring [2]
5/353 • Five-membered rings [5]
5/357 • Six-membered rings [5]
C08K

5/36 • Sulfur-, selenium-, or tellurium-containing compounds [2]
5/37 • Thiols [2, 7]
5/372 • Sulfides [6, 7]
5/375 • containing six-membered aromatic rings [6, 7]
5/378 • containing heterocyclic rings [6, 7]
5/38 • Thioearomatic acids; Derivatives thereof, e.g. xanthates [2]
5/39 • Thioearomatic acids; Derivatives thereof, e.g. diithiocarbamates [2]
5/40 • Thiuram sulfides; Thiuram polysulfides, e.g. $\text{O}^\text{N} - \text{C} - [\text{S}]_{5}^{\text{X}} - \text{C} - \text{N}^\text{X}$ groups containing $\frac{5}{2}$
5/405 • Thiuram; Derivatives thereof [6]
5/41 • Compounds containing sulfur bond to oxygen [2]
5/42 • Sulfonic acids; Derivatives thereof [2]
5/43 • Compounds containing sulfur bond to nitrogen [2]
5/435 • Sulfonamides [6]
5/44 • Sulfenamides [2]
5/45 • Heterocyclic compounds having sulfur in the ring [2]
5/46 • with oxygen or nitrogen in the ring [2]
5/47 • Thiazoles [2]
5/48 • Selenium- or tellurium-containing compounds [2]
5/49 • Phosphorus-containing compounds [2]
5/50 • Phosphorus bound to carbon only [2, 5]
5/51 • Phosphorus bound to oxygen [2]
5/52 • bound to oxygen only [2]
5/521 • Esters of phosphoric acids, e.g. of $\text{HPO}_{4}$ [5]
5/523 • • with hydroxyaryl compounds [5]
5/524 • Esters of phosphoric acids, e.g. of $\text{HPO}_{4}$ [5]
5/526 • • with hydroxyaryl compounds [5]
5/527 • Cyclic esters [5]
5/529 • Esters containing heterocyclic rings not representing cyclic esters of phosphoric or phosphorous acids [5]
5/53 • bound to oxygen and to carbon only [2, 5]
5/5313 • Phosphinic compounds, e.g. $\text{R}_{3} = \text{P} - \text{OR}^{\text{O}}$ [5]
5/5317 • Phosphonic compounds, e.g. R—P(=O) (OR)$_{3}$ [5]
5/5333 • Esters of phosphoric acids [5]
5/5337 • • containing also halogens [5]
5/5353 • • containing also nitrogen [5]
5/5357 • • cyclic [5]
5/5373 • • containing heterocyclic rings not representing cyclic esters of phosphoric acids [5]
5/5377 • • Phosphinous compounds, e.g. $\text{R}_{2} = \text{P} - \text{OR}^{\text{O}}$ [5]
5/5393 • • Phosphinous compounds, e.g. R—P(=O)(OR)$_{3}$ [5]
5/5397 • Phoshine oxides [5]
5/5398 • Phosphorus bound to sulfur [5]
5/5399 • Phosphorus bound to nitrogen [5]
5/54 • Silicon-containing compounds [2]
5/541 • containing oxygen [7]
5/5415 • • containing at least one Si—O bond [7]
5/5419 • • containing at least one Si—C bond [7]
5/5425 • • containing at least one C=C bond [7]
5/5435 • • containing oxygen in a ring [7]
5/544 • • containing nitrogen [7]
5/5445 • • containing at least one Si—N bond [7]
5/5455 • • containing at least one $\text{N} - \text{C}$ group [7]
5/5465 • • containing at least one C=N bond [7]
5/5475 • • containing at least one C≡N bond [7]
5/548 • • containing sulfur [7]
5/549 • • containing silicon in a ring [7]
5/555 • Boron-containing compounds [2]
5/56 • Organo-metallic compounds, i.e. organic compounds containing a metal-to-carbon bond [2]
5/57 • Organo-tin compounds [2]
5/58 • • containing sulfur [2]
5/59 • Arsenic- or antimony-containing compounds [2]

7/00 Use of ingredients characterised by shape [2]
7/02 • Fibres or whiskers [2]
7/04 • inorganic [2]
7/06 • Elements [2]
7/08 • Oxygen-containing compounds [2]
7/10 • Silicon-containing compounds [2]
7/12 • • Asbestos [2]
7/14 • Glass [2]
7/16 • Solid spheres [2]
7/18 • inorganic [2]
7/20 • Glass [2]
7/22 • Expanded, porous or hollow particles [2]
7/24 • inorganic [2]
7/26 • • Silicon-containing compounds [2]
7/28 • • Glass [2]

9/00 Use of pretreated ingredients (use of pretreated fibrous materials in the manufacture of articles or shaped materials containing macromolecular substances C08J 5/06) [2]
9/02 • Ingredients treated with inorganic substances [2]
9/04 • Ingredients treated with organic substances [2]
9/06 • • with silicon-containing compounds [2]
9/08 • Ingredients agglomerated by treatment with a binding agent [2]
9/10 • Encapsulated ingredients [2]
9/12 • Adsorbed ingredients [2]

11/00 Use of ingredients of unknown constitution, e.g. undefined reaction products [2]

13/00 Use of mixtures of ingredients not covered by any single one of main groups C08K 3/00-C08K 11/00, each of these compounds being essential [4]
13/02 • Organic and inorganic ingredients [4]
13/04 • Ingredients characterised by their shape and organic or inorganic ingredients [4]
13/06 • Pretreated ingredients and ingredients covered by the main groups C08K 3/00-C08K 7/00 [4]
13/08 • Ingredients of unknown constitution and ingredients covered by the main groups C08K 3/00-C08K 9/00 [4]
C08L  COMPOSITIONS OF MACROMOLECULAR COMPOUNDS (compositions based on polymerisable monomers C08F, C08G; artificial filaments or fibres D01F; textile treating compositions D06) [2]

Note(s)

1. In this subclass, the following term is used with the meaning indicated:
   • "rubber" includes:
     a. natural or conjugated diene rubbers;
     b. rubber in general (for a specific rubber, other than a natural rubber or a conjugated diene rubber, see the group provided for compositions of such macromolecular compounds).

2. In this subclass:
   a. compositions are classified according to the mutual proportions by weight of only the macromolecular constituents;  
   b. compositions are classified according to the macromolecular constituent or constituents present in the highest proportion; if all these constituents are present in equal proportions the composition is classified according to each of these constituents.

3. Any macromolecular constituent of a composition which is not identified by the classification according to Note (2) above, and the use of which is determined to be novel and non-obvious, must also be classified in this subclass. For example, a composition containing 80 parts polyethylene and 20 parts polyvinyl chloride is classified in both groups C08L 23/06 and C08L 27/06, if the use of polyvinyl chloride is determined to be novel and non-obvious.

4. Any macromolecular constituent of a composition which is not identified by the classification according to Notes (2) or (3) above, and which is considered to represent information of interest for search, may also be classified in this subclass. This can, for example, be the case when it is considered of interest to enable searching of compositions using a combination of classification symbols. Such non-obligatory classification should be given as "additional information".

Subclass index

Compositions of polysaccharides or of their derivatives.................................................................1/00-5/00
Compositions of rubbers or of their derivatives..............................................................................7/00-21/00
Compositions of unsaturated bonds; Compositions of derivatives of such polymers..................................................23/00-57/00
Compositions of macromolecular compounds obtained otherwise than by reactions involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds; Compositions of derivatives of such polymers..................................................59/00-87/00
Compositions of natural macromolecular compounds or of derivatives thereof..............................89/00-99/00
Compositions of unspecified macromolecular compounds................................................................101/00

Compositions of polysaccharides or of their derivatives [2]

1/00 Compositions of cellulose, modified cellulose, or cellulose derivatives [2]
  1/02 • Cellulose; Modified cellulose [2]
  1/04 • Oxycellulose; Hydrocellulose [2]
  1/06 • Cellulose hydrate [2]
  1/08 • Cellulose derivatives [2]
  1/10 • Esters of organic acids [2]
  1/12 • Cellulose acetate [2]
  1/14 • Mixed esters, e.g. cellulose acetate-butyrato [2]
  1/16 • Esters of inorganic acids [2]
  1/18 • Cellulose nitrate [2]
  1/20 • Esters of both organic acids and inorganic acids [2]
  1/22 • Cellulose xanthate [2]
  1/24 • Viscose [2]
  1/26 • Cellulose ethers [2]
  1/28 • Alkyl ethers [2]
  1/30 • Aryl ethers; Alkaryl ethers [2]
  1/32 • Cellulose ether-esters [2]
  3/00 Compositions of starch, amylose or amylopectin or of their derivatives or degradation products [2]
  3/02 • Starch; Degradation products thereof, e.g. dextrin [2]
  3/04 • Starch derivatives [2]
  3/06 • Esters [2]
  3/08 • Ethers [2]
  3/10 • Oxidised starch [2]

9/00 Compositions of homopolymers or copolymers of conjugated diene hydrocarbons [2]
  9/02 • Copolymers with acrylonitrile [2]
  9/04 • Latex [2]

Compositions of rubbers or of their derivatives [2]

7/00 Compositions of natural rubber [2]
  7/02 • Latex [2]
11/00 Compositions of homopolymers or copolymers of chloroprene [2]

11/02 • Latex [2]

13/00 Compositions of rubbers containing carboxyl groups [2]

13/02 • Latex [2]

15/00 Compositions of rubber derivatives (C08L 11/00, C08L 13/00 take precedence) [4]

15/02 • Rubber derivatives containing halogen [2]

17/00 Compositions of reclaimed rubber [2]

19/00 Compositions of rubbers not provided for in groups C08L 7/00-C08L 17/00 [2]

19/02 • Latex [2]

21/00 Compositions of unspecified rubbers [2]

21/02 • Latex [2]

Compositions of macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions involving only carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [2]

Note(s)
1. In groups C08L 23/00-C08L 49/00, “aliphatic radical” means an acyclic or a non-aromatic carbocyclic carbon skeleton which is considered to be terminated by every bond to:
   a. an element other than carbon;
   b. a carbon atom having a double bond to one atom other than carbon;
   c. an aromatic carbocyclic ring or a heterocyclic ring.
2. In groups C08L 23/00-C08L 49/00, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, a copolymer is classified according to the major monomeric component.

23/00 Compositions of homopolymers or copolymers of unsaturated aliphatic hydrocarbons having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond; Compositions of derivatives of such polymers [2]

23/02 • not modified by chemical after-treatment [2]
23/04 • Homopolymers or copolymers of ethene [2]
23/06 • Polyethene [2]
23/08 • Copolymers of ethene (C08L 23/16 takes precedence) [2]
23/10 • Homopolymers or copolymers of propene [2]
23/12 • Polypropene [2]
23/14 • Copolymers of propene (C08L 23/16 takes precedence) [2]
23/16 • Ethene-propene or ethene-propene-diene copolymers [2]
23/18 • Homopolymers or copolymers of hydrocarbons having four or more carbon atoms [2]
23/20 • having four to nine carbon atoms [2]
23/22 • Copolymers of isobutene; Butyl rubber [2]
23/24 • having ten or more carbon atoms [2]
23/26 • modified by chemical after-treatment [2]
23/28 • by reaction with halogens or halogen-containing compounds (C08L 23/32 takes precedence) [2]
23/30 • by oxidation [2]
23/32 • by reaction with phosphorus- or sulfur-containing compounds [2]
23/34 • by chlorosulphonation [2]
23/36 • by reaction with nitrogen-containing compounds, e.g. by nitrification [2]

25/00 Compositions of homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by an aromatic carbocyclic ring; Compositions of derivatives of such polymers [2]

25/02 • Homopolymers or copolymers of hydrocarbons [2]
25/04 • Homopolymers or copolymers of styrene [2]
25/06 • Polystyrene [2]
25/08 • Copolymers of styrene (C08L 29/08, C08L 35/06, C08L 55/02 take precedence) [2]
25/10 • with conjugated dienes [2]
25/12 • with unsaturated nitriles [2]
25/14 • with unsaturated esters [2]
25/16 • Homopolymers or copolymers of alkyl-substituted styrenes [2]
25/18 • Homopolymers or copolymers of aromatic monomers containing elements other than carbon and hydrogen [2]

27/00 Compositions of homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by a halogen; Compositions of derivatives of such polymers [2]

27/02 • not modified by chemical after-treatment [2]
27/04 • containing chlorine atoms [2]
27/06 • Homopolymers or copolymers of vinyl chloride [2]
27/08 • Homopolymers or copolymers of vinylidene chloride [2]
27/10 • containing bromine or iodine atoms [2]
27/12 • containing fluorine atoms [2]
27/14 • Homopolymers or copolymers of vinyl fluoride [2]
27/16 • Homopolymers or copolymers of vinylidene fluoride [2]
27/18 • Homopolymers or copolymers of tetrafluoroethylene [2]
27/20 • Homopolymers or copolymers of hexafluoropropene [2]
27/22 • modified by chemical after-treatment [2]
27/24 • halogenated [2]

29/00 Compositions of homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by an alcohol, ether, aldehyde, ketonic, acetal, or ketal radical; Compositions of hydrolysed polymers of esters of unsaturated alcohols with saturated carboxylic acids; Compositions of derivatives of such polymers [2]

29/02 • Homopolymers or copolymers of unsaturated alcohols (C08L 29/14 takes precedence) [2]
29/04 • Polyvinyl alcohol; Partially hydrolysed homopolymers or copolymers of esters of unsaturated alcohols with saturated carboxylic acids [2]
29/06 • Copolymers of allyl alcohol [2]
29/08 • with vinyl aromatic monomers [2]
31/00 Compositions of homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by an acyloxy radical of a saturated carboxylic acid, of carboxylic acid, or of a halonic acid (of hydrolysed polymers C08L 29/00); Compositions of derivatives of such polymers [2]

33/00 Compositions of homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and only one being terminated by one carbon carboxyl radical, or of salts, anhydrides, esters, amidic, imides, or nitriles thereof; Compositions of derivatives of such polymers [2]

35/00 Compositions of homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and containing at least one other carboxyl radical in the molecule, or of salts, anhydrides, esters, amidic, imides, or nitriles thereof; Compositions of derivatives of such polymers [2]

35/04 Homopolymers or copolymers of esters (C08L 35/06, C08L 35/08 take precedence) [2]

35/06 Copolymers with vinyl aromatic monomers [2]

35/08 Copolymers with vinyl ethers [2]

37/00 Compositions of homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by a heterocyclic ring containing oxygen (of cyclic esters of polyfunctional acids C08L 31/00; of cyclic anhydrides of unsaturated acids C08L 35/00); Compositions of derivatives of such polymers [2]

39/00 Compositions of homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by a single or double bond to nitrogen or by a heterocyclic ring containing nitrogen; Compositions of derivatives of such polymers [2]

39/02 Homopolymers or copolymers of vinyl amine [2]

39/04 Homopolymers or copolymers of monomers containing heterocyclic rings having nitrogen as ring member [2]

39/06 Homopolymers or copolymers of N-vinyl-pyrrolidones [2]

39/08 Homopolymers or copolymers of vinyl-pyridine [2]

41/00 Compositions of homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by a bond to sulfur or by a heterocyclic ring containing sulfur; Compositions of derivatives of such polymers [2]

43/00 Compositions of homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and containing boron, silicon, phosphorus, selenium, tellurium, or a metal; Compositions of derivatives of such polymers [2]

43/02 Homopolymers or copolymers of monomers containing phosphorus [2]

43/04 Homopolymers or copolymers of monomers containing silicon [2]

45/00 Compositions of homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having no unsaturated aliphatic radicals in a side chain, and having one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in a carbocyclic or in a heterocyclic ring system; Compositions of derivatives of such polymers (of cyclic esters of polyfunctional acids C08L 31/00; of cyclic anhydrides or imides C08L 35/00) [2]

45/02 of coumarone-indene polymers [2]

47/00 Compositions of homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, at least one having two or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds; Compositions of derivatives of such polymers (C08L 45/00 takes precedence; of conjugated diene rubbers C08L 9/00-C08L 21/00) [2]
Compositions of homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more carbon-to-carbon triple bonds; Compositions of derivatives of such polymers [2]

Compositions of graft polymers in which the grafted component is obtained by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds (for ABS polymers C08L 55/02); Compositions of derivatives of such polymers [2]

- grafted on to polysaccharides [2]
- grafted on to rubbers [2]
- grafted on to homopolymers or copolymers of aliphatic hydrocarbons containing only one carbon-to-carbon double bond [2]
- grafted on to macromolecular compounds obtained otherwise than by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [2]
- grafted on to inorganic materials [3]

Compositions of block copolymers containing at least one sequence of a polymer obtained by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds; Compositions of derivatives of such polymers [2]

- of vinyl aromatic monomers and conjugated dienes [2]

Compositions of homopolymers or copolymers, obtained by polymerisation reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds, not provided for in groups C08L 23/00-C08L 53/00 [2]

- Polyadducts obtained by the diene synthesis [2]

Compositions of unspecified polymers obtained by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [2]

- Copolymers of mineral oil hydrocarbons [2]
- Copolymers in which only the monomer in minority is defined [2]
- Homopolymers or copolymers containing elements other than carbon and hydrogen [2]
- containing halogen atoms [2]
- containing oxygen atoms [2]
- containing nitrogen atoms [2]

Compositions of macromolecular compounds obtained otherwise than by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [2]

- Polymers modified by unsaturated compounds [2]

Note(s)
In groups C08L 65/00-C08L 85/00, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, compositions of macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions forming two different linkages in the main chain are classified only according to the linkage present in excess.

Compositions of macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions forming a carbon-to-carbon link in the main chain (C08L 7/00-C08L 57/00, C08L 61/00 take precedence); Compositions of derivatives of such polymers [2]

- Polyphenylenes [2]
- Polyxylylenes [2]

Compositions of polyesters obtained by reactions forming a carboxylic ester link in the main chain (of polyester-amides C08L 77/12; of polyester-imides C08L 79/08); Compositions of derivatives of such polymers [2]

- Polymers derived from dicarboxylic acids and dihydroxy compounds (C08L 67/06 takes precedence) [2]
- the dicarboxylic acids and dihydroxy compounds having the hydroxy and the carboxyl groups directly linked to aromatic rings [5]
- Polymers derived from hydroxy carboxylic acids, e.g. lactones (C08L 67/06 takes precedence) [2]
- Unsaturated polymers [2]
- having terminal carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [5]
- Polymers modified with higher fatty oils or their acids, or with natural resins or resin acids [2]

Compositions of polycondensates; Compositions of derivatives of polycarbonates [2]
71/00 Compositions of polyethers obtained by reactions forming an ether link in the main chain (of polyacetals C08L 59/00; of epoxy resins C08L 63/00; of polythioether-ethers C08L 81/02; of polyethersulfones C08L 81/06); Compositions of derivatives of such polymers [2]

71/02 Polyalkylene oxides [2]
71/03 • Polyepihaloxyhydrins [5]
71/08 Polyesters derived from hydroxy compounds or from their metallic derivatives (C08L 71/02 takes precedence) [5]
71/10 • from phenois [5]
71/12 • Polyphenylene oxides [5]
71/14 • Furfuryl alcohol polymers [5]

73/00 Compositions of macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions forming a linkage containing oxygen or oxygen and carbon in the main chain, not provided for in groups C08L 59/00-C08L 71/00; Compositions of derivatives of such polymers [2]

73/02 Polyamides [2]

75/00 Compositions of polyureas or polyurethanes; Compositions of derivatives of such polymers [2]
75/02 Polyureas [2]
75/04 Polyurethanes [2]
75/06 • from polyesters [2]
75/08 • from polyethers [2]
75/10 • from polyacetals [2]
75/12 • from compounds containing nitrogen and active hydrogen, the nitrogen atom not being part of an isocyanate group [2]
75/14 • Polyurethanes having carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [5]
75/16 • having terminal carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [5]

77/00 Compositions of polyamides obtained by reactions forming a carboxylic amide link in the main chain (of polyhydrazides C08L 79/00; of polyamide-imides or polyamide acids C08L 79/08); Compositions of derivatives of such polymers [2]
77/02 Polyamides derived from omega-amino carboxylic acids or from lactams thereof (C08L 77/10 takes precedence) [2]
77/04 Polyamides derived from alpha-amino carboxylic acids (C08L 77/10 takes precedence) [2]
77/06 Polyamides derived from polamines and polycarboxylic acids (C08L 77/10 takes precedence) [2]
77/08 • from polamines and polymerised unsaturated fatty acids [2]
77/10 Polyamides derived from aromatic groups of amino carboxylic acids or of polamines and polycarboxylic acids [2]
77/12 Polyester-amides [2]

79/00 Compositions of macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions forming in the main chain of the macromolecule a linkage containing nitrogen with or without oxygen, or carbon only, not provided for in groups C08L 61/00-C08L 77/00 [2]
79/02 Polyamides [2]
79/04 Polycondensates having nitrogen-containing heterocyclic rings in the main chain; Polyhdyrazides; Polyamide acids or similar polyamide precursors [2]
79/06 • Polyhydrazides; Polytiazoles; Polyanamintriazoles; Polyoxydiazoles [2]
79/08 • Polyimides; Polyester-imides; Polyamide-imides; Polyamide acids or similar polyamide precursors [2]

81/00 Compositions of macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions forming in the main chain of the macromolecule a linkage containing sulfur with or without nitrogen, oxygen, or carbon only; Compositions of polysulfones; Compositions of derivatives of such polymers [2]
81/02 Polythioethers; Polythioether-ethers [2]
81/04 Polysulfides [2]
81/06 Polysulfones; Polyethersulfones [2]
81/08 Polysulfonates [2]
81/10 Polysulfonamides; Polysulfonimides [2]

83/00 Compositions of macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions forming in the main chain of the macromolecule a linkage containing silicon with or without sulfur, nitrogen, oxygen, or carbon only; Compositions of derivatives of such polymers [2]
83/02 Polydimethylsiloxanes [2]
83/04 Polysiloxanes [2]
83/05 • containing silicon bound to hydrogen [4]
83/06 • containing silicon bound to oxygen-containing groups (C08L 83/12 takes precedence) [2]
83/07 • containing silicon bound to unsaturated aliphatic groups [4]
83/08 • containing silicon bound to organic groups containing atoms other than carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen [2]
83/10 • Block- or graft-copolymers containing polysiloxane sequences (obtained by polymerising a compound having a carbon-to-carbon double bond on to a polysiloxane C08L 51/08, C08L 53/00) [2]
83/12 • containing polyether sequences [2]
83/14 • in which at least two but not all the silicon atoms are connected by linkages other than oxygen atoms (C08L 83/10 takes precedence) [2]
83/16 • in which all the silicon atoms are connected by linkages other than oxygen atoms [2]

85/00 Compositions of macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions forming in the main chain of the macromolecule a linkage containing atoms other than silicon, sulfur, nitrogen, oxygen, and carbon; Compositions of derivatives of such polymers [2]
85/02 • containing phosphorus [2]
85/04 • containing boron [2]

87/00 Compositions of unspecified macromolecular compounds, obtained otherwise than by polymerisation reactions only involving unsaturated carbon-to-carbon bonds [2]

Compositions of natural macromolecular compounds or of derivatives thereof [2]

89/00 Compositions of proteins; Compositions of derivatives thereof [2]
89/02 • Casein-aldehyde condensates [2]
89/04 • Products derived from waste materials, e.g. horn, hoof or hair [2]
89/06 • derived from leather or skin [2]

91/00 Compositions of oils, fats or waxes; Compositions of derivatives thereof [2]
91/02 • Vulcanised oils, e.g. factice [2]
C08L

91/04  •  Linoxy [2]
91/06  •  Waxes [2]
91/08  •  Mineral waxes [2]

93/00 Compositions of natural resins; Compositions of derivatives thereof (of polysaccharides C08L 1/00-C08L 5/00; of natural rubber C08L 7/00) [2]
93/02  •  Shellac [2]
93/04  •  Rosin [2]

95/00 Compositions of bituminous materials, e.g. asphalt, tar or pitch [2]

97/00 Compositions of lignin-containing materials (of polysaccharides C08L 1/00-C08L 5/00) [2]
97/02  •  Lignocellulosic material, e.g. wood, straw or bagasse [2]

99/00 Compositions of natural macromolecular compounds or of derivatives thereof not provided for in groups C08L 1/00-C08L 7/00 or C08L 89/00-C08L 97/00 [2]

C09  DYES; PAINTS; POLISHES; NATURAL RESINS; ADHESIVES; COMPOSITIONS NOT OTHERWISE PROVIDED FOR; APPLICATIONS OF MATERIALS NOT OTHERWISE PROVIDED FOR

C09B ORGANIC DYES OR CLOSELY-RELATED COMPOUNDS FOR PRODUCING DYES; MORDANTS; LAKES (fermentation or enzyme-using processes to synthesise a desired chemical compound C12P)

Note(s)
In this subclass, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, a compound is classified in the last appropriate place.

Subclass index
ANTHRACENE DYES.................................................................1/00, 3/00, 5/00, 6/00, 9/02
AZO DYES
Prepared by diazotising and coupling
Monoazo dyes...........................................................................29/00
Disazo and polyazo dyes............................................................31/00, 33/00, 35/00
by coupling the diazotised amine with itself....................................................37/00
Other azo dyes...........................................................................39/00
Special methods of performing the coupling reaction............................................41/00
Preparation of azo dyes from other azo compounds.............................................43/00
Preparation other than by diazotising and coupling..................................................27/00
Compounds containing onium groups...............................................................44/00
Complex metal compounds............................................................................45/00
Compounds containing other chromophoric systems..........................................56/00
Other azo dyes...........................................................................46/00
INDIGOID; DIARYL AND TRIARYL METHANE; OXYKETONE DYES...............................................7/00, 9/04, 11/00, 13/00
ACRIDINE, AZINE, OXAZINE, THIAZINE DYES........................................15/00-21/00
QUINOLINE AND POLYMETHINE DYES......................................................23/00, 25/00
HYDRAZONE, TRIAZENE DYES..........................................................26/00
PORPHYRINS, PORPHYRAZINS; SULFUR DYES........................................47/00, 49/00
QUINACRIDONES.............................................................................48/00
FORMAZANE DYES; NITRO AND NITROSO DYES; QUINONE IMIDES; AZOMETHINE DYES......................................................................50/00, 51/00, 53/00, 55/00
OTHER SYNTHETIC DYES.....................................................................57/00, 59/00
DYES OF NATURAL ORIGIN.....................................................................61/00
REACTIVE DYES..................................................................................62/00
LAKES; MORDANTS; DYESTUFF PREPARATIONS...........................................63/00, 65/00, 67/00
OTHER DYES......................................................................................69/00
Anthracene dyes

1/00  Dyes with an anthracene nucleus not condensed with any other ring

1/02  •  Hydroxy anthraquinones; Ethers or esters thereof
1/04  •  Preparation by synthesis of the nucleus
1/06  •  Preparation from starting materials already containing the anthracene nucleus
1/08  •  Dyes containing only OH groups
1/10  •  Dyes containing halogen
1/12  •  Dyes containing sulfonic acid groups
1/14  •  Dyes containing ether groups
1/16  •  Amino anthraquinones
1/18  •  Preparation by synthesis of the nucleus
1/20  •  Preparation from starting materials already containing the anthracene nucleus
1/22  •  Dyes with unsubstituted amino groups
1/24  •  sulfonated
1/26  •  Dyes with amino groups substituted by hydrocarbon radicals
1/28  •  substituted by alkyl, aralkyl, or cyclo-alkyl groups
1/30  •  sulfonated
1/32  •  substituted by aryl groups (anthrimides C09B 1/48)
1/34  •  sulfonated
1/36  •  Dyes with acylated amino groups
1/38  •  Urea or thiourea derivatives
1/40  •  the acyl groups being residues of an aliphatic or araliphatic carboxylic acid
1/42  •  the acyl groups being residues of an aromatic carboxylic acid
1/43  •  •  Dicarboxylic acids [3]
1/44  •  •  the acyl groups being residues of a heterocyclic carboxylic acid
1/46  •  •  the acyl groups being residues of cyanuric acid or an analogous heterocyclic compound
1/467 •  •  •  attached to two or more anthraquinone rings [3]
1/473 •  •  •  the acyl groups being residues of a sulfonic acid [3]
1/48 •  •  •  Anthrimides
1/50 •  •  Amino-hydroxy anthraquinones; Ethers or esters thereof
1/503 •  •  unsubstituted amino-hydroxy anthraquinone [2]
1/51 •  •  N-substituted amino-hydroxy anthraquinone [2]
1/514 •  •  N-aryl derivatives (N-aryl derivatives C09B 1/515) [2]
1/515 •  •  N-alkyl, N-aralkyl, or N-cycloalkyl derivatives [2]
1/516 •  •  N-acylated derivatives [2]
1/52 •  •  sulfonated
1/54 •  •  etherified
1/56 •  •  Mercapto-anthraquinones
1/58 •  •  with mercapto groups substituted by aliphatic, cycloaliphatic, araliphatic or aryl radicals [3]
1/60 •  •  substituted by aliphatic, cycloaliphatic or araliphatic radicals [3]
1/62 •  •  with mercapto groups substituted by a heterocyclic ring [3]

3/00  Dyes with anthracene nucleus condensed with one or more carboxylic rings

3/02 •  Benzanthrenes
3/04 •  Preparation by synthesis of the nucleus
3/06 •  •  Preparation from starting materials already containing the benzanthrene nucleus
3/08 •  •  •  by halogenation
3/10 •  •  •  •  Amino derivatives
3/12 •  •  •  •  •  Dibenzanthryls
3/14 •  •  •  •  •  Perylene derivatives
3/16 •  •  •  •  •  Preparation by synthesis of the nucleus
3/18 •  •  •  •  •  Preparation from starting materials already containing the perylene nucleus
3/20 •  •  •  •  •  •  by halogenation
3/22 •  •  •  •  •  •  Dibenzanthrones; Isodibenzanthrones
3/24 •  •  •  •  •  •  from dibenzanthryls
3/26 •  •  •  •  •  •  from perylene derivatives
3/28 •  •  •  •  •  •  Preparation from starting materials already containing the dibenzanthrone or isodibenzanthrone nucleus
3/32 •  •  •  •  •  •  by halogenation
3/34 •  •  •  •  •  •  by oxidation
3/36 •  •  •  •  •  •  by etherification of hydroxy compounds
3/38 •  •  •  •  •  •  by introduction of hydrocarbon or acyl residues into amino groups
3/40 •  •  •  •  •  •  Pyranthrenes
3/42 •  •  •  •  •  •  Preparation by synthesis of the nucleus
3/44 •  •  •  •  •  •  Preparation from starting materials already containing the pyranthrene nucleus
3/46 •  •  •  •  •  •  by halogenation
3/48 •  •  •  •  •  •  Amino derivatives
3/50 •  •  •  •  •  •  Dibenzopyrenequinones
3/52 •  •  •  •  •  •  Preparation by synthesis of the nucleus
3/54 •  •  •  •  •  •  Preparation from starting materials already containing the dibenzopyrenequinone nucleus
3/56 •  •  •  •  •  •  Amino derivatives
3/58 •  •  •  •  •  •  Benzanthrenes
3/60 •  •  •  •  •  •  Anthanthrones
3/62 •  •  •  •  •  •  Preparation by synthesis of the nucleus
3/64 •  •  •  •  •  •  Preparation from starting materials already containing the anthanthrene nucleus
3/66 •  •  •  •  •  •  by halogenation
3/68 •  •  •  •  •  •  Amino derivatives
3/70 •  •  •  •  •  •  Benzo-, naphtho-, or anthra-dianthrenes
3/72 •  •  •  •  •  •  Preparation by synthesis of the nucleus
3/74 •  •  •  •  •  •  Preparation from starting materials already containing the benzo-, naphtho-, or anthra-dianthrene nucleus
3/76 •  •  •  •  •  •  by halogenation
3/78 •  •  •  •  •  •  Other dyes in which the anthracene nucleus is condensed with one or more carboxylic rings
3/80 •  •  •  •  •  •  Preparation by synthesis of the nucleus
3/82 •  •  •  •  •  •  Preparation from starting materials already containing the condensed anthracene nucleus

5/00  Dyes with an anthracene nucleus condensed with one or more heterocyclic rings with or without carboxylic rings

5/02 •  •  •  •  •  the heterocyclic ring being condensed in peri position
5/04 •  •  •  •  •  Pyrazolanthrones
5/06 •  •  •  •  •  Benzanthrenyl-pyrazolanthrone condensation products
5/08 •  •  •  •  •  Dipyrazolanthrones
5/10 •  •  •  •  •  Isothiazolanthrones; Isoxazolanthrones; Isoxelenolanthrones
5/12 •  •  •  •  •  Thiophenanthrones
5/14 •  •  •  •  •  Benz-azabenzanthrones (anthrapyridones)
5/16 •  •  •  •  •  Benz-diazenanthrones, e.g. anthrapyrimidones
11/00 Diaryl- or triarylmethane dyes
11/02 • derived from diarylmethanes
11/04 • derived from triarylmethanes
11/06 • Hydroxy derivatives of triarylmethanes in which at least one —OH group is bound to an aryl nucleus
11/08 • • Phthalic anhydrides
11/10 • Amino derivatives of triarylmethanes
11/12 • • without any —OH group bound to an aryl nucleus
11/14 • • Preparation from aromatic aldehydes, aromatic carboxylic acids or derivatives thereof, and aromatic amines
11/16 • • Preparation from diarylketones or diarylcarbinols
11/18 • • Preparation by oxidation

11/20 • • • Preparation from other triarylmethane derivatives
11/22 • • • containing —OH groups bound to an aryl nucleus
11/24 • • • Phthalic anhydrides containing amino groups
11/26 • • • Triarylmethane dyes in which at least one of the aromatic nuclei is heterocyclic
11/28 •Pyrones

13/00 Oxyketone dyes
13/02 • of the naphthalene series, e.g. naphthazarin
13/04 • of the pyrene series
13/06 • of the acetocephane series

Acridine, azine, oxazine, or thiazine dyes
15/00 Acridine dyes
17/00 Azine dyes
17/02 • of the benzene series
17/04 • of the naphthalene series
17/06 • Fluorindine or its derivatives
19/00 Oxazine dyes
19/02 • Bisoxazines prepared from amino quinones
21/00 Thiazine dyes

Quinoline or polymethine dyes
23/00 Methine or polymethine dyes, e.g. cyanine dyes
23/01 • characterised by the methine chain [3]
23/02 • containing an odd number of CH groups [3]
23/04 • • one CH group, e.g. cyanines, isocyanines, pseudocyanines [3]
23/06 • • • three CH groups, e.g. carbocyanines [3]
23/08 • • • more than three CH groups, e.g. polycarbocyanines [3]
23/10 • • containing an even number of CH groups [3]
23/12 • the polymethine chain being branched
23/14 • Styryl dyes
23/16 • the polymethine chain containing hetero atoms
25/00 Quinophthalenes
Monoazo dyes prepared by diazotising and coupling

characterised by the diazo component
from diazotised o-amino-hydroxy compounds
from diazotised o-amino-carboxylic acids or o-amino-sulfonic acids
from diazotised amines containing a heterocyclic ring
the heterocyclic ring containing only nitrogen as hetero atoms
the heterocyclic ring containing nitrogen and sulfur as hetero atoms
the hetero ring being a thiazole ring
the hetero ring being a thiaazole ring
from coupling components containing amino as the only directing group
Amino benzenes
coupled with diazotised anilines
Amino naphthalenes
from coupling components containing hydroxy as the only directing group
of the benzene series
Hydroxy carboxylic acids
of the naphthalene series
Naphthol-sulfonic acids
ortho-Hydroxy carbonamides
of the naphthalene series
of heterocyclic compounds
from coupling components containing both hydroxy and amino directing groups
Amino phenols
Amino naphthalens
Amino naphtolsulfonic acid
from coupling components containing a reactive methylene group
Aceto- or benzoyl-acetylarlylides
from other coupling components
from heterocyclic compounds
containing a five-membered ring with one nitrogen atom as the only ring hetero atom
containing a six-membered ring with one nitrogen atom as the only ring hetero atom
Quinolines or hydrogenated quinolines
1,2-Diazoles or hydrogenated 1,2-diazoles
Amino-1,2-diazoles
1,2-Diazalones
Diazines

Disazo or polyazo dyes of the types A → K ← B, A → B → C, or the like, prepared by diazotising and coupling

Disazo dyes
from a coupling component “C” containing a directive hydroxy group
Phenols
containing acid groups, e.g. —COOH, —SOH, —PO₃H₂, —OSO₃H, —OPO₃H₂; Salts thereof
from a coupling component “C” containing a directive hydroxy group
from other coupling components “C”
Heterocyclic components
1,2-Diazoles
Pyrazoles
Indoles
containing a six-membered ring with one nitrogen atom as the only ring hetero atom
Quinolines or hydrogenated quinolines
Trisazo dyes
from a coupling component “D” containing a directive amino group
from a coupling component “D” containing a directive hydroxy group
from a coupling component “D” containing directive hydroxy and amino groups
from other coupling components “D”
Heterocyclic compounds
Other polyazo dyes

Disazo or polyazo dyes of the types A → K ← B, A → B → C, or the like, prepared by diazotising and coupling

Disazo dyes
from a coupling component “C” containing a directive amino group
Amino benzenes
containing acid groups, e.g. —COOH, —SOH, —PO₃H₂, —OSO₃H, —OPO₃H₂; Salts thereof
from other coupling components “C” containing a directive hydroxy group
Amino naphtalenes

IPC (2014.01), Section C
33/13  •  •  •  the coupling component being a bis-
pyrazolone [3]
33/147  •  •  •  in which the coupling component is a bis-(o-
hydroxy carboxylic acid amide) [3]
33/153  •  •  •  in which the coupling component is a bis-(aceto-
acetyl amide) or a bis-(benzoyl-acetylamide) [3]
33/16  •  •  •  from other coupling components
33/18  •  Trisazo or higher polyazo dyes
33/22  •  •  •  Trisazo dyes of the type A → B → K ← C [3]
\[ A \rightarrow_{K}^{B} \]
33/24  •  •  •  Trisazo dyes of the type [3]
33/26  •  •  •  Tetrazo dyes of the type A → B → C → K ← D [3]
33/28  •  •  •  Tetrazo dyes of the type A → B → K → C ← D [3]
\[ A \rightarrow_{K}^{B} \]
33/30  •  •  •  Tetrazo dyes of the type [3]
33/32  •  •  •  Tetrazo dyes of the type [3]
35/00  •  Disazo or polyazo dyes of the type A → D → B
prepared by diazotising and coupling
35/02  •  Disazo dyes
35/021  •  •  •  characterised by two coupling components of
the same type [3]
35/023  •  •  •  in which the coupling component is a hydroxy
or polyhydroxy compound [3]
35/025  •  •  •  in which the coupling component is an amine
or polyamine [3]
35/027  •  •  •  in which the coupling component is a hydroxy-
amino compound [3]
35/029  •  •  •  •  Amino naphthol [3]
35/03  •  in which the coupling component is a
heterocyclic compound [3]
35/031  •  •  •  containing a six-membered ring with one
nitrogen atom as the only ring hetero
atom [3]
35/033  •  •  •  in which the coupling component is an
arylamide of an o-hydroxy carboxylic acid or of
a beta-keto-carboxylic acid [3]
35/035  •  •  •  in which the coupling component contains an
activated methylene group [3]
35/037  •  •  •  characterised by two coupling components of
different types [3]
35/039  •  •  •  characterised by the tetrazo component [3]
35/04  •  •  •  the tetrazo component being a benzene
derivative [3]
35/06  •  •  •  the tetrazo component being a naphthalene
derivative [3]
35/08  •  •  •  the tetrazo component being a derivative of
biphenyl [3]
35/10  •  •  •  •  from two coupling components of the same
type [3]
35/12  •  •  •  •  from amines [3]
35/14  •  •  •  •  from hydroxy compounds [3]
35/16  •  •  •  •  from hydroxy amines [3]
35/18  •  •  •  •  from heterocyclic compounds [3]
35/20  •  •  •  •  from two coupling components of different
types [3]
35/205  •  •  •  •  the tetrazo component being a derivative of a
diaryl- or triaryl-alkane or -alkene [3]
35/21  •  •  •  •  of diarylmethane or triarylmethane [3]
35/215  •  •  •  •  of diarylethane or diarylethene [3]
35/22  •  •  •  •  the tetrazo component being a derivative of a
diaryl ether [3]
35/227  •  •  •  •  the tetrazo component being a derivative of a
diaryl sulfite or diaryl polysulfide [3]
35/233  •  •  •  •  the tetrazo component being a derivative of a
diaryl ketone or benzil [3]
35/24  •  •  •  •  the tetrazo component being a derivative of a
diaryl amine [3]
35/26  •  •  •  •  •  the tetrazo component containing two aryl
nuclei linked by at least one of the groups
—CON, —SO_{2}N, —SO_{2}, or —SO_{2}O— [3]
35/30  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  from two identical coupling components [3]
35/32  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  from different coupling components [3]
35/34  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  the tetrazo component being heterocyclic [3]
35/35  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  Trisazo dyes in which the tetrazo component is a
diamino-azo-aryl compound [3]
35/36  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  Trisazo dyes of the type E
35/362  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  D is benzene [3]
35/364  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  D is naphthalene [3]
35/366  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  D is diphenyl [3]
35/368  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  D is a diarylether, a diarylsulfide or a
diarylpoly sulfide [3]
35/37  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  D is a diaminethane [3]
35/372  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  D is a diarylurea [3]
35/374  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  D contains two aryl nuclei linked by at least one of
the groups —CON, —SO_{2}N, —SO_{2}, or —SO_{2}O— [3]
35/376  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  D is a heterocyclic compound [3]
35/378  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  Trisazo dyes of the type
35/38  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  Trisazo dyes of the types
35/40  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  the component K being a dihydroxy or
polyhydroxy compound
35/42  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  the component K being a diamine or polyamine
35/44  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  the component K being a hydroxy amine
35/46  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  the component K being an amino naphthol
35/48  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  the component K being heterocyclic
35/50  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  Tetrazo dyes
35/52  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  of the type
35/54  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  of the type
35/56  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  of the type
35/58  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  of the type
35/60  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  of the type
35/62  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  •  of the type
Azo dyes prepared by coupling the diazotised amine with itself

Other azo dyes prepared by diazotising and coupling

Special methods of performing the coupling reaction

Preparation of azo dyes from other azo compounds

43/02
• by sulfonation

43/04
• by nitration

43/06
• by oxidation

43/08
• by reduction (deamination C09B 43/44)

43/10
• with formation of a new azo or an azoxy bridge

43/11
• by introducing hydrocarbon radicals or substituted hydrocarbon radicals on primary or secondary amino groups (formation of an amino group by reduction, e.g. of a nitro group, C09B 43/08) [3]

43/12
• by acylation of amino groups

43/124
• with monocarboxylic acids, carbamic esters or halides, monoisocyanates, or haloformaldhyde esters [3]

43/128
• Aliphatic, cycloaliphatic or araliphatic acids [3]

43/132
• having the carbonyl group directly attached to an aromatic carboxylic ring [3]

43/136
• with polyfunctional acylating agents [3]

43/14
• with phosgene or thio phosgene [3]

43/145
• with polycarboxylic acids [3]

43/15
• with formation of cyclic imides of ortho- or peri-dicarboxylic acids [3]

43/155
• with di- or poly-isocyanates [3]

43/16
• linking amino-azo compounds with other amino compounds by cyanuric acid or cyanuric acid residues [3]

43/18
• by acylation of hydroxy groups

43/20
• with monocarboxylic acids, carbamic acid esters or halides, monoisocyanates or haloformaldehyde esters [3]

43/22
• having the carbonyl group directly attached to an aromatic carboxylic ring [3]

43/24
• with formation of —O—SO₂—R or —O—SO₃H radicals [3]

43/26
• with polyfunctional acylating agents [3]

43/28
• by etherification of hydroxy groups [3]

43/30
• by esterification of —COOH or —SO₃H groups [3]

43/32
• by reacting carboxyl or sulfoinic groups, or derivatives thereof, with amines; by reacting keto groups with amines [3]

43/34
• by reacting ortho- or peri-dicarboxylic dyes [3]

43/36
• with amino anthracene or amino anthraquinone dyes [3]

43/38
• by reacting two or more ortho-hydroxy naphthoic acid dyes with polyamines [3]

43/40
• by substituting hetero atoms by radicals containing other hetero atoms [3]

43/42
• by substituting radicals containing hetero atoms for —CN radicals [3]

43/44
• by substituting amine groups for hydroxyl groups or hydroxy groups for amine groups; Deacetylation of amino-acyl groups; Deaminating [3]

Azo dyes containing onium groups [3]

• containing ammonium groups not directly attached to an azo group [3]

• from coupling components containing amino as the only directing group [3]

• from coupling components containing hydroxyl as the only directing group [3]

• from coupling components containing heterocyclic rings [3]

• containing cycloammonium groups attached to an azo group by a carbon atom of the ring system [3]

• having one nitrogen atom as the only ring hetero atom [3]

• 1,2-Diazoles or hydrogenated 1,2-diazoles [3]

• 1,3-Diazoles or hydrogenated 1,3-diazoles [3]

• having three nitrogen atoms as the only ring hetero atoms [3]

Thiazoles or hydrogenated thiazoles [3]

Complex metal compounds of azo dyes

Preparation from dyes containing in o-position a hydroxy group and in o1-position hydroxy, alkony, carboxyl, amino, or keto groups [2]

• Azo compounds in general

• • • Chromium compounds

• • • Copper compounds

• • • Cobalt compounds

• • • other metal compounds

• • • Monoazo compounds

• • • containing chromium

• • • containing copper

• • • containing cobalt

• • • containing other metals

• • • Disazo or polyazo compounds

• • • containing chromium

• • • containing copper

• • • containing cobalt

• • • containing other metals

Preparation from o-monohydroxy azo compounds having in the o1-position an atom or functional group other than hydroxy, alkony, carboxyl, amino, or keto groups

• by oxidation of hydrogen in o1-position

• Preparation from compounds with —OH and —COOH adjacent in the same ring or in peri position

• Chromium compounds

• Copper compounds

• Cobalt compounds

• Other metal compounds

Preparation from other complex metal compounds of azo dyes

Azo dyes not provided for in groups C09B 27/00-C09B 45/00 [2]

Porphines; Azaporphines

• Phthalocyanines [3]

• Preparation from carboxylic acids or derivatives thereof [3]

• • • from phthalodinitriles [3]

• Preparation from isoindolenines [3]

• Preparation from other phthalocyanine compounds [3]
Azo dyes containing other chromophoric systems [3]

- 56/02: Azomethine-azo dyes [3]
- 56/04: Stilbene-azo dyes [3]
- 56/06: Bis- or poly-stilbene-azo dyes [3]
- 56/08: Styryl-azo dyes [3]
- 56/10: Formazane-azo dyes [3]
- 56/12: Anthraquinone-azo dyes [3]
- 56/14: Phthalocyliane-azo dyes [3]
- 56/16: Methine- or polymethine-azo dyes [3]
- 56/18: Hydrazone-azo dyes [3]
- 56/20: Triazene-azo dyes [3]

57/00 Other synthetic dyes of known constitution

- 57/02: Coumarine dyes [3]
- 57/04: Isoindoline dyes [3]
- 57/06: Naphtholactam dyes [3]
- 57/08: Naphthalimide dyes; Phthalimide dyes [3]
- 57/10: Metal complexes of organic compounds not being dyes in uncomplexed form [3]
- 57/12: Perinones, i.e. naphthylene-aryl-imidazoles [3]
- 57/14: Benzoxanthene dyes; Benzothioxanthene dyes [3]

59/00 Artificial dyes of unknown constitution

61/00 Dyes of natural origin prepared from natural sources

62/00 Reactive dyes, i.e. dyes which form covalent bonds with the substrates or which polymerise with themselves [3]

- 62/002: with the linkage of the reactive group being alternatively specified [3]
- 62/004: • Anthracene dyes [3]
- 62/006: • Azo dyes [3]
- 62/008: • • Monoazo dyes [3]
- 62/01: • • Disazo or polyazo dyes [3]
- 62/012: • • • Metal complex azo dyes [3]
- 62/014: • • • Nitro dyes [3]
- 62/016: • • • Porphines; Azaporphines [3]
- 62/018: • • • Formazane dyes [3]
- 62/02: • with the reactive group directly attached to a heterocyclic ring
  - 62/022: • the heterocyclic ring being alternatively specified [3]
  - 62/024: • • Anthracene dyes [3]
  - 62/026: • • • Azo dyes [3]
  - 62/028: • • • • Monoazo dyes [3]
  - 62/03: • • • • Disazo or polyazo dyes [3]
  - 62/032: • • • • • Metal complex azo dyes [3]
  - 62/034: • • • • • Nitro dyes [3]
  - 62/036: • • • • • Porphines; Azaporphines [3]
  - 62/038: • • • • • Formazane dyes [3]
  - 62/04: • • • • • to a triazine ring
  - 62/06: • • • • Anthracene dyes [3]
  - 62/08: • • • Azo dyes [3]
  - 62/085: • • • • • Monoazo dyes [3]
  - 62/09: • • • • • Disazo or polyazo dyes [3]
  - 62/095: • • • • • • Metal complex azo dyes [3]
  - 62/10: • • • • • • Porphines; Azaporphines [3]
  - 62/12: • • • • • • to a pyridazine ring
  - 62/14: • • • Anthracene dyes [3]
  - 62/16: • • • Azo dyes [3]
  - 62/165: • • • • Monoazo dyes [3]
  - 62/17: • • • • • Disazo or polyazo dyes [3]
  - 62/175: • • • • • • • Metal complex azo dyes [3]
  - 62/18: • • • • • • Porphines; Azaporphines [3]
  - 62/20: • • • • • • to a pyrimidine ring
  - 62/22: • • • Anthracene dyes [3]
  - 62/24: • • • Azo dyes [3]
  - 62/245: • • • • • Monoazo dyes [3]
  - 62/25: • • • • • Disazo or polyazo dyes [3]
  - 62/255: • • • • • • • Metal complex azo dyes [3]
  - 62/26: • • • • • • • Porphines; Azaporphines [3]
  - 62/28: • • • • • • • to a pyrazine ring
  - 62/30: • • • Anthracene dyes [3]
  - 62/32: • • • Azo dyes [3]
  - 62/325: • • • • • Monoazo dyes [3]
  - 62/33: • • • • • Disazo or polyazo dyes [3]

IPC (2014.01), Section C
62/335 • • • Metal complex azo dyes [3]
62/34 • • • Porphines; Azaporphines
62/343 • • to a five-membered ring [3]
62/345 • • • Anthracene dyes [3]
62/347 • • • Azo dyes [3]
62/35 • • • Monoazo dyes [3]
62/353 • • • Disazo or polyaazo dyes [3]
62/355 • • • Metal complex azo dyes [3]
62/357 • • • Porphines; Azaporphines [3]
62/36 • • • to some other heterocyclic ring
62/38 • • • Anthracene dyes
62/40 • • • Azo dyes
62/405 • • • Monoazo dyes [3]
62/41 • • • Disazo or polyaazo dyes [3]
62/415 • • • Metal complex azo dyes [3]
62/42 • • • Porphines; Azaporphines
62/44 • • • with the reactive group not directly attached to a heterocyclic ring
62/443 • • • the reactive group being alternatively specified [3]
62/445 • • • Anthracene dyes [3]
62/447 • • • Azo dyes [3]
62/45 • • • Monoazo dyes [3]
62/453 • • • Disazo or polyaazo dyes [3]
62/455 • • • Metal complex azo dyes [3]
62/457 • • • Porphines; Azaporphines [3]
62/463 • • • Formazane dyes [3]
62/465 • • • the reactive group being an acryloyl group, a quaternised or non-quaternised aminoalkyl carbonyl group, or a (—N)—CO—A—O—X or (—N)—CO—A—Hal group, wherein A is an alkylene or alkylidene group, X is hydrogen or an acyl radical of an organic or inorganic acid, Hal is a halogen atom, and n is 0 or 1 [3]
62/467 • • • Anthracene dyes [3]
62/47 • • • Azo dyes [3]
62/473 • • • Monoazo dyes [3]
62/475 • • • Disazo or polyaazo dyes [3]
62/477 • • • Metal complex azo dyes [3]
62/483 • • • Porphines; Azaporphines [3]
62/485 • • • the reactive group being a halo-cyclobutylcarbonyl, halo-cyclobutyl-vinyl-carbonyl, or halo-cyclobutenyl-carbonyl group [3]
62/487 • • • Anthracene dyes [3]
62/489 • • • Azo dyes [3]
62/491 • • • Monoazo dyes [3]
62/493 • • • Disazo or polyaazo dyes [3]
62/495 • • • Metal complex azo dyes [3]
62/497 • • • Porphines; Azaporphines [3]
62/503 • • • the reactive group being an esterified or non-esterified hydroxalkyl sulfonyl or mercaptoalkyl sulfonyl group, a quaternised or non-quaternised aminoalkyl sulfonyl group, a heterylmercapto alkyl sulfonyl group, a vinyl sulfonyl or a substituted vinyl sulfonyl group, or a thiophene-dioxide group [3]
62/505 • • • Anthracene dyes [3]
62/507 • • • Azo dyes [3]
62/51 • • • Monoazo dyes [3]
62/513 • • • Disazo or polyaazo dyes [3]
62/515 • • • Metal complex azo dyes [3]
62/517 • • • Porphines; Azaporphines [3]
62/523 • • • the reactive group being an esterified or non-esterified hydroxalkyl sulfonyl amido or hydroxalkyl amino sulfonyl group, a quaternised or non-quaternised amino alkyl sulfonyl amido group, or a substituted alkyl amino sulfonyl group, or a halogen alkyl sulfonyl amido or halogen alkyl amino sulfonyl group or a vinyl sulfonylamido or a substituted vinyl sulfonamido group [3]
62/525 • • • Anthracene dyes [3]
62/527 • • • Azo dyes [3]
62/53 • • • Monoazo dyes [3]
62/533 • • • Disazo or polyaazo dyes [3]
62/535 • • • Metal complex azo dyes [3]
62/537 • • • Porphines; Azaporphines [3]
62/54 • • • the reactive group being an epoxy or halohydrin group [3]
62/56 • • • Anthracene dyes
62/58 • • • Azo dyes
62/585 • • • Monoazo dyes [3]
62/59 • • • Disazo or polyaazo dyes [3]
62/595 • • • Metal complex azo dyes [3]
62/60 • • • Porphines; Azaporphines
62/62 • • • the reactive group being an ethylenimino or N-acylated ethylenimino group or a —CO—NH—CH$_2$—CH$_2$—X group, wherein X is a halogen atom, a quaternary ammonium group or O-acetyl and acyl is derived from an organic or inorganic acid, or a beta-substituted ethylamine group
62/64 • • • Anthracene dyes
62/66 • • • Azo dyes
62/665 • • • Monoazo dyes [3]
62/67 • • • Disazo or polyaazo dyes [3]
62/675 • • • Metal complex azo dyes [3]
62/68 • • • Porphines; Azaporphines
62/763 • • • the reactive group being a N-methylol group or an O-derivative thereof [3]
62/765 • • • Anthracene dyes [3]
62/767 • • • Azo dyes [3]
62/77 • • • Monoazo dyes [3]
62/773 • • • Disazo or polyaazo dyes [3]
62/775 • • • Metal complex azo dyes [3]
62/777 • • • Porphines; Azaporphines [3]
62/78 • • • with other reactive groups
62/80 • • • Anthracene dyes
62/82 • • • Azo dyes
62/825 • • • Monoazo dyes [3]
62/83 • • • Disazo or polyaazo dyes [3]
62/835 • • • Metal complex azo dyes [3]
62/84 • • • Porphines; Azaporphines

**Lakes; Mordants; Dyestuff preparations**

63/00 Lakes

65/00 Compositions containing mordants

67/00 Influencing the physical, e.g. the dyeing or printing, properties of dyestuffs without chemical reaction, e.g. by treating with solvents; Process features in the making of dyestuff preparations; Dyestuff preparations of a special physical nature, e.g. tablets, films

67/02 • Dyestuff preparations characterised by special physical forms, e.g. tablets, films [3]
C09B

67/04 • Grinding or milling (C09B 67/14 takes precedence) [3]
67/06 • Drying [3]
67/08 • Coated particulate pigments or dyes [3]
67/10 • Influencing the physical properties by treatment with a liquid, e.g. solvents (C09B 67/14, C09B 67/18, C09B 67/20 take precedence) [3]
67/12 • • of phthalocyanines [3]
67/14 • Influencing the physical properties by treatment with an acid [3]
67/16 • • of phthalocyanines [3]
67/18 • Influencing the physical properties by treatment with an amine [3]
67/20 • Preparations of organic pigments [3]
67/22 • Mixtures of different pigments or dyes or solid solutions of pigments or dyes [3]
67/24 • Preparations of acid dyes or reactive dyes [3]
67/26 • • in liquid form [3]
67/28 • Preparations of vat or sulfur dyes [3]
67/30 • • in liquid form [3]
67/32 • Preparations of cationic or basic dyes [3]
67/34 • • in liquid form [3]
67/36 • Azoic dyestuff preparations [3]
67/38 • Preparations of disperse dyes [3]
67/40 • • in liquid form [3]
67/42 • Preparations of dyes not provided for in a single one of groups C09B 67/24-C09B 67/40 [3]
67/44 • • Solutions [3]
67/46 • • Dispersions [3]
67/48 • • Crystalline modifications of pigments or dyestuff (C09B 67/24 takes precedence) [3]
67/50 • • of phthalocyanines [3]
67/52 • • of quinacridones [3]
67/54 • Separation; Purification (C09B 67/06, C09B 67/10 take precedence) [3]

C09C

TREATMENT OF INORGANIC MATERIALS, OTHER THAN FIBROUS FILLERS, TO ENHANCE THEIR PIGMENTING OR FILLING PROPERTIES (preparation of inorganic compounds or non-metallic elements C01; treatment of materials specially adapted to enhance their filling properties in mortars, concrete or artificial stone C04B 14/00, C04B 18/00, C04B 20/00); PREPARATION OF CARBON BLACK [4]

Note(s)

In this subclass, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, a compound is classified in the last appropriate place.

1/00 Treatment of specific inorganic materials other than fibrous fillers (luminescent or tenebrescent materials C09K); Preparation of carbon black
1/02 • Compounds of alkaline earth metals or magnesium
1/04 • Compounds of zinc
1/06 • Lithopone
1/08 • Zinc chromate
1/10 • Compounds of cadmium
1/12 • Cadmium sulfoselenide
1/14 • Compounds of lead
1/16 • White lead
1/18 • Red lead
1/20 • Lead chromate
1/22 • Compounds of iron
1/24 • Oxides of iron
1/26 • Iron blues
1/28 • Compounds of silicon
1/30 • Silicic acid
1/32 • Ultramarine
1/34 • Compounds of chromium
1/36 • Compounds of titanium
1/38 • Compounds of mercury
1/40 • Compounds of aluminium
1/42 • • Clays (preparatory treatment for clay-wares C04B 33/04)
1/44 • Carbon
1/46 • Graphite (preparation of graphite C01B 31/04)
1/48 • • Carbon black
1/50 • • Furnace black
1/52 • • Channel black
1/54 • • Acetylene black; thermal black
1/56 • • Treatment of carbon black
1/58 • • • Agglomerating, pelleting, or the like by wet methods
1/60 • • • Agglomerating, pelleting, or the like by dry methods
1/62 • • Metallic pigments or fillers (obtaining metal powder, see the relevant class for the method used, e.g. B22F 9/00, C21B 15/02, C22B 5/20, C25C 5/00)
1/64 • • Aluminium
1/66 • • Copper alloys, e.g. bronze
1/68 • Loose abrasive particles

3/00 Treatment in general of inorganic materials, other than fibrous fillers, to enhance their pigmentation or filling properties (dyeing other macromolecular particles C08J 3/20; dyeing macromolecular fibres D06P)
3/04 • Physical treatment, e.g. grinding, treatment with ultrasonic vibrations [2]
3/06 • Treatment with inorganic compounds [2]
3/08 • Treatment with low-molecular-weight organic compounds [2]
3/10 • Treatment with macromolecular organic compounds [2]
3/12 • Treatment with organosilicon compounds [2]
C09D  COATING COMPOSITIONS, e.g. PAINTS, VARNISHES OR LACQUERS; FILLING PASTES; CHEMICAL PAINT OR INK REMOVERS; INKS; CORRECTING FLUIDS; WOODSTAINS; PASTES OR SOLIDS FOR COLOURING OR PRINTING; USE OF MATERIALS THEREFOR (cosmetics A61K; processes for applying liquids or other fluent materials to surfaces, in general, B05D; staining wood B27K 5/02; glazes or vitreous enamels C03C; natural resins, French polish, drying-oils, driers, turpentine, see C09F; polishing compositions other than French polish, ski waxes C09G; adhesives or use of materials as adhesives C09J; materials for sealing or packing joints or covers C09K 3/10; materials for stopping leaks C09K 3/12; processes for the electrolytic or electrophoretic production of coatings C25D) [S]

Note(s)

1. In this subclass, the following terms or expressions are used with the meanings indicated:
   - "use of materials for coating compositions" means the use of known or new polymers or products;
   - "rubber" includes:
     a. natural or conjugated diene rubbers;
     b. rubber in general (for a specific rubber, other than a natural rubber or a conjugated diene rubber, see the group provided for coating compositions based on such macromolecular compounds);
   - "based on" is defined by means of Note (3), below;
   - "filling pastes" means materials used to fill up the holes or cavities of a substrate in order to smooth its surface prior to coating.

2. In this subclass, coating compositions, containing specific organic macromolecular substances are classified only according to the macromolecular substance, non-macromolecular substances not being taken into account.

   Example: a coating composition containing polyethylene and amino-propyltrimethoxysilane is classified in group C09D 123/06.
   However, coating compositions containing combinations of organic non-macromolecular compounds having at least one polymerisable carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bond with prepolymer or polymers other than unsaturated polymers of groups C09D 159/00-C09D 187/00 are classified according to the unsaturated non-macromolecular component in group C09D 4/00.

   Example: a coating composition containing polyethylene and styrene monomer is classified in group C09D 4/00.

   Aspects relating to the physical nature of the coating compositions or to the effects produced, as defined in group C09D 5/00, if clearly and explicitly stated, are also classified in this subclass.

   Coating compositions characterised by other features, e.g. additives, are classified in group C09D 7/00, unless the macromolecular constituent is specified.

3. In this subclass, coating compositions comprising two or more macromolecular constituents are classified according to the macromolecular constituent or constituents present in the highest proportion, i.e. the constituent on which the composition is based. If the composition is based on two or more constituents, present in equal proportions, the composition is classified according to each of these constituents.

   Example: a coating composition containing 80 parts of polyethylene and 20 parts of polyvinylchloride is classified in group C09D 123/06.
   A coating composition containing 40 parts of polyethylene and 40 parts of polyvinylchloride is classified in groups C09D 123/06 and C09D 127/06.

Subclass index

COATING COMPOSITIONS, e.g. PAINTS, VARNISHES, LACQUERS
   Based on inorganic substances................................................................. 1/00
   Based on organic macromolecular substances........................................ 101/00-201/00
   Based on organic non-macromolecular compounds having at least one polymerisable carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bond................................. 4/00
   Physical nature or effects produced, including use as filling pastes............... 5/00
   Other features................................................................. 7/00
   INKS................................................................. 11/00
   WOODSTAINS................................................................. 15/00
   CHEMICAL PAINT OR INK REMOVERS................................................................. 9/00
   CORRECTING FLUIDS................................................................. 19/00
   PASTES OR SOLIDS FOR COLOURING OR PRINTING
   Pencil-leads; crayon compositions; chalk compositions................................. 13/00
   Pigment pastes................................. 17/00

1/00  Coating compositions, e.g. paints, varnishes or lacquers, based on inorganic substances (C04B takes precedence; glazes or vitreous enamels C03C)
   1/02  • alkali metal silicates
   1/04  • with organic additives
   1/06  • cement
   1/08  • with organic additives
   1/10  • lime
   1/12  • with organic additives

4/00  Coating compositions, e.g. paints, varnishes or lacquers, based on organic non-macromolecular compounds having at least one polymerisable carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bond [S]
   4/02  • Acrylmonomers [S]
   4/04  • Cyanoacrylate monomers [S]
   4/06  • in combination with a macromolecular compound other than an unsaturated polymer of groups C09D 159/00-C09D 187/00 [S]

5/00  Coating compositions, e.g. paints, varnish or lacquers, characterised by their physical nature or the effects produced; Filling pastes [S]
11/00 Inks [1, 2014.01]
11/02 Printing inks (C09D 11/30 takes precedence) [1, 2014.01]
11/023 Emulsion inks [2014.01]
11/0235 Duplicating inks, e.g. for stencil printing [2014.01]
11/03 characterised by features other than the chemical nature of the binder [2014.01]
11/033 characterised by the solvent [2014.01]
11/037 characterised by the pigment [2014.01]
11/04 based on proteins
11/06 based on fatty oils
11/08 based on natural resins
11/10 based on artificial resins [1, 2014.01]
11/101 Inks specially adapted for printing processes involving curing by wave energy or particle radiation, e.g. with UV-curing following the printing [2014.01]
11/102 containing macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions other than those only involving unsaturated carbon-to-carbon bonds [2014.01]
11/103 of aldehydes, e.g. phenol-formaldehyde resins [2014.01]
11/104 Polymers [2014.01]
11/105 Alkyl resins [2014.01]
11/106 containing macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [2014.01]
11/107 from unsaturated acids or derivatives thereof [2014.01]
11/108 Hydrocarbon resins [2014.01]
11/12 based on waxes or bitumen
11/14 based on carbohydrates
11/16 Writing inks [1, 2014.01]
11/17 characterised by colouring agents [2014.01]
11/18 for use in ball-point writing instruments
11/20 indelible
11/30 Inkjet printing inks [2014.01]
11/32 characterised by colouring agents [2014.01]
11/322 Pigment inks [2014.01]
11/324 containing carbon black [2014.01]
11/326 characterised by the pigment dispersant [2014.01]
11/328 characterised by dyes [2014.01]
11/34 Hot-melt inks [2014.01]
11/35 based on non-aqueous solvents [2014.01]
11/38 characterised by non-macromolecular additives other than solvents, pigments or dyes [2014.01]
11/40 Ink-sets specially adapted for multi-colour inkjet printing [2014.01]
11/50 Sympathetic, colour-changing or similar inks [2014.01]
11/52 Electrically conductive inks [2014.01]
11/54 Inks based on two liquids, one liquid being the ink, the other liquid being a reaction solution, a fixer or a treatment solution for the ink [2014.01]
13/00 Pencil-leads; Crayon compositions; Chalk compositions
15/00 Woodstains [2]
17/00 Pigment pastes, e.g. for mixing in paints [2]
Coating compositions based on polysaccharides or on their derivatives [5]

Note(s) [2006.01]

1. In groups C09D 101/00-C09D 201/00, any macromolecular constituent of a coating composition which is not identified by the classification according to Note (3) after the title of subclass C09D, and the use of which is determined to be novel and non-obvious, must also be classified in a group chosen from groups C09D 101/00-C09D 201/00.

2. Any macromolecular constituent of a coating composition which is not identified by the classification according to Note (3) after the title of subclass C09D or Note (1) above, and which is considered to represent information of interest for search, may also be classified in a group chosen from groups C09D 101/00-C09D 201/00. This can for example be the case when it is considered of interest to enable searching of coating compositions using a combination of classification symbols. Such non-obligatory classification should be given as “additional information.”

101/00 Coating compositions based on cellulose, modified cellulose, or cellulose derivatives [5]

101/02 • Cellulose; Modified cellulose [5]
101/04 • Oxycellulose; Hydrocellulose [5]
101/06 • Cellulose hydrate [5]
101/08 • Cellulose derivatives [5]
101/10 • Esters of organic acids (of both organic acids and inorganic acids C09D 101/20) [5]
101/12 • Cellulose acetate [5]
101/14 • Mixed esters, e.g. cellulose acetate-butyrat [5]
101/16 • Esters of inorganic acids (of both organic acids and inorganic acids C09D 101/20) [5]
101/18 • Cellulose nitrate [5]
101/20 • Esters of both organic acids and inorganic acids [5]
101/22 • Cellulose xanthate [5]
101/24 • Viscose [5]
101/26 • Cellulose ethers [5]
101/28 • Alkyl ethers [5]
101/30 • Aryl ethers; Aralkyl ethers [5]
101/32 • Cellulose ether-esters [5]

103/00 Coating compositions based on starch, amylose or amylopectin or on their derivatives or degradation products [5]

103/02 • Starch; Degradation products thereof, e.g. dextrin [5]
103/04 • Starch derivatives [5]
103/06 • Esters [5]
103/08 • Ethers [5]
103/10 • Oxidised starch [5]
103/12 • Amylose; Amylopectin; Degradation products thereof [5]
103/14 • Amylose derivatives; Amylopectin derivatives [5]
103/16 • Esters [5]
103/18 • Ethers [5]
103/20 • Oxidised amylose; Oxidised amylopectin [5]

105/00 Coating compositions based on polysaccharides or on their derivatives, not provided for in groups C09D 101/00 or C09D 103/00 [5]

105/02 • Dextran; Derivatives thereof [5]
105/04 • Alginic acid; Derivatives thereof [5]
105/06 • Pectin; Derivatives thereof [5]
105/08 • Chitin; Chondroitin sulphate; Hyaluronic acid; Derivatives thereof [5]
105/10 • Heparin; Derivatives thereof [5]
105/12 • Agar-agar; Derivatives thereof [5]
105/14 • Hemicellulose; Derivatives thereof [5]
105/16 • Cyclodextrin; Derivatives thereof [5]

107/00 Coating composition based on natural rubber [5]

107/02 • Latex [5]

109/00 Coating compositions based on homopolymers or copolymers of conjugated diene hydrocarbons [5]

109/02 • Copolymers with acrylonitrile [5]
109/04 • Latex [5]
109/06 • Copolymers with styrene [5]
109/08 • Latex [5]
109/10 • Latex (C09D 109/04, C09D 109/08 take precedence) [5]

111/00 Coating compositions based on homopolymers or copolymers of chloroprene [5]

111/02 • Latex [5]

113/00 Coating compositions based on rubbers containing carboxyl groups [5]

113/02 • Latex [5]

115/00 Coating compositions based on rubber derivatives (C09D 111/00, C09D 113/00 take precedence) [5]

115/02 • Rubber derivatives containing halogen [5]

117/00 Coating compositions based on reclaimed rubber [5]

119/00 Coating compositions based on rubbers, not provided for in groups C09D 107/00-C09D 117/00 [5]

119/02 • Latex [5]

121/00 Coating compositions based on unspecified rubbers [5]

121/02 • Latex [5]

Coating compositions based on organic macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [5]

Note(s)

1. In groups C09D 123/00-C09D 149/00, “aliphatic radical” means an acyclic or a non-aromatic carbocyclic carbon skeleton which is considered to be terminated by every bond to:
   a. an element other than carbon;
   b. a carbon atom having a double bond to one atom other than carbon;
   c. an aromatic carbocyclic ring or a heterocyclic ring.

2. In groups C09D 123/00-C09D 149/00, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, a copolymer is classified according to the major monomeric component.
Coating compositions based on homopolymers or copolymers of unsaturated aliphatic hydrocarbons having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond; Coating compositions based on derivatives of such polymers [5]

- not modified by chemical after-treatment [5]
- Homopolymers or copolymers of ethene [5]
- Polyethylene [5]
- Copolymers of ethene (C09D 123/16 takes precedence) [5]
- Homopolymers or copolymers of propene [5]
- Polypropene [5]
- Copolymers of propene (C09D 123/16 takes precedence) [5]
- Ethene-propene or ethene-propene-diene copolymers [5]
- Homopolymers or copolymers of hydrocarbons having four or more carbon atoms [5]
- having four to nine carbon atoms [5]
- Copolymers of isobutene; Butyl rubber [5]
- having ten or more carbon atoms [5]
- modified by chemical after-treatment [5]
- by reaction with halogen or halogen-containing compounds (C09D 123/32 takes precedence) [5]
- by oxidation [5]
- by reaction with phosphorus- or sulfur-containing compounds [5]
- by chlorosulphonation [5]
- by reaction with nitrogen-containing compounds, e.g. by nitrilation [5]

Coating compositions based on homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by an aromatic carbocyclic ring; Coating compositions based on derivatives of such polymers [5]

- Homopolymers or copolymers of hydrocarbons [5]
- Homopolymers or copolymers of styrene [5]
- Polystyrene [5]
- Copolymers of styrene (C09D 129/08, C09D 135/06, C09D 155/02 take precedence) [5]
- with conjugated dienes [5]
- with unsaturated nitriles [5]
- with unsaturated esters [5]
- Homopolymers or copolymers of alkyl-substituted styrenes [5]
- Homopolymers or copolymers of aromatic monomers containing elements other than carbon and hydrogen [5]

Coating compositions based on homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by a halogen; Coating compositions based on derivatives of such polymers [5]

- not modified by chemical after-treatment [5]
- containing chlorine atoms [5]
- Homopolymers or copolymers of vinyl chloride [5]
- Homopolymers or copolymers of vinylidene chloride [5]
- containing bromine or iodine atoms [5]
- containing fluorine atoms [5]

- Homopolymers or copolymers of vinyl fluoride [5]
- Homopolymers or copolymers of vinylidene fluoride [5]
- Homopolymers or copolymers of tetrafluoroethylene [5]
- Homopolymers or copolymers of hexafluoropropene [5]
- modified by chemical after-treatment [5]
- halogenated [5]

Coating compositions based on homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by an alcohol, ether, aldehyde, ketonic, acetal, or ketal radical; Coating compositions based on hydrolysed polymers of esters of unsaturated alcohols with saturated carboxylic acids; Coating compositions based on derivatives of such polymers [5]

- Homopolymers or copolymers of unsaturated alcohols (C09D 129/14 takes precedence) [5]
- Polyvinyl alcohol; Partially hydrolysed homopolymers or copolymers of esters of unsaturated alcohols with saturated carboxylic acids [5]
- Copolymers of allyl alcohol [5]
- with vinyl aromatic monomers [5]
- Homopolymers or copolymers of unsaturated ethers (C09D 135/08 takes precedence) [5]
- Homopolymers or copolymers of unsaturated ketones [5]
- Homopolymers or copolymers of acetics or ketals obtained by polymerisation of unsaturated acetics or ketals or by after-treatment of polymers of unsaturated alcohols [5]

Coating compositions based on homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by an acyloxy radical of a saturated carboxylic acid, of carboxonic acid, or of a haloformic acid (based on hydrolysed polymers C09D 129/00); Coating compositions based on derivatives of such polymers [5]

- Homopolymers or copolymers of esters of monocarboxylic acids [5]
- Homopolymers or copolymers of vinyl acetate [5]
- Homopolymers or copolymers of esters of polycarboxylic acids [5]
- of phthalic acid [5]

Coating compositions based on homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by only one carbonyl radical, or of salts, anhydrides, esters, amides, imides, or nitriles thereof; Coating compositions based on derivatives of such polymers [5]

- Homopolymers or copolymers of acids; Metal or ammonium salts thereof [5]
- Homopolymers or copolymers of esters [5]
- of esters containing only carbon, hydrogen and oxygen, the oxygen atom being present only as part of the carboxyl radical [5]
133/08 Homopolymers or copolymers of acrylic acid esters [5]
133/10 Homopolymers or copolymers of methacrylic acid esters [5]
133/12 Homopolymers or copolymers of methyl methacrylate [5]
133/14 of esters containing halogen, nitrogen, sulfur or oxygen atoms in addition to the carboxy oxygen [5]
133/16 Homopolymers or copolymers of esters containing halogen atoms [5]
133/18 Homopolymers or copolymers of nitriles [5]
133/20 Homopolymers or copolymers of acrylonitrile (C09D 155/02 takes precedence) [5]
133/22 Homopolymers or copolymers of nitriles containing four or more carbon atoms [5]
133/24 Homopolymers or copolymers of amides or imides [5]
133/26 Homopolymers or copolymers of acrylamide or methacrylamide [5]

135/00 Coating compositions based on homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by a carboxyl radical, and containing at least another carboxyl radical in the molecule, or of salts, anhydrides, esters, amides, imides or nitriles thereof; Coating compositions based on derivatives of such polymers [5]
135/02 Homopolymers or copolymers of esters (C09D 135/06, C09D 135/08 take precedence) [5]
135/04 Homopolymers or copolymers of nitriles (C09D 135/06, C09D 135/08 take precedence) [5]
135/06 Copolymers with vinyl aromatic monomers [5]
135/08 Copolymers with vinyl ethers [5]

137/00 Coating compositions based on homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by a heterocyclic ring containing oxygen (based on polymers of cyclic esters of polyfunctional acids C09D 131/00; based on polymers of cyclic anhydrides of unsaturated acids C09D 135/00); Coating compositions based on derivatives of such polymers [5]

139/00 Coating compositions based on homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by a single or double bond to nitrogen or by a heterocyclic ring containing nitrogen; Coating compositions based on derivatives of such polymers [5]
139/02 Homopolymers or copolymers of vinylamine [5]
139/04 Homopolymers or copolymers of monomers containing heterocyclic rings having nitrogen as ring member [5]
139/06 Homopolymers or copolymers of N-vinylpyrrolidones [5]
139/08 Homopolymers or copolymers of vinylpyridine [5]

141/00 Coating compositions based on homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by a bond to sulfur or by a heterocyclic ring containing sulfur; Coating compositions based on derivatives of such polymers [5]

143/00 Coating compositions based on homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and containing boron, silicon, phosphorus, selenium, tellurium or a metal; Coating compositions based on derivatives of such polymers [5]
143/02 Homopolymers or copolymers of monomers containing phosphorus [5]
143/04 Homopolymers or copolymers of monomers containing silicon [5]

145/00 Coating compositions based on homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having no unsaturated aliphatic radicals in a side chain, and having one or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds in a carbocyclic or in a heterocyclic ring system; Coating compositions based on derivatives of such polymers (based on polymers of cyclic esters of polyfunctional acids C09D 131/00; based on polymers of cyclic anhydrides or imides C09D 135/00) [5]
145/02 Coumarone-indene polymers [5]

147/00 Coating compositions based on homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, at least one having two or more carbon-to-carbon double bonds; Coating compositions based on derivatives of such polymers (C09D 145/00 takes precedence; based on conjugated diene rubbers C09D 109/00-C09D 121/00) [5]

149/00 Coating compositions based on homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more carbon-to-carbon triple bonds; Coating compositions based on derivatives of such polymers [5]

151/00 Coating compositions based on graft polymers in which the grafted component is obtained by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds (based on ABS polymers C09D 155/02); Coating compositions based on derivatives of such polymers [5]
151/02 grafted on to polysaccharides [5]
151/04 grafted on to rubbers [5]
151/06 grafted on to homopolymers or copolymers of aliphatic hydrocarbons containing only one carbon-to-carbon double bond [5]
151/08 grafted on to macromolecular compounds obtained otherwise than by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [5]
151/10 grafted on to inorganic materials [5]

153/00 Coating compositions based on block copolymers containing at least one sequence of a polymer obtained by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds; Coating compositions based on derivatives of such polymers [5]
153/02 Vinyl aromatic monomers and conjugated dienes [5]
Coating compositions based on homopolymers or copolymers, obtained by polymerisation reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds, not provided for in groups C09D 123/00-C09D 153/00 [5]

155/04 • Polyadducts obtained by the diene synthesis [5]

157/00 Coating compositions based on unspecifed polymers obtained by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [5]
157/02 • Copolymers of mineral oil hydrocarbons [5]
157/04 • Copolymers in which only the monomer in minority is defined [5]
157/06 • Homopolymers or copolymers containing elements other than carbon and hydrogen [5]
157/08 • containing halogen atoms [5]
157/10 • containing oxygen atoms [5]
157/12 • containing nitrogen atoms [5]

Coating compositions based on organic macromolecular compounds obtained otherwise than by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [5]

159/00 Coating compositions based on polyacetals; Coating compositions based on derivatives of polyacetals [5]
159/02 • Polyacetals containing polyoxymethylene sequence only [5]
159/04 • Copolyoxymethylene [5]

161/00 Coating compositions based on condensation polymers of aldehydes or ketones (with polyalcohols C09D 159/00; with polyvinylires C09D 177/00); Coating compositions based on derivatives of such polymers [5]
161/02 • Condensation polymers of aldehydes or ketones only [5]
161/04 • Condensation polymers of aldehydes or ketones with phenols only [5]
161/06 • of aldehydes with phenols [5]
161/08 • • • with monohydric phenols [5]
161/10 • • • Phenol-formaldehyde condensates [5]
161/12 • • • polyhydric phenols [5]
161/14 • • • Modified phenol-aldehyde condensates [5]
161/16 • • • of ketones with phenols [5]
161/18 • Condensation polymers of aldehydes or ketones with aromatic hydrocarbons or their halogen derivatives only [5]
161/20 • Condensation polymers of aldehydes or ketones with only compounds containing hydrogen attached to nitrogen (with amino phenols C09D 161/04) [5]
161/22 • • • of aldehydes with acyclic or carbocyclic compounds [5]
161/24 • • • with urea or thiourea [5]
161/26 • • • of aldehydes with heterocyclic compounds [5]
161/28 • • • with melamine [5]
161/30 • • • of aldehydes with heterocyclic and acyclic or carbocyclic compounds [5]
161/32 • • • Modified amine-aldehyde condensates [5]
161/34 • Condensation polymers of aldehydes or ketones with monomers covered by at least two of the groups C09D 161/04, C09D 161/18 and C09D 161/20 [5]

163/00 Coating compositions based on epoxy resins; Coating compositions based on derivatives of epoxy resins [5]
163/02 • Polyglycidyl ethers of bis-phenols [5]
163/04 • Epoxynovolacs [5]
163/06 • Triglycidylisocyanurates [5]
163/08 • Epoxidised polymerised polyes [5]
163/10 • Epoxy resins modified by unsaturated compounds [5]

Notes
In groups C09D 165/00-C09D 185/00, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, coating compositions based on macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions forming two different linkages in the main chain are classified only according to the linkage present in excess.

165/00 Coating compositions based on macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions forming a carbon-to-carbon link in the main chain (C09D 107/00-C09D 157/00, C09D 161/00 take precedence); Coating compositions based on derivatives of such polymers [5]
165/02 • Polyphenylenes [5]
165/04 • Polyxylylenes [5]

167/00 Coating compositions based on polyesters obtained by reactions forming a carboxylic ester link in the main chain (based on polyester-amides C09D 177/12; based on polyester-imides C09D 179/08); Coating compositions based on derivatives of such polymers [5]
167/02 • Polysters derived from dicarboxylic acids and dihydroxy compounds (C09D 167/06 takes precedence) [5]
167/03 • the dicarboxylic acids and dihydroxy compounds having the hydroxy and the carboxyl groups directly linked to aromatic rings [5]
167/04 • Polysters derived from hydroxy carboxylic acids, e.g. lactones (C09D 167/06 takes precedence) [5]
167/06 • Unsaturated polyesters having carbon-to-carbon unsaturation [5]
167/07 • having terminal carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [5]
167/08 • Polysters modified with higher fatty oils or their acids, or with natural resins or resin acids [5]

169/00 Coating compositions based on polycarbonates; Coating compositions based on derivatives of polycarbonates [5]

171/00 Coating compositions based on polyethers obtained by reactions forming an ether link in the main chain (based on polyacetals C09D 159/00; on epoxy resins C09D 163/00; on polythioether-ethers C09D 181/02; on polyethersulfones C09D 181/06); Coating compositions based on derivatives of such polymers [5]
171/02 • Polyalkylene oxides [5]
171/03 • Polyepihalohydrins [5]
171/08 • Polysters derived from hydroxy compounds or from their metallic derivatives (C09D 171/02 takes precedence) [5]
171/10 • from phenols [5]
171/12 • • • Polyphenylene oxides [5]
171/14 • • • Furfuryl alcohol polymers [5]

173/00 Coating compositions based on macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions forming a linkage containing oxygen or oxygen and carbon in the main chain, not provided for in groups C09D 159/00-C09D 171/00; Coating compositions based on derivatives of such polymers [5]
173/02 • Polyanhydrides [5]

175/00 Coating compositions based on polyureas or polyurethanes; Coating compositions based on derivatives of such polymers [5]
175/02 • Polyureas [5]
175/04 • Polyurethanes [5]
175/06 • from polyesters [5]
175/08 • from polyethers [5]
175/10 • from polyacetals [5]
175/12 • from compounds containing nitrogen and active hydrogen, the nitrogen atom not being part of an isocyanate group [5]
175/14 • Polyurethanes having carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [5]
175/16 • • having terminal carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [5]

177/00 Coating compositions based on polyamides obtained by reactions forming a carboxylic amide link in the main chain (based on polyhydrazides C09D 179/06; based on polyamide-imides C09D 179/08); Coating compositions based on derivatives of such polymers [5]
177/02 • Polyamides derived from omega-amino carboxylic acids or from lactams thereof (C09D 177/10 takes precedence) [5]
177/04 • Polyamides derived from alpha-amino carboxylic acids (C09D 177/10 takes precedence) [5]
177/06 • Polyamides derived from polyamines and polycarboxylic acids (C09D 177/10 takes precedence) [5]
177/08 • • from polyamines and polymerised unsaturated fatty acids [5]
177/10 • Polyamides derived from aromatically bound amino and carbonyl groups of amino carboxylic acids or of polyamines and polycarboxylic acids [5]
177/12 • Polyester-amides [5]

179/00 Coating compositions based on macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions forming in the main chain of the macromolecule a linkage containing nitrogen, with or without oxygen, or carbon only, not provided for in groups C09D 161/00-C09D 177/00 [5]
179/02 • Polyamides [5]
179/04 • Polycondensates having nitrogen-containing heterocyclic rings in the main chain; Polyhydrazides; Polyamide acids or similar polyimide precursors [5]
179/06 • Polyhydrazides; Polytetrazoles; Polyanimotriazoles; Polyoxadiazoles [5]
179/08 • Polyimides; Polyester-imides; Polyamide-imides; Polyamide acids or similar polyimide precursors [5]

181/00 Coating compositions based on macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions forming in the main chain of the macromolecule a linkage containing sulfur, with or without nitrogen, oxygen, or carbon only; Coating compositions based on polysulfones; Coating compositions based on derivatives of such polymers [5]
181/02 • Polythioethers; Polythioether-ethers [5]
181/04 • Polysulfides [5]
181/06 • Polysulfones; Polyethersulfones [5]
181/08 • Polysulfonates [5]
181/10 • Polysulfonamides; Polysulfonimidates [5]

183/00 Coating compositions based on macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions forming in the main chain of the macromolecule a linkage containing silicon, with or without sulfur, nitrogen, oxygen, or carbon only; Coating compositions based on derivatives of such polymers [5]
183/02 • Polysilicates [5]
183/04 • Polysiloxanes [5]
183/05 • containing silicon bound to hydrogen [5]
183/06 • containing silicon bound to oxygen-containing groups (C09D 183/12 takes precedence) [5]
183/07 • containing silicon bound to unsaturated aliphatic groups [5]
183/08 • containing silicon bound to organic groups containing atoms other than carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen [5]
183/10 • Block or graft copolymers containing polysiloxane sequences (obtained by polymerising a compound having a carbon-to-carbon double bond on to a polysiloxane C09D 151/08, C09D 153/00) [5]
183/12 • • containing polyether sequences [5]
183/14 • in which at least two but not all the silicon atoms are connected by linkages other than oxygen atoms (C09D 183/10 takes precedence) [5]
183/16 • in which all the silicon atoms are connected by linkages other than oxygen atoms [5]

185/00 Coating compositions based on macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions forming in the main chain of the macromolecule a linkage containing atoms other than silicon, sulfur, nitrogen, oxygen, and carbon; Coating compositions based on derivatives of such polymers [5]
185/02 • containing phosphorus [5]
185/04 • containing boron [5]

187/00 Coating compositions based on unspecified macromolecular compounds, obtained otherwise than by polymerisation reactions only involving unsaturated carbon-to-carbon bonds [5]

Coating compositions based on natural macromolecular compounds or on derivatives thereof [5]

189/00 Coating compositions based on proteins; Coating compositions based on derivatives thereof [5]
189/02 • Casein-aldehyde condensates [5]
189/04 • Products derived from waste materials, e.g. horn, hoof or hair [5]
189/06 • • derived from leather or skin [5]

191/00 Coating compositions based on oils, fats or waxes; Coating compositions based on derivatives thereof (polishing compositions, ski waxes C09G) [5]
191/02 • Vulcanised oils, e.g. factice [5]
191/04 • Linoxyn [5]
191/06 • Waxes [5]
191/08 • • Mineral waxes [5]

193/00 Coating compositions based on natural resins; Coating compositions based on derivatives thereof (based on polysaccharides C09D 101/00-C09D 105/00; based on natural rubber C09D 107/00; polishing compositions C09G) [5]
193/02 • Shellac [5]
193/04 • Rosin [5]
Coating compositions based on bituminous materials, e.g. asphalt, tar or pitch [5]

Coating compositions based on lignin-containing materials (based on polysaccharides C09D 101/00-C09D 105/00) [5]

Lignocellulosic material, e.g. wood, straw or bagasse [5]

Coating compositions based on natural macromolecular compounds or on derivatives thereof, not provided for in groups C09D 101/00-C09D 107/00 or C09D 189/00-C09D 197/00 [5]

Coating compositions based on unspecified macromolecular compounds [5]

characterised by the presence of specified groups [5]

containing halogen atoms [5]

containing oxygen atoms [5]

Carboxyl groups [5]

containing hydrolysable silane groups [5]

Obtaining, purification, or chemical modification of natural resins, e.g. oleo-resins

Purification

Chemical modification, e.g. esterification

Obtaining spirits of turpentine

as a by-product in the paper-pulping process

Obtaining drying-oils

from natural sources

from cashew nuts

by dehydration of hydroxylated fatty acids or oils

by esterification of fatty acids

Chemical modification of drying-oils

by oxidising

by volatilising

by polymerisation

by isomerisation

by re-esterification

Apparatus therefor

Compounds to be used as driers (siccatives)

Preparation of French polish

Polishing compositions (French polish C09F 11/00; detergents C11D)

containing abrasives or grinding agents

Aqueous dispersions (C09G 1/02 takes precedence)

Other polishing compositions

based on wax

based on mixtures of wax and natural or synthetic resin

Ski waxes

Pretreatment of collagen-containing raw materials for the manufacture of glue

of bones (defatting bones C11B)

of hides, hoofs, or leather scrap (recovery of tanning agents C14C)

Isolation of glue or gelatine from raw materials, e.g. by extracting, by heating (gelatine for foodstuffs A23J 1/10)

Purification of solutions of gelatine

Stabilisation of solutions of glue or gelatine

Preparation of water-insoluble gelatine

Drying of glue or gelatine

in the form of foils

in the form of granules, e.g. beads
C09J  ADHESIVES; NON-MECHANICAL ASPECTS OF ADHESIVE PROCESSES IN GENERAL; ADHESIVE PROCESSES NOT PROVIDED FOR ELSEWHERE; USE OF MATERIALS AS ADHESIVES (surgical adhesives A61L 24/00; adhesives on the basis of non specified organic macromolecular compounds used as bonding agents in layered products B32B; labelling fabrics or comparable materials or articles with deformable surface using adhesives and thermo-activatable adhesives respectively B65C 5/02; B65C 5/04; preparation of glue or gelatine C09H; adhesive labels, tag tickets or similar identification of indication means G09F 3/10) [5]

Note(s)
1. In this subclass, the following terms or expressions are used with the meanings indicated:
   a. "rubber" includes:
      a. natural or conjugated diene rubbers;
      b. rubber in general (for a specific rubber, other than a natural rubber or a conjugated diene rubber, see the group provided for adhesives based on such macromolecular compounds);
   b. "based on" is defined by means of Note (3), below.
2. In this subclass, adhesives containing specific organic macromolecular substances are classified only according to the macromolecular substance, non-macromolecular substances not being taken into account.
   Example: an adhesive containing polyethylene and amino-propyltrimethoxysilane is classified in group C09J 123/06.
   However, adhesives containing combinations of organic non-macromolecular compounds having at least one polymerisable carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bond with prepolymer or polymers other than unsaturated polymers of groups C09J 159/00-C09J 187/00 are classified according to the unsaturated non-macromolecular component in group C09J 4/00.
   Example: an adhesive containing polyethylene and styrene monomer is classified in group C09J 4/00.
   Aspects relating to the physical nature of the adhesives or to the effects produced, as defined in group C09J 9/00, if clearly and explicitly stated, are also classified in this subclass.
   Adhesives characterised by other features, e.g. additives, are classified in group C09J 11/00, unless the macromolecular constituent is specified.
3. In this subclass, adhesives comprising two or more macromolecular constituents are classified according to the macromolecular constituent or constituents present in the highest proportion, i.e. the constituent on which the adhesive is based. If the adhesive is based on two or more constituents, present in equal proportions, the adhesive is classified according to each of these constituents.
   Example: an adhesive containing 80 parts of polyethylene and 20 parts of polyvinylchloride is classified in group C09J 123/06. An adhesive containing 40 parts of polyethylene and 40 parts of polyvinylchloride is classified in groups C09J 123/06 and C09J 127/06.

Subclass index
ADHESIVES
   Based on inorganic constituents.................................................................1/00
   Based on organic macromolecular constituents ...........................................101/00-201/00
   Based on organic non-macromolecular compounds having at least one polymerisable carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bond..................................................4/00
   Physical nature or effects produced...........................................................9/00
   Other features, e.g. additives.................................................................11/00
ADHESIVE PROCESSES IN GENERAL; ADHESIVE PROCESSES NOT PROVIDED FOR ELSEWHERE.................................................................5/00
ADHESIVES IN THE FORM OF FILMS OR FOILS.................................................7/00
Adhesives based on polysaccharides or on their derivatives [5]

Note(s)
1. In groups C09J 101/00-C09J 201/00, any macromolecular constituent of an adhesive composition which is not identified by the classification according to Note (3) after the title of subclass C09J, and the use of which is determined to be novel and non-obvious, must also be classified in a group chosen from groups C09J 101/00-C09J 201/00.
2. Any macromolecular constituent of an adhesive composition which is not identified by the classification according to Note (3) after the title of subclass C09J or Note (1) above, and which is considered to represent information of interest for search, may also be classified in a group chosen from groups C09J 101/00-C09J 201/00. This can, for example, be the case when it is considered of interest to enable searching of adhesive compositions using a combination of classification symbols. Such non-obligatory classification should be given as “additional information”.

101/00 Adhesives based on cellulose, modified cellulose, or cellulose derivatives [5]

101/02 • Cellulose; Modified cellulose [5]
101/04 • Oxycellulose; Hydrocellulose [5]
101/06 • Cellulose hydrate [5]
101/08 • Cellulose derivatives [5]
101/10 • Esters of organic acids (of both organic acids and inorganic acids C09J 101/20) [5]
101/12 • Cellulose acetate [5]
101/14 • Mixed esters, e.g. cellulose acetate-butyrate [5]
101/16 • Esters of inorganic acids (of both organic acids and inorganic acids C09J 101/20) [5]
101/18 • Cellulose nitrate [5]
101/20 • Esters of both organic acids and inorganic acids [5]
101/22 • Cellulose xanthate [5]
101/24 • Viscose [5]
101/26 • Cellulose ethers [5]
101/28 • Alkyl ethers [5]
101/30 • Aryl ethers; Aralkyl ethers [5]
101/32 • Cellulose ether-esters [5]

103/00 Adhesives based on starch, amylose or amylopectin or on their derivatives or degradation products [5]

103/02 • Starch; Degradation products thereof, e.g. dextrin [5]
103/04 • Starch derivatives [5]
103/06 • Esters [5]
103/08 • Ethers [5]
103/10 • Oxidised starch [5]
103/12 • Amylose; Amylopectin; Degradation products thereof [5]
103/14 • Amylose derivatives; Amylopectin derivatives [5]
103/16 • Esters [5]
103/18 • Ethers [5]
103/20 • Oxidised amylose; Oxidised amylopectin [5]

105/00 Adhesives based on polysaccharides or on their derivatives, not provided for in groups C09J 101/00 or C09J 103/00 [5]

105/02 • Dextran; Derivatives thereof [5]
105/04 • Alginic acid; Derivatives thereof [5]
105/06 • Pectin; Derivatives thereof [5]
105/08 • Chitin; Chondroitin sulfate; Hyaluronic acid; Derivatives thereof [5]
105/10 • Heparin; Derivatives thereof [5]
105/12 • Agar-agar; Derivatives thereof [5]
105/14 • Hemicellulose; Derivatives thereof [5]
105/16 • Cyclodextrin; Derivatives thereof [5]

Adhesives based on rubbers or on their derivatives [5]

107/00 Adhesives based on natural rubber [5]
107/02 • Latex [5]
109/00 Adhesives based on homopolymers or copolymers of conjugated diene hydrocarbons [5]
109/02 • Copolymers with acrylonitrile [5]
109/04 • • Latex [5]
109/06 • Copolymers with styrene [5]
109/08 • • Latex [5]
109/10 • Latex (C09J 109/04, C09J 109/08 take precedence) [5]

111/00 Adhesives based on homopolymers or copolymers of chloroprene [5]
111/02 • Latex [5]

113/00 Adhesives based on rubbers containing carboxyl groups [5]
113/02 • Latex [5]

115/00 Adhesives based on rubber derivatives (C09J 111/00, C09J 113/00 take precedence) [5]
115/02 • Rubber derivatives containing halogen [5]

117/00 Adhesives based on reclaimed rubber [5]

119/00 Adhesives based on rubbers, not provided for in groups C09J 107/00-C09J 117/00 [5]
119/02 • Latex [5]

121/00 Adhesives based on unspecified rubbers [5]
121/02 • Latex [5]

Adhesives based on organic macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [5]

Note(s) [1, 2006.01]
1. In groups C09J 123/00-C09J 149/00, “aliphatic radical” means an acyclic or a non-aromatic carbocyclic carbon skeleton which is considered to be terminated by every bond to:
   a. an element other than carbon;
   b. a carbon atom having a double bond to one atom other than carbon;
   c. an aromatic carbocyclic ring or a heterocyclic ring.
2. In groups C09J 123/00-C09J 149/00, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, a copolymer is classified according to the major monomeric component.

123/00 Adhesives based on homopolymers or copolymers of unsaturated aliphatic hydrocarbons having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond; Adhesives based on derivatives of such polymers [5]
123/02 • not modified by chemical after-treatment [5]
123/04 • Homopolymers or copolymers of ethene [5]
123/06 • • • Polyethylene [5]
123/08 • • • Copolymers of ethene (C09J 123/16 takes precedence) [5]
123/10 • • • Homopolymers or copolymers of propene [5]
123/12 • • • Polypropene [5]
123/14 • • • Copolymers of propene (C09J 123/16 takes precedence) [5]
123/16 • • • Ethene-propene or ethene-propene-diene copolymers [5]
123/18 • • • Homopolymers or copolymers of hydrocarbons having four or more carbon atoms [5]
123/20 • • • having four to nine carbon atoms [5]
123/22 • • • Copolymers of isobutene; Butyl rubber [5]
123/24 • • • having ten or more carbon atoms [5]
123/26 • • • modified by chemical after-treatment [5]
123/28 • • • by reaction with halogens or halogen-containing compounds (C09J 123/32 takes precedence) [5]
123/30 • • • by oxidation [5]
123/32 • • • by reaction with phosphorus- or sulfur-containing compounds [5]
123/34 • • • by chlorosulphonation [5]
123/36 • • • by reaction with nitrogen-containing compounds, e.g. by nitration [5]

125/00 Adhesives based on homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by an aromatic carboxylic ring; Adhesives based on derivatives of such polymers [5]
125/02 • Homopolymers or copolymers of hydrocarbons [5]
125/04 • • • Homopolymers or copolymers of styrene [5]
125/06 • • • Polystyrene [5]
125/08 • • • Copolymers of styrene (C09J 129/08, C09J 135/06, C09J 155/02 take precedence) [5]
125/10 • • • • with conjugated dienes [5]
125/12 • • • • with unsaturated nitriles [5]
125/14 • • • • with unsaturated esters [5]
125/16 • • • Homopolymers or copolymers of alkyl-substituted styrenes [5]
125/18 • Homopolymers or copolymers of aromatic monomers containing elements other than carbon and hydrogen [5]

127/00 Adhesives based on homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by a halogen; Adhesives based on derivatives of such polymers [5]
127/02 • not modified by chemical after-treatment [5]
127/04 • • • containing chlorine atoms [5]
127/06 • • • Homopolymers or copolymers of vinyl chloride [5]
127/08 • • • Homopolymers or copolymers of vinylidene chloride [5]
127/10 • • • containing bromine or iodine atoms [5]
127/12 • • • containing fluorine atoms [5]
127/14 • • • Homopolymers or copolymers of vinyl fluoride [5]
127/16 • • • Homopolymers or copolymers of vinylidene fluoride [5]
127/18 • • • Homopolymers or copolymers of tetrafluoroethylene [5]
127/20 • • • Homopolymers or copolymers of hexafluoropropene [5]
127/22 • modified by chemical after-treatment [5]
127/24 • • halogenated [5]

129/00 Adhesives based on homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by an alcohol, ether, aldehyde, ketonic, acetal, or ketal radical; Adhesives based on hydrolysed polymers of esters of unsaturated alcohols with saturated carboxylic acids; Adhesives based on derivatives of such polymers [5]
129/02 • Homopolymers or copolymers of unsaturated alcohols (C09J 129/14 takes precedence) [5]
129/04 • • Polyvinyl alcohol; Partially hydrolysed homopolymers or copolymers of esters of unsaturated alcohols with saturated carboxylic acids [5]
129/06 • • Copolymers of allyl alcohol [5]
129/08 • • • with vinyl aromatic monomers [5]
129/10 • Homopolymers or copolymers of unsaturated ethers (C09J 135/08 takes precedence) [5]
129/12 • Homopolymers or copolymers of unsaturated ketones [5]
129/14 • Homopolymers or copolymers of acetics or ketals obtained by polymerisation of unsaturated acetics or ketals or by after-treatment of polymers of unsaturated alcohols [5]

131/00 Adhesives based on homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by an aclyoxy radical of a saturated carboxylic acid, of carbonic acid, or of a haloformic acid (based on hydrolysed polymers C09J 129/00); Adhesives based on derivatives of such polymers [5]
131/02 • Homopolymers or copolymers of esters of monocarboxylic acids [5]
131/04 • • Homopolymers or copolymers of vinyl acetate [5]
131/06 • Homopolymers or copolymers of esters of polycarboxylic acids [5]
131/08 • • of phthalic acid [5]

133/00 Adhesives based on homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by only one carboxyl radical, or of salts, anhydrides, esters, amidcs, imides, or nitriles thereof; Adhesives based on derivatives of such polymers [5]
133/02 • Homopolymers or copolymers of acids; Metal or ammonium salts thereof [5]
133/04 • Homopolymers or copolymers of esters [5]
133/06 • • of esters containing only carbon, hydrogen and oxygen, the oxygen atom being present only as part of the carboxyl radical [5]
133/08 • • • Homopolymers or copolymers of acrylic acid esters [5]
133/10 • • • Homopolymers or copolymers of methacrylic acid esters [5]
133/12 • • • Homopolymers or copolymers of methyl methacrylate [5]
133/14 • • • • of esters containing halogen, nitrogen, sulfur or oxygen atoms in addition to the carboxy oxygen [5]
133/16 • • • Homopolymers or copolymers of esters containing halogen atoms [5]
Homopolymers or copolymers of nitrites [5]

Homopolymers or copolymers of acrylonitrile (C09J 155/02 takes precedence) [5]

Homopolymers or copolymers of nitrites containing four or more carbon atoms [5]

Homopolymers or copolymers of amides or imides [5]

Homopolymers or copolymers of acrylamide or methacrylamide [5]

Adhesives based on homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by a carboxylic acid, and containing at least another carboxylic acid in the molecule, or of salts, anhydrides, esters, amides, imides or nitrides thereof; Adhesives based on derivatives of such polymers [5]

Homopolymers or copolymers of esters (C09J 135/06, C09J 135/08 take precedence) [5]

Homopolymers or copolymers of nitriles (C09J 135/06, C09J 135/08 take precedence) [5]

Copolymers with vinyl aromatic monomers [5]

Copolymers with vinyl ethers [5]

Adhesives based on homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by a heterocyclic ring containing oxygen (based on polymers of cyclic esters of polyfunctional acids C09J 131/00; based on polymers of cyclic anhydrides of unsaturated acids C09J 135/00); Adhesives based on derivatives of such polymers [5]

Homopolymers or copolymers of vinylamine [5]

Homopolymers or copolymers of monomers containing heterocyclic rings having nitrogen as ring member [5]

Homopolymers or copolymers of N-vinylpyrrolidones [5]

Homopolymers or copolymers of vinylpyridine [5]

Adhesives based on homopolymers or copolymers of compounds having one or more unsaturated aliphatic radicals, each having only one carbon-to-carbon double bond, and at least one being terminated by a bond to sulfur or by a heterocyclic ring containing sulfur; Adhesives based on derivatives of such polymers [5]

Homopolymers or copolymers of monomers containing phosphorus [5]

Homopolymers or copolymers of monomers containing silicon [5]

Adhesives based on unspecified polymers obtained by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds; Adhesives based on derivatives of such polymers [5]

Vinyl aromatic monomers and conjugated dienes [5]

Adhesives based on homopolymers or copolymers, obtained by polymerisation reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds, not provided for in groups C09J 123/00-C09J 153/00 [5]


Polyadducts obtained by the diene synthesis [5]

Adhesives based on unspecified polymers obtained by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [5]

Copolymers of mineral oil hydrocarbons [5]

Copolymers in which only the monomer in minority is defined [5]

Homopolymers or copolymers containing elements other than carbon and hydrogen [5]

containing halogen atoms [5]

containing oxygen atoms [5]

containing nitrogen atoms [5]
Adhesives based on organic macromolecular compounds obtained otherwise than by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds \[5\]

159/00 Adhesives based on polycetals; Adhesives based on derivatives of polycetals \[5\]

159/02 • Polycetals containing polyoxymethylene sequences only \[5\]

159/04 • Copolyoxymethylenes \[5\]

161/00 Adhesives based on condensation polymers of aldehydes or ketones (with polyalcohols C09J 159/00; with polyanhydrides C09J 177/12); Adhesives based on derivatives of such polymers \[5\]

161/02 • Condensation polymers of aldehydes or ketones only \[5\]

161/04 • Condensation polymers of aldehydes or ketones with phenols only \[5\]

161/06 • • of aldehydes with phenols \[5\]

161/08 • • • with monohydric phenols \[5\]

161/10 • • • • Phenol-formaldehyde condensates \[5\]

161/12 • • • • with polyhydric phenols \[5\]

161/14 • • • Modified phenol-aldehyde condensates \[5\]

161/16 • • of ketones with phenols \[5\]

161/18 • Condensation polymers of ketones or aldehydes with aromatic hydrocarbons or their halogen derivatives only \[5\]

161/20 • Condensation polymers of aldehydes or ketones with only compounds containing hydrogen attached to nitrogen (with amino phenols C09J 161/04) \[5\]

161/22 • • of aldehydes with acyclic or carbocyclic compounds \[5\]

161/24 • • • with urea or thiourea \[5\]

161/26 • • of aldehydes with heterocyclic compounds \[5\]

161/28 • • • with melamine \[5\]

161/30 • • of aldehydes with heterocyclic and acyclic or carbocyclic compounds \[5\]

161/32 • • Modified amine-aldehyde condensates \[5\]

161/34 • Condensation polymers of aldehydes or ketones with monomers covered by at least two of the groups C09J 161/04, C09J 161/18 and C09J 161/20 \[5\]

163/00 Adhesives based on epoxy resins; Adhesives based on derivatives of epoxy resins \[5\]

163/02 • Polyglycidyl ethers of bis-phenols \[5\]

163/04 • Epoxynovolacs \[5\]

163/06 • Triglycidilisocyanurates \[5\]

163/08 • Epoxidised polymerised polyenes \[5\]

163/10 • Epoxy resins modified by unsaturated compounds \[5\]

Notes

In groups C09J 165/00-C09J 185/00, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, adhesives based on macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions forming two different linkages in the main chain are classified only according to the linkage present in excess.

165/00 Adhesives based on macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions forming a carbon-to-carbon link in the main chain (C09J 107/00-C09J 157/00, C09J 161/00 take precedence); Adhesives based on derivatives of such polymers \[5\]

165/02 • Polyphenylenes \[5\]

165/04 • Polyoxylenes \[5\]

167/00 Adhesives based on polyesters obtained by reactions forming a carboxylic ester link in the main chain (based on polyester-amides C09J 177/12; based on polyester-imides C09J 179/08); Adhesives based on derivatives of such polymers \[5\]

167/02 • Polysters derived from dicarboxylic acids and dihydroxy compounds (C09J 167/06 takes precedence) \[5\]

167/03 • • • • the dicarboxylic acids and dihydroxy compounds having the hydroxy and the carboxyl groups directly linked to aromatic rings \[5\]

167/04 • Polysters derived from hydroxy carboxylic acids, e.g. lactones (C09J 167/06 takes precedence) \[5\]

167/06 • Unsaturated polyesters having carbon-to-carbon unsaturation \[5\]

167/07 • • having terminal carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds \[5\]

167/08 • Polysters modified with higher fatty oils or their acids, or with natural resins or resin acids \[5\]

169/00 Adhesives based on polycarbonates; Adhesives based on derivatives of polycarbonates \[5\]

171/00 Adhesives based on polyethers obtained by reactions forming an ether link in the main chain (based on polyetethers C09J 159/00; based on epoxy resins C09J 163/00; based on polythioether-ethers C09J 181/02; based on polyethersulfones C09J 181/06); Adhesives based on derivatives of such polymers \[5\]

171/02 • Polyalkylene oxides \[5\]

171/03 • • Polyepihalohydrins \[5\]

171/08 • Polyethers derived from hydroxy compounds or from their metallic derivatives (C09J 171/02 takes precedence) \[5\]

171/10 • • • from phenols \[5\]

171/12 • • • Polyphenylene oxides \[5\]

171/14 • • Furfuryl alcohol polymers \[5\]

173/00 Adhesives based on macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions forming a linkage containing oxygen or carbon and hydrogen in the main chain, not provided for in groups C09J 159/00-C09J 171/00; Adhesives based on derivatives of such polymers \[5\]

173/02 • Polyoxanes \[5\]

175/00 Adhesives based on polyureas or polyurethanes; Adhesives based on derivatives of such polymers \[5\]

175/02 • Polyureas \[5\]

175/04 • Polyurethanes \[5\]

175/06 • • from polyesters \[5\]

175/08 • • from polyethers \[5\]

175/10 • • from polycetals \[5\]

175/12 • • • from compounds containing nitrogen and active hydrogen, the nitrogen atom not being part of an isocyanate group \[5\]

175/14 • • Polyurethanes having carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds \[5\]

175/16 • • • having terminal carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds \[5\]

177/00 Adhesives based on polyamides obtained by reactions forming a carboxylic amide link in the main chain (based on polyhydrazides C09J 179/06; based on polyamide-imides C09J 179/08); Adhesives based on derivatives of such polymers \[5\]

177/02 • Polyamides derived from omega-amino carboxylic acids or from lactams thereof (C09J 177/10 takes precedence) \[5\]
179/00 Adhesives based on macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions forming in the main chain of the macromolecule a linkage containing nitrogen, with or without oxygen, or carbon only, not provided for in groups C09J 161/00-C09J 177/00 [5]

179/02 • Polymides [5]

179/04 • Polycondensates having nitrogen-containing heterocyclic rings in the main chain; Polyhydrazides; Polymide acids or similar polyimide precursors [5]

179/06 • Polyhydrazides; Polymidazoles; Polymidazoles; Polyoxadiazoles [5]

179/08 • Polymides; Polyester-imides; Polymide-imides; Polymide acids or similar polyimide precursors [5]

181/00 Adhesives based on macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions forming in the main chain of the macromolecule a linkage containing sulfur, with or without nitrogen, oxygen, or carbon only; Adhesives based on polysulfones; Adhesives based on derivatives of such polymers [5]

181/02 • Polythioethers; Polythioether-ethers [5]

181/04 • Polysulfides [5]

181/06 • Polysulfones; Polyethersulfones [5]

181/08 • Polysulfonates [5]

181/10 • Polysulfonamides; Polysulfonimides [5]

183/00 Adhesives based on macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions forming in the main chain of the macromolecule a linkage containing silicon, with or without sulfur, nitrogen, oxygen, or carbon only; Adhesives based on derivatives of such polymers [5]

183/02 • Polysilicates [5]

183/04 • Polysiloxanes [5]

183/05 • containing silicon bound to hydrogen [5]

183/06 • containing silicon bound to oxygen-containing groups (C09J 183/12 takes precedence) [5]

183/07 • containing silicon bound to unsaturated aliphatic groups [5]

183/08 • containing silicon bound to organic groups containing atoms other than carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen [5]

183/10 • Block or graft copolymers containing polysiloxane sequences (obtained by polymerising a compound having a carbon-to-carbon double bond on to a polysiloxane C09J 151/08, C09J 153/00) [5]

183/12 • containing polyether sequences [5]

183/14 • in which at least two but not all the silicon atoms are connected by linkages other than oxygen atoms (C09J 183/10 takes precedence) [5]

183/16 • in which all the silicon atoms are connected by linkages other than oxygen atoms [5]

185/00 Adhesives based on macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions forming in the main chain of the macromolecule a linkage containing atoms other than silicon, sulfur, nitrogen, oxygen, and carbon; Adhesives based on derivatives of such polymers [5]

185/02 • containing phosphorus [5]

185/04 • containing boron [5]

187/00 Adhesives based on unspecified macromolecular compounds, obtained otherwise than by polymerisation reactions only involving unsaturated carbon-to-carbon-bonds [5]

Adhesives based on natural macromolecular compounds or on derivatives thereof [5]

189/00 Adhesives based on proteins; Adhesives based on derivatives thereof [5]

189/02 • Casein-aldehyde condensates [5]

189/04 • Products derived from waste materials, e.g. horn, hoof or hair [5]

189/06 • derived from leather or skin [5]

191/00 Adhesives based on oils, fats or waxes; Adhesives based on derivatives thereof [5]

191/02 • Vulcanised oils, e.g. factice [5]

191/04 • Linoxyn [5]

191/06 • Waxes [5]

191/08 • Mineral waxes [5]

193/00 Adhesives based on natural resins; Adhesives based on derivatives thereof (based on polysaccharides C09J 101/00-C09J 105/00; based on natural rubber C09J 107/00) [5]

193/02 • Shellac [5]

193/04 • Rosin [5]

195/00 Adhesives based on bituminous materials, e.g. asphalt, tar or pitch [5]

197/00 Adhesives based on lignin-containing materials (based on polysaccharides C09J 101/00-C09J 105/00) [5]

197/02 • Lignocellulosic material, e.g. wood, straw or bagasse [5]

199/00 Adhesives based on natural macromolecular compounds or on derivatives thereof, not provided for in groups C09J 101/00-C09J 107/00 or C09J 189/00-C09J 197/00 [5]

201/00 Adhesives based on unspecified macromolecular compounds [5]

201/02 • characterised by the presence of specified groups [5]

201/04 • containing halogen atoms [5]

201/06 • containing oxygen atoms [5]

201/08 • Carbonyl groups [5]

201/10 • containing hydrolysable silane groups [5]
C09K  MATERIALS FOR APPLICATIONS NOT OTHERWISE PROVIDED FOR; APPLICATIONS OF MATERIALS NOT OTHERWISE PROVIDED FOR

Note(s)

1. This subclass covers also the use of specified materials in general or their use for the applications not specifically provided for elsewhere.
2. In this subclass, the following term is used with the meaning indicated:
   • "materials" includes compositions.

3/00 Materials not provided for elsewhere [2]
3/10 • for sealing or packing joints or covers
3/12 • for stopping leaks, e.g. in radiators or in tanks
3/14 • Anti-slip materials; Abrasives [4]
3/16 • Anti-static materials [4]
3/18 • for application to surface to minimize adherence of ice, mist or water thereto; Thawing or antifreeze materials for application to surfaces [4]
3/20 • as substitutes for glycerol in its non-chemical uses, e.g. as a base in toilet creams or ointments
3/22 • for dust-lying or dust-absorbing [4]
3/24 • for simulating ice or snow [4]
3/30 • for aerosols [4]
3/32 • for treating liquid pollutants, e.g. oil, gasoline or fat (processes for making harmful chemical substances harmless or less harmful, by effecting a chemical change in the substances A62D 3/00)

5/00 Heat-transfer, heat-exchange or heat-storage materials, e.g. refrigerants; Materials for the production of heat or cold by chemical reactions other than by combustion [2]
5/02 • Materials undergoing a change of physical state when used (C09K 5/16, C09K 5/20 take precedence) [2]
5/04 • the change of state being from liquid to vapour or vice-versa [2]
5/06 • the change of state being from liquid to solid or vice-versa [2]
5/08 • Materials not undergoing a change of physical state when used (C09K 5/16, C09K 5/20 take precedence) [7]
5/10 • Liquid materials [7]
5/12 • Molten materials, i.e. materials solid at room temperature, e.g. metals or salts [7]
5/14 • Solid materials, e.g. powdery or granular [7]
5/16 • Materials undergoing chemical reactions when used [7]
5/18 • Non-reversible chemical reactions [7]
5/20 • Antifreeze additives therefor, e.g. for radiator liquids [7]

8/00 Compositions for drilling of boreholes or wells; Compositions for treating boreholes or wells, e.g. for completion or for remedial operations [2006.01]
8/02 • Well-drilling compositions [2006.01]

Note(s) [2006.01]
In groups C09K 8/03-C09K 8/38, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.

8/03 • Specific additives for general use in well-drilling compositions [2006.01]
8/035 • Organic additives [2006.01]
8/04 • Aqueous well-drilling compositions [2006.01]
8/05 • containing inorganic compounds only, e.g. mixtures of clay and salt [2006.01]
8/06 • • • Clay-free compositions (containing inorganic compounds only C09K 8/05) [2006.01]
8/08 • • • containing natural organic compounds, e.g. polysaccharides, or derivatives thereof [2006.01]
8/10 • • • Cellulose or derivatives thereof [2006.01]
8/12 • • • containing synthetic organic macromolecular compounds or their precursors [2006.01]
8/14 • • • Clay-containing compositions (containing inorganic compounds only C09K 8/05) [2006.01]
8/16 • • • characterised by the inorganic compounds other than clay [2006.01]
8/18 • • • characterised by the organic compounds [2006.01]
8/20 • • • Natural organic compounds or derivatives thereof, e.g. polysaccharides or lignin derivatives [2006.01]
8/22 • • • • • Synthetic organic compounds [2006.01]
8/24 • • • • • • • Polymers [2006.01]
8/26 • • • Oil-in-water emulsions [2006.01]
8/28 • • • containing organic additives [2006.01]
8/32 • • Non-aqueous well-drilling compositions, e.g. oil-based [2006.01]
8/34 • • Organic liquids [2006.01]
8/36 • • Water-in-oil emulsions [2006.01]
8/38 • • Gaseous or foamed well-drilling compositions [2006.01]
8/40 • • • Spacer compositions, e.g. compositions used to separate well-drilling from cementing masses [2006.01]
8/42 • • • Compositions for cementing, e.g. for cementing casings into boreholes; Compositions for plugging, e.g. for killing wells (compositions for plastering borehole walls C09K 8/50) [2006.01]
8/44 • • • containing organic binders only [2006.01]
8/46 • • • containing inorganic binders, e.g. Portland cement [2006.01]
8/467 • • • containing additives for specific purposes [2006.01]
8/473 • • • • • Density reducing additives, e.g. for obtaining foamed cement compositions [2006.01]
8/48 • • • Density increasing or weighting additives [2006.01]
8/487 • • • • Fluid loss control additives; Additives for reducing or preventing circulation loss [2006.01]
8/493 • • • • • Additives for reducing or preventing gas migration [2006.01]
8/50 • • • Compositions for plastering borehole walls, i.e. compositions for temporary consolidation of borehole walls [2006.01]
8/502 • • Oil-based compositions [2006.01]
8/504 • • • Compositions based on water or polar solvents (C09K 8/502 takes precedence) [2006.01]
Tenebrescent materials, i.e. materials for which the range of wavelengths for energy adsorption is changed as a result of excitation by some form of energy [2]

Organic tenebrescent materials [2]

Luminescent, e.g. electroluminescent, chemiluminescent, materials [2]

Recovery of luminescent materials [3]

Use of particular materials as binders, particle coatings or suspension media therefor [2]

Containing natural or artificial radioactive elements or unspecified radioactive elements [2]

Containing organic luminescent materials [2]

Having chemically-interreactive components, e.g. reactive chemiluminescent compositions [3]

Containing inorganic luminescent materials [2]

Note(s)

In groups C09K 11/54-C09K 11/89, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, materials are classified in the last appropriate place; however, activating constituents of the luminescent materials are disregarded for classification purposes.

Containing zinc or cadmium [4]

Containing beryllium, magnesium, alkali metals or alkaline earth metals [4]

Containing sulfur [4]

Containing manganese or rhenium [4]

Containing copper, silver or gold [4]

Containing silicon [4]

Containing iron, cobalt or nickel [4]

Containing fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine or unspecified halogen elements [4]

Containing gallium, indium or thallium [4]

Containing boron [4]

Containing aluminium [4]

Containing carbon [4]

Containing germanium, tin or lead [4]

Containing refractory metals [4]

Containing chromium, molybdenum or tungsten [4]

Containing vanadium [4]

Containing phosphorus [4]

Also containing alkaline earth metals [4]

Also containing halogen, e.g. halophosphates [4]

Also containing alkaline earth metals [4]

Containing arsenic, antimony or bismuth [4]

Containing antimony [4]

Also containing phosphorus and halogen, e.g. halophosphates [4]

Containing rare earth metals [4]

Containing oxygen [4]

Containing silicon [4]

Containing aluminium or gallium [4]

Containing phosphorus [4]

Containing vanadium [4]

Containing vanadium and phosphorus [4]
11/04 • containing sulfur, e.g. oxysulfides [4]
11/05 • containing halogen [4]
11/06 • containing oxygen and halogen, e.g. oxyhalides [4]
11/07 • containing platinum group metals [4]
11/08 • containing selenium, tellurium or unspecified chalcogen elements [4]
11/09 • containing mercury [4]

13/00 Etching, surface-brightening or pickling compositions [2]

Note(s)
In groups C09K 13/02-C09K 13/12, a composition is classified in the last appropriate place.
13/02 • containing an alkali metal hydroxide [2]
13/04 • containing an inorganic acid [2]
13/06 • with organic material [2]
13/08 • containing a fluorine compound [2]
13/10 • containing a boron compound [2]
13/12 • containing heavy metal salts in an amount of at least 50% of the non-solvent components [2]

15/00 Anti-oxidant compositions; Compositions inhibiting chemical change [4]

Note(s)
1. In groups C09K 15/02-C09K 15/34, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, a composition is classified in the last appropriate place.
2. In groups C09K 15/02-C09K 15/34, a metal salt of an organic compound is classified as that compound.
15/02 • containing inorganic compounds [2]
15/04 • containing organic compounds [2]
15/06 • containing oxygen [2]
15/08 • containing a phenol or quinone moiety [2]
15/10 • containing sulfur [2]
15/12 • containing sulfur and oxygen [2]
15/14 • containing a phenol or quinone moiety [2]
15/16 • containing nitrogen [2]
15/18 • containing an amine or imine moiety [2]
15/20 • containing nitrogen and oxygen [2]
15/22 • containing an amide or imide moiety [2]
15/24 • containing a phenol or quinone moiety [2]
15/26 • containing nitrogen and sulfur [2]
15/28 • containing nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur [2]
15/30 • containing heterocyclic ring with at least one nitrogen atom as ring member [2]
15/32 • containing boron, silicon, phosphorus, selenium, tellurium or a metal [2]
15/34 • containing plant or animal materials of unknown composition [2]

17/00 Soil-conditioning materials or soil-stabilising materials [3]

Note(s)
1. This group covers mixtures of soil-conditioning or soil-stabilising materials with fertilisers characterised by their soil-conditioning or soil-stabilising activity.
2. This group does not cover mixtures of soil-conditioning or soil-stabilising materials with fertilisers characterised by their fertilising activity which are covered by subclass C05G.

3. For the purpose of classification in this group, the presence of fertilisers in the composition is not taken into account.
4. In groups C09K 17/02-C09K 17/40, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, materials are classified in the last appropriate place.
5. In this group, it is desirable to add the indexing codes of groups C09K 101/00-C09K 109/00.
17/02 • containing inorganic compounds only [6]
17/04 • applied in a physical form other than a solution or a grout, e.g. as granules or gases [6]
17/06 • Calcium compounds, e.g. lime [6]
17/08 • Aluminium compounds, e.g. aluminium hydroxide [6]
17/10 • Cements, e.g. Portland cement [6]
17/12 • Water-soluble silicates, e.g. waterglass [6]
17/14 • containing organic compounds only [6]
17/16 • applied in a physical form other than a solution or a grout, e.g. as platelets or granules [6]
17/18 • Prepolymers; Macromolecular compounds [6]
17/20 • Vinyl polymers [6]
17/22 • Polyacrylates; Polymethacrylates [6]
17/24 • Condensation polymers of aldehydes or ketones [6]
17/26 • Phenol-aldehyde condensation polymers [6]
17/28 • Urea-aldehyde condensation polymers [6]
17/30 • Polysiocyanates; Polyurethanes [6]
17/32 • of natural origin, e.g. cellulosic materials [6]
17/34 • Bituminous materials [6]
17/36 • Compounds having one or more carbon-to-silicon linkages [6]
17/38 • Siloxanes [6]
17/40 • containing mixtures of inorganic and organic compounds [6]
17/42 • Inorganic compounds mixed with organic active ingredients, e.g. accelerators [6]
17/44 • the inorganic compound being cement [6]
17/46 • the inorganic compound being a water-soluble silicate [6]
17/48 • Organic compounds mixed with inorganic active ingredients, e.g. polymerisation catalysts [6]
17/50 • the organic compound being of natural origin, e.g. cellulose derivatives [6]
17/52 • Mulches [6]

19/00 Liquid crystal materials [4]

Note(s)
In groups C09K 19/02-C09K 19/52 in the absence of an indication to the contrary, materials are classified in the last appropriate place.
19/02 • characterised by optical, electrical or physical properties of the components, in general [4]
19/04 • characterised by the chemical structure of the liquid crystal components [4]
19/06 • Non-steroidal liquid crystal compounds [4]
19/08 • containing at least two non-condensed rings [4]
19/10 • containing at least two benzene rings [4]
19/12 • at least two benzene rings directly linked, e.g. biphenyls [4]
19/14 • linked by a carbon chain [4]
19/16 • the chain containing carbon-to-carbon double bonds, e.g. stilbenes [4]
19/18 • the chain containing carbon-to-carbon triple bonds, e.g. tolanes [4]
FEATURES OF DESTRUCTIVE DISTILLATION PROCESSES IN GENERAL

CARBONISING OR COKING PROCESSES

1. Retorts; Coke Ovens
2. Coke OVENS
3. Structual features of coke ovens
4. CARBONISING OR COKING PROCESSES
5. FEATURES OF DESTRUCTIVE DISTILLATION PROCESSES IN GENERAL
Heating of coke ovens

21/00 Heating of coke ovens by electrical means
21/02 with lean gas
21/04 with rich gas
21/06 in coke ovens suitable for the use of lean gas or rich gas
21/08 by applying special heating gases
21/10 Regulating or controlling the combustion
21/12 Bumers
21/14 Devices for reversing the draught
21/16 by controlling or varying the openings between the heating flues and the regenerator flues
21/18 Recirculating the flue gases
21/20 Methods of heating ovens of the chamber oven type

21/22 by introducing the heating gas and air at various levels
21/24 at the top and the bottom of the vertical heating flues
21/26 by introducing the heating gas and air at the top of the vertical flues only

23/00 Other methods of heating coke ovens

25/00 Doors or closures for coke ovens
25/02 Doors; Door frames
25/04 for ovens with vertical chambers
25/06 for ovens with horizontal chambers
25/08 Closing or opening the doors
25/10 for ovens with vertical chambers
25/12 for ovens with horizontal chambers
25/14 Devices for lifting doors
25/16 Sealing; Means for sealing
25/18 Cooling
25/20 Lids or closures for charging holes
25/22 for ovens with vertical chambers
25/24 for ovens with horizontal chambers

27/00 Arrangements for withdrawal of the distillation gases
27/02 with outlets arranged at different levels in the chamber
27/04 during the charging operation of the oven
27/06 Conduit details, e.g. valves

29/00 Other details of coke ovens
29/02 Brickwork, e.g. casings, linings, walls
29/04 Controlling or preventing expansion or contraction
29/06 Preventing or repairing leakages of the brickwork
29/08 Bracing or foundation of the ovens

Devices for charging or discharging coke ovens; Mechanical treatments of coal charges

31/00 Charging devices for coke ovens
31/02 for charging vertically
31/04 coke ovens with horizontal chambers
31/06 for charging horizontally
31/08 coke ovens with horizontal chambers
31/10 with one compact charge
31/12 for liquid materials

33/00 Discharging devices for coke ovens; Coke guides
33/02 Extracting coke with built-in devices, e.g. gears, screws
33/04 Pulling-out devices
33/06 for horizontal chambers
33/08 Pushers, e.g. rams
33/10 for horizontal chambers
33/12 Discharge valves
33/14 Coke guides

35/00 Combined charging and discharging devices for coke ovens

37/00 Mechanical treatments of coal charges in the oven
37/02 Levelling charges, e.g. with bars
37/04 Compressing charges (during coking C10B 47/12)
37/06 Forming holes in charges
39/00 Cooling or quenching coke
39/02 • Dry cooling outside the oven
39/04 • Wet cooling
39/06 • in the oven
39/08 • Coke-quenching towers
39/10 • combined with agitating means, e.g. rotating tables or drums
39/12 • combined with conveying means
39/14 • Cars
39/16 • combined with sorting
39/18 • Coke ramps

41/00 Safety devices, e.g. signalling or controlling devices for use in the discharge of coke
41/02 • for discharging coke
41/04 • by electrical means
41/06 • by pneumatic or hydraulic means
41/08 • for the withdrawal of the distillation gases

43/00 Preventing or removing incrustations
43/02 • Removing incrustations
43/04 • by mechanical means
43/06 • • • from conduits, valves or the like
43/08 • • • with liquids
43/10 • • • by burning out
43/12 • • • Burners
43/14 • Preventing incrustations

45/00 Other details
45/02 • Devices for producing compact unified coal charges outside the oven

Carbonising or coking processes

47/00 Destructive distillation of solid carbonaceous materials with indirect heating, e.g. by external combustion
47/02 • with stationary charge
47/04 • • in shaft furnaces
47/06 • • in retorts
47/08 • • in beehive ovens
47/10 • • in coke ovens of the chamber type
47/12 • • in which the charge is subjected to mechanical pressure during coking
47/14 • • with the aid of hot liquids, e.g. molten salts
47/16 • • with indirect heating means both inside and outside the retorts
47/18 • • with moving charge
47/20 • • according to the "moving bed" technique (C10B 47/26 takes precedence)
47/22 • • in dispersed form (C10B 47/26 takes precedence)
47/24 • • • according to the "fluidised bed" technique
47/26 • • with the aid of hot liquids, e.g. molten salts
47/28 • • Other processes
47/30 • • in rotary ovens or retorts
47/32 • • in ovens with mechanical conveying means
47/34 • • • with rotary scraping devices
47/36 • • • • in multi-stage ovens
47/38 • • • • with shaking or vibrating devices

47/40 • • • • with endless conveying devices
47/42 • • • • in vertical direction
47/44 • • • • with conveyor-screws
47/46 • • • • with trucks, containers, or trays
47/48 • • • • with tilting or rocking means

49/00 Destructive distillation of solid carbonaceous materials by direct heating with heat-carrying agents including the partial combustion of the solid material to be treated
49/02 • with hot gases or vapours, e.g. hot gases obtained by partial combustion of the charge
49/04 • • • • while moving the solid material to be treated
49/06 • • • • according to the "moving bed" technique
49/08 • • • • in dispersed form
49/10 • • • • according to the "fluidised bed" technique
49/12 • • • • by mixing tangentially, e.g. in vortex chambers
49/14 • • • • with hot liquids, e.g. molten metals
49/16 • • • • with moving solid heat-carriers in divided form
49/18 • • • • according to the "moving bed" technique
49/20 • • • • in dispersed form
49/22 • • • • according to the "fluidised bed" technique

51/00 Destructive distillation of solid carbonaceous materials by combined direct and indirect heating

53/00 Destructive distillation, specially adapted for particular solid raw materials or solid raw materials in special form (wet carbonising of peat C10F)
53/02 • of cellulose-containing material (production of pyrolygenous acid C10C 5/00)
53/04 • of powdered coal
53/06 • of oil shale or bituminous rocks
53/07 • of synthetic polymeric materials, e.g. tyres (recovery or working-up of waste materials of organic macromolecular compounds or compositions based thereon by dry-heat treatment for obtaining partially depolymerised materials C08J 11/10; production of liquid hydrocarbon mixtures from rubber or rubber waste C10G 1/10) [2006.01]
53/08 • in the form of briquettes, lumps or the like

55/00 Coking mineral oils, bitumen, tar or the like, or mixtures thereof, with solid carbonaceous materials (cracking oils C10G)
55/02 • with solid materials
55/04 • • with moving solid materials
55/06 • • • according to the "moving bed" technique
55/08 • • • in dispersed form
55/10 • • • • according to the "fluidised bed" technique

57/00 Other carbonising or coking processes; Features of destructive distillation processes in general
57/02 • Multi-step carbonising or coking processes
57/04 • using charges of special composition
57/06 • • containing additives
57/08 • Non-mechanical pretreatment of the charge
57/10 • • Drying
57/12 • Applying additives during coking
57/14 • Features of low-temperature carbonising processes
57/16 • Features of high-temperature carbonising processes
57/18 • Modifying the properties of the distillation gases in the oven
C10C WORKING-UP TAR, PITCH, ASPHALT, BITUMEN; PYRROLEGONE ACID

1/00 Working-up tar (obtaining hydrocarbon oils C10G) [4]
1/02 • Removal of water (by distillation C10C 1/06)
1/04 • by distillation
1/06 • • Removal of water
1/08 • • Winning of aromatic fractions
1/10 • • • benzene fraction
1/12 • • • naphthalene fraction
1/14 • Winning of tar oils from tar
1/16 • • Winning of pitch
1/18 • by extraction with selective solvents
1/19 • by thermal treatment not involving distillation [4]
1/20 • Refining by chemical means
3/00 Working-up pitch, asphalt, bitumen
3/02 • by chemical means
3/04 • • by blowing or oxidising
3/05 • by distillation
3/08 • • by selective extraction
3/10 • Melting
3/12 • • Devices therefor
3/14 • Solidifying; Disintegrating, e.g. granulating
3/16 • • by direct contact with liquids
3/18 • Removing in solid form from reaction vessels, containers and the like, e.g. by cutting out, by pressing
5/00 Production of pyrrolegone acid (carbonisation of wood C10B)

C10F DRYING OR WORKING-UP OF PEAT [5]

5/00 Drying or de-watering peat
5/02 • in the field; Auxiliary means therefor
5/04 • by using presses, bandpresses, rolls, or centrifuges (moulding C10F 7/04)
5/06 • combined with a carbonisation step for producing turf coal

C10G CRACKING HYDROCARBON OILS; PRODUCTION OF LIQUID HYDROCARBON MIXTURES, E.G. BY DESTRUCTIVE HYDROGENATION, OLIGOMERISATION, POLYMERISATION (cracking to hydrogen or synthesis gas C01B; cracking or pyrolysis of hydrocarbon gases to individual hydrocarbons or mixtures thereof of definite or specified constitution C07C; cracking to cokes C10B); RECOVERY OF HYDROCARBON OILS FROM OIL-SHALE, OIL-SAND, OR GASES; REFINING MIXTURES MAINLY CONSISTING OF HYDROCARBONS; REFORMING OF NAPHTHA; MINERAL WAXES [6]

Note(s)
1. In this subclass:
   • groups C10G 9/00-C10G 49/00 are limited to one-step processes;
   • combined or multi-step processes are covered by groups C10G 51/00-C10G 69/00;
   • refining or recovery of mineral waxes is covered by group C10G 73/00.
2. In this subclass, the following terms or expressions are used with the meanings indicated:
   • “in the presence of hydrogen” or “in the absence of hydrogen” mean treatments in which hydrogen, in free form or as hydrogen generating compounds, is added, or not added, respectively;
   • “hydrotreatment” is used for conversion processes as defined in group C10G 45/00 or group C10G 47/00;
   • “hydrocarbon oils” covers mixtures of hydrocarbons such as tar oils or mineral oils.
3. In this subclass, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.

Subclass index

PRODUCTION OF LIQUID HYDROCARBON MIXTURES.............................................................1/00-5/00, 50/00
DISTILLATION OF HYDROCARBON OILS...........................................................................7/00
CRACKING.........................................................................................................................9/00-15/00, 47/00
REFINING HYDROCARBON OILS
by treatment with acids, with alkalis..................................................................................17/00, 19/00
by extraction with solvents or adsorptive solids..............................................................21/00, 25/00
by reaction with hydrogen, by oxidation or by other chemical reaction........................27/00, 29/00, 45/00, 49/00
Other processes..............................................................................................................31/00, 32/00, 33/00
REFORMING......................................................................................................................35/00, 59/00-63/00
MULTI-STEP PROCESSES...............................................................................................51/00-69/00
OTHER PROCESSES........................................................................................................70/00, 71/00
TREATING MINERAL WAXES..........................................................................................73/00
INHIBITING CORROSION..................................................................................................75/00
SUBJECT MATTER NOT PROVIDED FOR IN OTHER GROUPS OF THIS SUBCLASS..............99/00

IPC (2014.01), Section C 189
Cracking in the absence of hydrogen

9/00 Thermal non-catalytic cracking, in the absence of hydrogen, of hydrocarbon oils
9/02 • in retorts
9/04 • Retorts
9/06 • by pressure distillation
9/08 • • Apparatus therefor
9/12 • • • Removing incrustation
9/14 • in pipes or coils with or without auxiliary means, e.g. digesters, soaking drums, expansion means
9/16 • • Preventing or removing incrustation
9/18 • • Apparatus
9/20 • • Tube furnaces
9/24 • by heating with electrical means
9/26 • with discontinuously preheated non-moving solid material, e.g. blast and run
9/28 • with preheated moving solid material
9/30 • • according to the "moving bed" technique
9/32 • • according to the "fluidised bed" technique
9/34 • by direct contact with inert preheated fluids, e.g. with molten metals or salts
9/36 • • • • • with heated gases or vapours
9/38 • • • produced by partial combustion of the material to be cracked or by combustion of another hydrocarbon [2]
9/40 • by indirect contact with preheated fluid other than hot combustion gases
9/42 • by passing the material to be cracked in thin streams or as spray on or near continuously heated surfaces

11/00 Catalytic cracking, in the absence of hydrogen, of hydrocarbon oils (cracking in direct contact with molten metals or salts C10G 9/34)
11/02 • characterised by the catalyst used
11/04 • • Oxides
11/05 • • • Crystalline alumino-silicates, e.g. molecular sieves [3]
11/06 • • Sulfides
11/08 • • Halides
11/10 • with stationary catalyst bed
11/12 • with discontinuously preheated non-moving solid catalysts, e.g. blast and run
11/14 • with preheated moving solid catalysts
11/16 • • according to the "moving bed" technique
11/18 • • according to the "fluidised bed" technique
11/20 • by direct contact with inert heated gases or vapours
11/22 • • produced by partial combustion of the material to be cracked

15/00 Cracking of hydrocarbon oils by electric means, electromagnetic or mechanical vibrations, by particle radiation or with gases superheated in electric arcs
15/08 • by electric means or by electromagnetic or mechanical vibrations [3]
15/10 • by particle radiation [3]
15/12 • with gases superheated in an electric arc, e.g. plasma [3]

Refining in the absence of hydrogen

17/00 Refining of hydrocarbon oils, in the absence of hydrogen, with acids, acid-forming compounds, or acid-containing liquids, e.g. acid sludge
17/02 • with acids or acid-containing liquids, e.g. acid sludge
17/04 • • Liquid-liquid treatment forming two immiscible phases
17/06 • • • using acids derived from sulfur or acid sludge thereof
17/07 • • • using halogen acids or oxyacids of halogen (acids generating halogen C10G 27/02) [3]
17/08 • with acid-forming oxides (refining with CO₂ or SO₂ as a selective solvent C10G 21/06)
17/085 • • with oleum [3]
17/09 • with acid salts [3]
17/095 • with "solid acids", e.g. phosphoric acid deposited on a carrier [3]
17/10 • Recovery of used refining agent

19/00 Refining hydrocarbon oils, in the absence of hydrogen, by alkaline treatment
19/02 • with aqueous alkaline solutions
19/04 • • containing solubilisers, e.g. solutisers
19/06 • • with plumbites or plumbates
19/067 • with molten alkaline material [3]
19/073 • with solid alkaline material [3]
19/08 • Recovery of used refining agent

21/00 Refining of hydrocarbon oils, in the absence of hydrogen, by extraction with selective solvents (C10G 17/00, C10G 19/00 take precedence)
21/02 • with two or more solvents, which are introduced or withdrawn separately
21/04 • • • by introducing simultaneously at least two immiscible solvents counter-current to each other
21/06  • characterised by the solvent used
21/08  • Inorganic compounds only
21/10  •  •  • Sulfur dioxide
21/12  •  •  • Organic compounds only
21/14  •  •  •  • Hydrocarbons
21/16  •  •  • Oxygen-containing compounds
21/18  •  •  • Halogen-containing compounds
21/20  •  •  • Nitrogen-containing compounds
21/22  •  •  • Compounds containing sulfur, selenium, or tellurium
21/24  •  •  • Phosphorus-containing compounds
21/26  •  •  • Silicon-containing compounds
21/27  •  •  • Organic compounds not provided for in a single one of groups C10G 21/14-C10G 21/26 [3]
21/28  • Recovery of used solvent
21/30  • Controlling or regulating [3]

25/00 Refining of hydrocarbon oils, in the absence of hydrogen, with solid sorbents

Note(s) [2006.01]
When classifying in this group, classification is also made in group B01D 15/08 insofar as subject matter of general interest relating to chromatography is concerned.
25/02  • with ion-exchange material
25/03  •  • with crystalline alumino-silicates, e.g. molecular sieves [3]
25/05  •  •  • Removal of non-hydrocarbon compounds, e.g. sulfur compounds [3]
25/06  • with moving sorbents or sorbents dispersed in the oil
25/08  •  • according to the "moving bed" technique
25/09  •  • according to the "fluidised bed" technique [3]
25/11  • Distillation in the presence of moving sorbents [3]
25/12  • Recovery of used adsorbent

27/00 Refining of hydrocarbon oils, in the absence of hydrogen, by oxidation
27/02  • with halogen or compounds generating halogen; Hypochlorous acid or salts thereof
27/04  • with oxygen or compounds generating oxygen
27/06  •  • in the presence of alkaline solutions
27/08  •  • in the presence of copper chloride
27/10  •  • in the presence of metal-containing organic complexes, e.g. chelates, or cationic ion-exchange resins [3]
27/12  •  • with oxygen-generating compounds, e.g. per-compounds, chronic acid, chromates (plumbites or plumbates C10G 19/06) [3]
27/14  •  • with ozone-containing gases [3]

29/00 Refining of hydrocarbon oils, in the absence of hydrogen, with other chemicals
29/02  • Non-metals
29/04  • Metals, or metals deposited on a carrier
29/06  • Metal salts, or metal salts deposited on a carrier
29/08  • containing the metal in the lower valency
29/10  •  • Sulfides
29/12  •  • Halides [3]
29/16  • Metal oxides
29/20  • Organic compounds not containing metal atoms
29/22  • containing oxygen as the only hetero atom
29/24  •  • Aldehydes or ketones
29/26  •  • Halogenated hydrocarbons
29/28  •  • containing sulfur as the only hetero atom, e.g. mercaptans, or sulfur and oxygen as the only hetero atoms

31/00 Refining of hydrocarbon oils, in the absence of hydrogen, by methods not otherwise provided for (by distillation C10G 7/00) [2]
31/06  • by heating, cooling, or pressure treatment
31/08  • by treating with water
31/09  • by filtration [3]
31/10  • with the aid of centrifugal force
31/11  • by dialysis [3]

32/00 Refining of hydrocarbon oils by electric or magnetic means, by irradiation, or by using microorganisms [3]
32/02  • by electric or magnetic means [3]
32/04  • by particle radiation [3]

33/00 De-watering or demulsification of hydrocarbon oils (by distillation C10G 7/04)
33/02  • with electrical or magnetic means
33/04  • with chemical means
33/06  • with mechanical means, e.g. by filtration
33/08  • Controlling or regulating [3]

35/00 Reforming naphtha

Note(s) In this group, the following term is used with the meaning indicated:
• "reforming" means the treatment of naphtha in order to improve the octane number or its aromatic content.
35/02  • Thermal reforming
35/04  • Catalytic reforming
35/06  •  • characterised by the catalyst used
35/085  •  •  • containing platinum group metals or compounds thereof [3]
35/09  •  •  •  • Bimetallic catalysts in which at least one of the metals is a platinum-group metal [3]
35/095  •  •  •  • containing crystalline alumino-silicates, e.g. molecular sieves [3]
35/10  •  •  • with moving catalysts
35/12  •  •  • according to the "moving bed" technique
35/14  •  •  • according to the "fluidised bed" technique
35/16  •  •  • with electric, electromagnetic, or mechanical vibrations; by particle radiation
35/22  • Starting-up reforming operations [3]
35/24  • Controlling or regulating of reforming operations [3]

Hydrotreatment processes

45/00 Refining of hydrocarbon oils using hydrogen or hydrogen-generating compounds [3]

Note(s) Treatment of hydrocarbon oils in the presence of hydrogen-generating compounds not provided for in a single one of groups C10G 45/02, C10G 45/32, C10G 45/44, or C10G 45/58 is covered by group C10G 49/00.
Cracking of hydrocarbon oils, in the presence of hydrogen or hydrogen-generating compounds, to obtain lower boiling fractions (C10G 15/00) takes precedence; destructive hydrogenation of non-melting solid carbonaceous or similar materials (C10G 1/06) [3]

- characterised by the catalyst used [3]
- Oxides [3]
- Sulfides [3]
- Halides [3]
- with catalysts deposited on a carrier [3]
- Inorganic carriers [3]
- the catalyst containing platinum group metals or compounds thereof [3]
- Crystalline alumino-silicate carriers [3]
- the catalyst containing platinum group metals or compounds thereof [3]
- the catalyst containing other metals or compounds thereof [3]
- Non-catalytic cracking in the presence of hydrogen [3]
- with moving solid particles [3]
- suspended in the oil, e.g. slurries [3]
- according to the "moving bed" technique [3]
- according to the "fluidised bed" technique [3]
- in the presence of hydrogen-generating compounds [3]
- Organic compounds, e.g. hydrogenated hydrocarbons [3]
- Controlling or regulating [3]

Treatment of hydrocarbon oils, in the presence of hydrogen or hydrogen-generating compounds, not provided for in a single one of groups C10G 45/02, C10G 45/32, C10G 45/44, C10G 45/58, or C10G 47/00 [3]

- characterised by the catalyst used [3]
- containing nickel, cobalt, chromium, molybdenum, or tungsten metals, or compounds thereof [3]
- containing platinum group metals or compounds thereof [3]
- Selective hydrogenation of the diolefin or acetylene compounds [3]
- characterised by the catalyst used [3]
- containing nickel or cobalt metal, or compounds thereof [3]
- in combination with chromium, molybdenum or tungsten metals, or compounds thereof [3]
- containing platinum group metals or compounds thereof [3]
- with moving solid particles [3]
- Hydrogenation of the aromatic hydrocarbons [3]
- characterised by the catalyst used [3]
- containing nickel or cobalt metal, or compounds thereof [3]
- in combination with chromium, molybdenum or tungsten metal, or compounds thereof [3]
- containing platinum group metals or compounds thereof [3]
- with moving solid particles [3]
- to change the structural skeleton of some of the hydrocarbon content without cracking the other hydrocarbons present, e.g. lowering pour point; Selective hydrocracking of normal paraffins (C10G 32/00 takes precedence; improving or increasing the octane number or aromatic content of naphtha C10G 35/00) [3]
- characterised by the catalyst used [3]
- containing platinum group metals or compounds thereof [3]
- containing crystalline alumino-silicates, e.g. molecular sieves [3]
- with moving solid particles [3]
- Aromatisation of hydrocarbon oil fractions [3]
- with catalysts containing platinum group metals or compounds thereof [3]
- Controlling or regulating [3]

Production of liquid hydrocarbon mixtures from lower carbon number hydrocarbons, e.g. by oligomerisation [6]

- of hydrocarbon oils for lubricating purposes [6]
Multi-step processes

Note(s)
Groups C10G 51/00-C10G 69/00 cover only those combined treating operations where the interest is directed to the relationship between the steps.

51/00 Treatment of hydrocarbon oils, in the absence of hydrogen, by two or more cracking processes only [3]
51/02 • plural serial stages only [3]
51/04 • including only thermal and catalytic cracking steps [3]
51/06 • plural parallel stages only [3]

53/00 Treatment of hydrocarbon oils, in the absence of hydrogen, by two or more refining processes [3]
53/02 • plural serial stages only [3]
53/04 • including at least one extraction step [3]
53/06 • including only extraction steps, e.g. deasphalting by solvent treatment followed by extraction of aromatics [3]
53/08 • including at least one sorption step [3]
53/10 • including at least one acid-treatment step [3]
53/12 • including at least one alkaline-treatment step [3]
53/14 • including at least one oxidation step [3]
53/16 • plural parallel stages only [3]

55/00 Treatment of hydrocarbon oils, in the absence of hydrogen, by at least one refining process and at least one cracking process [3]
55/02 • plural serial stages only [3]
55/04 • including at least one thermal cracking step [3]
55/06 • including at least one catalytic cracking step [3]
55/08 • plural parallel stages only [3]

57/00 Treatment of hydrocarbon oils, in the absence of hydrogen, by at least one cracking process or refining process and at least one other conversion process [3]
57/02 • with polymerisation [3]

59/00 Treatment of naphtha by two or more reforming processes only or by at least one reforming process and at least one process which does not substantially change the boiling range of the naphtha [3]
59/02 • plural serial stages only [3]
59/04 • including at least one catalytic and at least one non-catalytic reforming step [3]
59/06 • plural parallel stages only [3]

61/00 Treatment of naphtha by at least one reforming process and at least one process of refining in the absence of hydrogen [3]
61/02 • plural serial stages only [3]
61/04 • the refining step being an extraction [3]
61/06 • the refining step being a sorption process [3]
61/08 • plural parallel stages only [3]
61/10 • processes also including other conversion steps [3]

63/00 Treatment of naphtha by at least one reforming process and at least one other conversion process (C10G 59/00, C10G 61/00 take precedence) [3]
63/02 • plural serial stages only [3]
63/04 • including at least one cracking step [3]
63/06 • plural parallel stages only [3]
63/08 • including at least one cracking step [3]

65/00 Treatment of hydrocarbon oils by two or more hydrotreatment processes only [3]
65/02 • plural serial stages only [3]
65/04 • including only refining steps [3]
65/06 • at least one step being a selective hydrogenation of the diolefins [3]
65/08 • at least one step being a hydrogenation of the aromatic hydrocarbons [3]
65/10 • including only cracking steps [3]
65/12 • including cracking steps and other hydrotreatment steps [3]
65/14 • plural parallel stages only [3]
65/16 • including only refining steps [3]
65/18 • including only cracking steps [3]

67/00 Treatment of hydrocarbon oils by at least one hydrotreatment process and at least one process for refining in the absence of hydrogen only [3]
67/02 • plural serial stages only [3]
67/04 • including solvent extraction as the refining step in the absence of hydrogen [3]
67/06 • including a sorption process as the refining step in the absence of hydrogen [3]
67/08 • including acid treatment as the refining step in the absence of hydrogen [3]
67/10 • including alkaline treatment as the refining step in the absence of hydrogen [3]
67/12 • including oxidation as the refining step in the absence of hydrogen [3]
67/14 • including at least two different refining steps in the absence of hydrogen [3]
67/16 • plural parallel stages only [3]

69/00 Treatment of hydrocarbon oils by at least one hydrotreatment process and at least one other conversion process (C10G 67/00 takes precedence) [3]
69/02 • plural serial stages only [3]
69/04 • including at least one step of catalytic cracking in the absence of hydrogen [3]
69/06 • including at least one step of thermal cracking in the absence of hydrogen [3]
69/08 • including at least one step of reforming naphtha [3]
69/10 • hydrocracking of higher boiling fractions into naphtha and reforming the naphtha obtained [3]
69/12 • including at least one polymerisation or alkylation step [3]
69/14 • plural parallel stages only [3]

70/00 Working-up undefined normally gaseous mixtures obtained by processes covered by groups C10G 9/00, C10G 11/00, C10G 15/00, C10G 47/00, C10G 51/00 [5]
70/02 • by hydrogenation [5]
70/04 • by physical processes [5]
70/06 • by gas-liquid contact [5]

71/00 Treatment by methods not otherwise provided for of hydrocarbon oils or fatty oils for lubricating purposes [3]
71/02 • Thickening by volatolising (chemical modification of drying-oils by volatolising C09F 7/04) [3]

73/00 Recovery or refining of mineral waxes, e.g. montan wax (compositions essentially based on waxes C08L 91/00) [3]
C10H  PRODUCTION OF ACETYLENE BY WET METHODS [5]

Subclass index

GENERATORS

With non-automatic water feed........................................................................................................... 1/00
With automatic water feed.................................................................................................................. 3/00, 5/00
Kipp's or Dobereiner's type................................................................................................................ 7/00, 9/00
Other types.......................................................................................................................................... 11/00-19/00
Details................................................................................................................................................... 21/00

1/00 Acetylene gas generators with dropwise, gravity, non-automatic water feed
1/02 • Valves
1/04 • Screw valves
1/06 • Cocks
1/08 • Other means for controlling the water feed
1/10 • Water feed from above through a central or lateral pipe
1/12 • Water feed from above through porous materials

3/00 Acetylene gas generators with automatic water feed regulation by means independent of the gas-holder
3/02 • with membranes
3/04 • with floats
3/06 • with pistons

5/00 Acetylene gas generators with automatic water feed regulation by the gas-holder
5/02 • with overflow for the water
5/04 • by drop-by-drop water valves connected with the gas-holder
5/06 • by drop-by-drop water cocks connected with the gas-holder
5/08 • with gas-holder-connected water valves or cocks according to the submersion system

7/00 Acetylene gas generators with water feed by Kipp's principle
7/02 • with water feed from below
7/04 • with water feed from above

9/00 Acetylene gas generators according to Dobereiner’s principle with fixed carbide bell

73/02 • Recovery of petroleum waxes from hydrocarbon oils; De-waxing of hydrocarbon oils [3]
73/04 • with the use of filter aids [3]
73/06 • with the use of solvents [3]
73/08 • Organic compounds [3]
73/10 • Hydrocarbons [3]
73/12 • Oxygen-containing compounds [3]
73/14 • Halogen-containing compounds [3]
73/16 • Nitrogen-containing compounds [3]
73/18 • containing sulfur, selenium or tellurium [3]
73/20 • containing phosphorus [3]
73/22 • Mixtures of organic compounds [3]
73/23 • Recovery of used solvents [6]
73/24 • by formation of adducts [3]
73/26 • by flotation [3]
73/28 • by centrifugal force [3]
73/30 • with electric means [3]
73/32 • Methods of cooling during de-waxing [3]

73/34 • Controlling or regulating [3]
73/36 • Recovery of petroleum waxes from other compositions containing oil in minor proportions, from concentrates or from residues; De-oiling, sweating [3]
73/38 • Chemical modification of petroleum waxes [3]
73/40 • Physical treatment of waxes or modified waxes, e.g. granulation, dispersion, emulsion, irradiation [3]
73/42 • Refining of petroleum waxes [3]
73/44 • in the presence of hydrogen or hydrogen-generating compounds [3]

75/00 Inhibiting corrosion or fouling in apparatus for treatment or conversion of hydrocarbon oils, in general (C10G 7/10, C10G 9/16 take precedence) [6]
75/02 • by addition of corrosion inhibitors [6]
75/04 • by addition of anti fouling agents [6]

99/00 Subject matter not provided for in other groups of this subclass [2006.01]
17/00 High-pressure acetylene gas generators 21/04 • • Placing packages in the generator
19/00 Other acetylene gas generators 21/06 • • • Opening devices for packages in the generator
19/02 • Rotary carbide receptacles 21/08 • Safety devices for acetylene generators
21/00 Details of acetylene generators; Accessory equipment for, or features of, the wet production of acetylene 21/10 • Carbide compositions
21/02 • Packages of carbide for use in generators, e.g. cartridges 21/12 • Gas-tight sealing means, e.g. liquid seals in generators
21/14 • Ventilation means; Cooling devices 21/16 • Removing sludge from generators

C10J PRODUCTION OF GASES CONTAINING CARBON MONOXIDE AND HYDROGEN FROM SOLID CARBONACEOUS MATERIALS BY PARTIAL OXIDATION PROCESSES INVOLVING OXYGEN OR STEAM (underground gasification of minerals E21B 43/295); CARBURETTING AIR OR OTHER GASES [5]

1/00 Production of fuel gases by carburetting air or other gases (for internal-combustion engines F02M)
1/02 • Carburetting air
1/04 • • Controlling supply of air
1/06 • • with materials which are liquid at ordinary temperatures
1/08 • • • by passage of air through or over the surface of the liquid
1/10 • • • • with the liquid absorbed on carriers
1/12 • • • by atomisation of the liquid
1/14 • • • • Controlling the supply of liquid in accordance with the air supply
1/16 • • with solid hydrocarbons (C10J 1/207, C10J 1/213 take precedence)
1/18 • • in rotary carburetors
1/20 • Carburetting gases other than air
1/207 • Carburetting by pyrolysis of solid carbonaceous material in a fuel bed (C10J 3/66 takes precedence) [2012.01]
1/213 • Carburetting by pyrolysis of solid carbonaceous material in a carburettor [2012.01]
1/22 • Adding materials to prevent vapour deposition
1/24 • Controlling humidity of the air or gas to be carburetted
1/26 • using raised temperatures or pressures (C10J 1/207, C10J 1/213 take precedence)
1/28 • Odourising air gas

3/00 Production of gases containing carbon monoxide and hydrogen, e.g. synthesis gas or town gas, from solid carbonaceous materials by partial oxidation processes involving oxygen or steam
3/02 • Fixed-bed gasification of lump fuel
3/04 • • Cyclic processes, e.g. alternate blast and run
3/06 • • Continuous processes
3/08 • • • with ash-removal in liquid state
3/10 • • • using external heating
3/12 • • • using solid heat-carriers
3/14 • • • using gaseous heat-carriers
3/16 • • • simultaneously reacting oxygen and water with the carbonaceous material
3/18 • • • using electricity
3/20 • • Apparatus; Plants
3/22 • • • Arrangements or dispositions of valves or flues
3/24 • • • • to permit flow of gases or vapours other than upwardly through the fuel bed
3/26 • • • • • downwardly
3/28 • • • • fully automatic
3/30 • • • Fuel charging devices
3/32 • • • Devices for distributing fuel evenly over the bed for stirring-up the fuel bed
3/34 • • • • Grates; Mechanical ash-removing devices
3/36 • • • • Fixed grates
3/38 • • • • with stirring beams
3/40 • • • • Movable grates
3/42 • • • • • Rotary grates
3/44 • • • • adapted for use on vehicles
3/46 • Gasification of granular or pulverulent fuels in suspension
3/48 • • Apparatus; Plants
3/50 • • • Fuel charging devices
3/52 • • • Ash-removing devices
3/54 • • • Gasification of granular or pulverulent fuels by the Winkler technique, i.e. by fluidisation
3/56 • • • Apparatus; Plants
3/57 • Gasification using molten salts or metals (C10J 3/02, C10J 3/46 take precedence) [4]
3/58 • combined with pre-distillation of the fuel
3/60 • • Processes
3/62 • • • with separate withdrawal of the distillation products
3/64 • • • with decomposition of the distillation products
3/66 • • • • by introducing them into the gasification zone
3/72 • • Other features
3/74 • • Construction of shells or jackets
3/76 • • • Water jackets; Steam boiler jackets
3/78 • • High-pressure apparatus
3/80 • • • with arrangements for preheating the blast or the water vapour
3/82 • Gas withdrawal means
3/84 • • • with means for removing dust or tar from the gas
3/86 • • combined with waste-heat boilers

C10K PURIFYING OR MODIFYING THE CHEMICAL COMPOSITION OF COMBUSTIBLE GASES CONTAINING CARBON MONOXIDE

1/00 Purifying combustible gases containing carbon monoxide (isolation of hydrogen from mixtures containing hydrogen and carbon monoxide C01B 3/50)
C10K

1/02 • Dust removal
1/04 • by cooling to condense non-gaseous materials
1/06 • combined with spraying with water
1/08 • by washing with liquids; Reviving the used wash liquors
1/10 • with aqueous liquids
1/12 • alkaline-reacting
1/14 • organic
1/16 • with non-aqueous liquids
1/18 • hydrocarbon oils
1/20 • by treating with solids; Regenerating spent purifying masses
1/22 • Apparatus, e.g. dry box purifiers
1/24 • Supporting means for the purifying material
1/26 • Regeneration of the purifying material
1/28 • Controlling the gas flow through the purifiers
1/30 • with moving purifying masses
1/32 • with selectively absorptive solids, e.g. active carbon
1/34 • by catalytic conversion of impurities to more readily removable materials

3/00 Modifying the chemical composition of combustible gases containing carbon monoxide to produce an improved fuel, e.g. one of different calorific value, which may be free from carbon monoxide
3/02 • by catalytic treatment
3/04 • reducing the carbon monoxide content
3/06 • by mixing with gases

C10L

FUELS NOT OTHERWISE PROVIDED FOR; NATURAL GAS; SYNTHETIC NATURAL GAS OBTAINED BY PROCESSES NOT COVERED BY SUBCLASSES C10G OR C10K; LIQUEFIED PETROLEUM GAS; USE OF ADDITIVES TO FUELS OR FIRES; FIRE-LIGHTERS [5]

1/00 Liquid carbonaceous fuels
1/02 • essentially based on components consisting of carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen only
1/04 • essentially based on blends of hydrocarbons
1/06 • for spark ignition
1/08 • for compression ignition
1/10 • containing additives

Note(s)
1. In groups C10L 1/12-C10L 1/14, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, a compound is classified in the last appropriate place.
2. If an additive is a mixture of compounds, classification is made for each compound of interest.
3. A metal salt or an ammonium salt of a compound is classified as that compound, e.g. a chromium sulphonate is classified as a sulphonate in group C10L 1/24 and not in group C10L 1/30.

1/12 • Inorganic compounds
1/14 • Organic compounds
1/16 • Hydrocarbons
1/18 • containing oxygen
1/182 • • • containing hydroxy groups; Salts thereof [2006.01]
1/183 • • • • at least one hydroxy group bound to an aromatic carbon atom [2006.01]
1/185 • • • Ethers; Acetals; Ketals; Aldehydes; Ketones [2006.01]
1/188 • • • Carboxylic acids; Salts thereof [2006.01]
1/189 • • • • having at least one carboxyl group bound to an aromatic carbon atom [2006.01]
1/19 • • • Esters [2006.01]
1/192 • • • Macromolecular compounds [2006.01]
1/195 • • • • obtained by reactions involving only carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [2006.01]
1/196 • • • • • derived from monomers containing a carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bond and a carboxyl group or salts, anhydrides or esters thereof [2006.01]
1/197 • • • • • • derived from monomers containing a carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bond and an acyloxy group of a saturated carboxylic or carboxonic acid [2006.01]
1/198 • • • • • obtained otherwise than by reactions involving only carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [2006.01]
1/20 • • • containing halogen
1/22 • • • containing nitrogen
1/222 • • • • containing at least one carbon-to-nitrogen single bond [2006.01]
1/223 • • • • • having at least one amino group bound to an aromatic carbon atom [2006.01]
1/224 • • • • • Amides; Imides [2006.01]
1/226 • • • • containing at least one nitrogen-to-nitrogen bond, e.g. azo compounds, azides, hydrazines [2006.01]
1/228 • • • • • containing at least one carbon-to-nitrogen double bond, e.g. guanidines, hydrazones, semicarbazones, imines; containing at least one carbon-to-nitrogen triple bond, e.g. nitriles [2006.01]
1/23 • • • containing at least one nitrogen-to-oxygen bond, e.g. nitro-compounds, nitrates, nitriles [2006.01]
1/232 • • • containing nitrogen in a heterocyclic ring [2006.01]
1/233 • • • • containing nitrogen and oxygen in the ring, e.g. oxazoles [2006.01]
1/234 • • • Macromolecular compounds [2006.01]
1/236 • • • • obtained by reactions involving only carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [2006.01]
1/238 • • • • • obtained otherwise than by reactions involving only carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [2006.01]
1/2383 • • • • • Polyamines or polyimines, or derivatives thereof [2006.01]
1/2387 • • • • • Polyoxalkyleneamines [2006.01]
1/24 • • • containing sulfur, selenium or tellurium
1/26 • • • containing phosphorus
1/28 • • • containing silicon
1/30 • • • containing elements not mentioned in groups C10L 1/16-C10L 1/28
1/32 • consisting of coal-oil suspensions or aqueous emulsions

3/00 Gaseous fuels; Natural gas; Synthetic natural gas obtained by processes not covered by subclasses C10G, C10K; Liquefied petroleum gas [5]
In this subclass, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place. Thus, a compound having an aromatic ring is classified as aromatic regardless of whether the substituent(s) of interest are on the ring or on an aliphatic part of the molecule.

3. In this subclass:
   a. metal or ammonium salts of a compound are classified as that compound;
   b. salts or adducts formed between two or more organic compounds are classified according to all compounds forming the salt or adduct, if of interest;
   c. a specified compound, e.g. phenols, acids, substituted by a macromolecular hydrocarbon radical is classified as that compound;
   d. base-materials or thickeners or additives consisting of a mixture for which no specific main group is provided are classified in the most indented group covering all essential constituents of the mixture, for example,
      • a base-material mixture of ketone and amide group C10M 105/00;
      • a base-material mixture of ketone and ether group C10M 105/08;
      • an additive mixture of long and short chain esters group C10M 129/00;
      • an additive mixture of short chain aliphatic and aromatic carboxylic acids group C10M 129/26;

8/00 Fuels not provided for in other groups of this subclass [2006.01]

9/00 Treating solid fuels to improve their combustion

10/00 Use of additives to fuels or fires for particular purposes (using binders for briquetting solid fuels C10L 5/10; using additives to improve the combustion of solid fuels C10L 9/10) [1, 2006.01]

11/00 Fire-lighters

Note(s)

1. In this subclass, the following terms or expressions are used with the meanings indicated:
   • “lubricant” or “lubricating composition” includes cutting oils, hydraulic fluids, metal drawing compositions, flushing oils, slushing oils, or the like;
   • “aliphatic” includes “cycloaliphatic”. 

2. In this subclass, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place. Thus, a compound having an aromatic ring is classified as aromatic regardless of whether the substituent(s) of interest are on the ring or on an aliphatic part of the molecule.

3. In this subclass:
   a. metal or ammonium salts of a compound are classified as that compound;
   b. salts or adducts formed between two or more organic compounds are classified according to all compounds forming the salt or adduct, if of interest;
   c. a specified compound, e.g. phenols, acids, substituted by a macromolecular hydrocarbon radical is classified as that compound;
   d. base-materials or thickeners or additives consisting of a mixture for which no specific main group is provided are classified in the most indented group covering all essential constituents of the mixture, for example,
      • a base-material mixture of ketone and amide group C10M 105/00;
      • a base-material mixture of ketone and ether group C10M 105/08;
      • an additive mixture of long and short chain esters group C10M 129/00;
      • an additive mixture of short chain aliphatic and aromatic carboxylic acids group C10M 129/26;
e. except for aqueous lubricating compositions containing more than 10% water, which are classified separately, classification is made according to the type of ingredient or mixture of types of ingredient (base-material, thickener or additive) which characterises the composition.

Attention is drawn to the fact that a mixture of essential ingredients characterised by only one of its components, rather than by the mixture as a whole, is not classified as a mixture, e.g., a lubricating composition consisting of:

- a known base-material and a new additive is classified only in the “additive” part of the classification scheme;
- a known base-material with both a thickener and a further additive as essential ingredients, which may be individually known or not, is classified as a mixture of thickener and additive;
- a known base-material with a combination of additives as essential ingredients, which may be individually known or not, is classified in the appropriate place for the additive mixture.

4. Any part of a composition which is not identified by the classification according to Notes (2) or (3) above, and which itself is determined to be novel and non-obvious, must also be classified in the last appropriate place. The part can be either a single ingredient or a composition in itself.

5. Any part of a composition which is not identified by the classification according to Notes (2) to (4) above, and which is considered to represent information of interest for search, may also be classified in the last appropriate place. This can, for example, be the case when it is considered of interest to enable searching of compositions using a combination of classification symbols. Such non-obligatory classification should be given as “additional information”.

6. In this subclass, it is desirable to add the indexing codes of subclass C10N.

### Subclass index

#### BASE-MATERIALS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification</th>
<th>IPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mineral or fatty oils</td>
<td>101/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inorganic materials</td>
<td>103/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-macromolecular organic compounds</td>
<td>105/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compounds of unknown or incompletely defined constitution</td>
<td>109/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mixtures</td>
<td>111/00, 169/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### THICKENERS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification</th>
<th>IPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inorganic materials</td>
<td>113/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-macromolecular organic compounds</td>
<td>115/00, 117/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macromolecular compounds</td>
<td>119/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compounds of unknown or incompletely defined constitution</td>
<td>121/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mixtures</td>
<td>123/00, 169/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### ADDITIVES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification</th>
<th>IPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inorganic materials</td>
<td>125/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-macromolecular organic compounds</td>
<td>127/00-139/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macromolecular compounds</td>
<td>143/00-155/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compounds of unknown or incompletely defined constitution</td>
<td>159/00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mixtures</td>
<td>141/00, 157/00, 161/00-169/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### COMPOSITIONS CHARACTERISED BY PHYSICAL PROPERTIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification</th>
<th>IPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aqueous compositions</td>
<td>173/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### WORKING-UP

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification</th>
<th>IPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>プレーシップ</td>
<td>175/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PREPARATION OR AFTER TREATMENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification</th>
<th>IPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>177/00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
105/32 • • • Esters [4]
105/34 • • • • of monocarboxylic acids [4]
105/36 • • • • of polyarylic acids [4]
105/38 • • • • of polyhydroxy compounds [4]
105/40 • • • • containing free hydroxy or carboxyl groups [4]
105/42 • • • • Complex esters, i.e. compounds containing at least three esterified carboxyl groups and derived from the combination of at least three different types of the following five types of compound: monohydroxy compounds, polyhydroxy compounds, monocarboxylic acids, polyarylic acids and hydroxy carboxylic acids [4]
105/44 • • • • • derived from the combination of monocarboxylic acids, dicarboxylic acids and dihydroxy compounds only and having no free hydroxy or carboxyl groups [4]
105/46 • • • • • derived from the combination of monohydroxy compounds, dihydroxy compounds and dicarboxylic acids only and having no free hydroxy or carboxyl groups [4]

105/48 • • • • of carboxic acid [4]
105/50 • • containing halogen [4]
105/52 • • containing carbon, hydrogen and halogen only [4]
105/54 • • containing carbon, hydrogen, halogen and oxygen [4]
105/56 • • containing nitrogen [4]
105/58 • • • Amines, e.g. polyalkylene polyamines, quaternary amines (polyalkylene polyamines with eleven or more monomer units C10M 107/44) [4]
105/60 • • • • having amino groups bound to an acyclic or cycloaliphatic carbon atom [4]
105/62 • • • • containing hydroxy groups [4]
105/64 • • • • having amino groups bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [4]
105/66 • • • • containing hydroxy groups [4]
105/68 • • Amides; Imides [4]
105/70 • • as ring hetero atom [4]
105/72 • • containing sulfur, selenium or tellurium [4]
105/74 • • containing phosphorus [4]
105/76 • • containing silicon [4]
105/78 • • containing boron [4]
105/80 • • • • containing atoms of elements not provided for in groups C10M 105/02-C10M 105/78 [4]

105/00 Lubricating compositions characterised by the base-material being a macromolecular compound [4]
107/02 • • • Hydrocarbon polymers; Hydrocarbon polymers modified by oxidation [4]
107/04 • • Polyethylene [4]
107/06 • • containing propene [4]
107/08 • • containing butene [4]
107/10 • • containing aliphatic monomer having more than 4 carbon atoms [4]
107/12 • • containing aromatic monomer, e.g. styrene [4]
107/14 • • containing conjugated diene [4]
107/16 • • containing non-conjugated diene [4]
107/18 • • Hydrocarbon polymers modified by oxidation [4]
107/20 • • containing oxygen (C10M 107/18 takes precedence) [4]
107/22 • • • Macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [4]

107/24 • • • containing monomers having an unsaturated radical bound to an alcohol, aldehyde, ketone, ether, ketal or acetal radical [4]
107/26 • • • containing monomers having an unsaturated radical bound to an acyloxy radical of a saturated carboxylic or carboxonic acid [4]
107/28 • • • containing monomers having an unsaturated radical bound to a carboxyl radical, e.g. acrylate [4]
107/30 • • • Macromolecular compounds obtained otherwise than by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [4]
107/32 • • • Condensation polymers of aldehydes or ketones; Polymers; Polyethers [4]
107/34 • • • • Polyoxyalkylenes [4]
107/36 • • • • Polysaccharides, e.g. cellulose [4]
107/38 • • containing halogen [4]
107/40 • • containing nitrogen [4]
107/42 • • • Macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [4]
107/44 • • • Macromolecular compounds obtained otherwise than by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [4]
107/46 • • containing sulfur [4]
107/48 • • containing phosphorus [4]
107/50 • • containing silicon [4]
107/52 • • containing boron [4]
107/54 • • containing atoms of elements not provided for in groups C10M 107/02-C10M 107/52 [4]

109/00 Lubricating compositions characterised by the base-material being a compound of unknown or incompletely defined constitution (C10M 101/00 takes precedence) [4]
109/02 • • Reaction products [4]

Note(s) [2006.01]
When classifying in this group, any reactant of a reaction product which is considered to represent information of interest for search, may also be classified in the last appropriate place in this subclass. This can, for example, be the case when it is considered of interest to enable searching of compositions using a combination of classification symbols. Such non-obligatory classification should be given as “additional information”.

111/00 Lubricating compositions characterised by the base-material being a mixture of two or more compounds covered by more than one of the main groups C10M 101/00-C10M 109/00, each of these compounds being essential [4]
111/02 • • at least one of them being a non-macromolecular organic compound [4]
111/04 • • at least one of them being a macromolecular organic compound [4]
111/06 • • at least one of them being a compound of the type covered by group C10M 109/00 [4]

Thickeners [4]

Note(s)
In groups C10M 113/00-C10M 123/00, the following term is used with the meaning indicated:
Lubricating compositions characterised by the thickener being an inorganic material \[4\]

113/00

- Carbon; Graphite \[4\]
- Sulfur \[4\]
- Metals; Alloys \[4\]
- Metal compounds \[4\]
- Clays; Micas \[4\]
- Silica \[4\]
- Glass \[4\]
- Inorganic material treated with organic compounds, e.g. coated \[4\]

115/00

Lubricating compositions characterised by the thickener being a non-macromolecular organic compound other than a carboxylic acid or salt thereof \[4\]

115/02

- Hydrocarbons (petroleum fractions C10M 121/02) \[4\]
- containing oxygen \[4\]
- containing halogen \[4\]
- containing nitrogen \[4\]
- containing sulfur \[4\]
- containing phosphorus \[4\]

117/00

Lubricating compositions characterised by the thickener being a non-macromolecular carboxylic acid or salt thereof \[4\]

117/02

- having only one carboxyl group bound to an acyclic carbon atom, cycloaliphatic carbon atom or hydrogen \[4\]
- containing hydroxy groups \[4\]
- having more than one carboxyl group bound to an acyclic carbon atom or cycloaliphatic carbon atom \[4\]
- having only one carboxyl group bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring \[4\]
- having more than one carboxyl group bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring \[4\]

119/00

Lubricating compositions characterised by the thickener being a macromolecular compound \[4\]

119/02

- Hydrocarbons polymers; Hydrocarbon polymers modified by oxidation \[4\]
- containing oxygen (hydrocarbon polymers modified by oxidation C10M 119/02) \[4\]
- Macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds \[4\]
- containing monomers having an unsaturated radical bound to an alcohol, aldehyde, ketonic, ether, ketal or acetal radical \[4\]
- containing monomers having an unsaturated radical bound to an acyloxy radical of a saturated carboxylic or carboxonic acid \[4\]
- containing monomers having an unsaturated radical bound to a carboxyl radical, e.g. acrylate \[4\]
- Macromolecular compounds obtained otherwise than by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds \[4\]
- Condensation polymers of aldehydes or ketones; Polysters; Polyethers \[4\]
- Polyoxyalkylenes \[4\]

119/20

- Polysaccharides, e.g. cellulose \[4\]
- containing halogen \[4\]
- containing nitrogen \[4\]
- containing sulfur \[4\]
- containing phosphorus \[4\]
- containing atoms of elements not provided for in groups C10M 119/02-C10M 119/28 \[4\]

121/00

Lubricating compositions characterised by the thickener being a compound of unknown or incompletely defined constitution \[4\]

121/02

- Petroleum fractions, e.g. tars \[4\]

121/04

- Reaction products \[4\]

Notes \[2006.01\]

When classifying in this group, any reactant of a reaction product which is considered to represent information of interest for search, may also be classified in the last appropriate place in this subclass. This can, for example, be the case when it is considered of interest to enable searching of compositions using a combination of classification symbols. Such non-obligatory classification should be given as “additional information”.

123/00

Lubricating compositions characterised by the thickener being a mixture of two or more compounds covered by more than one of the main groups C10M 113/00-C10M 121/00, each of these compounds being essential (inorganic materials coated with organic compounds C10M 113/16) \[4\]

123/02

- at least one of them being a non-macromolecular compound \[4\]
- at least one of them being a macromolecular compound \[4\]
- at least one of them being a compound of the type covered by group C10M 121/00 \[4\]

Additives \[4\]

125/00

Lubricating compositions characterised by the additive being an inorganic material \[4\]

125/02

- Carbon; Graphite \[4\]
- Metals; Alloys \[4\]
- Sulfur \[4\]
- Metal carbides or hydrides \[4\]
- Metal oxides, hydroxides, carbonates or bicarbonates \[4\]
- Metal carbonyls \[4\]
- Water (aqueous lubricating compositions containing more than 10% water C10M 173/00) \[4\]
- Hydrogen peroxide; Oxygenated water \[4\]
- Compounds containing halogen \[4\]
- Compounds containing nitrogen \[4\]
- Compounds containing sulfur, selenium or tellurium \[4\]
- Compounds containing phosphorus, arsenic or antimony \[4\]
- Compounds containing silicon or boron, e.g. silica, sand \[4\]
- Glass \[4\]
- Clay \[4\]

127/00

Lubricating compositions characterised by the additive being a non-macromolecular hydrocarbon (petroleum fractions C10M 159/04) \[4\]

127/02

- well-defined aliphatic \[4\]
Lubricating compositions characterised by the additive being an organic non-macromolecular compound containing oxygen [4]

- having a carbon chain of less than 30 atoms [4]
- Hydroxy compounds [4]
- having hydroxy groups bound to acyclic or cycloaliphatic carbon atoms [4]
- containing at least 2 hydroxy groups [4]
- having hydroxy groups bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [4]
- with condensed rings [4]
- containing at least 2 hydroxy groups [4]
- Ethers [4]
- Epoxides [4]
- Cyclic ethers having 4 or more ring atoms, e.g. furans, dioxiolanes [4]
- Peroxides; Ozonides [4]
- Aldehydes; Ketones [4]
- Carboxylic acids; Salts thereof [4]
- having carboxyl groups bound to acyclic or cycloaliphatic carbon atoms [4]
- having 7 or less carbon atoms [4]
- monocarboxylic [4]
- polycarboxylic [4]
- containing hydroxy groups [4]
- having 8 or more carbon atoms [4]
- monocarboxylic [4]
- polycarboxylic [4]
- containing hydroxy groups [4]
- cycloaliphatic [4]
- having carboxyl groups bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [4]
- monocarboxylic [4]
- polycarboxylic [4]
- containing hydroxy groups [4]
- Acids of unknown or incompletely defined constitution [4]
- Naphthenic acids [4]
- Tall oil acids [4]
- Rosin acids [4]
- Acids obtained from polymerised unsaturated acids [4]
- Epoxidised acids or esters [4]
- Esters (epoxidised C10M 129/66) [4]
- of monocarboxylic acids [4]
- of polycarboxylic acids [4]
- of polyhydroxy compounds [4]
- containing free hydroxy or carboxyl groups [4]
- Complex esters, i.e. compounds containing at least three esterified carboxyl groups and derived from the combination of at least three different types of the following five types of compound: mono- or dihydroxy compounds, polyhydroxy compounds, monocarboxylic acids, polycarboxylic acids, hydroxy carboxylic acids [4]
- derived from the combination of monocarboxylic acids, dicarboxylic acids and dihydroxy compounds only and having no free hydroxy or carboxyl groups [4]
- derived from the combination of monohydroxy compounds, dihydroxy compounds and dicarboxylic acids only and having no free hydroxy or carboxyl groups [4]
- of carboxylic acid [4]
- having a carbon chain of 30 or more atoms [4]
- Hydroxy compounds [4]
- having hydroxy groups bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [4]
- Carboxylic acids [4]
- having carboxyl groups bound to acyclic or cycloaliphatic carbon atoms [4]
- having carboxyl groups bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [4]
- Esters [4]

Lubricating compositions characterised by the additive being an organic non-macromolecular compound containing halogen [4]

- containing carbon, hydrogen and halogen only [4]
- aliphatic [4]
- aromatic [4]
- containing carbon, hydrogen, halogen and oxygen [4]
- Alcohols; Ethers; Aldehydes; Ketones [4]
- Acids; Salts or esters thereof [4]
- Halogenated waxes [4]

Lubricating compositions characterised by the additive being an organic non-macromolecular compound containing nitrogen [4]

- having a carbon chain of less than 30 atoms [4]
- Amines, e.g. polyalkylene polyamines; Quaternary amines (polyalkylene polyamines with eleven or more monomer units C10M 149/22) [4]
- having amino groups bound to acyclic or cycloaliphatic carbon atoms [4]
- containing hydroxy groups [4]
- cycloaliphatic [4]
- having amino groups bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [4]
- containing hydroxy groups [4]
- Amides; Imides [4]
- of carboxic or haloformal acids [4]
- Ureas; Semicarbazides; Allophanates [4]
- containing a carbon-to-nitrogen double bond, e.g. guanidines, hydrazones, semicarbazones [4]
- Nitriles [4]
- containing a nitrogen-to-nitrogen double bond [4]
- Azo compounds [4]
- containing a nitrogen-to-oxygen bond [4]
- containing a nitro group [4]
- containing a nitroso group [4]
- Hydroxylamines [4]
- Heterocyclic nitrogen compounds [4]
- Six-membered ring containing nitrogen and carbon only [4]
- Triazines [4]
- Five-membered ring containing nitrogen and carbon only [4]
- Imidazoles [4]
- the ring containing both nitrogen and oxygen [4]
- Morpholines [4]
C10M

135/00 Lubricating compositions characterised by the additive being an organic non-macromolecular compound containing sulfur, selenium or tellurium [4]

135/02 • Sulphurised compounds [4]
135/04 • • • Hydrocarbons [4]
135/06 • • • Esters, e.g. fats [4]
135/08 • • • containing a sulfur-to-oxygen bond [4]
135/10 • • • Sulfonic acids or derivatives thereof [4]
135/12 • Thio-acids; Thiocyanates; Derivatives thereof [4]
135/14 • • • having a carbon-to-sulfur double bond [4]
135/16 • • • thiourea type, i.e. containing the group \( \text{N}^{5} \text{C}^{3} \text{N}^{5} \) [4]
135/18 • • • thio-carbamic type, e.g. containing the groups \( \text{N}^{5} \text{C}^{3} \text{S}^{5} \) or \( \text{N}^{5} \text{C}^{3}\text{O}^{5} \) [4]
135/20 • Thiols; Sulfides; Polysulfides [4]
135/22 • • • containing sulfur atoms bound to acrylic or cycloaliphatic carbon atoms [4]
135/24 • • • containing hydroxy groups; Derivatives thereof [4]
135/26 • • • containing carboxyl groups; Derivatives thereof [4]
135/28 • • • containing sulfur atoms bound to a carbon atom of a six-membered aromatic ring [4]
135/30 • • • containing hydroxy groups; Derivatives thereof [4]
135/32 • Heterocyclic sulfur, selenium or tellurium compounds [4]
135/34 • • • the ring containing sulfur and carbon only [4]
135/36 • • • the ring containing sulfur and carbon with nitrogen or oxygen [4]

137/00 Lubricating compositions characterised by the additive being an organic non-macromolecular compound containing phosphorus [4]

137/02 • having no phosphorus-to-carbon bond [4]
137/04 • • • Phosphate esters [4]
137/06 • • • • • Metal salts [4]
137/08 • • • • • Ammonium or amine salts [4]
137/10 • • • • • Thio derivatives [4]
137/12 • • • • • containing a phosphorus-to-carbon bond [4]
137/14 • • • • • containing sulfur [4]
137/16 • • • • • containing a phosphorus-to-nitrogen bond [4]

139/00 Lubricating compositions characterised by the additive being an organic non-macromolecular compound containing atoms of elements not provided for in groups C10M 127/00-C10M 137/00 [4]

139/02 • • • Esters of silicon acids [4]
139/04 • • • having a silicon-to-carbon bond, e.g. silanes [4]
139/06 • • • having a metal-to-carbon bond (metal complexes of unknown constitution C10M 159/18) [4]

141/00 Lubricating compositions characterised by the additive being a mixture of two or more compounds covered by more than one of the main groups C10M 125/00-C10M 139/00, each of these compounds being essential [4]

141/02 • at least one of them being an organic oxygen-containing compound [4]
141/04 • at least one of them being an organic halogen-containing compound [4]
141/06 • at least one of them being an organic nitrogen-containing compound [4]
141/08 • at least one of them being an organic sulfur-, selenium- or tellurium-containing compound [4]
141/10 • at least one of them being an organic phosphorus-containing compound [4]
141/12 • at least one of them being an organic compound containing atoms of elements not provided for in groups C10M 141/02-C10M 141/10 [4]

143/00 Lubricating composition characterised by the additive being a macromolecular hydrocarbon or such hydrocarbon modified by oxidation [4]

143/02 • Polyethene [4]
143/04 • • containing propene [4]
143/06 • • containing butene [4]
143/08 • • containing aliphatic monomer having more than 4 carbon atoms [4]
143/10 • • containing aromatic monomer, e.g. styrene [4]
143/12 • • containing conjugated diene [4]
143/14 • • containing non-conjugated diene [4]
143/16 • • containing cycloaliphatic monomer [4]
143/18 • Oxidised hydrocarbons, i.e. oxidised subsequent to macromolecular formation [4]

145/00 Lubricating compositions characterised by the additive being a macromolecular compound containing oxygen (oxidised hydrocarbons C10M 143/18) [4]

145/02 • Macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [4]
145/04 • • containing monomers having an unsaturated radical bound to an alcohol, aldehyde, ketonic, ether, ketal or acetel radical [4]
145/06 • • containing monomers having an unsaturated radical bound to an acyloxy radical of a saturated carboxylic or carboxylic acid [4]
145/08 • • • Vinyl esters of a saturated carboxylic or carboxylic acid [4]
145/10 • • containing monomers having an unsaturated radical bound to a carboxyl radical, e.g. acrylate [4]
145/12 • • • monocarboxylic [4]
145/14 • • • • Acrylate; Methacrylate [4]
145/16 • • • polycarboxylic [4]
145/18 • Macromolecular compounds obtained otherwise than by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [4]
145/20 • • Condensation polymers of aldehydes or ketones [4]
145/22 • • Polyesters [4]
145/24 • • Polyethers [4]
145/26 • • • Polyoxalkylenes [4]
145/28 • • • of alkyene oxides containing 2 carbon atoms only [4]
145/30 • • • of alkyene oxides containing 3 carbon atoms only [4]
145/32 • • • of alkyene oxides containing 4 or more carbon atoms [4]
145/34 • • • of two or more specified different types [4]
145/36 • • • • esterified [4]
• Polysaccharides, e.g. cellulose [4]

147/00 Lubricating compositions characterised by the additive being a macromolecular compound containing halogen [4]

147/02 • Monomer containing carbon, hydrogen and halogen only [4]

147/04 • Monomer containing carbon, hydrogen, halogen and oxygen [4]

149/00 Lubricating compositions characterised by the additive being a macromolecular compound containing nitrogen [4]

149/02 • Macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [4]

149/04 • containing monomers having an unsaturated radical bound to an amino group [4]

149/06 • containing monomers having an unsaturated radical bound to an amido or imido group [4]

149/08 • containing monomers having an unsaturated radical bound to a nitrile group [4]

149/10 • containing monomers having an unsaturated radical bound to a nitrogen-containing heteroring [4]

149/12 • Macromolecular compounds obtained otherwise than by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [4]

149/14 • a condensation reaction being involved [4]

149/16 • between the nitrogen-containing monomer and an aldehyde or ketone [4]

149/18 • Polyamides [4]

149/20 • Polyureas [4]

149/22 • Polyamines [4]

151/00 Lubricating compositions characterised by the additive being a macromolecular compound containing sulfur, selenium or tellurium [4]

151/02 • Macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions involving only carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [4]

151/04 • Macromolecular compounds obtained otherwise than by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [4]

153/00 Lubricating compositions characterised by the additive being a macromolecular compound containing phosphorus [4]

153/02 • Macromolecular compounds obtained by reactions involving only carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [4]

153/04 • Macromolecular compounds obtained otherwise than by reactions only involving carbon-to-carbon unsaturated bonds [4]

155/00 Lubricating compositions characterised by the additive being a macromolecular compound containing atoms of elements not provided for in groups C10M 143/00-C10M 153/00 [4]

155/02 • Monomer containing silicon [4]

155/04 • Monomer containing boron [4]

157/00 Lubricating compositions characterised by the additive being a mixture of two or more macromolecular compounds covered by more than one of the main groups C10M 143/00-C10M 155/00, each of these compounds being essential [4]

157/02 • at least one of them being a halogen-containing compound [4]

157/04 • at least one of them being a nitrogen-containing compound [4]

157/06 • at least one of them being a sulfur-, selenium- or tellurium-containing compound [4]

157/08 • at least one of them being a phosphorus-containing compound [4]

157/10 • at least one of them being a compound containing atoms of elements not provided for in groups C10M 157/02-C10M 157/08 [4]

159/00 Lubricating compositions characterised by the additive being of unknown or incompletely defined constitution (carboxylic acids with less than 30 carbon atoms in the chain, of unknown or incompletely defined constitution C10M 129/56) [4]

159/02 • Natural products [4]

159/04 • Petroleum fractions, e.g. tars, solvents [4]

159/06 • Waxes, e.g. ozocerite, cere sine, petrolatum, slack-wax [4]

159/08 • Fatty oils [4]

159/10 • Rubber [4]

159/12 • Reaction products [4]

Note(s) [2006.01]

When classifying in this group, any reactant of a reaction product which is considered to represent information of interest for search, may also be classified in the last appropriate place in this subclass. This can, for example, be the case when it is considered of interest to enable searching of compositions using a combination of classification symbols. Such non-obligatory classification should be given as "additional information".

159/14 • obtained by Friedel-Crafts condensation [4]

159/16 • obtained by Mannich reactions [4]

159/18 • Complexes with metals [4]

159/20 • Reaction mixtures having an excess of neutralising base, e.g. so-called overbasic or highly basic products [4]

159/22 • containing phenol radicals [4]

159/24 • containing sulfonic radicals [4]

161/00 Lubricating compositions characterised by the additive being a mixture of a macromolecular compound and a non-macromolecular compound, each of these compounds being essential [4]

163/00 Lubricating compositions characterised by the additive being a mixture of a compound of unknown or incompletely defined constitution and a non-macromolecular compound, each of these compounds being essential [4]

165/00 Lubricating compositions characterised by the additive being a mixture of a macromolecular compound and a compound of unknown or incompletely defined constitution, each of these compounds being essential [4]

167/00 Lubricating compositions characterised by the additive being a mixture of a macromolecular compound, a non-macromolecular compound and a compound of unknown or incompletely defined constitution, each of these compounds being essential [4]
Mixtures of base-materials, thickeners and additives [4]

169/00  Lubricating compositions characterised by containing as components a mixture of at least two types of ingredient selected from base-materials, thickeners or additives, covered by the preceding groups, each of these compounds being essential [4]

169/02  • Mixtures of base-materials and thickeners [4]
169/04  • Mixtures of base-materials and additives [4]
169/06  • Mixtures of thickeners and additives [4]

Compositions characterised by physical properties [4]

171/00  Lubricating compositions characterised by purely physical criteria, e.g. containing as base-material, thickener or additive, ingredients which are characterised exclusively by their numerically specified physical properties, i.e. containing ingredients which are physically well defined but for which the chemical nature is either unspecified or only very vaguely indicated (chemically defined ingredients C10M 101/00-C10M 169/00; petroleum fractions C10M 101/02, C10M 121/02, C10M 159/04) [4]

171/02  • Specified values of viscosity or viscosity index [4]
171/04  • Specified molecular weight or molecular weight distribution [4]
171/06  • Particles of special shape or size [4]

Aqueous lubricating compositions [4]

173/00  Lubricating compositions containing more than 10% water [4]

173/02  • not containing mineral or fatty oils [4]

Working-up [4]

175/00  Working-up used lubricants to recover useful products [4]

175/02  • mineral-oil based [4]
175/04  • aqueous emulsion based [4]
175/06  • by ultrafiltration or osmosis [4]

Preparation or after-treatment [4]

177/00  Special methods of preparation of lubricating compositions; Chemical modification by after-treatment of components or of the whole of a lubricating composition, not covered by other classes [4]
Note(s)

1. This subclass constitutes an indexing scheme associated with subclass C10M, relating to:
   - metals and the metal of a compound (C10N 10/00);
   - the properties of the lubricant composition or constituents thereof (C10N 20/00, C10N 30/00);
   - the use or application of the lubricant composition (C10N 40/00);
   - the form in which the lubricant composition is applied (C10N 50/00);
   - chemical modification by after-treatment of lubricant constituents (C10N 60/00);
   - special methods of preparation (C10N 70/00);
   - special pretreatment of the material to be lubricated (C10N 80/00).

2. In this subclass, the following terms or expressions are used with the meanings indicated:
   - "lubricant" or "lubricating composition" includes cutting oils, hydraulic fluids, metal drawing compositions, flushing oils, slushing oils, or the like;
   - "aliphatic" includes "cycloaliphatic".

10/00 Metal present as such or in compounds [4]

Note(s)

1. In this group, metals should be indexed according to their group of the Periodic Table.
2. Attention is drawn to Note (3) after the title of section C, which Note indicates to which version of the periodic table of chemical elements the IPC refers.

10/02 • Groups 1 or 11 [4]
10/04 • Groups 2 or 12 [4]
10/06 • Groups 3 or 13 [4]
10/08 • Groups 4 or 14 [4]
10/10 • Groups 5 or 15 [4]
10/12 • Groups 6 or 16 [4]
10/14 • Group 7 [4]
10/16 • Groups 8, 9 or 10 [4]

20/00 Specified physical properties of component of lubricating compositions [4]

20/02 • Viscosity; Viscosity index [4]
20/04 • Molecular weight; Molecular weight distribution [4]
20/06 • Particles of special shape or size [4]

30/00 Specified physical or chemical property which is improved by the additive characterising the lubricating composition, e.g. multifunctional additives [4]

30/02 • Pour-point; Viscosity index [4]
30/04 • Detergent or dispersant property [4]
30/06 • Oiliness; Film-strength; Anti-wear; Resistance to extreme pressure [4]
30/08 • Resistance to extreme temperature [4]
30/10 • Inhibition of oxidation, e.g. anti-oxidants [4]
30/12 • Inhibition of corrosion, e.g. anti-rust agents, anti-corrosives [4]
30/14 • Metal deactivation [4]
30/16 • Antiseptic; Biocidal [4]
30/18 • Anti-foaming property [4]
30/20 • Colour, e.g. dyes [4]

40/00 Specified use or application for which the lubricating composition is intended [4]

40/02 • Bearings [4]
40/04 • Oil-bath; Gear-boxes; Automatic transmissions; Traction drives [4]

40/06 • Instruments or other precision apparatus, e.g. damping fluids [4]
40/08 • Hydraulic fluids, e.g. brake-fluids [4]
40/10 • Running-in oil [4]
40/12 • Gas-turbines [4]
40/13 • Aircraft turbines [5]
40/14 • Electric or magnetic purposes [4]
40/16 • Dielectric; Insulating oil [4]
40/18 • in connection with recordings on magnetic tape or disc [4]
40/20 • Metal working [4]
40/22 • with essential removal of material [4]
40/24 • without essential removal of material; Punching metal [4]
40/25 • Internal-combustion engines [5]
40/26 • Two-stroke [4, 5]
40/28 • Rotary [4, 5]
40/30 • Refrigerator lubricant [5]
40/32 • Wire, rope or cable lubricants [5]
40/34 • Lubricating-sealants [5]
40/36 • Release agents [5]

50/00 Form in which the lubricant is applied to the material being lubricated [4]

50/02 • dissolved or suspended in a carrier which subsequently evaporates to leave a lubricant coating [4]
50/04 • Aerosol [4]
50/06 • Gaseous phase, at least during working conditions [4]
50/08 • solid [4]
50/10 • semi-solid; greasy [4]

60/00 Chemical after-treatment of the constituents of the lubricating composition [4]

60/02 • Reduction, e.g. hydrogenation [4]
60/04 • Oxidation, e.g. ozonisation [4]
60/06 • by epoxides [4]
60/08 • Halogenation [4]
60/10 • by sulfur or a compound containing sulfur [4]
60/12 • by phosphorus or a compound containing phosphorus, e.g. P,S [4]
60/14 • by boron or a compound containing boron [4]

70/00 Special methods of preparation [4]

80/00 Special pretreatment of the material to be lubricated, e.g. phosphatising or chromatising of a metal [4]
C11 ANIMAL OR VEGETABLE OILS, FATS, FATTY SUBSTANCES OR WAXES; FATTY ACIDS THEREFROM; DETERGENTS; CANDLES

C11B PRODUCING, e.g. BY PRESSING RAW MATERIALS OR BY EXTRACTION FROM WASTE MATERIALS, REFINING OR PRESERVING FATS, FATTY SUBSTANCES, e.g. LANOLIN, FATTY OILS OR WAXES; ESSENTIAL OILS; PERFUMES (drying-oils C09F)

Subclass index
PRODUCTION
of fats or fatty oils .................................................................................................................. 1/00, 13/00
of other fatty substances ......................................................................................................... 11/00
REFINING, PRESERVING, SOLIDIFYING ............................................................................... 3/00, 5/00, 7/00, 15/00
ESSENTIAL OILS, PERFUMES ........................................................................................................ 9/00

1/00 Production of fats or fatty oils from raw materials

1/02 • Pretreatment
1/04 • • of vegetable raw material
1/06 • by pressing
1/08 • • by hot pressing
1/10 • by extracting
1/12 • by melting out
1/14 • • with hot water or aqueous solutions
1/16 • • with steam

3/00 Refining fats or fatty oils

3/02 • by chemical reaction
3/04 • • with acids
3/06 • • with bases
3/08 • • with oxidising agents
3/10 • • by adsorption

Note(s) [2006.01]

When classifying in this group, classification is also made in group B01D 15/08 insofar as subject matter of general interest relating to chromatography is concerned.

3/12 • by distillation

C11C FATTY ACIDS OBTAINED FROM FATS, OILS OR WAXES; CANDLES; FATS, OILS OR FATTY ACIDS OBTAINED BY CHEMICAL MODIFICATION OF FATS, OILS OR FATTY ACIDS

1/00 Preparation of fatty acids from fats, fatty oils, or waxes; Refining the fatty acids (recovery of fatty acids from waste materials C11B 13/00)

1/02 • from fats or fatty oils
1/04 • • by hydrolysis
1/06 • • • using solid catalysts
1/08 • Refining
1/10 • • by distillation

3/00 Fats, oils or fatty acids obtained by chemical modification of fats, oils or fatty acids, e.g. by ozonolysis (sulfonated fats or oils C07C 309/62; epoxidised fats C07D 303/42; vulcanised oils, e.g. factice C08H 3/00)

3/02 • • by esterification of fatty acids with glycerol
3/04 • • by esterification of fats or fatty oils
3/06 • • with glycerol
3/08 • • with fatty acids
3/10 • • Ester interchange
3/12 • • by hydrogenation
3/14 • • by isomerisation

5/00 Candles

5/02 • Apparatus for preparation thereof
C11D DETERGENT COMPOSITIONS; USE OF SINGLE SUBSTANCES AS DETERGENTS; SOAP OR SOAP-MAKING; RESIN SOAPS; RECOVERY OF GLYCEROL

Note(s)

1. When classifying in the mixture groups of this subclass, any individual ingredient of a composition which is not identified by such classification, and which itself is determined to be novel and non-obvious, must also be classified in groups C11D 1/00-C11D 9/00. The individual ingredient can be either a single substance or a composition in itself.

2. Any ingredient of a composition which is not identified by the classification according to Note (1) above, and which is considered to represent information of interest for search, may also be classified in groups C11D 1/00-C11D 9/00. This can, for example, be the case when it is considered of interest to enable searching of compositions using a combination of classification symbols. Such non-obligatory classification should be given as “additional information”.

Subclass index

SURFACE-ACTIVE DETERGENTS
Non-soap.................................................................................................................................................. 1/00, 3/00
Based on soap.................................................................................................................................................. 9/00
NON-SURFACE-ACTIVE DETERGENTS................................................................................................. 7/00
DETERGENT MIXTURES............................................................................................................................... 10/00, 11/00
SOAP-MAKING; GLYCEROL..................................................................................................................... 13/00, 15/00, 19/00
SHAPE....................................................................................................................................................... 17/00

Surface-active non-soap detergents

1/00 Detergent compositions based essentially on surface-active compounds; Use of these compounds as a detergent

Note(s)

In groups C11D 1/02-C11D 1/88, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, a compound is classified in the last appropriate place.

1/02 • Anionic compounds
1/04 • • Carboxylic acids or salts thereof (soap C11D 9/00)
1/06 • • • Ether- or thioether carboxylic acids
1/08 • • • Polycarboxylic acids containing no nitrogen or sulfur
1/10 • • • Amino carboxylic acids; Imino carboxylic acids; Fatty acid condensates thereof
1/12 • • • Sulfonic acids or sulfuric acid esters; Salts thereof (C11D 3/065 takes precedence)
1/14 • • • derived from aliphatic hydrocarbons or mono-alcohols
1/16 • • • derived from divalent or polyvalent alcohols
1/18 • • • derived from amino alcohols
1/20 • • • • Fatty acid condensates
1/22 • • • derived from aromatic compounds
1/24 • • • • containing ester or ether groups directly attached to the nucleus
1/26 • • • • derived from heterocyclic compounds
1/28 • • • Sulfonation products derived from fatty acids or their derivatives, e.g. esters, amides
1/29 • • • Sulfates of polyoxyalkylene ethers [2]
1/30 • • • Sulfonation products derived from lignin
1/32 • • • Protein hydrolysates; Fatty acid condensates thereof
1/34 • • • Derivatives of acids of phosphorus
1/36 • • • of unknown constitution
1/37 • • • Mixtures of compounds all of which are anionic
1/38 • Cationic compounds
1/40 • • Monoamines or polyamines; Salts thereof
1/42 • • Amino alcohols or amino ethers

1/44 • • • Ethers of polyoxyalkylenes with amino alcohols; Condensation products of epoxyalkanes with amines
1/46 • • • Esters of carboxylic acids with amino alcohols; Esters of amino carboxylic acids with amines
1/48 • • • N-containing polycondensation products
1/50 • • • Derivatives of urea, thiourea, cyanamide, guanidine or urethanes
1/52 • • • Carboxylic amides, alkylolamidom with imides (C11D 3/07 takes precedence)
1/54 • • • Hydrazides of carboxylic acids
1/56 • • • containing nitro or nitroso groups
1/58 • • • Heterocyclic compounds
1/60 • • • Sulfonium or phosphonium compounds
1/62 • • • Quaternary ammonium compounds
1/64 • • of unknown constitution
1/645 • • • Mixtures of compounds all of which are cationic
1/65 • • • Mixtures of anionic with cationic compounds
1/655 • • • of sulfonated products with alkylolamidom of carboxylic acids (C11D 3/066 takes precedence)
1/66 • • Non-ionic compounds
1/68 • • Alcohols; Oxidation products of paraffin wax, other than acids
1/70 • • Phenols
1/72 • • • Ethers of polyoxyalkylene glycols (C11D 3/075 takes precedence)
1/722 • • • Ethers of polyoxyalkynes having mixed oxyalkylene groups [2]
1/74 • • Carboxylates or sulfonates of polyoxyalkylene glycols
1/75 • • • Amino oxides [2]
1/755 • • • Sulfoxides [2]
1/76 • • • Synthetic resins containing no nitrogen
1/78 • • • Neutral esters of acids of phosphorus
1/79 • • • Phosphine oxides [2]
1/80 • • • Derivatives of lignin containing no sulfo- or sulfate groups
1/82 • • • Compounds containing silicon
### 3/00 Other compounding ingredients of detergent compositions covered in group C11D 1/00

#### Note(s)
In groups C11D 3/02-C11D 3/39, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, a compound is classified in the last appropriate place.

1/825 • Mixtures of compounds all of which are non-ionic
1/83 • Mixtures of non-ionic with anionic compounds
1/831 • of sulfonates with ethers of polyoxyalkylenes without phosphates
1/835 • Mixtures of non-ionic with cationic compounds
1/86 • Mixtures of anionic, cationic, and non-ionic compounds
1/88 • Ampholytes; Electroneutral compounds [2]
1/90 • Betaines [2]
1/92 • Sulfo betaines [2]
1/94 • Mixtures with anionic, cationic or non-ionic compounds [2]

### 7/00 Compositions of detergents based essentially on non-surface-active compounds

#### Note(s)
In groups C11D 7/02-C11D 7/22, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, a compound is classified in the last appropriate place.

7/02 • Inorganic compounds
7/04 • Water-soluble compounds
7/06 • Hydroxides
7/08 • Acids
7/10 • Salts
7/12 • Carbonates
7/14 • Silicates
7/16 • Phosphates including polyphosphates
7/18 • Peroxides; Persalts
7/20 • Water-insoluble oxides
7/22 • Organic compounds
7/24 • Hydrocarbons
7/26 • containing oxygen
7/28 • containing halogen
7/30 • Halogenated hydrocarbons
7/32 • containing nitrogen
7/34 • containing sulfur
7/36 • containing phosphorus
7/38 • Per-compounds
7/40 • Products in which the composition is not well defined
7/42 • Preparations containing enzymes
7/44 • Vegetable products (C11D 7/42 takes precedence)
7/46 • Animal products (C11D 7/42 takes precedence)
7/50 • Solvents [2]
7/52 • combined with promoters [2]
7/54 • Bleaching agents [2]
7/56 • combined with phosphates [2]
7/60 • Mixtures of non-surface-active compounds [2]

### Soap Detergents

#### 9/00 Compositions of detergents based essentially on soap (compositions containing resin soap C11D 15/04)

9/02 • on alkali or ammonium soaps
9/04 • containing compounding ingredients other than soaps

#### Note(s)
In groups C11D 9/06-C11D 9/42, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, a compound is classified in the last appropriate place.

9/06 • Inorganic compounds
9/08 • Water-soluble compounds
9/10 • Salts
9/12 • Carbonates
9/14 • Phosphates; Polyphosphates
9/16 • Borates
9/18 • Water-insoluble compounds
9/20 • Pigments; Fillers; Abrasives
9/22 • Organic compounds
9/24 • Hydrocarbons
9/26 • containing oxygen
9/28 • containing halogen
9/30 • containing nitrogen
PREPARATION AND TREATMENT OF WORT; FERMENTATION PROCESSES FOR BEER

RAW MATERIALS FOR PREPARING BEER

Note(s)

1. Between subclasses C12M-C12Q, and within each of these subclasses, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place. For example, a fermentation or enzyme-using process involving condition-responsive control is classified in subclass C12Q.
2. In this class, viruses, undifferentiated human, animal or plant cells, protozoa, tissues and unicellular algae are considered as micro-organisms.
3. In this class, unless specifically provided for, undifferentiated human, animal or plant cells, protozoa, tissues and unicellular algae are classified together with micro-organisms. Sub-cellular parts, unless specifically provided for, are classified with the whole cell.
4. The codes of subclass C12R are only for use as indexing codes associated with subclasses C12C-C12Q, so as to provide information concerning the micro-organisms used in the processes classified in these subclasses.

C12C BREWING OF BEER (cleaning of raw materials A23N; pitching or depitching machines, cellar tools C12L; propagating yeasts C12N 1/14)

Note(s)

In this subclass, it is desirable to use the indexing codes of subclass C12R.

Subclass index

RAW MATERIALS FOR PREPARING BEER...........................................................................................................1/00, 3/00, 5/00
PREPARATION AND TREATMENT OF WORT; FERMENTATION PROCESSES FOR BEER........................7/00, 11/00
SPECIAL BEER.....................................................................................................................................................12/00
BREWING DEVICES............................................................................................................................................13/00
In this subclass, it is desirable to add the indexing codes of subclass C12R.

**Note(s)**

In this subclass, it is desirable to add the indexing codes of subclass C12R.
In this subclass, it is desirable to add the indexing codes of subclass C12R.

C12H \textbf{PASTEURISATION, STERILISATION, PRESERVATION, PURIFICATION, CLARIFICATION, AGEING OF ALCOHOLIC BEVERAGES OR REMOVAL OF ALCOHOL THEREFROM} (deacidifying wine C12G 1/10; preventing winestone precipitation C12G 1/12; simulation ageing by flavouring C12G 3/06) [6]

Notes [1, 2006.01]

1. When classifying in this subclass, classification is also made in group B01D 15/08 insofar as subject matter of general interest relating to chromatography is concerned.

2. In this subclass, it is desirable to add the indexing codes of subclass C12R.

C12J \textbf{VINEGAR; ITS PREPARATION}

Notes

In this subclass, it is desirable to add the indexing codes of subclass C12R.
PITCHING OR DEPITCHING MACHINES; CELLAR TOOLS

Note(s)

In this subclass, it is desirable to add the indexing codes of subclass C12R.

1. Attention is drawn to Notes (1) to (3) following the title of class C12.
2. In this subclass, it is desirable to add the indexing codes of subclass C12R.

1/00 Apparatus for enzymology or microbiology [3]

Note(s)

This group covers:

• apparatus where micro-organisms or enzymes are produced or isolated;
• apparatus where the characteristics of micro-organisms or enzymes are investigated, e.g. which growth factors are necessary;
• apparatus specially adapted to employ micro-organisms or enzymes as "reactants" or biocatalysts;
• apparatus of both the laboratory and industrial scale.

1/02 • with agitation means; with heat exchange means [3]
1/04 • with gas introduction means [3]
1/06 • with agitator, e.g. impeller [3]
1/08 • with draft tube [3]
1/09 • Flotation apparatus [5]
1/10 • rotatably mounted [3]
1/107 • with means for collecting fermentation gases, e.g. methane (producing methane by anaerobic treatment of sludge C02F 11/04) [5]
1/113 • with transport of the substrate during the fermentation [5]
1/12 • with sterilisation, filtration, or dialysis means [3]
1/14 • with means providing thin layers or with multi-level trays [3]
1/16 • containing, or adapted to contain, solid media [3]
1/18 • Multiple fields or compartments [3]

Note(s)

1. Attention is drawn to Notes (1) to (3) following the title of class C12.
2. Biocidal, pest repellent, pest attractant or plant growth regulatory activity of compounds or preparations is further classified in subclass A01P.
3. Therapeutic activity of single-cell proteins or enzymes is further classified in subclass A61P.
4. When classifying in this subclass, classification is also made in group B01D 15/08 insofar as subject matter of general interest relating to chromatography is concerned.
5. In this subclass, it is desirable to add the indexing codes of subclass C12R.

Subclass index

MICRO-ORGANISMS; SPORES; UNDIFFERENTIATED CELLS; VIRUSES.............................1/00, 3/00, 5/00, 7/00, 11/00
ENZYMES.............................................................9/00, 11/00
TREATMENT WITH ELECTRICAL OR WAVE ENERGY....................................................13/00
MUTATION OR GENETIC ENGINEERING...............................................................15/00

1/00 Micro-organisms, e.g. protoza; Compositions thereof (medicinal preparations containing material from protoza, bacteria or viruses A61K 35/66, from algae A61K 36/02, from fungi A61K 36/06; preparing medicinal bacterial antigen or antibody compositions, e.g. bacterial vaccines, A61K 39/00; Processes of propagating, maintaining or preserving micro-organisms or compositions thereof; Processes of preparing or isolating a composition containing a micro-organism; Culture media therefor) [3]

1/02 • Separating micro-organisms from their culture media [3]
1/04 • Preserving or maintaining viable micro-organisms (immobilised micro-organisms C12N 11/00) [3]
1/06 • Lysis of micro-organisms [3]
1/08 • Reducing the nucleic acid content [3]
1/10 • Protozoa; Culture media therefor [3]
1/11 • modified by introduction of foreign genetic material [5]
1/12 • Unicellular algae; Culture media thereof (as new plants A01H 13/00) [3]
1/13 • modified by introduction of foreign genetic material [5]
1/14 • Fungi (culture of mushrooms A01G 1/04; as new plants A01H 15/00); Culture media therefor [3]
1/15 • modified by introduction of foreign genetic material [5]
1/16 • Yeasts; Culture media therefor [3]
1/18 • Baker's yeast; Brewer's yeast [3]
1/19 • modified by introduction of foreign genetic material [5]
1/20 • Bacteria; Culture media therefor [3]
1/21 • modified by introduction of foreign genetic material [5]
1/22 • Processes using, or culture media containing, cellulose or hydrolysates thereof [3]
1/24 • Processes using, or culture media containing, waste sulphite liquor [3]
1/26 • Processes using, or culture media containing, hydrocarbons (refining of hydrocarbon oils by using micro-organisms C10G 32/00) [3]
1/28 • aliphatic [3]
1/30 • having five or less carbon atoms [3]
1/32 • Processes using, or culture media containing, lower alkanols, i.e. C1 to C6 [3]
1/34 • Processes using foam culture [3]
1/36 • Adaptation or attenuation of cells [3]
1/38 • Chemical stimulation of growth or activity by addition of chemical compounds which are not essential growth factors; Stimulation of growth by removal of a chemical compound (C12N 1/34 takes precedence) [3]

3/00 Spore-forming or isolating processes [3]

5/00 Undifferentiated human, animal or plant cells, e.g. cell lines; Tissues; Cultivation or maintenance thereof; Culture media therefor (plant reproduction by tissue culture techniques A01H 4/00) [3, 5]
5/02 • Propagation of single cells or cells in suspension; Maintenance thereof; Culture media therefor [3]
5/04 • Plant cells or tissues [5]
5/07 • Animal cells or tissues [2010.01]

Note(s) [2010.01]
The last place priority rule does not apply between the subgroups of this group.

5/071 • Vertebrate cells or tissues, e.g. human cells or tissues [2010.01]
5/073 • Embryonic cells or tissues; Foetal cells or tissues [2010.01]
5/0735 • Embryonic stem cells; Embryonic germ cells [2010.01]
5/074 • Adult stem cells [2010.01]
5/075 • Oocytes; Oogonia [2010.01]
5/076 • Sperm cells; Spermatogonia [2010.01]
5/077 • Mesenchymal cells, e.g. bone cells, cartilage cells, marrow stromal cells, fat cells or muscle cells [2010.01]
5/0775 • Mesenchymal stem cells; Adipose-tissue derived stem cells [2010.01]
5/078 • Cells from blood or from the immune system [2010.01]
5/0781 • B cells; Progenitors thereof [2010.01]
5/0783 • T cells; NK cells; Progenitors of T or NK cells [2010.01]
5/0784 • Dendritic cells; Progenitors thereof [2010.01]
5/0786 • Monocytes; Macrophages [2010.01]
5/0787 • Granulocytes, e.g. basophils, eosinophils, neutrophils or mast cells [2010.01]
5/0789 • Stem cells; Multipotent progenitor cells [2010.01]
5/079 • Neural cells [2010.01]
5/0793 • Neurons [2010.01]
5/0797 • Stem cells; Progenitor cells [2010.01]
5/09 • Tumour cells [2010.01]
5/095 • Stem cells; Progenitor cells [2010.01]
5/10 • Cells modified by introduction of foreign genetic material, e.g. virus-transformed cells [5]
5/12 • Fused cells, e.g. hybridomas [5]
5/14 • Plant cells [5]
5/16 • Animal cells [5]
5/18 • Murine cells, e.g. mouse cells [5]
5/20 • one of the fusion partners being a B lymphocyte [5]
5/22 • Human cells [5]
Viruses, e.g. bacteriophages; Compositions thereof; Preparation or purification thereof (medicinal preparations containing viruses A61K 35/76; preparing medicinal viral antigen or antibody compositions, e.g. virus vaccines, A61K 39/00) [3]

 Viruses, e.g. bacteriophages, modified by introduction of foreign genetic material (vectors C12N 15/00) [5]

 Recovery or purification [3]

 Inactivation or attenuation; Producing viral sub-units [3]

 by chemical treatment [3]

 by serial passage of virus [3]

 Enzymes, e.g. ligases (6.); Proenzymes; Compositions thereof (preparations containing enzymes for cleaning teeth A61K 8/66, A61Q 11/00; medicinal preparations containing enzymes or proenzymes A61K 38/43; enzyme containing detergent compositions C11D);

 Processes for preparing, activating, inhibiting, separating, or purifying enzymes [3]

 Note(s)

 In this group:

 proenzymes are classified with the corresponding enzymes;

 enzymes are generally categorised according to the "Nomenclature and Classification of Enzymes" of the International Commission on Enzymes. Where appropriate, this designation appears in the subgroups below in parenthesis.

 Oxidoreductases (1.), e.g. luciferase [3]

 acting on CHOH groups as donors, e.g. glucose oxidase, lactate dehydrogenase (1.1) [3]

 acting on nitrogen containing compounds as donors (1.4, 1.5, 1.7) [3]

 acting on hydrogen peroxide as acceptor (1.11) [3]

 Transferases (2.) (ribonucleases C12N 9/22) [3]

 transferring phosphorus containing groups, e.g. kinases (2.7) [3]

 Hydrolases (3.) [3]

 acting on ester bonds (3.1) [3]

 Carboxylic ester hydrolases [3]

 Triglyceride splitting, e.g. by means of lipase [3]

 Ribonucleases [3]

 acting on glycosyl compounds (3.2) [3]

 acting on alpha-1, 4-glucosidic bonds, e.g. hyaluronidase, invertase, amylase [3]

 Alpha-amylase from microbial source, e.g. bacterial amylase [3]

 Fungal source [3]

 Alpha-amylase from plant source [3]

 Glucoamylase [3]

 acting on beta-1, 4 bonds between N-acetylmuramic acid and 2-acetylamino 2-deoxy-D-glucose, e.g. lysozyme [3]

 acting on beta-galactose-glycoside bonds, e.g. beta-galactosidase [3]

 acting on alpha-galactose-glycoside bonds, e.g. alpha-galactosidase [3]

 acting on beta-1, 4-glucosidic bonds, e.g. cellulase [3]

 acting on alpha-1, 6-glucosidic bonds, e.g. isoamylase, pullulanase [3]

 Dextranase [3]

 acting on peptide bonds, e.g. thromboplastin, leucine aminopeptidase (3.4) [3]

 Proteinases [3]

 derived from bacteria [3]

 bacteria being Bacillus [3]

 Bacillus subtilis or Bacillus licheniformis [3]

 derived from fungi [3]

 from yeast [3]

 from Aspergillus [3]

 derived from animal tissue, e.g. rennin [3]

 Elastase [3]

 Plasmin, i.e. fibrinolysin [3]

 Streptokinase [3]

 Urokinase [3]

 Thrombin [3]

 Trypsin; Chymotrypsin [3]

 acting on carbon to nitrogen bonds other than peptide bonds (3.5) [3]

 acting on amide bonds in linear amides [3]

 Asparaginase [3]

 Penicillin amidase [3]

 acting on amide bonds in cyclic amides, e.g. penicillinase [3]

 Lyases (4.) [3]

 Isomerases (5.) [3]

 Glucose isomerase [3]

 Pancreatin [3]

 Stabilising an enzyme by forming an adduct or a composition; Forming enzyme conjugates [3]

 Preparation of granular or free-flowing enzyme compositions (C12N 9/96 takes precedence) [3]

 Enzyme inactivation by chemical treatment [3]

 Carrier-bound or immobilised enzymes; Carrier-bound or immobilised microbial cells; Preparation thereof [3]

 Enzymes or microbial cells being immobilised on or in an organic carrier [3]

 entrapped within the carrier, e.g. gel, hollow fibre [3]

 attached to the carrier via a bridging agent [3]

 the carrier being a synthetic polymer [3]

 the carrier being a carbohydrate [3]

 Cellulose or derivatives thereof [3]

 Enzymes or microbial cells being immobilised on or in an inorganic carrier [3]

 Enzymes or microbial cells being immobilised on or in a biological cell [3]

 Multi-enzyme systems [3]

 Treatment of micro-organisms or enzymes with electrical or wave energy, e.g. magnetism, sonic waves [3]
15/00 Mutation or genetic engineering; DNA or RNA concerning genetic engineering, vectors, e.g. plasmids, or their isolation, preparation or purification; Use of hosts therefor (mutants or genetically engineered micro-organisms C12N 1/00, C12N 5/00, C12N 7/00; new plants A01H; plant reproduction by tissue culture techniques A01H 4/00; new animals A01K 67/00; use of medicinal preparations containing genetic material which is inserted into cells of the living body to treat genetic diseases, gene therapy A61K 48/00; peptides in general C07K) [3, 5, 6]

Note(s)
This group covers processes wherein there is a modification of the genetic material which would not normally occur in nature without intervention of man which produce a change in the gene structure which is passed on to succeeding generations.

15/01 • Preparation of mutants without inserting foreign genetic material therein; Screening processes therefor [5]
15/02 • Preparation of hybrid cells by fusion of two or more cells, e.g. protoplast fusion [5]
15/03 • Bacteria [5]
15/04 • Fungi [5]
15/05 • Plant cells [5]
15/06 • Animal cells [5]
15/07 • Human cells [5]
15/08 • Cells resulting from interspecies fusion [5]
15/09 • Recombinant DNA-technology [5]
15/10 • Processes for the isolation, preparation or purification of DNA or RNA (chemical preparation of DNA or RNA C07H 21/00; preparation of non-structural polynucleotides from micro-organisms or with enzymes C12P 19/34) [5]
15/11 • DNA or RNA fragments; Modified forms thereof (DNA or RNA not used in recombinant technology C07H 21/00) [5]
15/13 • Non-coding nucleic acids modulating the expression of genes, e.g. antisense oligonucleotides [2010.01]
15/15 • Aptamers, i.e. nucleic acids binding a target molecule specifically and with high affinity without hybridising therewith [2010.01]
15/17 • Nucleic acids having immunomodulatory properties, e.g. containing CpG-motifs [2010.01]
15/12 • Genes encoding animal proteins [5]
15/13 • Immunoglobulins [5]
15/14 • Human serum albumins [5]
15/15 • Protease inhibitors, e.g. antithrombin, antitrypsin, hirudin [5]
15/16 • Hormones [5]
15/17 • Insulins [5]
15/18 • Growth hormones [5]
15/19 • Interferons; Lymphokines; Cytokines [5]
15/20 • Interferons [5]
15/21 • Alpha-interferons [5]
15/22 • Beta-interferons [5]
15/23 • Gamma-interferons [5]
15/24 • Interleukins [5]
15/25 • Interleukin-1 [5]
15/26 • Interleukin-2 [5]
15/27 • Colony stimulating factors [5]
15/28 • Tumor necrosis factors [5]
15/29 • Genes encoding plant proteins, e.g. thaumatin [5]
15/30 • Genes encoding protozoal proteins, e.g. from Plasmodium, Trypanosoma, Eimeria [5]
15/31 • Genes encoding microbial proteins, e.g. enterotoxins [5]
15/32 • Bacillus crystal proteins [5]
15/33 • Genes encoding viral proteins [5]
15/34 • Proteins from DNA viruses [5]
15/35 • Paroviridae, e.g. feline panleukopenia virus, human parovirus [5]
15/36 • Hepadnaviridae [5]
15/37 • Papovaviridae, e.g. papillomaviruses, polyomavirus, SV40 [5]
15/38 • Herpetoviridae, e.g. herpes simplex virus, varicella-zoster virus, Epstein-Barr virus, cytomegalovirus, pseudorabies virus [5]
15/39 • Poxviridae, e.g. vaccinia virus, variola virus [5]
15/40 • Proteins from RNA viruses, e.g. flaviviruses [5]
15/41 • Picornaviridae, e.g. rhinovirus, coxsackie viruses, echoviruses, enteroviruses [5]
15/42 • Foot-and-mouth disease virus [5]
15/43 • Poliovirus [5]
15/44 • Orthomyxoviridae, e.g. influenza virus [5]
15/45 • Paramyxoviridae, e.g. measles virus, mumps virus, Newcastle disease virus, canine distemper virus, rinderpest virus, respiratory syncytial viruses [5]
15/46 • Reoviridae, e.g. rotavirus, bluetongue virus, Colorado tick fever virus [5]
15/47 • Rhabdoviridae, e.g. rabies viruses, vesicular stomatitis virus [5]
15/48 • Retroviridae, e.g. bovine leukaemia virus, feline leukaemia virus [5]
15/49 • Lentiviridae, e.g. immunodeficiency viruses such as HIV, visna-maedi virus, equine infectious anaemia virus [5]
15/50 • Coronavirusidae, e.g. infectious bronchitis virus, transmissible gastroenteritis virus [5]
15/51 • Hepatitis viruses [5]
15/52 • Genes encoding for enzymes or proenzymes [5]

Note(s)
In this group:
• genes encoding for proenzymes are classified with the corresponding genes encoding enzymes;
• enzymes are generally categorised according to the "Nomenclature and Classification of Enzymes" of the International Commission on Enzymes. Where appropriate, this designation appears in the groups below in parenthesis.

15/53 • Oxido.reductases (1) [5]
15/54 • Transferases (2) [5]
15/55 • Hydrolases (3) [5]
15/56 • acting on glycosyl compounds (3.2), e.g. amylase, galactosidase, lysozyme [5]
15/57 • acting on peptide bonds (3.4) [5]
15/58 • Plasminogen activators, e.g. urokinase, TPA [5]
15/59 • Chymosin [5]
BIOSYNTHESIS OF CHEMICAL SUBSTANCES

Note(s)
In this group, the following term is used with the meaning indicated:
- “fusion” means the fusion of two different proteins.

Vectors or expression systems specially adapted for prokaryotic hosts other than E. coli, e.g. Lactobacillus, Micromonaspora [5]

Note(s)
This group covers the use of prokaryotes as hosts.

FERMENTATION OR ENZYME-USING PROCESSES TO SYNTHESISE A DESIRED CHEMICAL COMPOUND OR COMPOSITION OR TO SEPARATE OPTICAL ISOMERS FROM A RACEMIC MIXTURE [3]

Note(s)
1. This subclass covers both major and minor chemical modifications.
2. Group C12P 1/00 covers processes for producing organic compounds not sufficiently identified to be classified in groups C12P 3/00- C12P 37/00. Compounds identified only by their empirical formulae are not considered to be sufficiently identified.
3. Attention is drawn to Notes (1) to (3) following the title of class C12.
4. If a particular reaction is considered of interest, it is also classified in the relevant chemical compound class, e.g. C07, C08.
5. In this subclass:
   - metal or ammonium salts of a compound are classified as that compound.
   - compositions are classified in the relevant compound groups.
6. In this subclass, it is desirable to add the indexing codes of subclass C12R.

Subclass index
BIOSYNTHESIS OF CHEMICAL SUBSTANCES
Inorganic compounds .................................................................................................................. 3/00
Acyclic or carbocyclic organic compounds ................................................................................ 5/00-15/00

Note(s)
C12N
Peptides or proteins.................................................................21/00
Carotenes.................................................................................23/00
Tetracyclines............................................................................29/00
Prostaglandins .........................................................................31/00
Steroids....................................................................................33/00
Heterocyclic organic compounds...........................................17/00
containing saccharide radicals.................................................19/00
Riboflavin..................................................................................25/00
Giberellin...................................................................................27/00
Cephalosporin; penicillin.........................................................35/00, 37/00

SEPARATION OF OPTICAL ISOMERS............................................41/00

OTHER PROCESSES FOR BIOSYNTHESIS PREPARATIONS.........1/00, 39/00

1/00 Preparation of compounds or compositions, not provided for in groups C12P 3/00-C12P 39/00, by using micro-organisms or enzymes; General processes for the preparation of compounds or compositions by using micro-organisms or enzymes [3]

1/02 by using fungi [3]
1/04 by using bacteria [3]
1/06 by using actinomycetales [3]

3/00 Preparation of elements or inorganic compounds except carbon dioxide [3]

5/00 Preparation of hydrocarbons [3]
5/02 acyclic [3]

7/00 Preparation of oxygen-containing organic compounds [3]
7/02 containing a hydroxy group [3]
7/04 acyclic [3]
7/06 • • Ethanol, i.e. non-beverage [3]
7/08 • • • produced as by-product or from waste or cellulotic material substrate [3]
7/10 • • • • substrate containing cellulotic material [3]
7/12 • • • • substrate containing sulfite waste liquor or citrus waste [3]
7/14 • • • • Multiple stages of fermentation; Multiple types of micro-organisms or reuse for micro-organisms [3]
7/16 • • • Butanols [3]
7/18 • • polyhydric [3]
7/20 • • Glycerol [3]
7/22 • • aromatic [3]
7/24 • containing a carbonyl group [3]
7/26 • • Ketones [3]
7/28 • • Acetone-containing products [3]
7/30 • • • produced from substrate containing inorganic compounds other than water [3]
7/32 • • • produced from substrate containing inorganic nitrogen source [3]
7/34 • • • • produced from substrate containing protein as nitrogen source [3]
7/36 • • • • produced from substrate containing grain or cereal material [3]
7/38 • • • Cyclopentanone- or cyclopentadione-containing products [3]
7/40 • containing a carbonyl group [3]
7/42 • • Hydroxy carboxylic acids [3]
7/44 • • Polycarboxylic acids [3]
7/46 • • Dicarboxylic acids having four or less carbon atoms, e.g. fumaric acid, maleic acid [3]

7/48 • • • Tricarboxylic acids, e.g. citric acid [3]
7/50 • • • having keto groups, e.g. 2-ketogluutaric acid [3]
7/52 • • Propionic acid; Butyric acids [3]
7/54 • • Acetic acid [3]
7/56 • Lactic acid [3]
7/58 • • Aldonic, ketoaldonic or saccharic acids (uronic acids C12P 19/00) [3]
7/60 • • • 2-Ketogulonic acid [3]
7/62 • Carboxylic acid esters [3]
7/64 • Fats; Fatty oils; Ester-type waxes; Higher fatty acids, i.e. having at least seven carbon atoms in an unbroken chain bound to a carboxyl group; Oxidised oils or fats [3]
7/66 • containing the quinoid structure [3]

9/00 Preparation of organic compounds containing a metal or atom other than H, N, C, O, S, or halogen [3]

11/00 Preparation of sulfur-containing organic compounds [3]

13/00 Preparation of nitrogen-containing organic compounds [3]
13/02 • Amides, e.g. chloramphenicol [3]
13/04 • Alpha- or beta-amino acids [3]
13/06 • • Alanine; Leucine; Isoleucine; Serine; Homoserine [3]
13/08 • • Lysine; Diaminopimelic acid; Threonine; Valine [3]
13/10 • • Citrulline; Arginine; Ornithine [3]
13/12 • • Methionine; Cysteine; Cystine [3]
13/14 • • Glutamic acid; Glutamine [3]
13/16 • • • using surfactants, fatty acids or fatty acid esters, i.e. having at least seven carbon atoms in an unbroken chain bound to a carboxyl group or a carboxyl ester group [3]
13/18 • • • using biotin or its derivatives [3]
13/20 • • Aspartic acid; Asparagine [3]
13/22 • • Tryptophan; Tyrosine; Phenylalanine; 3,4-Dihydroxyphenylalanine [3]
13/24 • • Proline; Hydroxyproline; Histidine [3]

15/00 Preparation of compounds containing at least three condensed carbocyclic rings [3]

17/00 Preparation of heterocyclic carbon compounds with only O, N, S, Se, or Te as ring hetero atoms (C12P 13/04-C12P 13/24 take precedence) [3]
17/02 • Oxygen as only ring hetero atoms [3]
17/04 • • containing a five-membered hetero ring, e.g. griseofulvin [3]
19/00 Preparation of compounds containing saccharide radicals (ketoaldehydic C12P 7/58) [3]

**Note(s)**

Attention is drawn to Note (3) following the title of subclass C07H, which defines the expression "saccharide radical".

19/02 • Monosaccharides [3]
19/04 • Polysaccharides, i.e. compounds containing more than five saccharide radicals attached to each other by glycosidic bonds [3]
19/06 • Xanthan, i.e. Xanthomonas-type heteropolysaccharides [3]
19/08 • Dextran [3]
19/10 • Pullulan [3]
19/12 • Disaccharides [3]
19/14 • produced by the action of a carbohydrate, e.g. by alpha-amylase [3]
19/16 • produced by the action of an alpha-1, 6-glucosidase, e.g. amylase, debranched amylopectin [3]
19/18 • produced by the action of a glycosyl transferase, e.g. alpha-, beta- or gamma-cyclodextrins [3]
19/20 • produced by the action of an exo-1, 4 alpha-glucosidase, e.g. dextrin [3]
19/22 • produced by the action of a beta-amylase, e.g. maltose [3]
19/25 • produced by the action of an isomerase, e.g. fructose [3]
19/26 • Preparation of nitrogen-containing carbohydrates [3]
19/28 • N-glycosides [3]
19/30 • Nucleotides [3]
19/32 • having a condensed ring system containing a six-membered ring having two nitrogen atoms in the same-ring, e.g. purine nucleotides, nicotinamide-adenine dinucleotide [3]
19/34 • Polynucleotides, e.g. nucleic acids, oligonucleotides [3]
19/36 • Dinucleotides, e.g. nicotinamide-adenine dinucleotide phosphate [3]
19/38 • Nucleosides [3]
19/40 • having a condensed ring system containing a six-membered ring having two nitrogen atoms in the same-ring, e.g. purine nucleosides [3]
19/42 • Cobalamins, i.e. vitamin B12, LLD factor [3]
19/44 • Preparation of O-glycosides, e.g. glucosides [3]
19/46 • having an oxygen atom of the saccharide radical bound to a cyclohexyl radical, e.g. kasugamycin [3]
19/48 • the cyclohexyl radical being substituted by two or more nitrogen atoms, e.g. destomycin, neamin [3]
19/50 • • • having two saccharide radicals bound through only oxygen to adjacent ring carbon atoms of the cyclohexyl radical, e.g. ambutryosin, ribostamycin [3]
19/52 • • • containing three or more saccharide radicals, e.g. neomycin, lividomycin [3]
19/54 • • • the cyclohexyl radical being bound directly to a nitrogen atom of two or more radicals, e.g. streptomycin [3]
19/56 • • • having an oxygen atom of the saccharide radical bound directly to a condensed ring system having three or more carbocyclic rings, e.g. daunomycin, adriamycin [3]
19/58 • • • having an oxygen atom of the saccharide radical bound directly through only acyclic carbon atoms to a non-saccharide heterocyclic ring, e.g. bleomycin, plheomyacin [3]
19/60 • • • having an oxygen of the saccharide radical directly bound to a non-saccharide heterocyclic ring or a condensed ring system containing a non-saccharide heterocyclic ring, e.g. coumermycin, novobiocin [3]
19/62 • • • the hetero ring having eight or more ring members and only oxygen as ring hetero atoms, e.g. erythromycin, spiramycin, nystatin [3]
19/64 • Preparation of S-glycosides, e.g. lincomycin [3]

21/00 Preparation of peptides or proteins (single-cell protein C12N 1/00) [3]
21/02 • having a known sequence of two or more amino acids, e.g. glutathione [3]
21/04 • Cyclic or bridged peptides or polypeptides, e.g. bacitracin (cyclised by —S—S— bonds only C12P 21/02) [3]
21/06 • produced by the hydrolysis of a peptide bond, e.g. hydrolysate products [3]
21/08 • Monoclonal antibodies [5]

23/00 Preparation of compounds containing a cyclohexene ring having an unsaturated side chain containing at least ten carbon atoms bound by conjugated double bonds, e.g. carotenoids (containing hetero-rings C12P 17/00) [3]

25/00 Preparation of compounds containing alloxazine or isalloxazine nucleus, e.g. riboflavin [3]

27/00 Preparation of compounds containing a gibbane ring system, e.g. gibberellin [3]

29/00 Preparation of compounds containing a naphthacene ring system, e.g. tetracycline (C12P 19/00 takes precedence) [3]

31/00 Preparation of compounds containing a five-membered ring having two side-chains in ortho position to each other, and having at least one oxygen atom directly bound to the ring in ortho position to one of the side-chains, one side-chain containing, not directly bound to the ring, a carbon atom having three bonds to hetero atoms with at the most one bond to halogen, and the other side-chain having at least one oxygen atom bound in gamma-position to the ring, e.g. prostaglandins [3]

33/00 Preparation of steroids [3]
In this subclass, test media are classified in the appropriate group for the relevant test process.

- In this subclass, the following expression is used with the meaning indicated:
  - specified in groups G01N

  - In groups C12P 33/02-C12P 33/20, the following terms are used with the meaning indicated:
    - "acting", "forming", "hydroxylating", "dehydroxylating" or "dehydrogenating" means the action of a micro-organism or enzyme rather than other chemical action.

  33/02  •  Dehydroxylating; Dehydroxylating [3]
  33/04  •  Forming an aryl ring from A ring [3]
  33/06  •  Hydroxylating [3]
  33/08  •  •  at 11 position [3]
  33/10  •  •  •  at 11alpha-position [3]
  33/12  •  Acting on D ring [3]
  33/14  •  •  Hydroxylating at 16 position [3]
  33/16  •  •  Acting at 17 position [3]
  33/18  •  •  •  Hydroxylating at 17 position [3]

C12Q  MEASURING OR TESTING PROCESSES INVOLVING ENZYMES OR MICRO-ORGANISMS (immunoassay G01N 33/53); COMPOSITIONS OR TEST PAPERS THEREFOR; PROCESSES OF PREPARING SUCH COMPOSITIONS; CONDITION-RESPONSIVE CONTROL IN MICROBIOLOGICAL OR ENZYMOLOGICAL PROCESSES [3]

Note(s)

1. This subclass does not cover the observation of the progress or of the result of processes specified in this subclass by any of the methods specified in groups G01N 3/00-G01N 29/00, which is covered by subclass G01N.
2. In this subclass, the following expression is used with the meaning indicated:
   - "involving", when used in relation to a substance, includes the testing for the substance as well as employing the substance as a determinant or reactant in a test for a different substance.
3. Attention is drawn to Notes (1) to (3) following the title of class C12.
4. In this subclass, test media are classified in the appropriate group for the relevant test process.
5. In this subclass, it is desirable to add the indexing codes of subclass C12R.

1/00  Measuring or testing processes involving enzymes or micro-organisms (measuring or testing apparatus with condition measuring or sensing means, e.g. colony counters, C12M 1/34); Compositions therefor; Processes of preparing such compositions [3]

1/02  •  involving viable micro-organisms [3]
1/04  •  •  Determining presence or kind of micro-organism; Use of selective media for testing antibiotics or bacteriocides; Compositions containing a chemical indicator therefor [3]
1/06  •  •  •  Quantitative determination [3]
1/08  •  •  •  using multifield media [3]
1/10  •  •  •  Enterobacteria [3]
1/12  •  •  •  Nitrate to nitrite reducing bacteria [3]
1/14  •  •  •  Streptococcus; Staphylococcus [3]
1/16  •  •  •  using radioactive material [3]
1/18  •  •  Testing for antimicrobial activity of a material [3]
1/20  •  •  •  using multifield media [3]
1/22  •  •  Testing for sterility conditions [3]
1/24  •  •  •  Methods of sampling, or inoculating or spreading a sample; Methods of physically isolating an intact micro-organism [3]
1/25  •  involving enzymes not classifiable in groups C12Q 1/26-C12Q 1/70 [5]
1/26  •  involving oxidoreductase [3]
1/28  •  •  involving peroxidase [3]
1/30  •  •  •  involving catalase [3]
1/32  •  •  involving dehydrogenase [3]
1/34  •  involving hydrolase [3]
1/37  •  •  involving peptidase or proteinase [5]
1/40  •  •  involving amylase [3]
1/42  •  •  involving phosphatase [3]
1/44  •  •  involving esterase [3]
1/46  •  •  •  involving cholinesterase [3]
1/48  •  •  involving transferase [3]
1/50  •  •  involving creatine phosphokinase [3]
1/52  •  •  involving transaminase [3]
1/527 •  •  •  involved lyase [5]
1/533 •  •  •  involving isomerase [5]
1/54  •  •  involving glucose or galactose [3]
1/56  •  •  involving blood clotting factors, e.g. involving thrombin, thromboplastin, fibrinogen [3]
1/58  •  •  involving urea or urease [3]
1/60  •  •  involving cholesterol [3]
1/61  •  •  involving triglycerides [5]
1/62  •  •  involving uric acid [3]
1/64  •  •  Geomicrobiological testing, e.g. for petroleum [3]
1/66  •  •  involving luciferase [3]
1/68  •  •  involving nucleic acids [3]
1/70  •  •  involving virus or bacteriophage [3]
INDEXING SCHEME ASSOCIATED WITH SUBCLASSES C12C-C12Q, RELATING TO MICRO-ORGANISMS [3]

Note(s)

1. This subclass constitutes an indexing scheme associated with the other subclasses of class C12, relating to micro-organisms used in the processes classified in subclasses C12C-C12Q.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1/00</th>
<th>Micro-organisms [3]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1/01</td>
<td>Bacteria or actinomycetales [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/02</td>
<td>Acetobacter [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/025</td>
<td>Achromobacter [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/04</td>
<td>Actinomycetes [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/045</td>
<td>Actinoplanes [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/05</td>
<td>Alcaligenes [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/06</td>
<td>Arthrobacter [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/065</td>
<td>Azotobacter [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/07</td>
<td>Bacillus [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/08</td>
<td>Bacillus brevis [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/085</td>
<td>Bacillus cereus [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/09</td>
<td>Bacillus circulans [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/10</td>
<td>Bacillus licheniformis [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/11</td>
<td>Bacillus megaterium [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/12</td>
<td>Bacillus polymyxa [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/125</td>
<td>Bacillus subtilis [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/13</td>
<td>Brevibacterium [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/14</td>
<td>Chainia [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/145</td>
<td>Clostridium [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/15</td>
<td>Corynebacterium [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/16</td>
<td>Corynebacterium diphtheriae [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/165</td>
<td>Corynebacterium poinsettiae [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/17</td>
<td>Corynebacterium pyogenes [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/18</td>
<td>Erwinia [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/185</td>
<td>Escherichia [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/19</td>
<td>Escherichia coli [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/20</td>
<td>Flavobacterium [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/21</td>
<td>Haemophilus [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/22</td>
<td>Klebsiella [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/225</td>
<td>Lactobacillus [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/23</td>
<td>Lactobacillus acidophilus [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/24</td>
<td>Lactobacillus brevis [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/245</td>
<td>Lactobacillus casei [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/25</td>
<td>Lactobacillus plantarum [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/26</td>
<td>Methylomonas [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/265</td>
<td>Micromonas [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/27</td>
<td>Micrococcus flavus [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/28</td>
<td>Micrococcus glutamicus [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/285</td>
<td>Micrococcus lysodeikticus [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/29</td>
<td>Micromonospora [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/30</td>
<td>Micromonospora chalcea [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/31</td>
<td>Micromonospora purpurea [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/32</td>
<td>Mycobacterium [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/325</td>
<td>Mycobacterium avium [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/33</td>
<td>Mycobacterium fortuitum [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/34</td>
<td>Mycobacterium smegmatis [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/35</td>
<td>Mycoplasma [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/36</td>
<td>Neisseria [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/365</td>
<td>Nocardia [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/37</td>
<td>Proteus [3]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note(s)


C13  SUGAR INDUSTRY

Note(s)

In class C13, the following terms or expressions are used with the meanings indicated:

• “sugars” are a class of edible, water-soluble crystalline carbohydrates, having a characteristic sweet taste, including mono-, di- and oligosaccharides, e.g. sucrose, lactose and fructose. A more specific meaning of the term “sugar” is defined in the note of subclass C13B.

C13B  PRODUCTION OF SUCROSE; APPARATUS SPECIALLY ADAPTED THEREFOR (chemically synthesised sugars or sugar derivatives C07H; fermentation or enzyme-using processes for preparing compounds containing saccharide radicals C12P 19/00) [2011.01]

Note(s) [2011.01]

In subclass C13B, the following terms or expressions are used with the meanings indicated:

• “sugar” is used in its non-scientific meaning and refers to sucrose, also called “table sugar” or “saccharose”, a white crystalline disaccharide;
• “sugar juices” are solutions of sugar, essentially comprising sucrose, which are derived from different plants, e.g. beet, cane or maple;
• “syrups” are highly concentrated sugar juices.

5/00  Reducing the size of material from which sugar is to be extracted (for extraction of starch C08B 30/02) [2011.01]

5/02  • Cutting sugar cane [2011.01]
5/04  • Shredding sugar cane [2011.01]
5/06  • Slicing sugar beet [2011.01]
5/08  • Knives; Adjustment or maintenance thereof [2011.01]

10/00  Production of sugar juices (tapping of tree-juices A01G 23/10; tapping-spouts, receptacles for juices A01G 23/14) [2011.01]

10/02  • Expressing juice from sugar cane or similar material, e.g. sorghum saccharatum [2011.01]
10/04  • combined with imbibition [2011.01]
10/06  • Sugar-cane crushers [2011.01]
10/08  • Extraction of sugar from sugar beet with water [2011.01]
10/10  • Continuous processes [2011.01]
10/12  • Details of extraction apparatus, e.g. arrangements of pipes or valves [2011.01]
10/14  • using extracting agents other than water, e.g. alcohol or salt solutions [2011.01]

15/00  Expressing water from material from which sugar has been extracted (from starch-extracted material C08B 30/10) [2011.01]

15/02  • between perforated moving belts [2011.01]

20/00  Purification of sugar juices [2011.01]

Note(s) [2011.01]

When classifying in this group, classification is also made in group B01D 15/08 insofar as subject matter of general interest relating to chromatography is concerned.

20/02  • using alkaline earth metal compounds [2011.01]
20/04  • followed by saturation [2011.01]
20/06  • • with carbon dioxide or sulfur dioxide [2011.01]
20/08  • by oxidation or reduction [2011.01]
20/10  • using sulfur dioxide or sulfites [2011.01]
20/12  • using adsorption agents, e.g. active carbon [2011.01]
20/14  • using ion-exchange materials [2011.01]
20/16  • by physical means, e.g. osmosis or filtration [2011.01]
20/18  • by electrical means [2011.01]

25/00  Evaporators or boiling pans specially adapted for sugar juices; Evaporating or boiling sugar juices [2011.01]

25/02  • Details, e.g. for preventing foaming or for catching juice [2011.01]
25/04  • Heating equipment [2011.01]
25/06  • combined with measuring instruments for effecting control of the process [2011.01]
C13B

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subclass</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>30/00</td>
<td>Crystallisation; Crystallising apparatus; Separating crystals from mother liquors [2011.01]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30/02</td>
<td>• Crystallisation; Crystallising apparatus [2011.01]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30/04</td>
<td>• Separating crystals from mother liquor [2011.01]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30/06</td>
<td>• by centrifugal force [2011.01]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30/08</td>
<td>• Washing residual mother liquor from crystals [2011.01]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30/10</td>
<td>• • in centrifuges [2011.01]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30/12</td>
<td>• Recycling mother liquor or wash liquors [2011.01]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30/14</td>
<td>• Dissolving or refining raw sugar [2011.01]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35/00</td>
<td>Extraction of sucrose from molasses [2011.01]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35/02</td>
<td>• by chemical means [2011.01]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35/04</td>
<td>• by precipitation as alkaline earth metal saccharates [2011.01]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C13K

SACCHARIDES, OTHER THAN SUCROSE, OBTAINED FROM NATURAL SOURCES OR BY HYDROLYSIS OF NATURALLY OCCURRING DI-, OLIGO- OR POLYSACCHARIDES (chemically synthesised sugars or sugar derivatives C07H; polysaccharides, e.g. starch, derivatives thereof C08B; malt C12C; fermentation or enzyme-using processes for preparing compounds containing saccharide radicals C12P 19/00)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1/00</td>
<td>Glucose (separation from invert sugar C13K 3/00); Glucose-containing syrups [2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/02</td>
<td>• obtained by saccharification of cellulosic materials (manufacture of fodder A23K 1/12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/04</td>
<td>• Purifying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/06</td>
<td>• obtained by saccharification of starch or raw materials containing starch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/08</td>
<td>• Purifying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/10</td>
<td>Crystallisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3/00</td>
<td>Invert sugar; Separation of glucose or fructose from invert sugar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5/00</td>
<td>Lactose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7/00</td>
<td>Maltose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11/00</td>
<td>Fructose (separation from invert sugar C13K 3/00) [2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13/00</td>
<td>Sugars not otherwise provided for in this class [2]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C14

SKINS; HIDES; PELTS; LEATHER

C14B

MECHANICAL TREATMENT OR PROCESSING OF SKINS, HIDES, OR LEATHER IN GENERAL; PELT-SHEARING MACHINES; INTESTINE-SPLITTING MACHINES (mechanical cleaning of hides or the like D06G)

Subclass index

LEATHER

Manufacture.................................................................................................................. 1/00, 7/00
Treatments

milling; cutting............................................................................................................. 3/00, 5/00
finishing......................................................................................................................... 11/00, 13/00
making belts................................................................................................................. 9/00
Apparatus, tools............................................................................................................ 17/00, 19/00

FURS

Treatments.................................................................................................................... 15/00
Apparatus, tools............................................................................................................ 17/00, 19/00

INTESTINES

Splitting, cutting........................................................................................................... 21/00

SUBJECT MATTER NOT PROVIDED FOR IN OTHER GROUPS OF THIS SUBCLASS........... 99/00

1/00  Manufacture of leather; Machines or devices therefor

1/02  • Fleshing, unhairing, samming, stretching-out, setting-out, shaving, splitting, or skiving skins, hides, or leather

1/04  • • using slicking, scraping, or smoothing-out cylinders or blades fixed on supports, e.g. cylinders, in a plane substantially at right angles to the working surface

1/06  • • • in machines in which the working piece is maintained in contact with the working tools solely by means of rolls
Subject matter not provided for in other groups of this subclass

Apparatus

DEGREASING

TANNING; PASTING; IMPREGNATING

Subclass index

C14C

7/02 • Composite leathers (with one or more laminae of plastics material B32B 9/02)

7/04 • by cementing or pressing together leather pieces, strips, or layers; Reinforcing or stiffening leather by means of reinforcing layers

7/06 • Leather webs built up of interengaged strips or pieces, e.g. by braiding

9/00 Making driving belts or other leather belts or strips

11/00 Finishing the edges of leather pieces, e.g. by folding, by burning

13/00 Shredding hides or leather

15/00 Mechanical treatment of furs

15/02 • Shearing; Removing dead or coarse hairs or bristles by shearing or plucking

15/04 • Fur dressing

15/06 • Fur-stretching devices

15/08 • Application of reinforcing or stiffening layers to fur skins

15/10 • Cutting furs; Making fur plates or strips

15/12 • Finishing, e.g. pointing furs; Producing designs or patterns

17/00 Details of apparatus or machines for manufacturing or treating skins, hides, leather, or furs

17/02 • Blading cylinders or other working cylinders, e.g. slicking or scraping cylinders

17/04 • Work-supports or other counter-pressing elements; Bed rolls or counter-pressing rolls

17/06 • Work feeding or clamping devices

17/08 • Fastening devices, e.g. clips for leather-stretching

17/10 • Arrangements for driving parts of leather-working machines

17/12 • Safety devices specially adapted for leather-working machines

17/14 • Auxiliary devices for leather-working machines, e.g. grinding devices for blading cylinders or dust-removal devices combined with the working machines

19/00 Hand tools specially adapted for the treatment of hides, skins, or leather in the manufacture of leather or furs (equipment or tools for saddlery B68C)

21/00 Splitting intestines; Cutting intestines longitudinally (cleaning or cutting intestines during processing of meat A22C 17/00)

99/00 Subject matter not provided for in other groups of this subclass [2006.01]

TREATING SKINS, HIDES OR LEATHER WITH CHEMICALS, ENZYMES OR MICRO-ORGANISMS, e.g. TANNING, IMPREGNATING OR FINISHING; APPARATUS THEREFOR; COMPOSITIONS FOR TANNING (bleaching of leather or furs D06L; dyeing of leather or furs D06P)
### Treating skins or hides with chemicals, enzymes or micro-organisms prior to tanning

1/00

- Curing raw hides
- Soaking
- Facilitating unhairing, e.g. by painting, by liming
- Deliming; Bating; Pickling; Degreasing

#### Tanning; Compositions for tanning

3/00

- Chemical tanning
- • Mineral tanning
- • • using chromium compounds
- • • by organic agents
- • Vegetable tanning
- • • • using purified or modified vegetable tanning agents
- • • • Fat tanning; Oil tanning
- • • • using aliphatic aldehydes
- • • • using polycondensation products or precursors thereof
- • • • • sulfonated
- • • • using polymerisation products
- • • • using lignin derivatives, e.g. sulfate liquor

3/26

- • • using other organic substances, containing halogen

3/28

- • Multi-step processes

3/30

- • using physical means combined with chemical means

3/32

- • Recovering tanning agents from leather

#### Degreasing leather

5/00

#### Chemical aspects of pasting processes

7/00

#### Impregnating leather for preserving, waterproofing, making resistant to heat or similar purposes

9/00

- • using fatty or oily materials, e.g. fat liquoring
- • • Fixing tanning agents in the leather

11/00

#### Surface finishing of leather

13/00

#### Manufacture of special kinds of leather, e.g. vellum

13/02

- • Manufacture of technical leather

15/00

#### Apparatus for chemical treatment or washing of hides, skins, or leather

99/00

Subject matter not provided for in other groups of this subclass [2006.01]
# METALLURGY

## C21 METALLURGY OF IRON

### C21B MANUFACTURE OF IRON OR STEEL (preliminary treatment of ferrous ores or scrap C22B 1/00)

**Notes(s)**

This subclass covers:
- the production of iron or steel from source materials, e.g. the production of pig-iron;
- apparatus specially adapted therefor, e.g. blast furnaces, air heaters (furnaces in general F27).

**Subclass index**

**MAKING PIG-IRON**

- In blast furnaces: .......................................................... 5/00, 7/00, 9/00
- Other processes: .................................................................. 11/00
- General features: .................................................................. 3/00

**MAKING IRON** .................................................................. 13/00, 15/00

**MAKING LIQUID STEEL BY DIRECT PROCESSES** .............................................. 13/00

| 3/00 | General features in the manufacture of pig-iron (mixers for pig-iron C21C 1/06) | 9/02 | • Brick hot-blast stoves...
| 3/02 | • by applying additives, e.g. fluxing agents | 9/04 | • with combustion shaft...
| 3/04 | • Recovery of by-products, e.g. slag | 9/06 | • Linings...
| 3/06 | • Treatment of liquid slag | 9/08 | • Iron hot-blast stoves...
| 3/08 | • • Cooling slag | 9/10 | • Other details, e.g. blast mains...
| 3/10 | • • Slag pots; Slag cars | 9/12 | • Hot-blast valves or slides for blast furnaces...
| 5/00 | Making pig-iron in the blast furnace | 9/14 | • Preheating the combustion air...
| 5/02 | • Making special pig-iron, e.g. by applying additives, e.g. oxides of other metals | 9/16 | • Cooling or drying the hot-blast...
| 5/04 | • Making slag of special composition | 11/00 | Making pig-iron other than in blast furnaces
| 5/06 | • using top gas in the blast furnace process | 11/02 | • in low shaft furnaces...
| 7/00 | Blast furnaces | 11/06 | • in rotary kilns...
| 7/02 | • Internal forms | 11/08 | • in hearth-type furnaces...
| 7/04 | • with special refractories | 11/10 | • in electric furnaces...
| 7/06 | • Linings for furnaces | 13/00 | Making spongy iron or liquid steel, by direct processes
| 7/08 | • Top armourings | 13/02 | • in shaft furnaces...
| 7/10 | • Cooling; Devices therefor | 13/04 | • in retorts...
| 7/12 | • Opening or sealing the tap holes | 13/06 | • in multi-storied furnaces...
| 7/14 | • Discharging devices, e.g. for slag | 13/08 | • in rotary furnaces...
| 7/16 | • Tuyères | 13/10 | • in hearth-type furnaces...
| 7/18 | • Bell-and-hopper arrangements | 13/12 | • in electric furnaces...
| 7/20 | • with appliances for distributing the burden | 13/14 | • Multi-stage processes...
| 7/22 | • Dust arresters | 15/00 | Other processes for the manufacture of iron from iron compounds (by electrolysis C25C 1/06)
| 7/24 | • Test rods or other checking devices | 15/02 | • Metallothermic processes, e.g. thermit reduction...
| 9/00 | Stoves for heating the blast in blast furnaces | 15/04 | • from iron carbonyl...

### C21C PROCESSING OF PIG-IRON, e.g. REFINING, MANUFACTURE OF WROUGHT-IRON OR STEEL; TREATMENT IN MOLTEN STATE OF FERROUS ALLOYS

| 1/00 | Refining of pig-iron; Cast iron | 1/04 | • Removing impurities other than carbon, phosphorus, or sulfur...
| 1/02 | • Dephosphorising or desulfurising | 1/06 | • Constructional features of mixers for pig-iron...

IPC (2014.01), Section C 225
C21C

1/08 • Manufacture of cast-iron
1/10 • Making spheroidal graphite cast-iron

3/00 Manufacture of wrought-iron or wrought-steel

5/00 Manufacture of carbon steel, e.g. plain mild steel, medium carbon steel, or cast-steel
5/02 • Crucible furnace processes
5/04 • Manufacture of hearth-furnace steel, e.g. Siemens-Martin steel
5/06 • Processes yielding slags of special composition
5/28 • Manufacture of steel in the converter
5/30 • Regulating or controlling the blowing
5/32 • Blowing from above (C21C 5/35 takes precedence) [5]
5/34 • Blowing through the bath (C21C 5/35 takes precedence) [5]
5/35 • Blowing from above and through the bath [5]
5/36 • Processes yielding slags of special composition
5/38 • Removal of waste gases or dust
5/40 • Offtakes or separating apparatus for converter waste gases or dust
5/42 • Constructional features of converters

5/44 • Refractory linings
5/46 • Details or accessories
5/48 • Bottoms or tuyères of converters
5/50 • Tilting mechanisms for converters
5/52 • Manufacture of steel in electric furnaces
5/54 • Processes yielding slags of special composition
5/56 • Manufacture of steel by other methods (making liquid steel by direct processes C21B 13/00)

7/00 Treating molten ferrous alloys, e.g. steel, not covered by groups C21C 1/00-C21C 5/00 (treating molten metals during moulding B22D 1/00, B22D 27/00)
7/04 • Removing impurities by adding a treating agent
7/06 • Deoxidising, e.g. killing [2]
7/064 • Dephosphorising; Desulphurising [3]
7/068 • Decarburising [3]
7/072 • Treatment with gases (C21C 7/06, C21C 7/064, C21C 7/068 take precedence) [3]
7/076 • Use of slags or fluxes as treating agents (C21C 7/06, C21C 7/064, C21C 7/068 take precedence) [3]
7/10 • Handling in vacuum

C21D MODIFYING THE PHYSICAL STRUCTURE OF FERROUS METALS; GENERAL DEVICES FOR HEAT TREATMENT OF FERROUS OR NON-FERROUS METALS OR ALLOYS; MAKING METAL MALLEABLE BY DECARBURISATION, TEMPERING, OR OTHER TREATMENTS (cementation by diffusion processes C23C; surface treatment of metallic material involving at least one process provided for in class C23 and at least one process covered by this subclass C23F 17/00; unidirectional solidification of eutectic materials or unidirectional demixing of eutectoid materials C30B)

Note(s) [2012.01]
1. Cementation by diffusion processes is classified in C23C.
2. Surface treatments of metallic material involving at least one process provided for in class C23 and at least one process covered by this subclass are classified in group C23F 17/00.

Subclass index

HEAT TREATMENT
General methods or devices........................................................................................................................................... 1/00, 11/00
of cast-iron, of iron alloys........................................................................................................................................... 5/00, 6/00
adapted for particular articles........................................................................................................................................... 9/00
MECHANICAL TREATMENT........................................................................................................................................... 7/00
COMBINED MECHANICAL AND THERMAL TREATMENTS......................................................................................... 8/00
OTHER TREATMENTS.................................................................................................................................................. 10/00
DIFFUSION PROCESSES FOR EXTRACTION OF NON-METALS.................................................................................. 3/00

1/00 General methods or devices for heat treatment, e.g. annealing, hardening, quenching or tempering
1/02 • Hardening articles or materials formed by forging or rolling, with no further heating beyond that required for the formation
1/04 • with simultaneous application of supersonic waves, magnetic or electric fields
1/06 • Surface hardening
1/08 • with flames
1/09 • by direct application of electrical or wave energy; by particle radiation [3]
1/10 • by electric induction [3]
1/18 • Hardening (C21D 1/02 takes precedence); Quenching with or without subsequent tempering (quenching devices C21D 1/62) [3]
1/19 • by interrupted quenching [3]
1/20 • Isothermal quenching, e.g. bainitic hardening [3]
1/22 • Martempering [3]
1/25 • Hardening, combined with annealing between 300 °C and 600 °C, i.e. heat refining ("Vergüten") [3]
1/26 • Methods of annealing
1/28 • Normalising
1/30 • Stress-relieving
1/32 • Soft annealing, e.g. spheroidising
1/34 • Methods of heating (C21D 1/06 takes precedence)
1/38 • Heating by cathodic discharges
1/40 • Direct resistance heating
1/42 • Induction heating
1/44 • in heat-treatment baths
1/46 • Salt baths
1/48 • Metal baths

IPC (2014.01), Section C
Heat treatment of cast-iron

5/02  improving the malleability of grey cast-iron
5/04  of white cast-iron
5/06  Malleabilising
5/08  with oxidation of carbon
5/10  in gaseous agents
5/12  in solid agents
5/14  Graphitising
5/16  Packing agents

6/00  Heat treatment of ferrous alloys [2]

Note(s)

1. When classifying in group C21D 6/00, any aspect of the method for the heat treatment of ferrous alloys which is considered to represent information of interest for search may also be classified in groups C21D 1/02-C21D 1/84. This can, for example, be the case when it is considered of interest to enable searching of heat treatment methods of ferrous alloys using a combination of classification symbols. Such non-obligatory classification should be given as "additional information".

2. When classifying in group C21D 6/00, any alloying constituent which is considered to represent information of interest for search may also be classified in groups C22C 38/02-C22C 38/60. This can, for example, be the case when it is considered of interest to enable searching of heat treatment of specific ferrous alloys using a combination of classification symbols. Such non-obligatory classification should be given as "additional information".

6/02  Hardening by precipitation [2]
6/04  Hardening by cooling below 0° C [2]

7/00  Modifying the physical properties of iron or steel by deformation (apparatus for mechanical working of metal B21, B23, B24)
7/02  by cold working
7/04  of the surface
7/06  by shot-peening or the like
7/08  by burnishing or the like
7/10  of the whole cross-section, e.g. of concrete reinforcing bars
7/12  by expanding tubular bodies
7/13  by hot working

8/00  Modifying the physical properties by deformation combined with, or followed by, heat treatment (hardening articles or materials formed by forging or rolling with no further heating beyond that required for the formation C21D 1/02) [3]
8/02  during manufacturing of plates or strips (C21D 8/12 takes precedence) [3]
8/04  to produce plates or strips for deep-drawing [3]
8/06  during manufacturing of rods or wires [3]
8/08  for concrete reinforcement [3]
8/10  during manufacturing of tubular bodies [3]
8/12  during manufacturing of articles with special electromagnetic properties [3]

9/00  Heat treatment, e.g. annealing, hardening, quenching or tempering, adapted for particular articles; Furnaces therefor
9/02  for springs
9/04  for rails
9/06  with diminished tendency to become wavy
9/08  for tubular bodies or pipes
9/10  shotgun barrels
9/12  barrels for ordnance
9/14  wear-resistant or pressure-resistant pipes
9/16  for explosive shells
9/18  for knives, scythes, scissors, or like hand cutting tools
9/20  for blades for skates
9/22  for drills; for milling cutters; for machine cutting tools
9/24  for saw blades
9/26  for needles; for teeth for card-clothing
9/28  for plain shafts
9/30  for crankshafts; for camshafts
9/32  for gear wheels, worm wheels, or the like
9/34  for tyres; for rims
9/36  for balls; for rollers
9/38  for roll bodies
9/40  for rings; for bearing races
9/42  for armour plate
9/44  for equipment for lining mine shafts, e.g. segments, rings or props
C21D

9/46 • for sheet metals
9/48 • • deep-drawing sheets
9/50 • for welded joints
9/52 • for wires; for strips
9/54 • • Furnaces for treating strips or wire
9/56 • • • Continuous furnaces for strip or wire
9/567 • • • • with heating in fluidised beds [3]
9/573 • • • • with cooling [3]
9/58 • • • • with heating by baths
9/60 • • • • • with induction heating
9/62 • • • • with direct resistance heating
9/63 • • • the strip being supported by a cushion of gas [3]
9/64 • • • Patenting furnaces
9/66 • • • Tower-type furnaces
9/663 • • • Bell-type furnaces [3]

9/665 • • • inverted or side-facing [3]
9/667 • • • Multi-station furnaces [3]
9/67 • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • adapted for treating the charge in vacuum or special atmosphere [3]
9/673 • • • • Details, accessories, or equipment peculiar to bell-type furnaces [3]
9/675 • • • • Arrangements of charging or discharging devices [3]
9/677 • • • • Arrangements of heating devices [3]
9/68 • • • Furnace coilers; Hot coilers (cold coilers B21C 47/00)
9/70 • Furnaces for ingots, i.e. soaking pits

10/00 Modifying the physical properties by methods other than heat treatment or deformation [3]

11/00 Process control or regulation for heat treatments [2]

C22 METALLURGY; FERROUS OR NON-FERROUS ALLOYS; TREATMENT OF ALLOYS OR NON-FERROUS METALS

Note(s) [2012.01]
1. Processes or devices specific to the transformation of iron ore or iron carbonyl into iron, either solid or molten, are classified in subclass C21B.
2. Processes or devices specific to:
   • processing of pig-iron or cast iron;
   • manufacture of wrought-iron, wrought-steel or carbon steel;
   • treatment in molten state of ferrous alloys;
are classified in subclass C21C.
3. The following processes or devices are classified in subclass C21D:
   • processes specific to heat treatment of ferrous alloys or steels;
   • devices for heat treatment of metals or alloys.

C22B PRODUCTION OR REFINING OF METALS (making metallic powder or suspensions thereof B22F 9/00; production of metals by electrolysis or electrophoresis C25); PRETREATMENT OF RAW MATERIALS

Note(s)
In this subclass, groups for obtaining metals include obtaining the metals by non-metallurgical processes, and obtaining metal compounds by metallurgical processes. Thus, for example, group C22B 11/00 covers the production of silver by reduction of ammominical silver oxide in solution, and group C22B 17/00 covers the production of cadmium oxide by a metallurgical process. Furthermore, although compounds of arsenic and antimony are classified in C01G, production of the elements themselves is covered by C22B, as well as the production of their compounds by metallurgical processes.

Subclass index

PRETREATMENT OF RAW MATERIALS.................................................................................. 1/00, 4/00, 7/00
PROCESSES FOR OBTAINING METALS.............................................................................. 3/00, 4/00, 5/00
REFINING OR REMELTING METALS.................................................................................. 9/00
OBTAINING SPECIFIC METALS......................................................................................... 11/00-61/00

1/00 Preliminary treatment of ores or scrap
1/02 • Roasting processes (C22B 1/16 takes precedence)
1/04 • • Blast roasting
1/06 • • Sulfating roasting
1/08 • • Chloridising roasting
1/10 • • in fluidised form
1/11 • • Removing sulfur, phosphorus or arsenic, other than by roasting [2]
1/14 • • Agglomerating; Briquetting; Binding; Granulating
1/16 • • Sintering; Agglomerating

1/18 • • in sinter pots
1/20 • • in sintering machines with movable grates
1/212 • • • in tunnel furnaces [2]
1/214 • • • in shaft furnaces [2]
1/216 • • • in rotary furnaces [2]
1/22 • • • in other sintering apparatus
1/24 • • • Binding; Briquetting
1/242 • • • with binders [2]
1/243 • • • • inorganic [2]
1/244 • • • organic [2]
3/00 Extraction of metal compounds from ores or concentrates by wet processes [5]

**Note(s) [1, 2006.01]**

When classifying in this group, the nature of any metal which is considered to represent information of interest for search may also be classified in the main groups only of C22B 11/00-C22B 25/00, in group C22B 19/34 or in any of groups C22B 26/00-C22B 61/00. This can, for example, be the case when it is considered of interest to enable searching for extraction of specific metals or their compounds. Such non-obligatory classification should be given as "additional information".

3/02 • Apparatus therefor
3/04 • by leaching (C22B 3/18 takes precedence) [5]
3/06 • • in inorganic acid solutions [5]
3/08 • • Sulfuric acid [5]
3/10 • • Hydrochloric acid [5]
3/12 • • in inorganic alkaline solutions [5]
3/14 • • containing ammonia or ammonium salts [5]
3/16 • • in organic solutions [5]
3/18 • with the aid of micro-organisms or enzymes, e.g. bacteria or algae [5]
3/20 • Treatment or purification of solutions, e.g. obtained by leaching (C22B 3/18 takes precedence) [5]
3/22 • • by physical processes, e.g. by filtration, by magnetic means (C22B 3/26 takes precedence) [5]
3/24 • • by adsorption on solid substances, e.g. by extraction with solid resins [5]
3/26 • • by liquid-liquid extraction using organic compounds [5]

**Note(s)**

In groups C22B 3/28-C22B 3/40:
- a. in the absence of an indication to the contrary, compounds are classified in the last appropriate place;
- b. when two or more compounds are used successively, each compound is classified as such;
- c. mixtures containing two or more compounds covered individually by the same one of groups C22B 3/28-C22B 3/38, are classified only in that group.

3/28 • • Amines [5]
3/30 • • Oximes [5]
3/32 • • Carboxylic acids [5]
3/34 • • containing sulfur [5]
3/36 • • Heterocyclic compounds (C22B 3/34 takes precedence) [5]
3/38 • • containing phosphorus [5]
3/40 • • Mixtures [5]
3/42 • • by ion-exchange extraction [5]
3/44 • • by chemical processes (C22B 3/26, C22B 3/42 take precedence) [5]
3/46 • • by substitution, e.g. by cementation [5]

4/00 Electrothermal treatment of ores or metallurgical products for obtaining metals or alloys (general methods of refining or remelting metals C22B 9/00; obtaining iron or steel C21B, C21C) [2]

4/02 • Light metals [2]
4/04 • Heavy metals [2]
4/06 • Alloys [2]
4/08 • Apparatus [2]

5/00 General processes of reducing to metals
5/02 • Dry processes
5/04 • • by aluminum, other metals, or silicon
5/06 • • by carbides or the like
5/08 • • by sulfides; Roasting reaction processes
5/10 • • by solid carbonaceous reducing agents
5/12 • • by gases
5/14 • • fluidised material
5/16 • • with volatilisation or condensation of the metal being produced
5/18 • • Reducing step-by-step
5/20 • • from metal carbonyls

7/00 Working-up raw materials other than ores, e.g. scrap, to produce non-ferrous metals or compounds thereof

7/02 • Working-up flue dust
7/04 • Working-up slag

9/00 General processes of refining or remelting of metals; Apparatus for electro slag or arc remelting of metals
9/02 • Refining by liqurating, filtering, centrifuging, distilling or supersonic wave action
9/04 • Refining by applying a vacuum [3]
9/05 • Refining by treating with gases, e.g. gas flushing [3]
9/10 • with refining or fluxing agents; Use of materials therefor (C22B 9/18 takes precedence) [3]
9/14 • Refining in the solid state
9/16 • Remelting metals (liquating C22B 9/02) [3]
9/18 • • Electroslag remelting [3]
9/187 • • • Apparatus therefor, e.g. furnaces [5]
9/193 • • • • Moulds, bottom plates or starter plates [5]
9/20 • • Arc remelting [3]
9/21 • • Apparatus therefor [5]
9/22 • • with heating by wave energy or particle radiation [3]

11/00 Obtaining noble metals
11/02 • by dry processes
11/06 • Chloridising
11/08 • by cyaniding
11/10 • by amalgamating
11/12 • • Apparatus therefor

13/00 Obtaining lead
13/02 • by dry processes
13/06 • Refining
13/08 • • Separating metals from lead by precipitating, e.g. by Parkes process
13/10 • • Separating metals from lead by crystallisation, e.g. by Pattison process

15/00 Obtaining copper
15/02 • in blast furnaces
15/04 • in reverberatory furnaces
15/06 • in converters
15/14 • Refining

17/00 Obtaining cadmium
17/02 • by dry processes
17/06 • Refining
C22B

19/00 Obtaining zinc or zinc oxide
19/02 • Preliminary treatment of ores; Preliminary refining of zinc oxide
19/04 • Obtaining zinc by distilling
19/06 • in muffle furnaces
19/08 • in blast furnaces
19/10 • in reverberatory furnaces
19/12 • in crucible furnaces
19/14 • in vertical retorts
19/16 • Distilling vessels
19/18 • • Condensers; Receiving vessels
19/20 • Obtaining zinc otherwise than by distilling
19/28 • from muffle furnace residues
19/30 • from metallic residues or scraps
19/32 • Refining zinc
19/34 • Obtaining zinc oxide (purifying zinc oxide C01G 9/02)
19/36 • in blast or reverberatory furnaces
19/38 • in rotary furnaces
21/00 Obtaining aluminium
21/02 • with reducing
21/04 • with alkali metals
21/06 • Refining
23/00 Obtaining nickel or cobalt
23/02 • by dry processes
23/06 • Refining
25/00 Obtaining tin
25/02 • by dry processes
25/06 • from scrap, especially tin scrap (by electrolytic process C25C 1/14)
25/08 • Refining
26/00 Obtaining alkali, alkaline earth metals or magnesium [2]
26/10 • Obtaining alkali metals [2]

C22C ALLOYS (treatment of alloys C21D, C22F)

26/12 • • Obtaining lithium [2]
26/20 • Obtaining alkaline earth metals or magnesium [2]
26/22 • • Obtaining magnesium [2]
30/00 Obtaining antimony, arsenic or bismuth [2]
30/02 • Obtaining antimony [2]
30/04 • Obtaining arsenic [2]
30/06 • Obtaining bismuth [2]
34/00 Obtaining refractory metals [2]
34/10 • Obtaining titanium, zirconium or hafnium [2]
34/12 • • Obtaining titanium [2]
34/14 • • Obtaining zirconium or hafnium [2]
34/20 • Obtaining niobium, tantalum or vanadium [2]
34/22 • • Obtaining vanadium [2]
34/24 • • Obtaining niobium or tantalum [2]
34/30 • Obtaining chromium, molybdenum or tungsten [2]
34/32 • • Obtaining chromium [2]
34/34 • • Obtaining molybdenum [2]
34/36 • • Obtaining tungsten [2]
35/00 Obtaining beryllium
41/00 Obtaining germanium
43/00 Obtaining mercury
47/00 Obtaining manganese
58/00 Obtaining gallium or indium [2]
59/00 Obtaining rare earth metals
60/00 Obtaining metals of atomic number 87 or higher, i.e. radioactive metals [2]
60/02 • Obtaining thorium, uranium or other actinides [2]
60/04 • Obtaining plutonium [2]
61/00 Obtaining metals not elsewhere provided for in this subclass (iron C21) [2]

Note(s)
In this subclass, the following terms or expressions are used with the meanings indicated:
• "alloys" includes also:
  a. metallic composite materials containing a substantial proportion of fibres or other somewhat larger particles;
  b. ceramic compositions containing free metal bonded to carbides, diamond, oxides, borides, nitrides or silicides, e.g. cermets, or other metal compounds, e.g. oxynitrides or sulfides, other than as macroscopic reinforcing agents.
• "based on" requires at least 50% by weight of the specified constituent or of the specified group of constituents.

Subclass index
NON-FERROUS ALLOYS
  Manufacture........................................................................................................................................1/00, 3/00
  Based on or containing particular metals................................................................................................5/00-32/00
FERROUS ALLOYS
  Manufacture........................................................................................................................................33/00
  Master alloys.......................................................................................................................................35/00
  Cast-iron alloys....................................................................................................................................37/00
  Iron alloys...........................................................................................................................................38/00
RADIOACTIVE ALLOYS..........................................................................................................................43/00
AMORPHOUS ALLOYS...........................................................................................................................45/00
ALLOYS CONTAINING FIBRES OR FILAMENTS..................................................................................47/00, 49/00
Non-ferrous alloys, i.e. alloys based essentially on metals other than iron [2, 5]

Note(s) [2009.01]
Groups C22C 43/00-C22C 49/00 take precedence over groups C22C 1/00-C22C 38/00.

1/00 Making non-ferrous alloys (by electrothermic methods C22B 4/00; by electrolysis C25C)
1/02 • by melting
1/03 • using master alloys [2]
1/04 • by powder metallurgy (C22C 1/08 takes precedence) [2]
1/05 • Mixtures of metal powder with non-metallic powder (C22C 1/08 takes precedence) [2]
1/06 • with the use of special agents for refining or deoxidising
1/08 • Alloys with open or closed pores
1/10 • Alloys containing non-metals (C22C 1/08 takes precedence) [2]

3/00 Removing material from non-ferrous alloys to produce alloys of different constitution

5/00 Alloys based on noble metals
5/02 • Alloys based on gold [2]
5/04 • Alloys based on a platinum group metal [2]
5/06 • Alloys based on silver [2]
5/08 • with copper as the next major constituent [2]
5/10 • with cadmium as the next major constituent [2]

7/00 Alloys based on mercury

9/00 Alloys based on copper
9/01 • with aluminium as the next major constituent [2]
9/02 • with tin as the next major constituent [2]
9/04 • with zinc as the next major constituent [2]
9/05 • with manganese as the next major constituent [2]
9/06 • with nickel or cobalt as the next major constituent [2]
9/08 • with lead as the next major constituent [2]
9/10 • with silicon as the next major constituent

11/00 Alloys based on lead
11/02 • with an alkali or an alkaline earth metal as the next major constituent [2]
11/04 • with copper as the next major constituent [2]
11/06 • with tin as the next major constituent [2]
11/08 • with antimony or bismuth as the next major constituent [2]
11/10 • with tin [2]

12/00 Alloys based on antimony or bismuth [2]

13/00 Alloys based on tin
13/02 • with antimony or bismuth as the next major constituent [2]

14/00 Alloys based on titanium [2]

16/00 Alloys based on zirconium [2]

18/00 Alloys based on zinc [2]
18/02 • with copper as the next major constituent [2]
18/04 • with aluminium as the next major constituent [2]

19/00 Alloys based on nickel or cobalt
19/03 • based on nickel [2]
19/05 • with chromium [2]

19/07 • based on cobalt [2]

20/00 Alloys based on cadmium [2]

21/00 Alloys based on aluminium
21/02 • with silicon as the next major constituent [2]
21/04 • Modified aluminium-silicon alloys
21/06 • with magnesium as the next major constituent [2]
21/08 • • with silicon [2]
21/10 • with zinc as the next major constituent [2]
21/12 • with copper as the next major constituent [2]

Note(s)
In groups C22C 21/14-C22C 21/18, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, an alloy is classified in the last appropriate place.

21/14 • with silicon [2]
21/16 • with magnesium [2]
21/18 • with zinc [2]

22/00 Alloys based on manganese [2]

23/00 Alloys based on magnesium
23/02 • with aluminium as the next major constituent [2]
23/04 • with zinc or cadmium as the next major constituent [2]
23/06 • with a rare earth metal as the next major constituent [2]

24/00 Alloys based on an alkali or an alkaline earth metal [2]

25/00 Alloys based on beryllium

26/00 Alloys containing diamond [4]

27/00 Alloys based on rhenium or a refractory metal not mentioned in groups C22C 14/00 or C22C 16/00 [2]
27/02 • Alloys based on vanadium, niobium or tantalum [2]
27/04 • Alloys based on tungsten or molybdenum [2]
27/06 • Alloys based on chromium [2]

28/00 Alloys based on a metal not provided for in groups C22C 5/00-C22C 27/00 [2]

29/00 Alloys based on carbidizes, oxides, borides, nitrides or silicides, e.g. cermet, or other metal compounds, e.g. oxynitrides, sulfides [4]
29/02 • based on carbidizes [4]
29/04 • based on carbidizes [4]
29/06 • based on carbidizes, but not containing other metal compounds [4]
29/08 • • based on tungsten carbide [4]
29/10 • • based on titanium carbide [4]
29/12 • based on oxides [4]
29/14 • based on borides [4]
29/16 • based on nitrides [4]
29/18 • based on silicides [4]

30/00 Alloys containing less than 50% by weight of each constituent [2]

Note(s)
In groups C22C 30/02-C22C 30/06, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, an alloy is classified in the last appropriate place.

30/02 • containing copper [2]
30/04 • containing tin or lead [2]
32/00 Non-ferrous alloys containing at least 5% by weight but less than 50% by weight of oxides, carbides, borides, nitrides, silicides or other metal compounds, e.g. oxynitrides, sulfides, whether added as such or formed in situ [2]

38/58 • • with more than 1.5% by weight of manganese [2]
38/60 • containing lead, selenium, tellurium or antimony, or more than 0.04% by weight of sulfur [2]

43/00 Alloys containing radioactive materials [2]

45/00 Amorphous alloys [5]
45/02 • with iron as the major constituent [5]
45/04 • with nickel or cobalt as the major constituent [5]
45/06 • with beryllium as the major constituent [5]
45/08 • with aluminium as the major constituent [5]
45/10 • with molybdenum, tungsten, niobium, tantalum, titanium, or zirconium as the major constituent [5]

Alloys containing fibres or filaments [7]

47/00 Making alloys containing metallic or non-metallic fibres or filaments [7]
47/02 • Pretreatment of the fibres or filaments [7]
47/04 • by coating, e.g. with a protective or activated covering [7]
47/06 • by forming the fibres or filaments into a preformed structure, e.g. using a temporary binder to form a mat-like element [7]
47/08 • by contacting the fibres or filaments with molten metal, e.g. by infiltrating the fibres or filaments placed in a mould [7]
47/10 • Infiltration in the presence of a reactive atmosphere; Reactive infiltration [7]
47/12 • Infiltration or casting under mechanical pressure [7]
47/14 • by powder metallurgy, i.e. by processing mixtures of metal powder and fibres or filaments [7]
47/16 • by thermal spraying of the metal, e.g. plasma spraying [7]
47/18 • using a preformed structure of fibres or filaments [7]
47/20 • by subjecting to pressure and heat an assembly comprising at least one metal layer or sheet and one layer of fibres or filaments [7]

49/00 Alloys containing metallic or non-metallic fibres or filaments [7]
49/02 • characterised by the matrix material [7]
49/04 • • Light metals [7]
49/06 • • • Aluminium [7]
49/08 • • • Iron group metals [7]
49/10 • • • Refractory metals [7]
49/11 • • • Titanium [7]
49/12 • • • Intermetallic matrix material [7]
49/14 • • characterised by the fibres or filaments [7]

Indexing scheme associated with groups C22C 47/00 and C22C 49/00, relating to the nature of the fibrous materials contained in metal-fibrous composites. [7]

101/00 Non-metallic fibres or filaments [7]
101/02 • based on oxides, e.g. oxide ceramic fibres [7]
In this class, the following expression is used with the meaning indicated:

Note(s)

1/04 Aluminium oxide [7]
1/06 Mixed oxides, e.g. aluminium silicate or glass [7]
1/08 based on non-oxides, e.g. non-oxide ceramic fibres [7]
1/10 Carbon [7]
1/12 Carbides [7]
1/14 Silicon carbide [7]
1/16 Nitrides [7]
1/18 Silicon nitride [7]

101/20 Boron [7]
101/22 Borides [7]

111/00 Metallic fibres or filaments [7]
111/02 Refractory metal fibres or filaments, e.g. tungsten fibres [7]

121/00 Pretreated fibres or filaments [7]
121/02 Coated fibres or filaments, e.g. ceramic fibres with protective coatings [7]

C22F CHANGING THE PHYSICAL STRUCTURE OF NON-FERROUS METALS OR NON-FERROUS ALLOYS (processes specific to heat treatment of ferrous alloys or steels and devices for heat treatment of metals or alloys C21D)

Note(s) [2012.01]

Surface treatments of metallic material involving at least one process provided for in class C23 and at least one process covered by this subclass are classified in group C23F 17/00.

1/00 Changing the physical structure of non-ferrous metals or alloys by heat treatment or by hot or cold working
1/02 in inert or controlled atmosphere or vacuum
1/04 of aluminium or alloys based thereon
1/043 of alloys with silicon as the next major constituent [4]
1/047 of alloys with magnesium as the next major constituent [4]
1/05 of alloys of the Al-Si-Mg type, i.e. containing silicon and magnesium in approximately equal proportions [4]
1/053 of alloys with zinc as the next major constituent [4]
1/057 of alloys with copper as the next major constituent [4]
1/06 of magnesium or alloys based thereon
1/08 of copper or alloys based thereon
1/10 of nickel or cobalt or alloys based thereon
1/11 of chromium or alloys based thereon
1/12 of lead or alloys based thereon
1/14 of noble metals or alloys based thereon
1/16 of other metals or alloys based thereon
1/18 High-melting or refractory metals or alloys based thereon
3/00 Changing the physical structure of non-ferrous metals or alloys by special physical methods, e.g. treatment with neutrons
3/02 by solidifying a melt controlled by supersonic waves or electric or magnetic fields

C23 COATING METALLIC MATERIAL; COATING MATERIAL WITH METALLIC MATERIAL; CHEMICAL SURFACE TREATMENT; DIFFUSION TREATMENT OF METALLIC MATERIAL; COATING BY VACUUM EVAPORATION, BY SPUTTERING, BY ION IMPLANTATION OR BY CHEMICAL VAPOUR DEPOSITION, IN GENERAL; INHIBITING CORROSION OF METALLIC MATERIAL OR INCrustation in general

Note(s)

In this class, the following expression is used with the meaning indicated:

- "metallic material" covers:
  a. metals;
  b. alloys (attention is drawn to the Note following the title of subclass C22C).

C23C COATING METALLIC MATERIAL; COATING MATERIAL WITH METALLIC MATERIAL; SURFACE TREATMENT OF METALLIC MATERIAL BY DIFFUSION INTO THE SURFACE, BY CHEMICAL CONVERSION OR SUBSTITUTION; COATING BY VACUUM EVAPORATION, BY SPUTTERING, BY ION IMPLANTATION OR BY CHEMICAL VAPOUR DEPOSITION, IN GENERAL (applying liquids or other fluent materials to surfaces in general B05; making metal-coated products by extrusion B21C 23/22; covering with metal by connecting pre-existing layers to articles, see the relevant places, e.g. B21D 39/00, B23K; working of metal by the action of a high concentration of electric current on a workpiece using an electrode B23H; metallising of glass C03C; metallising mortars, concrete, artificial stone, ceramics or natural stone C04B 41/00; paints, varnishes, lacquers C09D; enamelling of, or applying a vitreous layer to, metals C23D; inhibiting corrosion of metallic material or incrustation in general C23F; treating metal surfaces or coating of metals by electrolysis or electrophoresis C25D, C25F; single-crystal film growth C30B; by metallising textiles D06M 11/83; decorating textiles by locally metallising D06Q 1/04; details of scanning-probe apparatus, in general G01Q; manufacture of semiconductor devices H01L; manufacture of printed circuits H05K) [4]
Note(s)
In this subclass, an operation is considered as pretreatment or after-treatment when it is specially adapted for, but quite distinct from, the coating process concerned and constitutes an independent operation. If an operation results in the formation of a permanent sub- or upper layer, it is not considered as pretreatment or after-treatment and is classified as a multi-coating process.

Subclass index
COATING USING MOLTEN COATING MATERIAL................................................................. 2/00-6/00
SOLID STATE DIFFUSION COATING ........................................................................ 8/00-12/00
COATING BY VACUUM EVAPORATION, SPUTTERING OR ION-IMPLANTATION....... 14/00
CHEMICAL COATING .................................................................................................. 16/00-20/00
CONTACT PLATING ...................................................................................................... 18/00
CHEMICAL SURFACE TREATMENT ............................................................................. 22/00
COATING USING INORGANIC POWDER ....................................................................... 24/00
OTHER COATING, MULTI-LAYER COATING ................................................................ 26/00, 28/00
COMPOSITION OF METALLIC COATING MATERIAL .................................................. 30/00

Coating by applying the coating material in the molten state [4]

2/00 Hot-dipping or immersion processes for applying the coating material in the molten state without affecting the shape; Apparatus therefor [4]

2/02 • Pretreatment of the material to be coated, e.g. for coating on selected surface areas (C23C 2/30 takes precedence) [4]
2/04 • characterised by the coating material [4]
2/06 • Zinc or cadmium or alloys based thereon [4]
2/08 • Tin or alloys based thereon [4]
2/10 • Lead or alloys based thereon [4]
2/12 • Aluminium or alloys based thereon [4]
2/14 • Removing excess of molten coatings; Controlling or regulating the coating thickness (controlling or regulating thickness in general G05D 5/02) [4]
2/16 • using fluids under pressure, e.g. air knives [4]
2/18 • • • Removing excess of molten coatings from elongated material [4]
2/20 • • • Strips; Plates [4]
2/22 • • by rubbing, e.g. using knives [4]
2/24 • • using magnetic or electric fields [4]
2/26 • • After-treatment (C23C 2/14 takes precedence) [4]
2/28 • • • Thermal after-treatment, e.g. treatment in oil bath [4]
2/30 • • Fluxes or coverings on molten baths (C23C 2/22 takes precedence) [4]
2/32 • • using vibratory energy applied to the bath or substrate (C23C 2/14 takes precedence) [4]
2/34 • • characterised by the shape of the material to be treated (C23C 2/14 takes precedence) [4]
2/36 • • • Elongated material [4]
2/38 • • • • Wires; Tubes [4]
2/40 • • • • Plates; Strips [4]

4/00 Coating by spraying the coating material in the molten state, e.g. by flame, plasma or electric discharge (built-up welding B23K, e.g. B23K 5/18, B23K 9/04; spraying guns B05B; making alloys containing fibres or filaments by thermal spraying of metal C22C 47/16; plasma guns H05H) [4]

4/02 • Pretreatment of the material to be coated, e.g. for coating on selected surface areas [4]
4/04 • • characterised by the coating material [4]
4/06 • • • Metallic material [4]
4/08 • • • containing only metal elements [4]

4/10 • • Oxides, borides, carbides, nitrides, silicides or mixtures thereof [4]
4/12 • • characterised by the method of spraying [4]
4/14 • • • for covering elongated material [4]
4/16 • • • • Wires; Tubes [4]
4/18 • • After-treatment [4]

6/00 Coating by casting molten material on the substrate [4]

Solid state diffusion into metallic material surfaces [4]

8/00 Solid state diffusion of only non-metal elements into metallic material surfaces (diffusion of silicon C23C 10/00); Chemical surface treatment of metallic material by reaction of the surface with a reactive gas, leaving reaction products of surface material in the coating, e.g. conversion coatings, passivation of metals (C23C 14/00 takes precedence) [4]

8/02 • • Pretreatment of the material to be coated (C23C 8/04 takes precedence) [4]
8/04 • • Treatment of selected surface areas, e.g. using masks [4]
8/06 • • using gases [4]
8/08 • • • only one element being applied [4]
8/10 • • • Oxidising [4]
8/12 • • • • using elemental oxygen or ozone [4]
8/14 • • • • • Oxidising of ferrous surfaces [4]
8/16 • • • • using oxygen-containing compounds, e.g. H2O, CO2 [4]
8/18 • • • • • Oxidising of ferrous surfaces [4]
8/20 • • • Carburising [4]
8/22 • • • • of ferrous surfaces [4]
8/24 • • • Nitriding [4]
8/26 • • • • of ferrous surfaces [4]
8/28 • • • more than one element being applied in one step [4]
8/30 • • • Carbo-nitriding [4]
8/32 • • • • of ferrous surfaces [4]
8/34 • • • more than one element being applied in more than one step [4]
8/36 • • using ionised gases, e.g. ionitriding (discharge tubes with provision for introducing objects or material to be exposed to the discharge H01J 37/00) [4]
8/38 • • • Treatment of ferrous surfaces [4]
8/40 using liquids, e.g. salt baths, liquid suspensions [4]
8/42 only one element being applied [4]
8/44 Carburising [4]
8/46 of ferrous surfaces [4]
8/48 Nitriding [4]
8/50 of ferrous surfaces [4]
8/52 more than one element being applied in one step [4]
8/54 Carbo-nitriding [4]
8/56 more than one element being applied in more than one step [4]
8/58 using solids, e.g. powders, pastes (using liquid suspensions of solids C23C 8/40) [4]
8/62 only one element being applied [4]
8/64 Carburising [4]
8/66 more than one element being applied in more than one step [4]
8/68 Boronising [4]
8/70 more than one element being applied in more than one step [4]
8/72 more than one element being applied in one step [4]
8/74 Carbo-nitriding [4]
8/76 more than one element being applied in more than one step [4]
8/78 more than one element being applied in more than one step [4]
8/80 After-treatment [4]

10/00 Solid state diffusion of only metal elements or silicon into metallic material surfaces [4]
10/02 Pretreatment of the material to be coated (C23C 10/04 takes precedence) [4]
10/04 Diffusion into selected surface areas, e.g. using masks [4]
10/06 using gases [4]
10/08 only one element being diffused [4]
10/10 Chromising [4]
10/12 more than one element being diffused [4]
10/14 more than one element being diffused in one step [4]
10/16 more than one element being diffused in more than one step [4]
10/18 using liquids, e.g. salt baths, liquid suspensions [4]
10/20 only one element being diffused [4]
10/22 Metal melt containing the element to be diffused [4]
10/24 Salt bath containing the element to be diffused [4]
10/26 more than one element being diffused [4]
10/28 using solids, e.g. powders, pastes [4]
10/30 using a layer of powder or paste on the surface (using liquid suspensions of solids C23C 10/18) [4]
10/32 Chromising [4]
10/34 Embedding in a powder mixture, i.e. pack cementation [4]
10/36 only one element being diffused [4]
10/38 Chromising [4]
10/40 of ferrous surfaces [4]
10/42 in the presence of volatile transport additives, e.g. halogenated substances [4]
10/44 Siliconising [4]
10/46 of ferrous surfaces [4]
10/48 Aluminising [4]
10/50 of ferrous surfaces [4]

10/52 more than one element being diffused in one step [4]
10/54 Diffusion of at least chromium [4]
10/56 and at least aluminium [4]
10/58 more than one element being diffused in more than one step [4]
10/60 After-treatment [4]

12/00 Solid state diffusion of at least one non-metal element other than silicon and at least one metal element or silicon into metallic material surfaces [4]
12/02 Diffusion in one step [4]

Coating by vacuum evaporation, by sputtering or by ion implantation [4]

14/00 Coating by vacuum evaporation, by sputtering or by ion implantation of the coating forming material (discharge tubes with provision for introducing objects or material to be exposed to the discharge H01J 37/00) [4]

14/02 Pretreatment of the material to be coated (C23C 14/04 takes precedence) [4]
14/04 Coating on selected surface areas, e.g. using masks [4]
14/06 characterised by the coating material (C23C 14/04 takes precedence) [4]
14/08 Oxides (C23C 14/10 takes precedence) [4]
14/10 Glass or silica [4]
14/12 Organic material [4]
14/14 Metallic material, boron or silicon [4]
14/16 on metallic substrates or on substrates of boron or silicon [4]
14/18 on other inorganic substrates [4]
14/20 on organic substrates [4]
14/22 characterised by the process of coating [4]
14/24 Vacuum evaporation [4]
14/26 by resistance or inductive heating of the source [4]
14/28 by wave energy or particle radiation (C23C 14/32-C23C 14/48 take precedence) [4]
14/30 by electron bombardment [4]
14/32 by explosion; by evaporation and subsequent ionisation of the vapours (C23C 14/34-C23C 14/48 take precedence) [4]
14/34 Sputtering [4]
14/35 by application of a magnetic field, e.g. magnetron sputtering [5]
14/36 Diode sputtering (C23C 14/35 takes precedence) [4, 5]
14/38 by direct current glow discharge [4]
14/40 with alternating current discharge, e.g. high-frequency discharge [4]
14/42 Triode sputtering (C23C 14/35 takes precedence) [4, 5]
14/44 by application of high frequencies and additional direct voltages [4]
14/46 by ion beam produced by an external ion source (C23C 14/40 takes precedence) [4]
14/48 Ion implantation [4]
14/50 Substrate holders [4]
14/52 Means for observation of the coating process [4]
14/54 Controlling or regulating the coating process (controlling or regulating in general G05) [4]
Chemical deposition or plating by decomposition; Contact plating [4]

16/00 Chemical coating by decomposition of gaseous compounds, without leaving reaction products of surface material in the coating, i.e. chemical vapour deposition (CVD) processes (reactive sputtering or vacuum evaporation C23C 14/00) [4]

16/01 on temporary substrates, e.g. on substrates subsequently removed by etching [7]

16/02 Pretreatment of the material to be coated (C23C 16/04 takes precedence) [4]

16/04 Coating on selected surface areas, e.g. using masks [4]

16/06 characterised by the deposition of metallic material [4]

16/08 from metal halides [4]

16/10 deposition of chromium only [4]

16/12 deposition of aluminium only [4]

16/14 deposition of only one other metal element [4]

16/16 from metal carbonyl compounds [4]

16/18 from metallo-organic compounds [4]

16/20 deposition of aluminium only [4]

16/22 characterised by the deposition of inorganic material, other than metallic material [4]

16/24 deposition of silicon only [4]

16/26 deposition of carbon only [4]

16/27 diamond only [7]

16/28 deposition of only one other non-metal element [4]

16/30 deposition of compounds, mixtures or solid solutions, e.g. borides, carbides, nitrides [4]

16/32 carbides [4]

16/34 nitrides [4]

16/36 carbo-nitrides [4]

16/38 borides [4]

16/40 oxides [4]

16/42 silicides [4]

16/44 characterised by the method of coating (C23C 16/04 takes precedence) [4]

16/442 using fluidised bed processes [7]

16/448 characterised by the method used for generating reactive gas streams, e.g. by evaporation or sublimation of precursor materials [7]

16/452 by activating reactive gas streams before introduction into the reaction chamber, e.g. by ionization or by addition of reactive species [7]

16/453 passing the reaction gases through burners or torches, e.g. atmospheric pressure CVD (C23C 16/513 takes precedence; for flame or plasma spraying of coating material in the molten state C23C 4/00) [7]

16/455 characterised by the method used for introducing gases into the reaction chamber or for modifying gas flows in the reaction chamber [7]

16/458 characterised by the method used for supporting substrates in the reaction chamber [7]

16/46 characterised by the method used for heating the substrate (C23C 16/48, C23C 16/50 take precedence) [4]

16/48 by irradiation, e.g. photolysis, radiolysis, particle radiation [4]

16/50 using electric discharges [4]

16/503 using dc or ac discharges [7]

16/505 using radio frequency discharges [7]

16/507 using external electrodes, e.g. in tunnel type reactors [7]

16/509 using internal electrodes [7]

16/511 using microwave discharges [7]

16/513 using plasma jets [7]

16/515 using pulsed discharges [7]

16/517 using a combination of discharges covered by two or more of groups C23C 16/563-C23C 16/515 [7]

16/52 controlling or regulating the coating process (controlling or regulating in general G05) [4]

16/54 apparatus specially adapted for continuous coating [4]

16/56 after-treatment [4]

18/00 Chemical coating by decomposition of either liquid compounds or solutions of the coating forming compounds, without leaving reaction products of surface material in the coating (chemical surface reaction C23C 8/00, C23C 22/00); Contact plating [4]

Note(s)
This group covers also suspensions containing reactive liquids and non-reactive solid particles.

18/02 by thermal decomposition [4]

18/03 Pretreatment of the material to be coated (C23C 18/06 takes precedence) [4]

18/06 coating on selected surface areas, e.g. using masks [4]

18/08 characterised by the deposition of metallic material [4]

18/10 deposition of aluminium only [4]

18/12 characterised by the deposition of inorganic material other than metallic material [4]

18/14 decomposition by irradiation, e.g. photolysis, particle radiation [4]

18/16 by reduction or substitution, i.e. electrolysis plating (C23C 18/54 takes precedence) [4]

18/18 pretreatment of the material to be coated [4]

18/20 of organic surfaces, e.g. resins [4]

18/22 roughening, e.g. by etching [4]

18/24 using acid aqueous solutions [4]

18/26 using organic liquids [4]

18/28 sensitising or activating [4]

18/30 activating [4]

18/31 coating with metals [5]

18/32 coating with one of iron, cobalt or nickel; coating with mixtures of phosphorus or boron with one of these metals [4,5]

18/34 using reducing agents [4,5]

18/36 using hypophosphites [4,5]

18/38 coating with copper [4,5]

18/40 using reducing agents [4,5]

18/42 coating with noble metals [4,5]

18/44 using reducing agents [4,5]

18/48 coating with alloys [4,5]

18/50 with alloys based on iron, cobalt or nickel (C23C 18/32 takes precedence) [4,5]

18/52 using reducing agents for coating with metallic material not provided for in a single one of groups C23C 18/32-C23C 18/50 [4]
20/00 Chemical coating by decomposition of either solid compounds or suspensions of the coating forming compounds, without leaving reaction products of surface material in the coating (chemical surface reaction C23C 8/00, C23C 22/00) [4]

Note(s)
This group covers also suspensions containing non-reactive liquids and reactive solid particles.

20/02 • Coating with metallic material [4]
20/04 • • with metals [4]
20/06 • Coating with inorganic material, other than metallic material [4]
20/08 • • with compounds, mixtures or solid solutions, e.g. borides, carbides, nitrides [4]

22/00 Chemical surface treatment of metallic material by reaction of the surface with a reactive liquid, leaving reaction products of surface material in the coating, e.g. conversion coatings, passivation of metals (wash primers C09D 5/12) [4]

Note(s)
1. This group covers also suspensions containing reactive liquids and non-reactive solid particles.
2. Rejuvenating of the bath is classified in the appropriate place for the specific bath composition.

Note(s)
In groups C23C 22/02-C23C 22/86, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.

22/02 • using non-aqueous solutions [4]
22/03 • • containing phosphorus compounds [4]
22/04 • • containing hexavalent chromium compounds [4]
22/05 • using aqueous solutions [5]
22/06 • • using aqueous acidic solutions with pH < 6 [4, 5]
22/07 • • containing phosphates [4, 5]
22/08 • • Orthophosphates [4, 5]
22/10 • • • containing oxidants [4, 5]
22/12 • • • containing zinc cations [4, 5]
22/13 • • • • containing also nitrate or nitrite anions [4, 5]
22/14 • • • • containing also chlorate anions [4, 5]
22/16 • • • • containing also peroxy-compounds [4, 5]
22/17 • • • • containing also organic acids [4, 5]
22/18 • • • • containing manganese cations [4, 5]
22/20 • • • • containing aluminium cations [4, 5]
22/22 • • • • containing alkaline earth metal cations [4, 5]
22/23 • • • Condensed phosphates [4, 5]
22/24 • • containing hexavalent chromium compounds [4, 5]
22/26 • • • containing also organic compounds [4, 5]
22/27 • • • Acids [4, 5]
22/28 • • • Macromolecular compounds [4, 5]
22/30 • • containing also trivalent chromium [4, 5]
22/32 • • • containing also pulverulent metals [4, 5]
22/33 • • • containing also phosphates [4, 5]
22/34 • • • containing fluorides or complex fluorides [4, 5]
22/36 • • • containing also phosphates [4, 5]
22/37 • • • containing also hexavalent chromium compounds [4, 5]
22/38 • • • containing also phosphates [4, 5]
22/40 • • • containing molybdates, tungstates or vanadates [4, 5]
22/42 • • • containing also phosphates [4, 5]
22/43 • • • containing also hexavalent chromium compounds [4, 5]
22/44 • • • containing also fluorides or complex fluorides [4, 5]
22/46 • • • containing oxalates [4, 5]
22/47 • • • containing also phosphates [4, 5]
22/48 • • • not containing phosphates, hexavalent chromium compounds, fluorides or complex fluorides, molybdates, tungstates, vanadates or oxalates [4, 5]
22/50 • • • • Treatment of iron or alloys based thereon [4, 5]
22/52 • • • • Treatment of copper or alloys based thereon [4, 5]
22/53 • • • • Treatment of zinc or alloys based thereon [4, 5]
22/54 • • • • Treatment of refractory metals or alloys based thereon [4, 5]
22/56 • • • • Treatment of aluminium or alloys based thereon [4, 5]
22/57 • • • • Treatment of magnesium or alloys based thereon [4, 5]
22/58 • • • • Treatment of other metallic material [4, 5]
22/60 • • • using alkaline aqueous solutions with pH > 8 [4, 5]
22/62 • • • Treatment of iron or alloys based thereon [4, 5]
22/63 • • • Treatment of copper or alloys based thereon [4, 5]
22/64 • • • Treatment of refractory metals or alloys based thereon [4, 5]
22/66 • • • Treatment of aluminium or alloys based thereon [4, 5]
22/67 • • • • with solutions containing hexavalent chromium [4, 5]
22/68 • • • using aqueous solutions with pH between 6 and 8 [4, 5]
22/70 • • • using melts [4]
22/72 • • • Treatment of iron or alloys based thereon [4]
22/73 • • • characterised by the process [4]
22/74 • • • for obtaining burnished-in conversion coatings [4]
22/76 • • • Applying the liquid by spraying [4]
22/77 • • • Controlling or regulating of the coating process (controlling or regulating in general G05) [4]
22/78 • • • Pretreatment of the material to be coated [4]
22/80 • • • with solutions containing titanium or zirconium compounds [4]
22/82 • • • After-treatment [4]
22/83 • • • Chemical after-treatment [4]
22/84 • • • Dyeing [4]
22/86 • • • Regeneration of coating baths [4]

24/00 Coating starting from inorganic powder (spraying of the coating material in molten state C23C 4/00; solid state diffusion C23C 8/00-C23C 12/00; manufacture of composite layers, workpieces or articles by sintering metallic powder B22F 7/00; friction welding B23K 20/12) [4]

24/02 • by application of pressure only [4]
24/04 • • Impact or kinetic deposition of particles [4]
26/00 Coating not provided for in groups C23C 2/00-C23C 24/00 [4]
  26/02 applying molten material to the substrate (applying melts to surfaces, in general B05) [4]

28/00 Coating for obtaining at least two superposed coatings either by methods not provided for in a single one of main groups C23C 2/00-C23C 26/00, or by combinations of methods provided for in subclasses C23C and C25D [4]
  28/02 only coatings of metallic material [4]
  28/04 only coatings of inorganic non-metallic material [4]
  30/00 Coating with metallic material characterised only by the composition of the metallic material, i.e. not characterised by the coating process (C23C 26/00, C23C 28/00 take precedence) [4]

C23D ENAMELLING OF, OR APPLYING A VITREOUS LAYER TO, METALS (chemical composition of the enamels C03C)

Subclass index
TREATMENT PRIOR TO ENAMELLING.................................................................................................................. 1/00, 3/00
ENAMELLING.......................................................................................................................................................... 5/00-11/00
AFTER-TREATMENT.............................................................................................................................................. 13/00, 15/00, 17/00

Coating with the enamels
3/00 Chemical treatment of the metal surfaces prior to coating (cleaning or de-greasing of metallic objects C23G)
  5/02 by wet methods
  5/04 by dry methods
  5/06 producing designs or letters
  5/08 Applying enamels non-uniformly over the surface

7/00 Treating the coatings, e.g. drying before burning

After-treatment
  13/00 After-treatment of the enamelled articles
  13/02 Removing defects by local re-melting of the enamel; Adjusting the shape

15/00 Joining enamelled articles to other enamelled articles by processes involving an enamelling step

17/00 De-enamelling

C23F NON-MECHANICAL REMOVAL OF METALLIC MATERIAL FROM SURFACES (working of metal by electro-erosion B23H; desurfacing by applying flames B23K 7/00; working metal by laser beam B23K 26/00); INHIBITING CORROSION OF METALLIC MATERIAL; INHIBITING INCRUSTATION IN GENERAL. (treating metal surfaces or coating of metals by electrolysis or electrophoresis C25D, C25F); MULTI-STEP PROCESSES FOR SURFACE TREATMENT OF METALLIC MATERIAL INVOLVING AT LEAST ONE PROCESS PROVIDED FOR IN CLASS C23 AND AT LEAST ONE PROCESS COVERED BY SUBCLASS C21D OR C22F OR CLASS C25 [4]

Note(s)
1. This subclass covers inhibiting corrosion or incrustation in general, whether of or on metallic or non-metallic surfaces, subject to Note (2) below.
2. This subclass does not cover:
   • protective layers or coating compositions or methods of applying them; these are classified in the appropriate places, e.g. B05, B44, C09D, C10M, C23C;
   • mechanical devices or constructional features of particular articles for inhibiting incrustation; these are classified in the appropriate places, e.g. in pipes or pipe fittings F16L 58/00;
   • articles characterised by being made of materials selected for their properties of resistance to corrosion or incrustation; these are classified in the appropriate places, e.g. turbine blades F01D 5/28.
Cleaning or pickling metallic material with solutions or molten salts (with organic solvents C23G 5/02)
1/02  •  with acid solutions
1/04  •  •  using inhibitors
1/06  •  •  organic inhibitors
1/08  •  •  Iron or steel
1/10 • • Other heavy metals
1/12 • • Light metals
1/14 • with alkaline solutions
1/16 • • using inhibitors
1/18 • • • Organic inhibitors
1/19 • • Iron or steel [4]
1/20 • • Other heavy metals [4]
1/22 • • Light metals
1/24 • with neutral solutions
1/26 • • using inhibitors
1/28 • with molten salts
1/30 • • using inhibitors
1/32 • • Heavy metals
1/34 • • Light metals
1/36 • Regeneration of waste pickling liquors

3/00 Apparatus for cleaning or pickling metallic material (with organic solvents C23G 5/04)

3/02 • for cleaning wires, strips, filaments continuously
3/04 • for cleaning pipes

5/00 Cleaning or de-greasing metallic material by other methods; Apparatus for cleaning or de-greasing metallic material with organic solvents

Note(s)
In groups C23G 5/02-C23G 5/06, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.

5/02 • using organic solvents
5/024 • containing hydrocarbons [4]
5/028 • containing halogenated hydrocarbons [4]
5/032 • containing oxygen-containing compounds [4]
5/036 • having also nitrogen [4]
5/04 • Apparatus
5/06 • using emulsions [4]

C25 ELECTROLYTIC OR ELECTROPHORETIC PROCESSES; APPARATUS THEREFOR

Note(s)
1. Electrolytic or electrophoretic processes or apparatus or operational features are classified
   i. in the groups for the compounds or articles produced, and
   ii. in the groups which cover the apparatus or operational features.
2. The electrolytic or electrophoretic purification of materials is classified according to the nature of the liquid in the relevant places, e.g. A01K 63/00, C02F 1/46, C25B 15/08, C25D 21/16, C25F 7/02.
3. Multi-step processes for surface treatment of metallic material involving at least one process provided for in class C23 and at least one process provided for in class C25 are classified in group C23F 17/00.

Class index

ELECTROLYTIC PRODUCTION
Inorganic compounds, non-metals.................................C25B 1/00
Organic compounds......................................................C25B 3/00
Non-metallic coatings....................................................C25D 9/00
Metals.........................................................................C25C 1/00, C25C 3/00, C25C 5/00
Metallic coatings...........................................................C25D 3/00, C25D 5/00, C25D 7/00

ELECTROLYTIC PRODUCTION OF COMPOUNDS OR NON-METALS WITH SIMULTANEOUS PRODUCTION OF ELECTRICITY.................................................C25B 5/00

ELECTROPHORETIC PRODUCTION
Compositions, non-metals..............................................C25B 7/00
Coatings........................................................................C25D 13/00

ELECTROFORMING.........................................................C25D 1/00
ANODISING, PHOSPHATISING, CHROMATISING..........C25D 11/00
COATINGS WITH EMBEDDED MATERIAL......................C25D 15/00

ELECTROLYTIC CLEANING, PICKLING, OR REMOVAL OF METALLIC COATINGS........................................C25F 1/00, C25F 5/00

ELECTROLYTIC ETCHING OR POLISHING.....................C25F 3/00

CELLS, ELECTRODES, DIAPHRAGMS
Production of compounds or non-metals........................C25B 9/00, C25B 11/00, C25B 13/00, C25B 15/00
Production of metals.....................................................C25C 7/00
Production of coatings....................................................C25D 17/00, C25D 19/00, C25D 21/00
Cleaning, pickling, surface treatment............................C25F 7/00

C25B ELECTROLYTIC OR ELECTROPHORETIC PROCESSES FOR THE PRODUCTION OF COMPOUNDS OR NON-METALS; APPARATUS THEREFOR (anodic or cathodic protection C23F 13/00; single-crystal growth C30B) [2]

240 IPC (2014.01), Section C
1. In this subclass, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.
2. Compounds of particular interest are also classified in the relevant classes, e.g. in C01, C07.

1/00 Electrolytic production of inorganic compounds or non-metals [2]
  1/02 • of hydrogen or oxygen [2]
  1/04 • by electrolysis of water [2]
  1/06 • • in cells with flat or plate-like electrodes [2]
  1/08 • • • of the filter-press type [2]
  1/10 • • in diaphragm cells [2]
  1/12 • • in pressure cells [2]
  1/13 • of ozone [7]
  1/14 • of alkali metal compounds [2]
  1/16 • • Hydroxides [2]
  1/18 • of alkaline earth metal compounds or magnesium compounds [2]
  1/20 • • Hydroxides [2]
  1/21 • of manganese oxides [7]
  1/22 • of inorganic acids [2]
  1/24 • of halogens or compounds thereof [2]
  1/26 • • Chlorine; Compounds thereof [2]
  1/28 • of per-compounds [2]
  1/30 • • Peroxides [2]
  1/32 • • Perborates [2]
  1/34 • Simultaneous production of alkali metal hydroxides and chlorine, its oxyacids or salts [2]
  1/36 • • in mercury cathode cells [2]
  1/38 • • • with vertical mercury cathode [2]
  1/40 • • • with horizontal mercury cathode [2]
  1/42 • • • Decomposition of amalgams [2]
  1/44 • • • • with the aid of catalysts [2]
  1/46 • • in diaphragm cells [2]

3/00 Electrolytic production of organic compounds [2]
  3/02 • by oxidation [2]
  3/04 • by reduction [2]
  3/06 • by halogenation [2]
  3/08 • • by fluorination [2]
  3/10 • by coupling reactions, e.g. dimerisation [2]
  3/12 • of organo-metallic compounds [2]

5/00 Electrogenerative processes, i.e. processes for producing compounds in which simultaneously electricity is generated [2]

7/00 Electrophoretic production of compounds or non-metals (separation or purification of peptides, e.g. of proteins, by electrophoresis C07K 1/26) [2]

9/00 Cells or assemblies of cells; Constructional parts of cells; Assemblies of constructional parts, e.g. electrode-diaphragm assemblies [2, 7]
  9/02 • Holders for electrodes [2]
  9/04 • Devices for current supply; Electrode connections; Electric inter-cell connections [2]
  9/06 • Cells comprising dimensionally-stable non-movable electrodes; Assemblies of constructional parts thereof [7]
  9/08 • • with diaphragms [7]
  9/10 • • • including an ion-exchange membrane in or on which electrode material is embedded [7]
  9/12 • Cells or assemblies of cells comprising at least one movable electrode, e.g. rotary electrodes; Assemblies of constructional parts thereof [7]
  9/14 • • Liquid electrodes, e.g. mercury electrodes [7]
  9/16 • Cells or assemblies of cells comprising at least one electrode made of particles; Assemblies of constructional parts thereof [7]

11/00 Electrodes; Manufacture thereof not otherwise provided for [2]
  11/02 • characterised by shape or form [2]
  11/03 • • perforated or foraminous [2]
  11/04 • • characterised by the material [2]
  11/06 • • • by the catalytic materials used [2]
  11/08 • • • • Noble metals [2]
  11/10 • • Electrodes based on barrier-type metals, e.g. titanium [2]
  11/12 • • Electrodes based on carbon [2]
  11/14 • • • Impregnation of carbon electrodes (C25B 11/06 takes precedence) [2]
  11/16 • • Electrodes based on manganese dioxide or lead dioxide [2]
  11/18 • • Mercury or amalgam electrodes [2]

13/00 Diaphragms; Spacing elements [4]
  13/02 • • characterised by form or shape [2]
  13/04 • • characterised by the material [2]
  13/06 • • • based on asbestos [2]
  13/08 • • • based on organic materials [2]

15/00 Operating or servicing of cells [2]
  15/02 • Process control or regulation [2]
  15/04 • Regulation of the inter-electrode distance [2]
  15/06 • Detection or inhibition of short circuits in the cell [2]
  15/08 • Supplying or removing reactants or electrolytes; Regeneration of electrolytes [2]

C25C PROCESSES FOR THE ELECTROLYTIC PRODUCTION, RECOVERY OR REFINING OF METALS; APPARATUS THEREFOR (anodic or cathodic protection C23F 13/00; single-crystal growth C30B) [2]
Coating with two or more superposed coatings obtained by combination of methods provided for in this subclass and in subclass C23C is classified in group C23C 1/02-C23C 1/20 [2]

3/00 Electrolytic production, recovery or refining of metals by electrolysis of melts (C25C 5/00 takes precedence) [2]
- of alkali or alkaline earth metals [2]
- of magnesium [2]
- of aluminium [2]
- Cell construction, e.g. bottoms, walls, cathodes [2]
- Devices for feeding or crust breaking [2]
- Electric current supply devices, e.g. bus bars [2]
- Electrolytes [2]
- Automatic control or regulation of cells (controlling or regulating in general G05) [2]
- Collecting emitted gases [2]
- Refining [2]

3/10 Electroplating; Baths therefor [2]
- from solutions (C25D 5/24-C25D 5/32 take precedence) [2]
- from solutions of trivalent chromium [2]
- Deposition of black chromium [2]
- characterised by the organic bath constituents used [2]
- of nickel or cobalt [2]
- from baths containing acetylenic or heterocyclic compounds [2]
- Acetylenic compounds [2]
- Heterocyclic compounds [2]

3/20 Electroforming [2]
- Tubes; Rings; Hollow bodies [2]
- Wires; Strips; Foils [2]
- Wholly-metallic mirrors [2]
- Perforated or foraminous objects, e.g. sieves (C25D 1/10 takes precedence) [2]
- Moulds; Masks; Masterforms [2]
- by electrophoresis [2]
- of inorganic material [2]
- Metals [2]
- of organic material [2]
- Separation of the formed objects from the electrodes [2]
- Separating compounds [2]

7/00 Constructional parts, or assemblies thereof, of cells; Servicing or operating of cells (for the production of aluminium C25C 3/06-C25C 3/22) [2]
- Electrodes (consumable anodes for the refining of metals C25C 1/00-C25C 5/00); Connections thereof [2]
- Diaphragms; Spacing elements [2]
- Operating or servicing [2]
- Separating of deposited metals from the cathode [2]

Note(s) [2012.01]
Coating with two or more superposed coatings obtained by combination of methods provided for in this subclass and in subclass C23C is classified in group C23C 28/00.

1/00 Electroforming [2]
- Tubes; Rings; Hollow bodies [2]
- Wires; Strips; Foils [2]
- Wholly-metallic mirrors [2]
- Perforated or foraminous objects, e.g. sieves (C25D 1/10 takes precedence) [2]
- Moulds; Masks; Masterforms [2]
- by electrophoresis [2]
- of inorganic material [2]
- Metals [2]
- of organic material [2]
- Separation of the formed objects from the electrodes [2]
- Separating compounds [2]

2/00 Joining workpieces by electrolysis [6]
- from solutions (C25D 5/24-C25D 5/32 take precedence) [2]
- from solutions of trivalent chromium [2]
- Deposition of black chromium [2]
- characterised by the organic bath constituents used [2]
- of nickel or cobalt [2]
- from baths containing acetylenic or heterocyclic compounds [2]
- Acetylenic compounds [2]
- Heterocyclic compounds [2]
- of iron [2]
- of zinc [2]
- from cyanide baths [2]
- of cadmium [2]
- from cyanide baths [2]
- of tin [2]
- characterised by the organic bath constituents used [2]
- of lead [2]
- characterised by the organic bath constituents used [2]
- of copper [2]
- of silver [2]
- of gold [2]
- of platinum group metals [2]
- characterised by the organic bath constituents used [2]
- of alloys [2]
- containing more than 50% by weight of copper [2]
- containing more than 50% by weight of tin [2]
- containing more than 50% by weight of gold [2]

Note(s) [2012.01]
Coating with two or more superposed coatings obtained by combination of methods provided for in this subclass and in subclass C23C is classified in group C23C 28/00.

1/00 Electroforming [2]
- Tubes; Rings; Hollow bodies [2]
- Wires; Strips; Foils [2]
- Wholly-metallic mirrors [2]
- Perforated or foraminous objects, e.g. sieves (C25D 1/10 takes precedence) [2]
- Moulds; Masks; Masterforms [2]
- by electrophoresis [2]
- of inorganic material [2]
- Metals [2]
- of organic material [2]
- Separation of the formed objects from the electrodes [2]
- Separating compounds [2]

2/00 Joining workpieces by electrolysis [6]
- from solutions (C25D 5/24-C25D 5/32 take precedence) [2]
- from solutions of trivalent chromium [2]
- Deposition of black chromium [2]
- characterised by the organic bath constituents used [2]
- of nickel or cobalt [2]
- from baths containing acetylenic or heterocyclic compounds [2]
- Acetylenic compounds [2]
- Heterocyclic compounds [2]
- of iron [2]
- of zinc [2]
- from cyanide baths [2]
- of cadmium [2]
- from cyanide baths [2]
- of tin [2]
- characterised by the organic bath constituents used [2]
- of lead [2]
- characterised by the organic bath constituents used [2]
- of copper [2]
- of silver [2]
- of gold [2]
- of platinum group metals [2]
- characterised by the organic bath constituents used [2]
- of alloys [2]
- containing more than 50% by weight of copper [2]
- containing more than 50% by weight of tin [2]
- containing more than 50% by weight of gold [2]

Note(s) [2012.01]
Coating with two or more superposed coatings obtained by combination of methods provided for in this subclass and in subclass C23C is classified in group C23C 28/00.
5/00 Electroplating characterised by the process; Pretreatment or after-treatment of workpieces [2]
5/02 • Electroplating of selected surface areas [2]
5/04 • Electroplating with moving electrodes [2]
5/06 • Brush or pad plating [2]
5/08 • Electroplating with moving electrolyte, e.g. jet electroplating [2]
5/10 • Electroplating with more than one layer of the same or of different metals (for bearings C25D 7/10) [2]
5/12 • at least one layer being of nickel or chromium [2]
5/14 • • two or more layers being of nickel or chromium, e.g. duplex or triplex layers [2]
5/16 • Electroplating with layers of varying thickness [2]
5/18 • Electroplating using modulated, pulsed or reversing current [2]
5/20 • Electroplating using ultrasonics [2]
5/22 • Electroplating combined with mechanical treatment during the deposition [2]
5/24 • Electroplating of metal surfaces to which a coating cannot readily be applied (C25D 5/34 takes precedence) [2]
5/26 • • of iron or steel surfaces [2]
5/28 • • of surfaces of refractory metals [2]
5/30 • • of surfaces of light metals [2]
5/32 • • of surfaces of actinides [2]
5/34 • Pretreatment of metallic surfaces to be electroplated [2]
5/36 • • of iron or steel [2]
5/38 • • of refractory metals or nickel [2]
5/40 • • • Nickel; Chromium [2]
5/42 • • • of light metals [2]
5/44 • • • Aluminium [2]
5/46 • • • of actinides [2]
5/48 • After-treatment of electroplated surfaces [2]
5/50 • • by heat-treatment [2]
5/52 • • by brightening or burnishing [2]
5/54 • Electroplating of non-metallic surfaces (C25D 7/12 takes precedence) [2]
5/56 • • of plastics [2]

7/00 Electroplating characterised by the article coated [2]
7/02 • Slide fasteners [2]
7/04 • Tubes; Rings; Hollow bodies [2]
7/06 • Wires; Strips; Foils [2]
7/08 • Mirrors; Reflectors [2]
7/10 • Bearings [2]
7/12 • Semiconductors [2]

9/00 Electrolytic coating other than with metals (C25D 11/00, C25D 15/00 take precedence; electrophoretic coating C25D 13/00) [2]
9/02 • with organic materials [2]
9/04 • with inorganic materials [2]
9/06 • • by anodic processes [2]
9/08 • • by cathodic processes [2]
9/10 • • on iron or steel [2]
9/12 • • on light metals [2]

11/00 Electrolytic coating by surface reaction, i.e. forming conversion layers [2]
11/02 • Anodisation [2]
11/04 • • of aluminium or alloys based thereon [2]

11/06 • • characterised by the electrolytes used [2]
11/08 • • containing inorganic acids [2]
11/10 • • containing organic acids [2]
11/12 • • Anodising more than once, e.g. in different baths [2]
11/14 • • Producing integrally coloured layers [2]
11/16 • • Pretreatment [2]
11/18 • • After-treatment, e.g. pore-sealing [2]
11/20 • • • Electrolytic after-treatment [2]
11/22 • • • • for colouring layers [2]
11/24 • • • Chemical after-treatment [2]
11/26 • • • of refractory metals or alloys based thereon [2]
11/28 • • • of actinides or alloys based thereon [2]
11/30 • • • of magnesium or alloys based thereon [2]
11/32 • • • of semiconducting materials [2]
11/34 • • • of metals or alloys not provided for in groups C25D 11/04-C25D 11/32 [2]
11/36 • Phosphatising [2]
11/38 • Chromatising [2]

13/00 Electrophoretic coating characterised by the process (C25D 15/00 takes precedence; compositions for electrophoretic coating C09D 5/44) [2]
13/02 • with inorganic material [2]
13/04 • with organic material [2]
13/06 • • polymers [2]
13/08 • • • by polymerisation in situ of monomeric materials [2]
13/10 • characterised by the additives used [2]
13/12 • characterised by the article coated [2]
13/14 • • Tubes; Rings; Hollow bodies [2]
13/16 • • Wires; Strips; Foils [2]
13/18 • • using modulated, pulsed or reversing current [2]
13/20 • Pretreatment [2]
13/22 • Servicing or operating [2]
13/24 • • Regeneration of process liquids [2]

15/00 Electrolytic or electrophoretic production of coatings containing embedded materials, e.g. particles, whiskers, wires [2]
15/02 • Combined electrolytic and electrophoretic processes [2]

17/00 Constructional parts, or assemblies thereof, of cells for electrolytic coating [2]
17/02 • • Tanks; Installations therefor [2]
17/04 • • External supporting frames or structures [2]
17/06 • • Suspending or supporting devices for articles to be coated [2]
17/08 • • Racks [2]
17/10 • Electrodes [2]
17/12 • • Shape or form (C25D 17/14 takes precedence) [2]
17/14 • • • for pad-plating [2]
17/16 • Apparatus for electrolytic coating of small objects in bulk [2]
17/18 • • having closed containers [2]
17/20 • • • Horizontal barrels [2]
17/22 • • • having open containers [2]
17/24 • • • Oblique barrels [2]
17/26 • • • Oscillating baskets [2]
17/28 • • • • with means for moving the objects individually through the apparatus during the treatment [2]

19/00 Electrolytic coating plants [2]
In this subclass, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.

In this subclass:
- Electrolytic cleaning, degreasing, pickling, or descaling [2]
- Electrolytic etching or polishing [2]
- Electrolytic coating [2]
- Electrolytic stripping of metallic layers or coatings [2]
- Electrolytic treatment of water, waste water or sewage by electrochemical methods C02F 1/46; anodic or cathodic protection C23F 13/00) [2]

**Note(s)**

In this subclass, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in the last appropriate place.

1/00 Electrolytic cleaning, degreasing, pickling, or descaling [2]
- Pickling; Descaling [2]
- in solution [2]
- of iron or steel [2]
- of refractory metals [2]
- of actinides [2]
- in melts [2]
- of iron or steel [2]
- of refractory metals [2]
- of actinides [2]

3/00 Electrolytic etching or polishing [2]
- Etching [2]
- of light metals [2]
- of iron or steel [2]
- of refractory metals [2]
- of actinides [2]

5/00 Electrolytic stripping of metallic layers or coatings [2]

7/00 Constructional parts, or assemblies thereof, of cells for electrolytic removal of material from objects (for both electrolytic coating and removal C25D 17/00); Servicing or operating [2]
- Regeneration of process liquids [2]

**C25D**

21/00 Processes for servicing or operating cells for electrolytic coating [2]
- Heating or cooling [2]
- Removal of gases or vapours [2]
- Filtering [2]
- Rinsing [2]
- Agitating of electrolytes; Moving of racks [2]
- Use of protective surface layers on electrolytic baths [3]

**Note(s)**

1. In this subclass, the following expressions are used with the meaning indicated:
   - "single crystal" includes also twin crystals and a predominantly single crystal product;
   - "homogeneous polycrystalline material" means a material with crystal particles, all of which have the same chemical composition;
   - "defined structure" means the structure of a material with grains which are oriented in a preferential way or have larger dimensions than normally obtained.

2. In this subclass, multi-aspect classification is applied, so that if subject matter is characterised by aspects covered by more than one of its groups, the subject matter should be classified in each of those groups.

3. In this subclass:
   - the preparation of single crystals or a homogeneous polycrystalline material with defined structure of particular materials or shapes is classified in the group for the process as well as in group C30B 29/00;
• an apparatus specially adapted for a specific process is classified in the appropriate group for the process. Apparatus to be used in more than one kind of process is classified in group C30B 35/00.

**Subclass index**

**SINGLE-CRYSTAL GROWTH**

- from solids or gels .......................................................... 1/00, 3/00, 5/00
- from liquids ........................................................................... 7/00-21/00, 27/00
- from vapours ................................................................. 23/00, 25/00

**PRODUCTION OF SINGLE CRYSTALS OR HOMOGENEOUS POLYCRYSTALLINE MATERIAL WITH DEFINED STRUCTURE** .................................................. 28/00, 30/00

**SINGLE CRYSTALS OR HOMOGENEOUS POLYCRYSTALLINE MATERIAL WITH DEFINED STRUCTURE** .................................................. 29/00

**AFTER-TREATMENT** .................................................. 31/00, 33/00

**APPARATUS** ............................................................. 35/00

---

**Single-crystal growth from solids or gels [3]**

1/00 Single-crystal growth directly from the solid state
(unidirectional demixing of eutectoid materials
C30B 3/00; under a protective fluid C30B 27/00) [3]
1/02 • by thermal treatment, e.g. strain annealing
(C30B 1/12 takes precedence) [3]
1/04 • • Isothermal recrystallisation [3]
1/06 • • Recrystallisation under a temperature gradient [3]
1/08 • • • Zone recrystallisation [3]
1/10 • by solid state reactions or multi-phase diffusion [3]
1/12 • by pressure treatment during the growth [3]

3/00 Unidirectional demixing of eutectoid materials [3]

5/00 Single-crystal growth from gels (under a protective fluid C30B 27/00) [3]
5/02 • with addition of doping materials [3]

**Single-crystal growth from liquids; Unidirectional solidification of eutectic materials [3]**

7/00 Single-crystal growth from solutions using solvents which are liquid at normal temperature, e.g. aqueous solutions (from molten solvents C30B 9/00; by normal or gradient freezing C30B 11/00; under a protective fluid C30B 27/00) [3]
7/02 • by evaporation of the solvent [3]
7/04 • • using aqueous solvents [3]
7/06 • • using non-aqueous solvents [3]
7/08 • by cooling of the solution [3]
7/10 • by application of pressure, e.g. hydrothermal processes [3]
7/12 • by electrolysis [3]
7/14 • the crystallising materials being formed by chemical reactions in the solution [3]

9/00 Single-crystal growth from melt solutions using molten solvents (by normal or gradient freezing C30B 11/00; by zone-melting C30B 13/00; by crystal pulling C30B 15/00; on immersed seed crystal C30B 17/00; by liquid phase epitaxial growth C30B 19/00; under a protective fluid C30B 27/00) [3]
9/02 • by evaporation of the molten solvent [3]
9/04 • • cooling of the solution [3]
9/06 • • using as solvent a component of the crystal composition [3]
9/08 • • using other solvents [3]
9/10 • • Metal solvents [3]
9/12 • • Salt solvents, e.g. flux growth [3]
9/14 • by electrolysis [3]

11/00 Single-crystal-growth by normal freezing or freezing under temperature gradient, e.g. Bridgman-Stockbarger method (C30B 13/00, C30B 15/00, C30B 17/00, C30B 19/00 take precedence; under a protective fluid C30B 27/00) [3]
11/02 • without using solvents (C30B 11/06 takes precedence) [3]
11/04 • adding crystallising materials or reactants forming it in situ to the melt [3]
11/06 • • at least one but not all components of the crystal composition being added [3]
11/08 • • every component of the crystal composition being added during the crystallisation [3]
11/10 • • • Solid or liquid components, e.g. Verneuil method [3]
11/12 • • • Vaporous components, e.g. vapour-liquid-solid-growth [3]
11/14 • characterised by the seed, e.g. its crystallographic orientation [3]

13/00 Single-crystal growth by zone-melting; Refining by zone-melting (C30B 17/00 takes precedence; by changing the cross-section of the treated solid C30B 15/00; under a protective fluid C30B 27/00; for the growth of homogeneous polycrystalline material with defined structure C30B 28/00; zone-refining of specific materials, see the relevant subclasses for the materials) [3, 5]
13/02 • Zone-melting with a solvent, e.g. travelling solvent process [3]
13/04 • Homogenisation by zone-levelling [3]
13/06 • the molten zone not extending over the whole cross-section [3]
13/08 • adding crystallising materials or reactants forming it in situ to the molten zone [3]
13/10 • • with addition of doping materials [3]
13/12 • • • in the gaseous or vapour state [3]
13/14 • Crucibles or vessels [3]
13/16 • Heating of the molten zone [3]
13/18 • the heating element being in contact with, or immersed in, the molten zone [3]
13/20 • by induction, e.g. hot wire technique (C30B 13/18 takes precedence) [3]
13/22 • • by irradiation or electric discharge [3]
13/24 • • • using electromagnetic waves [3]
13/26 • Stirring of the molten zone [3]
13/28 • Controlling or regulating [3]
Single-crystal growth from vapours

C30B

15/00 Single-crystal growth by pulling from a melt, e.g. Czochralski method (under a protective fluid C30B 27/00) [3]

15/02 • adding crystallising materials or reactants forming it in situ to the melt [3]
15/04 • adding doping materials, e.g. for n-p-junction [3]
15/06 • Non-vertical pulling [3]
15/08 • Downward pulling [3]
15/10 • Crucibles or containers for supporting the melt [3]
15/12 • Double crucible methods [3]
15/14 • Heating of the melt or the crystallised materials [3]
15/16 • by irradiation or electric discharge [3]
15/18 • using direct resistance heating in addition to other methods of heating, e.g. using Pellet heater [3]
15/20 • Controlling or regulating (controlling or regulating in general G05) [3]
15/22 • Stabilisation or shape controlling of the molten zone near the pulled crystal; Controlling the section of the crystal [3]
15/24 • using mechanical means, e.g. shaping guides (shaping dies for edge-defined film-fed crystal growth C30B 15/34) [3]
15/26 • using television detectors; using photo or X-ray detectors [3]
15/28 • using weight changes of the crystal or the melt, e.g. flotation methods [3]
15/30 • Mechanisms for rotating or moving either the melt or the crystal (flotation methods C30B 15/28) [3]
15/32 • Seed holders, e.g. chucks [3]
15/34 • Edge-defined film-fed crystal growth using dies or slits [3]
15/36 • characterised by the seed, e.g. its crystallographic orientation [3]

17/00 Single-crystal growth on to a seed which remains in the melt during growth, e.g. Nacken-Kyropoulos method (C30B 15/50 takes precedence) [3]

19/00 Liquid-phase epitaxial-layer growth [3]
19/02 • using molten solvents, e.g. flux [3]
19/04 • the solvent being a component of the crystal composition [3]
19/06 • Reaction chambers; Boats for supporting the melt; Substrate holders [3]
19/08 • Heating of the reaction chamber or the substrate [3]
19/10 • Controlling or regulating (controlling or regulating in general G05) [3]
19/12 • characterised by the substrate [3]

21/00 Unidirectional solidification of eutectic materials [3]
21/02 • by normal casting or gradient freezing [3]
21/04 • by zone-melting [3]
21/06 • by pulling from a melt [3]

Single-crystal growth from vapours [3]

23/00 Single-crystal growth by condensing evaporated or sublimed materials [3]

23/02 • Epitaxial-layer growth [3]
23/04 • Pattern deposit, e.g. by using masks [3]
23/06 • Heating of the deposition chamber, the substrate, or the materials to be evaporated [3]
23/08 • by condensing ionised vapours (by reactive sputtering C30B 25/06) [3]

25/00 Single-crystal growth by chemical reaction of reactive gases, e.g. chemical vapour deposition growth [3]
25/02 • Epitaxial-layer growth [3]
25/04 • Pattern deposit, e.g. by using masks [3]
25/06 • by reactive sputtering [3]
25/08 • Reaction chambers; Selection of materials therefor [3]
25/10 • Heating of the reaction chamber or the substrate [3]
25/12 • Substrate holders or susceptors [3]
25/14 • Feed and outlet means for the gases; Modifying the flow of the reactive gases [3]
25/16 • Controlling or regulating (controlling or regulating in general G05) [3]
25/18 • characterised by the substrate [3]
25/20 • the substrate being of the same materials as the epitaxial layer [3]
25/22 • Sandwich processes [3]
30/00 Production of single crystals or homogeneous polycrystalline material with defined structure characterised by the action of electric or magnetic fields, wave energy or other specific physical conditions [5]

Note(s)
When classifying in this group, classification is also made in groups C30B 1/00-C30B 28/00 according to the process of crystal growth.

30/02 • using electric fields, e.g. electrolysis [5]

30/04 • using magnetic fields [5]
30/06 • using mechanical vibrations [5]
30/08 • in conditions of zero-gravity or low gravity [5]

After-treatment of single crystals or homogeneous polycrystalline material with defined structure [3, 5]

31/00 Diffusion or doping processes for single crystals or homogeneous polycrystalline material with defined structure; Apparatus therefor [3, 5]
31/02 • by contacting with diffusion materials in the solid state [3]
31/04 • by contacting with diffusion materials in the liquid state [3]
31/06 • by contacting with diffusion material in the gaseous state (C30B 31/18 takes precedence) [3]
31/08 • the diffusion materials being a compound of the elements to be diffused [3]
31/10 • Reaction chambers; Selection of materials therefor [3]
31/12 • Heating of the reaction chamber [3]
31/14 • Substrate holders or susceptors [3]
31/16 • Feed and outlet means for the gases; Modifying the flow of the gases [3]
31/18 • Controlling or regulating [3]
31/20 • Doping by irradiation with electromagnetic waves or by particle radiation [3]
31/22 • by ion-implantation [3]

33/00 After-treatment of single crystals or homogeneous polycrystalline material with defined structure (C30B 31/00 takes precedence) [3, 5]
33/02 • Heat treatment (C30B 33/04, C30B 33/06 take precedence) [5]
33/04 • using electric or magnetic fields or particle radiation [5]
33/06 • Joining of crystals [5]
33/08 • Etching [5]
33/10 • in solutions or melts [5]
33/12 • in gas atmosphere or plasma [5]

35/00 Apparatus not otherwise provided for, specially adapted for the growth, production or after-treatment of single crystals or of a homogeneous polycrystalline material with defined structure [3, 5]
Note(s) [2006.01]

1. In this subclass, the first place priority rule is applied, i.e. at each hierarchical level, classification is made in the first appropriate place.
2. When classifying in this subclass, subject matter of interest is also classified in other appropriate places:
   a. library members are also classified in the appropriate places elsewhere in the IPC (e.g. in section C) according to established procedure relating to "Markush"-type formulae (see paragraphs 100 and 101 of the Guide);
   b. methods or apparatus covered by this subclass are also classified for their biological, chemical, physical or other features in the appropriate places in the IPC, if such features are of interest, e.g.
      A01N…………………..Biochemistry, microbiology, enzymology including micro-organisms or enzymes, preparing them, using them to synthesise compounds or compositions; Measuring or testing processes involving micro-organisms or enzymes; Mutation or genetic engineering
      C22………………………..Metal alloys
      G01N………………………..Chemical or physical analysis
      G01R, G01T………………….Physical measurements methods; Apparatus therefor
      G03F………………………..Photomechanical methods
      G06F………………………..Electrical digital data processing
      G06K………………………..Data processing
      G06T………………………..Image data processing
      G09F………………………..Displaying; Advertising

10/00 Directed molecular evolution of macromolecules, e.g. RNA, DNA or proteins [2006.01]

20/00 Methods specially adapted for identifying library members [2006.01]

20/02 ▪ Identifying library members by their fixed physical location on a support or substrate [2006.01]

20/04 ▪ Identifying library members by means of a tag, label, or other readable or detectable entity associated with the library members, e.g. decoding processes [2006.01]

20/06 ▪ using iterative deconvolution techniques [2006.01]

20/08 ▪ Direct analysis of the library members per se by physical methods, e.g. spectroscopy [2006.01]

30/00 Methods of screening libraries [2006.01]

30/02 ▪ In silico screening [2006.01]

30/04 ▪ by measuring the ability to specifically bind a target molecule, e.g. antibody-antigen binding, receptor-ligand binding [2006.01]

30/06 ▪ by measuring effects on living organisms, tissues or cells [2006.01]

30/08 ▪ by measuring catalytic activity [2006.01]

30/10 ▪ by measuring physical properties, e.g. mass [2006.01]

40/00 Libraries per se, e.g. arrays, mixtures [2006.01]

40/02 ▪ Libraries contained in or displayed by micro-organisms, e.g. bacteria or animal cells; Libraries contained in or displayed by vectors, e.g. plasmids; Libraries containing only micro-organisms or vectors [2006.01]

40/04 ▪ Libraries containing only organic compounds [2006.01]

Note(s) [2006.01]

Libraries containing salts of organic compounds are classified in the groups for the libraries containing the parent compounds

40/06 ▪ Libraries containing nucleotides or polynucleotides, or derivatives thereof [2006.01]

40/08 ▪ Libraries containing RNA or DNA which encodes proteins, e.g. gene libraries [2006.01]

40/10 ▪ Libraries containing peptides or polypeptides, or derivatives thereof [2006.01]

40/12 ▪ Libraries containing saccharides or polysaccharides, or derivatives thereof [2006.01]

40/14 ▪ Libraries containing macromolecular compounds and not covered by groups C40B 40/06-C40B 40/12 [2006.01]

40/16 ▪ Libraries containing metal-containing organic compounds [2006.01]

40/18 ▪ Libraries containing only inorganic compounds or inorganic materials [2006.01]
**Methods of creating libraries, e.g. combinatorial synthesis [2006.01]**

- **50/02**  •  In silico or mathematical conception of libraries [2006.01]
- **50/04**  •  using dynamic combinatorial chemistry techniques [2006.01]
- **50/06**  •  Biochemical methods, e.g. using enzymes or whole viable micro-organisms [2006.01]
- **50/08**  •  Liquid phase synthesis, i.e. wherein all library building blocks are in liquid phase or in solution during library creation; Particular methods of cleavage from the liquid support [2006.01]
- **50/10**  •  involving encoding steps [2006.01]
- **50/12**  •  using a particular method of attachment to the liquid support [2006.01]
- **50/14**  •  Solid phase synthesis, i.e. wherein one or more library building blocks are bound to a solid support during library creation; Particular methods of cleavage from the solid support [2006.01]
- **50/16**  •  involving encoding steps [2006.01]
- **50/18**  •  using a particular method of attachment to the solid support [2006.01]

**Apparatus specially adapted for use in combinatorial chemistry or with libraries [2006.01]**

- **60/02**  •  Integrated apparatus specially adapted for creating libraries, screening libraries and for identifying library members [2006.01]
- **60/04**  •  Integrated apparatus specially adapted for both screening libraries and identifying library members [2006.01]
- **60/06**  •  Integrated apparatus specially adapted for both creating libraries and identifying library members [2006.01]
- **60/08**  •  Integrated apparatus specially adapted for both creating and screening libraries [2006.01]
- **60/10**  •  for identifying library members [2006.01]
- **60/12**  •  for screening libraries [2006.01]
- **60/14**  •  for creating libraries [2006.01]

**Tags or labels specially adapted for combinatorial chemistry or libraries, e.g. fluorescent tags or bar codes [2006.01]**

**Linkers or spacers specially adapted for combinatorial chemistry or libraries, e.g. traceless linkers or safety-catch linkers [2006.01]**

**Subject matter not otherwise provided for in this subclass [2006.01]**

---

### C99

**SUBJECT MATTER NOT OTHERWISE PROVIDED FOR IN THIS SECTION**

### C99Z

**SUBJECT MATTER NOT OTHERWISE PROVIDED FOR IN THIS SECTION [2006.01]**

**Note(s) [2006.01]**

This subclass covers subject matter that:

- **a.** is not provided for, but is most closely related to, the subject matter covered by the subclasses of this section, and
- **b.** is not explicitly covered by any subclass of another section.

**99/00**  Subject matter not otherwise provided for in this section [2006.01]